Foreword

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

Foreword

As President of the Republic of South Africa, I am pleased to present the *South Africa Yearbook 2011/12*.

This is government's official publication of record that showcases the achievements of our nation. The *Yearbook* profiles the work undertaken by various government departments and progress in sectors related to departments.

This is, therefore, a compilation of facts and figures that demonstrates the progress we are making in building the non-racist, non-sexist and prosperous South Africa envisioned in our Constitution.

We look back with pride on 2011 as an industrious year, which we declared as the *Year of Job Creation* and during which we started implementing our plans to fight the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality in a difficult economic climate.

This provided fresh focus for a nation that had been energised and inspired by the success of the first African FIFA World Cup™ a year earlier in 2010.

In the Year of Job Creation, employment unfolded in the public and private sectors through large-scale developments such as electricity plants, rail and road upgrades and water management that will sustain thousands of jobs and push our economy onto a higher trajectory of growth. We also formed various strategic partnerships to give further impetus and drive to our key imperatives.

The year 2011 was also the year in which we marked 21 years since the release from prison of our beloved founding President Nelson Mandela. The date, 11 February 1990, was a momentous, special moment for our country, our continent and the international community, marking our victory over the repugnant system of apartheid.

This *Yearbook* contains powerful evidence of the progress we have sustained since our political transformation. It also shows how our programme of economic transformation is producing results that are changing the lives of ordinary people and making South Africa a better place in which to live and work, and an attractive destination for investment, trade and tourism.

You will discover in this volume the strides we are making in national priority areas such as education and skills, health, rural development and land reform, creating decent work and fighting crime and corruption.

Above all, you will discover that we are a dynamic, energetic and proud nation whose achievements in 2011 create further hope and inspiration for achieving the goals we have set for our future.

Our goal is clear. We want to have a country where millions more South Africans have decent employment opportunities, which has a modern infrastructure and a vibrant economy, and where the quality of life is high. This *Yearbook* illustrates how we are getting there.

We are indeed writing a new story about South Africa and you are holding part of that story in your hand.

I hope the *Yearbook* will inspire and impress you to be or become a champion for building an even better South Africa.

JG Zuma
President of South Africa
April 2012

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

South Africa Yearbook 2011/12
Nineteenth edition
Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*
ISSN 0302-0681

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar
Editor: Delien Burger
Assistant editors: Antonia Vermeulen and Jacky Hefez
Editorial support: Cecilia de Vos Belgraver
Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila and Ongezwa Manyathi
Photographs supplied by: Africa Media Online; Delien Burger; Department of International Relations and Cooperation; Yolande Dednam; Lissele Botha; Este Koorts; GCIS Photo Studio; Graeme Williams; Mediaclub South Africa; Nicolette Prinsloo; Picturenet

Cover design: Yolande Dednam
Design and layout: Yolande Dednam

Compiled, edited and published by GCIS
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Telephone: 012 314 2911, Fax: 012 323 0557
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by CTP Printers

ISBN 978-0-621-40471-5
ISSN 1022-9515
Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number: 57-40609

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the *South Africa Yearbook*, or more detailed specific information, should consult the contributors. The information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za).*

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2011.

Contents

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

Contents

Land and its people

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2011/12

South Africa is a country where various cultures merge to form a unique nation, proud of its heritage. The country boasts some of the world's most breathtaking scenery and features an amazing display of bird- and wildlife species, which include the well-known Big Five (lion, leopard, elephant, buffalo and rhino). South Africa's biggest asset is its people – a rainbow nation with rich and diverse cultures.

South Africa is often called "the cradle of humankind", for this is where archaeologists discovered 2,5-million-year-old fossils of our earliest ancestors, as well as 100 000-year-old remains of modern man.

The land

South Africa occupies the southernmost tip of Africa. The country stretches latitudinally from 22° to 35° S and longitudinally from 17° to 33° E. Its surface area is 1 219 090 km^2.

The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

To the west, south and east, South Africa borders on the Atlantic and Indian oceans. Isolated, some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town in the Atlantic, lie the Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947.

The country's physical features range from bushveld through deserts and forests, up majestic mountain peaks and down to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

According to the South African Weather Service:

- The hottest place in South Africa is Letaba (Limpopo), with a mean annual temperature of 23,3° C and an average annual maximum temperature of 35° C.
- The coldest place in South Africa is Buffelsfontein near Molteno (Eastern Cape), with a mean annual temperature of 11,3° C and an average annual minimum temperature of 2,8° C.
- The highest ever rainfall in one year was measured at Jonkershoek in the Western Cape (3 874 mm in 1950). The wettest place in South Africa is Matiwa, with an average annual rainfall of 2 004 mm (calculated over a 60-year period). The driest place in South Africa is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm.
- The windiest place in South Africa is Cape Point (Western Cape), which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The annual average wind speed is 14,1 m/s, with 42,1% of the wind speeds greater than 8 m/s. The strongest wind gust ever in South Africa occurred at Beaufort West (Western Cape) on 16 May 1984 and measured 186 km/h.

The oceans

South Africa's largest neighbours are the Atlantic and Indian oceans, which meet at the south-western corner of the continent.

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola. The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for important differences in climate and vegetation between the east and west coasts of South Africa.

It also accounts for the differences in marine life. The cold waters of the west coast are much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast. Consequently, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

The coasts

The coastline stretches more than 3 000 km and is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours.

The only ideal natural harbour along the coastline is Saldanha Bay on the west coast. However, the area lacks fresh water and does not offer natural lines of penetration to the interior.

Rivers and lakes

Most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year. These bars are formed by the action of waves and currents and by the intermittent flow, heavy sediment load and steep gradients of most South African rivers. The country has no commercially navigable rivers and no significant natural lakes. Several artificial lakes are used mostly for agricultural irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. It rises in the Drakensberg mountains, traverses through the Lesotho highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State. Before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean, it forms the border with Namibia.

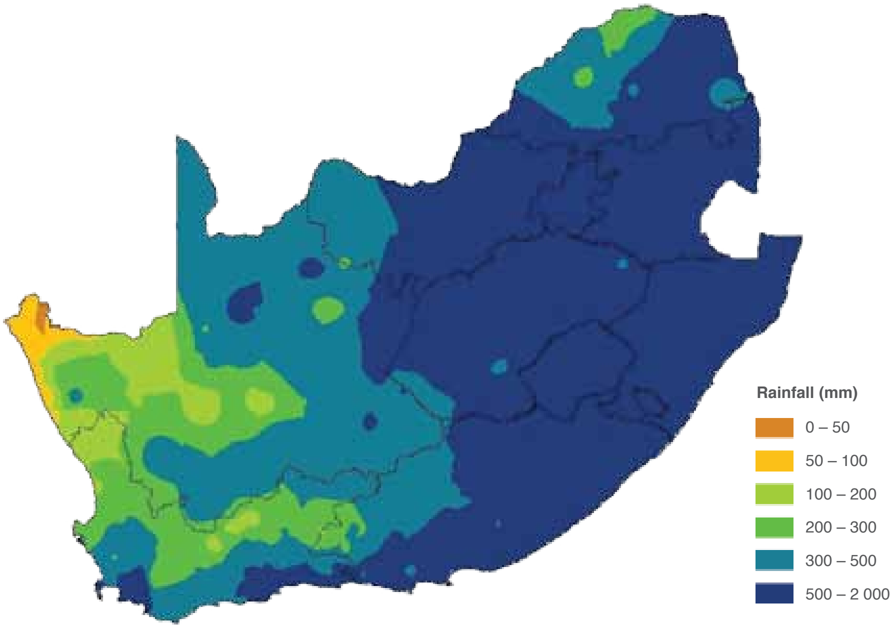
Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and the Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major

Rainfall (mm) for the season July 2010 to June 2011

(Based on preliminary data. The number of stations used may vary depending on data availability)



physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast. Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau itself is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent. In general, the escarpment forms the highest parts of the plateau.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west.

At least three major subdivisions are recognised: the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climatic features

Although the country is classified as semi-arid, it has considerable variation in climate.

The subtropical location, on either side of 30° S, accounts for the warm temperate conditions so typical of South Africa, making it a popular destination for foreign tourists. Being in the southern hemisphere, the seasons in South Africa are opposite to those of Europe and North America.

The country also falls squarely within the subtropical belt of high pressure, making it dry with an abundance of sunshine.

Although Durban (east coast) and Port Nolloth (west coast) lie more or less on the same latitude, there is a difference of at least 6° C in their mean annual temperatures.

Average temperatures (° C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	17	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	15	19	7
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	18	19	3
Mthatha	27	16	21	4
Musina	34	21	25	7
Nelspruit	29	19	23	6
Pietermaritzburg	28	18	23	3
Polokwane	28	17	20	4
Port Elizabeth	25	18	20	9
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	31	20	24	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

Coastal gale-force winds are frequent, especially in the south-western and southern areas.

Rainfall

South Africa has an average annual rainfall of 450 mm, compared with a world average of 860 mm. About 65% of the country receives less than 500 mm per year, which is generally accepted as the minimum amount required for successful dry-land farming.

South Africa's rainfall is unreliable and unpredictable. Large fluctuations in the average annual rainfall are the rule rather than the exception in most areas.

About 21% of the country, mainly the arid west, receives less than 200 mm per year. Below-average annual rainfall is more often recorded than above-average total annual rainfall. South Africa is periodically afflicted by drastic and prolonged droughts, which often end in severe floods.

In Cape Town, the capital city of the Western Cape, the average rainfall is highest in the winter months, while in the capital cities of the other eight provinces, the average rainfall is highest during summer.

Temperatures

Temperature conditions in South Africa are characterised by three main features: they tend to be lower than in other regions at similar latitudes, for example, Australia, due primarily to the greater elevation of the subcontinent above sea level; despite a latitudinal span of 13°, average annual temperatures are remarkably uniform throughout the country; and there is a striking contrast between temperatures on the east and west coasts.

Owing to the increase in the height of the plateau towards the north-east, there is hardly any increase in temperature from south to north.

Temperatures above 32° C are fairly common in summer, and frequently exceed 38° C in the lower Orange River Valley and the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Frost, humidity and fog

Frost often occurs on the interior plateau during cold, clear, winter nights with ice forming on still pools and in water pipes. The frost season (April to October) is longest over the eastern and southern plateau areas bordering the escarpment. Frost decreases to the north, while the coast is virtually frost-free.

Along the coast, the humidity is much higher than inland and at times may rise to 85%. Low stratus clouds and fog frequently occur over the cool west coast, particularly during summer. The only other area that commonly experiences fog is the "mist belt" along the eastern foothills of the escarpment.

The people

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011,* released in July 2011, there were 50,59 million people living in South Africa, of whom 79,5% were African, 9% coloured, 2,5% Indian and 9% white. Approximately 52% of the population is female.

Nearly one third (31,3%) of the population was aged younger than 15 years and approximately 7,7% (3,9 million) 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years, approximately 23% (3,66 million) lived in KwaZulu-Natal and 19,4% (3,07 million) lived in Gauteng.

Languages

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and participate in the cultural life of his or her choice, but no one may do so in a

Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
isiZulu	23,8%	isiNdebele	1,6%
isiXhosa	17,6%	siSwati	2,7%
Afrikaans	13,3%	Tshivenda	2,3%
Sesotho sa Leboa	9,4%	Xitsonga	4,4%
English	8,2%	Sesotho	8%
Setswana	8,2%	Other	0,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2001*)

manner that is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights.

Each person has the right to instruction in his or her language of choice, where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

The diversity of the unique cultures of South Africa means that there are 11 official languages. Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages, including the Khoi, Nama and San languages, as well as Sign Language.

Religion

According to the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion.

Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus, Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.

The provinces

South Africa is divided into nine provinces, each with its own legislature, premier and executive councils. The provinces, each with its own distinctive landscape, vegetation and climate, are the Western Cape, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast. At 169 580 km^2, the Eastern Cape is roughly the size of Uruguay. It is the country's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13,9% of South Africa's land area.

Number of individuals by church

Churches	Number
Dutch Reformed	3 005 698
Zion Christian	4 971 932
Roman Catholic	3 181 336
Methodist	3 305 404
Pentecostal/Charismatic	3 422 749
Anglican	1 722 076
Apostolic Faith Mission	246 190
Lutheran	1 130 987
Presbyterian	832 495
Bandla Lama Nazaretha	248 824
Baptist	691 237
Congregational	508 825
Orthodox	42 251
Other Apostolic churches	5 609 070
Other Zionist churches	1 887 147
Ethiopian type churches	880 414
Other Reformed churches	226 495
Other African independent churches	656 644
Other Christian churches	3 195 477
African Traditional Belief	125 903
Judaism	75 555
Hinduism	551 669
Islam	654 064
Other beliefs	269 200
No religion	6 767 165
Undetermined	610 971
Total	**44 819 778**

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2001*)

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho
Principal languages:
isiXhosa 83,4%
Afrikaans 9,3%
English 3,6%
Population: 6 829 958
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 13,5%
Area: 169 580 km^2

In 2011, the Eastern Cape partnered with higher education institutions to develop two science and techno parks in East London and the Nelson Mandela Metro. These parks will drive innovation and technology development to ensure that the province has a globally competitive industry and offers sustainable jobs.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

The province is serviced by airports in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

The people

The Eastern Cape has a population of more than 6,8 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

Agriculture, fishing and forestry

Agriculture is important in the Eastern Cape. The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa. People in the former Transkei region are dependent on cattle, maize and sorghum farming. An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

There is excellent potential for forestry – the coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west. The Tsitsikamma National Park on the southern border is home to dense indigenous forests.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

With two harbours and four airports offering direct flights to the main centres and an excellent road and rail infrastructure, the province has been earmarked as a key area for growth and economic development.

The Provincial Industrial Development Strategy identified the sectors that can create jobs and diversify the economy. These are aligned with the sectors that are being prioritised by government and include the following:

- automotive and components sector, in which the province has had significant new investments in recent years
- renewables and the green industries
- agriculture and agroprocessing
- forestry and timber processing
- pharmaceuticals
- plastics and petrochemicals
- capital goods
- tourism.

The East London Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) has attracted new investments, which will provide approximately 600 direct and more than 1 000 indirect jobs. The Coega IDZ has also secured, among other things, the Cape Concentrates Tomato Paste Project, which will create 180 direct jobs and 3 000 jobs on farms.

New investments have also been made in the auto and components sector. Daimler AG has awarded sole rights to Daimler Benz to produce the new C-Class model, the W205. The investment of R2 billion will result in the creation of

In September 2011, President Jacob Zuma visited the General Motors South Africa (GMSA) plant in Port Elizabeth, and the Volkswagen Group South Africa (VWSA) plant in Uitenhage.

The GMSA's three new vehicle assembly programmes represent an investment of R1 billion into new facilities and equipment.

GMSA invested R158 million in education and community-support programmes and a further R101 million in the education of its employees and their children from 2004 to 2010. The company also reduced its water consumption by 39% and electricity consumption by 13% in 2010.

President Zuma visited the construction site of VWSA's new R500-million press shop, production lines as well as the paint shop. He also toured the company's employee learning academies.

VWSA has invested more then R5 billion in plant and facilities over the last few years.

2 000 jobs during the training and preparation phase.

During 2011, government and state-owned enterprises supported key strategic projects in the province, which included the Umthombo PetroSA Project in the Coega IDZ, Emalahleni Coal in Lady Frere, Langa Solar PV Park in Berlin, East London, and the Gehrlicher-Ikhwezi Pilot PV Park in the East London IDZ.

Unemployment started to decrease from 30% in 2009 to 27,2% at the end of 2010. Critical interventions that enabled this decrease include the Expanded Public Works Programme through which 72 339 job opportunities were created by 2011, far above the target of 68 591 jobs. Of these, 28 089 jobs benefited young people, while 28 336 women and 424 people with disabilities benefited.

This was a total of over 180 000 jobs between 2009 and 2010 against the target of 132 786, with the infrastructure and "non-state" being the top two performing sectors.

Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

In May 2011, Manguang, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, became South Africa's newest metropolitan authority. It has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure, and houses the Supreme Court of Appeal.

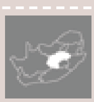
Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba and Bethlehem, the gateway to the eastern highlands of the Free State. The N1, which is the artery between Gauteng and the Western and Eastern Cape, passes through the middle of the Free State.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other key tourist attractions in the province include the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, the Phakisa-Nascar event in Welkom, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, about 100 km south-west of Johannesburg, was voted South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site in 2005.

Free State



Capital: Bloemfontein
Principal languages:

Sesotho	64,4%
Afrikaans	11,9%
isiXhosa	9,1%

Population: 2 759 644
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 5,46%
Area: 129 480 km^2

The people

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*, there were over 2,7 million people in the Free State on about 129 480 km^2 of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km^2 and natural veld and grazing a further 87 000 km^2 of the province.

Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme seeks to support smallholder farmers – both subsistence and commercial – as well as the beneficiaries of land-reform programmes. To this end, the Free State received R102,9 million in 2011 from government

The Free State is a summer rainfall region that can be extremely cold during winter, especially towards the eastern mountainous regions. The western and southern areas are semi-desert.

Known as the "bread basket" of South Africa, about 90% of the province is under cultivation for crop production. It produces about 45% of the country's sunflower crop, 34% of the total maize crop, 37% of wheat, 53% of sorghum, 33% of potatoes, and almost all of its cherries (90%). Red meat and dairy are also important products and game hunting is a fast-growing industry.

Mining

Mining is the Free State's major employer. A gold reef over 400 km long stretches across Gauteng and the Free State. South Africa is the world's largest gold producer, and the country's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km^2.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Free State economy is changing. Where before it was very reliant on primary sectors such as agriculture and mining, it is increasingly growing its manufacturing sector, which now accounts for 14% of the provincial gross domestic product (GDP).

The most important manufacturing subsectors, besides chemicals, are food and beverages, textiles, furniture, agriprocessing, jewellery and engineering products.

Nearly 20% of the province's manufacturing sites are devoted to food and beverages.

In 2011, the Provincial Government announced the establishment of three manufacturing facilities designed to create jobs:

- a tyre-recycling plant in Sasolburg
- a potato-chip plant in Industriqwa in QwaQwa
- a Kraft paper plant in Frankfort.

In 2011, the Free State Development Corporation was active in attracting new investments and signed a memorandum of understanding with the South Africa-Netherlands Chamber of Commerce with the aim of increasing bilateral trade.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent, responsible for over 34,8% of the country's and 10% of the entire continent's GDP. Although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces, Gauteng is Africa's financial-services capital.

Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. South of Johannesburg is Soweto.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and GaRankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville. Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The province houses some of the most important educational and health centres in the country. The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa, known as Unisa, is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg. There are also several teacher-training colleges, technical colleges and universities of technology in the province.

Gauteng is home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg
Principal languages:

isiZulu	21,5%
Afrikaans	14,4%
Sesotho	13,1%
English	12,5%

Population: 11 328 203
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 22,39%
Area: 17 010 km^2

The people

More than 11 million people live in Gauteng. The people of Gauteng have the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

The major gold and diamond mining houses all have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

There are 159 mines – 44 of them gold mines – in Gauteng, that together account for a quarter of South Africa's total mineral production. Most of the mining is for gold – 80% of Gauteng's output.

Although gold mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

Over 60% of South Africa's research and development is done in Gauteng.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Linked to the building of the broadband network infrastructure is a multifaceted information and communications technology (ICT) strategy that the Department of Communications plans to roll out. Key to the strategy is the establishment of a "Gauteng Silicon" to be modelled on Silicon Valley in the United States of America. The Gauteng Silicon will be attached to the Innovation Hub and will drive a structured programme of information technology business incubation; start-up business support; and ICT skills training with a focus on software development, design, and innovation in ICT.

Agriculture and industry

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the JSE Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

Over the next three years, the Gauteng Provincial Government plans to spend R34 billion on infrastructure development to boost the province's industrial activity.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south to the Mozambique boundary in the north.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province has sweeping savanna in the east and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors can enter KwaZulu-Natal through the King Shaka International Airport, at La Mercy, north of Durban. Alternatively, they can use the extensive national road network.

The ports of Durban and Richards Bay are among the busiest in South Africa. Richards Bay is an important coal-export harbour.

The province is also well known for its active conservation activities. There are several reserves in the province such as the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

The province boasts several universities of technology, universities and other educational institutions, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

The people

KwaZulu-Natal has more than 10 million people living on 92 100 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*). The principal language is isiZulu.

Industry and agriculture

Richards Bay is the centre of operations for South Africa's aluminium industry. In 2010, R56,9 million was set aside to help the Richards Bay IDZ fulfil

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:

isiZulu	80,9%
English	13,6%
Afrikaans	1,5%

Population: 10 819 130
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 21,39%
Area: 92 100 km²

its strategic mandate of positioning the town as a preferred investment location with unparallelled opportunities enhanced by its strategic business location. With the Richards Bay IDZ having been granted an operator's permit, it is expected that investors will seize the opportunities it offers.

The Richards Bay Coal Terminal is instrumental in securing the country's position as the world's second-largest exporter of steam coal.

Richards Bay Minerals is the largest sand-mining and mineral-processing operation in the world.

The province has undergone rapid industrialisation owing to its abundant water supply and labour resources.

Industries are also found in Newcastle, Ladysmith, Dundee, Durban, Hammarsdale, Richmond, Pietermaritzburg and Mandeni.

The sugar-cane plantations along the Indian Ocean coastal belt form the mainstay of the region's economy and agriculture.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, and dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions of this province are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate.

The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands between the coastal strip and the southern Drakensberg escarpment is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground.

In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders on Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of interesting towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, with its thick-set baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Other important Limpopo towns include the major mining centres of Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi; and Tzaneen, producer of tea, forestry products and tropical fruits.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown. Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane, where Bapedi tribespeople practise age-old skills for the benefit of visitors; and the

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane
Principal languages:

Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
Tshivenda	15,9%
Xitsonga	2,4%

Population: 5 554 657
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 10,98%
Area: 123 910 km²

Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of The Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 to 1200 AD.

The people

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*, over 5,5 million people live on about 123 910 km^2 of land in Limpopo.

Agriculture

In terms of agriculture, Limpopo could be described as the garden of South Africa, or even that of the whole continent, given its rich fruit and vegetable production. It produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas, and litchis; 60% of its avocados; two thirds of its tomatoes; and 285 000 tons of potatoes. Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton and tobacco. Over 170 plantations produce timber. In addition, cotton, sunflower, maize, wheat cultivation and grapes are produced. Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. The platinum group metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay. Other reserves include antinomy, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means "Place Where the Sun Rises". The province's spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife make it one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

With a surface area of only 79 490 km^2, it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld, which roll eastwards for hundreds of kilometres. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks and terminates in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela (previously Nelspruit) is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni (previously Witbank), Standerton, Piet Retief, Malelane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, generates economic development and growth for the region.

The people

Mpumalanga is home to just over 3,6 million people, according to Stats SA's *Mid-year Population Estimates, 2011*. The principal languages are siSwati and isiZulu.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate.

The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

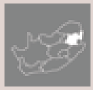
An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's export in oranges.

The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in Mbombela.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus fruit, cotton, tobacco, wheat and veget-

Mpumalanga



Capital: Nelspruit
Principal languages:

siSwati	30,8%
isiZulu	26,4%
isiNdebele	12,1%

Population: 3 657 181
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 7,23%
Area: 79 490 km^2

ables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also produced in this region.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol II and III are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, in particular chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing.

In the Lowveld subregion, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves. The country's major power stations, including the three largest power plants in the southern hemisphere, are situated in this province.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg produces steel and vanadium, while eMalahleni is the biggest coal producer in Africa.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa – slightly bigger than Germany – taking up almost a third of the country's total land area.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape is bounded by the Atlantic Ocean in the west, and Namibia and Botswana to the north-west and north respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border with the Western Cape in the Calvinia district.

Its major airports are Kimberley and Upington. The province has an excellent road network, which makes its interior easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape has been shortlisted as one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array, a giant next-generation radio telescope being developed by scientists from 17 countries.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, namely the:

- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the Nama-Karoo Biome, with low shrubland and grass vegetation, and trees limited to water courses. The area is known worldwide for its spectacular annual explosion of spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists. This biome contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man), tree aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents.

The people

The Northern Cape is sparsely populated and houses almost 1,1 million people on 361 830 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*).

About 68% of the population speaks Afrikaans. Other languages spoken widely in the province are Setswana, isiXhosa and English.

The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area of the Northern Cape. The area, especially along the Orange and Vaal rivers, is rich in fossils and San rock engravings. A good collection can be seen at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of a large part of the Northern Cape, the interior Karoo, depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district of Upington.

The province has fertile agricultural land. In the Orange River Valley, especially at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes, grapes and fruit are cultivated intensively. Wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton are produced at the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley
Principal languages:

Afrikaans	68%
Setswana	20,8%

Population: 1 096 731
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 2,17%
Area: 361 830 km²

Mining

Mining contributes 27,6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by a demand for steel from China. Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela (previously known as South Sishen). New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen volumes and jobs lost. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The Northern Cape also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province" for the wealth of metal it has underground.

Mahikeng (previously Mafeking) is the capital, and best known for the famous siege during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The city lies near the Botswana border and forms a single urban area with its neighbouring town, Mmabatho. Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp are the biggest cities in the province; other main towns are Brits and Rustenburg.

Most economic activity is concentrated in the southern region between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

North West has a number of major tourist attractions, including Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve and the Rustenburg Nature Reserve.

The people

More than 3,2 million people live in the North West. Setswana is spoken by 65,4% of the population.

Mining

Mining contributes 23,3% to the North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South African mining industry as a whole. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. North West also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold, as well as granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of total employment in North West.

Manufacturing

North West aims to achieve the development and growth of a well-coordinated, vibrant, diversified and sustainable economy that will create jobs and eradicate unemployment.

North West's manufacturing sector is centred at the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which account for more than 50% of total manufacturing production in the province.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry, and those at Vryburg and Brits towards agriculture. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, electrical machinery, electronic and audio, and medical equipment are manufactured in the province using local material and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are

North West

Capital: Mahikeng
Principal languages:

Setswana	65,4%
Afrikaans	7,5%
isiXhosa	5,8%

Population: 3 253 390
(*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 6,43%
Area: 116 320 km²

found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the "Texas" of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crops farming land. The province is an important food producer. Maize and sunflowers are the most important crops, with North West as the major producer of white maize in the country.

Western Cape

The Western Cape's natural beauty, complemented by its hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

The Western Cape lies on the southern tip of Africa. The most southern point is not, as some maps suggest, at Cape Point; it is in fact at Cape Agulhas, some 200 km east of Cape Town.

Cape Town houses Parliament and is the country's legislative capital. Visitors to the Western Cape can disembark at Cape Town International Airport, George Airport or at the ports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay or Saldanha. A network of roads also leads to Cape Town, fondly known as the "Mother City".

Covering an area of more than 553 000 ha, the Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprises eight separate protected areas stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The people

More than 5,2 million people live in the Western Cape on 129 370 km^2 of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*). Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, with isiXhosa and English being the other main languages.

Agriculture and marine fisheries

Agriculture brings in 40% of all export revenue and employs 200 000 people in the Western Cape.

The Western Cape is rich in agriculture and fisheries. The sheltered valleys between the mountains provide ideal conditions for the cultivation of top-grade fruits, such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

In the eastern part of the Western Cape, a great variety of vegetables is cultivated. The area around the Cape Peninsula and the Boland, further inland, is a winter-rainfall region with sunny, dry summers.

The Western Cape is known as one of the world's finest grape-growing regions. Many of its wines have received the highest accolades at international shows.

The inland Karoo region (around Beaufort West) and the Overberg district (around Bredasdorp) produce wool and mutton, and pedigree Merino breeding stock.

Other animal products include broiler chickens, eggs, dairy products, beef and pork. The Western Cape is the only province with an outlet for the export of horses. This earns the country millions of rand in foreign revenue.

In addition to meat and fine leatherware, the province is also a leader in the export of ostrich meat to Europe, with its abattoirs turning out R1 billion in export products every year.

The West Coast is considered one of the world's richest fishing grounds and is protected from overfishing by foreign vessels by means of a 200-km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system.

A local environmental and new-energy technology fund, Inspired Evolution, invested R52,5 million in a Western Cape-based abalone farm, Abagold. The Hermanus farm is the country's largest exporter and international competitor in the hatching, rearing, processing and exporting of local abalone.

Industry

The Western Cape economy contributes roughly 14,5% to South Africa's GDP, growing at an average of 3,2% a year. More sophisticated sec-

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town
Principal languages:

Afrikaans	55,3%
isiXhosa	23,7%
English	19,3%

Population:
5 287 863 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*)
Percentage share of the total population: 10,45%
Area: 129 370 km^2

George is South Africa's sixth-oldest town. It was established in the early 1800s as an outpost for woodcutters employed by the Dutch East India Company. The town was proclaimed on 23 April 1811 and it was named after the British Monarch of the time, King George III.

tors such as finance, real estate, ICT, retail and tourism have shown substantial growth, and are the main contributors to the regional economy. The value of residential property has increased significantly.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks are based in the Western Cape. Most of the country's petroleum companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry are found in Cape Town.

After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector. The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

Cape Town remains the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montague Gardens, Parow and Retreat.

Acknowledgements

Original text by Theuns and Heila van Rensburg
Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism of the Western Cape Provincial Government
Labour Force Survey (July 2010), published by Statistics South Africa
Provincial Economies (May 2003), published by the Department of Trade and Industry
Community Survey 2007, published by Statistics South Africa
Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011, published by Statistics South Africa
South African Weather Service

http://cms.privatelabel.co.za
www.capegateway.gov.za
www.cesa.org.za
www.cr/commission.org.za
www.detea.fs.gov.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.freestatebusiness.co.za
www.fs.gov.za
www.gauteng.net
www.gautengonline.gov.za
www.gdace.gpg.gov.za
www.geda.co.za
www.gov.za
www.inw.org.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.limpopo.gov.za
www.mpumalanga.gov.za
www.mpumalangainfotourism.info
www.news24.co.za
www.northerncapebusiness.co.za
www.northern-cape.gov.za
www.nwpg.gov.za
www.pansalb.org.za
www.places.co.za
www.sacc.org.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sa-venues.com
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.theinnovationhub.com
www.thenewage.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.tradeinvestsa.co.za
www.un.org
www.weathersa.co.za
www.yeboweb.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Suggested reading

Bonner, PL and Nieftagodien, N. 2008. *Alexandra: A History*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Brodie, N (ed). 2008. *The Joburg Book*. Northlands: Pan Macmillan South Africa.
Denis, P and Ntsimane, R. 2008. *Oral History in a Wounded Country: Interactive Interviewing in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Forum for Religious Dialogue. Symposium (University of South Africa). 2008. *The Legacy of Stephen Bantu Biko: Theological Challenges*. Du Toit, CW (ed). Pretoria: University of South Africa.
Hewitt, R. 2008. *Structure, Meaning and Ritual in the Narratives of the Southern San*. Second Edition. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Jensen, S. 2008. *Gangs, Politics, and Dignity in Cape Town*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Marindo, R, Groenewald, C and Gaisie, S (eds). 2008. *The State of the Population in the Western Cape Province*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Martin, J. 2008. *A Millimetre of Dust: Visiting Ancestral Sites*. Cape Town: Kwela Books.
Motlhabi, MBG. 2008. *African Theology/Black Theology in South Africa: Looking Back, Moving On*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
Murray, MJ. 2008. *Taming the Disorderly: The Spatial Landscape of Johannesburg after Apartheid*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
Nuttall, S and Mbembe, A (eds). 2008. *Johannesburg: The Elusive Metropolis*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Park, YJ. 2008. *A Matter of Honour: Being Chinese in South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana.
Ward. C. 2009. *Religion and Spirituality in South Africa: New Perspectives*. Scottsville: KwaZulu-Natal Press. South Africa. London: Wayland.

History

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone-Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi(n) and San (the "Hottentots" and "Bushmen" of early European terminology), although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples.

The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and, later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which, generally, are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron-Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "highveld", where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities.

Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope.

Currently, aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoekhoe(n) for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions from the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities.

As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the Xhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east.

It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims. The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns.

One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation.

The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot.

Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms.

The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land.

Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State. There, the principles of racially exclusive citizenship were absolute, despite the trekkers' reliance on black labour.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu state, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indian-indentured labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed. These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader, Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that Africans and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of Africans within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated Africans for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance.

At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become prime minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before.

Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The South African Republic (Transvaal) was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) state, which fell within the republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895. The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, Africans exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to Africans were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of Africans into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying Africans rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Africans could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa", but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs". Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations". This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and later (from 1948) apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war.

In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves for employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used Africans as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war. Most Africans supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for Africans to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for Africans.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The most important priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the Africans back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, African resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of Africans came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants. This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The Africans' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide. The National Convention drew up a constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to Africans' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights. Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent.

An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on African political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion. The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part. A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube, serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed. Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest.

Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by Gandhi in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizen and black non-citizen, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also regularised the job colour bar, reserving skilled work for white people and denying African workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled African mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force Africans into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines. As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force. In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the Africans of the Cape Province who qualified from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves.

The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent. For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The state became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas".

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development", divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence", supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed. Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education to healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour. However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The state's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested.

In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia.

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces.

Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics from the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

As capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973, black trade unions revived.

A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and was drawing new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance.

An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of Africans outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a co-ordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting.

Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the state, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The ANC emerged from the first democratic election in 1994 with a 62% majority. The main opposition came from the NP, which gained 20% of the vote nationally, and a majority in the Western Cape. The Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) received 10% of the vote, mainly in its KwaZulu-Natal base. On 10 May 1994, Nelson Mandela was inaugurated as President of South Africa at the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

The NP and the IFP formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the First Decade of Freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly engage directly with the public around implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Mr Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mr Mandela. It saw a sharp decline of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted the Government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) in June 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the GDS, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the First Decade of Freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces.

South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003.

In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September of that year.

By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in among other countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the First Decade of Freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It played host to several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented on international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development.

As government took stock of the First Decade of Freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights inscribed in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office as President of South Africa – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which were about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the DA 16,6%; the newly formed Congress of the People (COPE) 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to existing government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprises the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system.

Government has adopted 12 outcomes as focus areas for government's work:
- an improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contributions to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

A big part of making the outcomes a reality lies in escalating the extent to which government departments are accountable for their delivery areas. The President has signed performance agreements with all 34 Cabinet ministers. Delivery agreements further unpack each outcome and each output and the requirements to reach the targets. The performance M&E systems that have been put in place continue to be built upon so that the work of government towards achieving these outcomes is consistently tracked.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the Second Decade of Freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

Government spent about R40 billion on infrastructure projects, and billions more on upgrading roads and airports. South Africans continue to benefit from improvements in public transport, security, investment and tourism.

The 2011 local government elections, held in May, were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57,6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23,9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and COPE.

As part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission (NPC) in The Presidency finalised the draft *National Development Plan: Vision for 2030* in 2011. The plan is a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa. By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

Also in 2011, government undertook a 10-year Census designed to assess developments and identify service-delivery needs. Census 2011 was aimed at providing comprehensive information on the population dynamics at all levels of society with the main output being the size, nature, characteristics and geographic location of South Africa's population. More than 14 million households were visited.

The objective of a better life for the people of South Africa, the continent of Africa and the world at large was at the heart of the country's successful hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties in Durban towards the end of 2011. Aware of the fact that Africa is the continent most affected by the impact of climate change, South Africa was committed to ensure that Durban delivered a fair and balanced outcome that would help secure the future of our planet. The resulting Durban Platform outcome was a coup for South Africa and the African continent.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves alongside the permanent five members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal. It was the UNSC President in January 2012, which saw the adoption of Resolution 2033 that provides for closer cooperation between the UN and the AU.

In the conduct of its international relations, South Africa is committed to garner support for its domestic priorities, promote the interests of the African continent, enhance democracy and human rights, uphold justice and international law in relations between nations, seek the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promote economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

Acknowledgements

This chapter has evolved year by year, based on initial text from the Institute for Historical Research, University of the Western Cape.

Suggested reading

Brenner, J, Burroughs, E and Nel, K. 2011. *Life of Bone: Art Meets Science*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Calland, R, Naidoo, L and Whaley, A. 2010. *The Vuvuzela Revolution*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

Cherry, J. 2011. *Umkhonto we Sizwe*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Clarke, RJ and Partridge, TC. 2010. *Caves of the Ape-Men: South Africa's Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

De Jongh, M. 2011 (2012). *Roots and Routes: Karretjie People of the Great Karoo. The Marginalisation of a South African First People*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Hamilton, C, Mbenga, BK and Ross, R (eds). 2010. *The Cambridge History of South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Hughes, H. 2011. *First President: A Life of John Dube*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Limb, P. 2010. *The ANC's Early Years: Nation, Class and Place in South Africa before 1940*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Ruiters, G (ed). 2011. *The Fate of the Eastern Cape: History, Politics and Social Policy.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

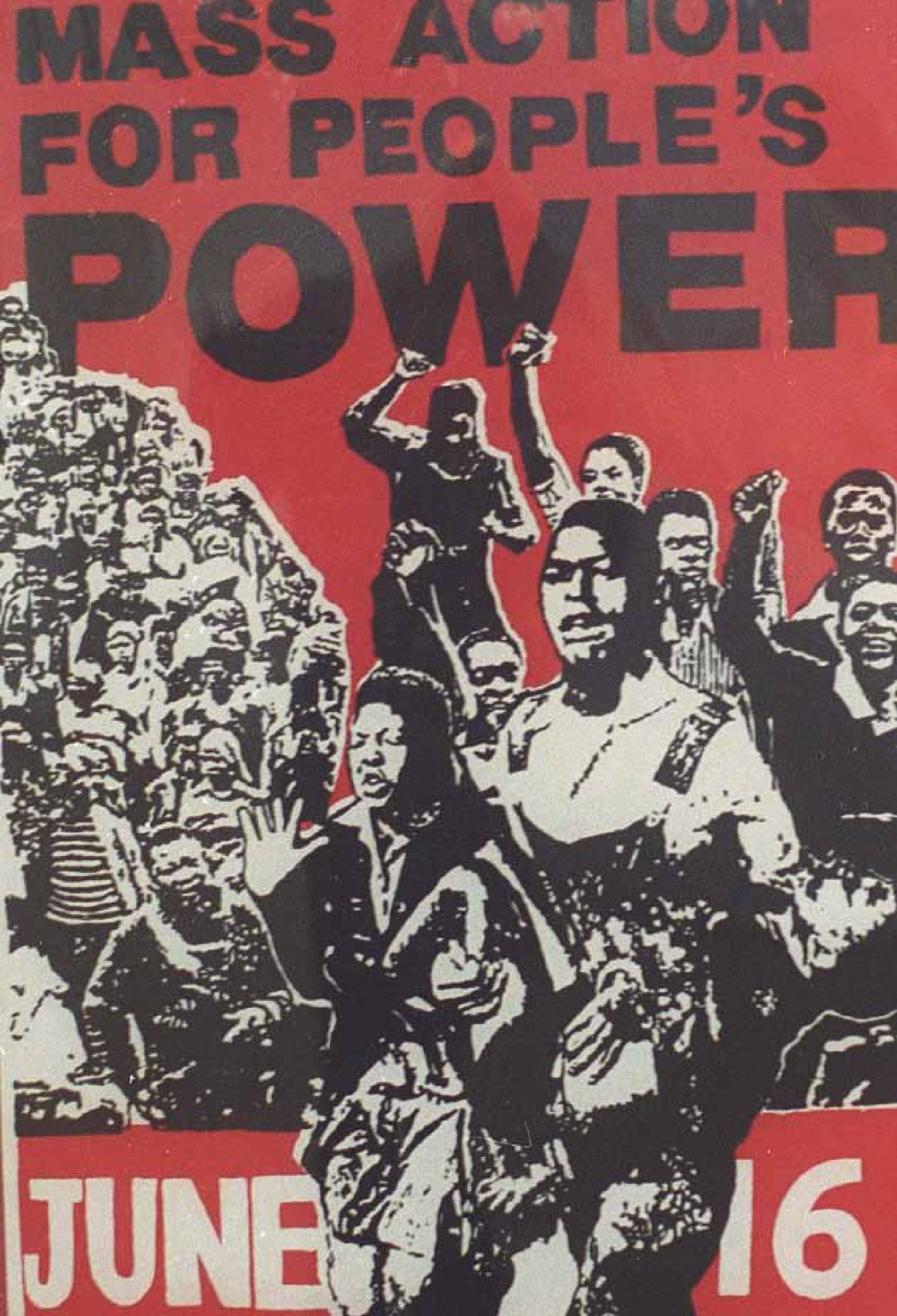
Shearer, J. 2011. *Against the World: South Africa and Human Rights at the United Nations 1945 – 1961*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Shillington, K. 2011. *Luka Jantjie: Resistance Hero of the South African Frontier*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

To Serve and Protect: The Inkathagate Scandal. 2010. As told to Laurence Piper by Brian Morrow. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Wilson, L. 2011. *Steve Biko*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Wright, J and Mazel, A. 2011. *Umlando we Zintaba zoKhahlamba = History of the uKhahlamba Mountains*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.


MASS ACTION
FOR PEOPLE'S
POWER
JUNE 16

Agriculture, forestry and fisheries

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

South Africa's dual agricultural economy comprises a well-developed commercial sector and a predominantly subsistence-oriented sector in the rural areas.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries aims to lead, support and promote agricultural, forestry and fisheries resources management through policies, strategies and programmes to enhance their sustainable use, and to achieve economic growth, job creation, food security, rural development and transformation.

Legislation

In September 2011, Cabinet approved the publication of the Plant Breeders' Rights Amendment Bill, 2011 for public comment. The Bill aims to strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights related to new plant varieties.

In the same month, Cabinet approved the submission of the Fertilisers and Feed Bill, 2011 to Parliament. The Bill seeks to modernise the regulation and regulatory framework of fertilisers, animal feeds (farm feeds) and sterilising plants to support animal welfare, food safety, food security and environmental management objectives.

Cabinet also approved the amendment of the Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act, 1982 (Act 19 of 1982), through the Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Amendment Bill, 2011. The Bill caters for, among other things, the performance of compulsory community service by newly qualified veterinarians.

Agricultural economy

About 8,5 million people depend directly or indirectly on agriculture for their employment and income.

Guided by government's New Growth Path (NGP), the agricultural sector has been identified as one of the sectors that has significant potential to create jobs. The NGP targets job opportunities for 300 000 households in agriculture smallholder schemes and a further 145 000 jobs in agro-processing, which in turn will have the potential to upgrade conditions for 660 000 farm workers by 2020.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is committed to creating 130 000 jobs in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors by 2014.

In addition, it aims to establish 50 000 commercially orientated smallholder farmers, focusing on former homelands, where there is a large concentration of subsistence producers, including supporting smallholders on land acquired through land reform in partnership with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

The total contribution of agriculture to the economy increased from R33 billion in 2003 to R69 billion in 2010.

About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation. These comprise about 1,5% of South Africa's agricultural land.

The most important factor limiting agricultural production is the availability of water. Rainfall is distributed unevenly across the country. Almost 50% of South Africa's water is used for agricultural purposes.

The country can be subdivided into a number of farming regions according to climate, natural vegetation, soil type and the type of farming practised. Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming in winter-rainfall and high summer-rainfall areas, to cattle ranching in the bushveld and sheep farming in the more arid regions. Owing to its geographical location, some parts of South Africa are prone to drought.

Primary commercial agriculture contributes about 3% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 7% to formal employment. However, there are strong backward and forward linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector is estimated to contribute about 12% to GDP.

Despite the farming industry's declining share of GDP, it remains vital to the economy and the development and stability of the southern African region.

The estimated value of imports in 2010 was R34,6 billion, while exports totalled R46,1 billion.

Sustainable resource management and use

South Africa is able to meet its own food requirements. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and the Agricultural Research Council's (ARC) Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The *National Land Type Survey*, available for use at a

The South African Veterinary Association hosted the World Veterinary Congress in Cape Town, from 10 to 14 October 2011. The congress was the culmination of the 250th anniversary of the veterinary profession in South Africa.

1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision-making at national level.

All available natural-resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the Internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis).

Using interactive Web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fires Information System tracks all fire outbreaks in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region, through the use of Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer Satellite Imagery. This information can be viewed at *afis.meraka.org.za.*

Soil degradation

Although it is generally recognised that soil degradation is a problem, little reliable data has been collected systematically over time. Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in soil organic matter.

Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-to-no fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

In 2011, the results of a study done as part of the Land Degradation in Dryland Areas Project were released. The project's aim is to determine areas subjected to land degradation for further verification and analysis to determine the state of degradation.

It is calculated that 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) of land have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as very low to low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dry land and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils prone to serious crusting (surface sealing).

Gross value of agricultural production, 2010 (million)

Field crops	
Maize	13 522
Wheat	3 191
Hay	3 116
Grain sorghum	314
Sugar cane	4 825
Groundnuts	453
Tobacco	346
Sunflower seed	1 504
Soya beans	1 431
Other	1 353
Total	**30 055**
Horticulture	
Viticulture	3 474
Citrus fruit	6 455
Subtropical fruit	2 088
Deciduous and other fruit	8 757
Vegetables	7 802
Potatoes	4 775
Other	2 172
Total	**35 523**
Animal products	
Wool	1 424
Poultry and poultry products	29 598
Cattle and cattle products	15 203
Sheep and goats slaughtered	3 677
Pigs slaughtered	2 924
Milk	9 253
Other	3 442
Total	**65 521**
Grand total	**131 099**

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

In September 2011, South Africa hosted the African Ministerial Conference on Agriculture. The conference intended to share experiences and develop a common understanding of climate-smart agriculture.

The extent thereof and awareness of it have increased sharply over the last two decades. Switching to overhead and microregulation systems and the widespread effects these have on crusting-prone soils has contributed to the problem.

Human-induced soil acidification is also a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. More than five million ha of cultivated land have already been seriously acidified, mainly due to injudicious fertiliser practices and inadequate lime applications. In the high-potential areas of Mpumalanga, opencast and strip-coal mining also cause soil acidification.

Soil-fertility degradation is a concern. In commercial agriculture, there has been "nutrient capital-building" of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

South Africa does not have ideal conditions for crop production. Serious climatic constraints, such as periodic droughts, limit agricultural production. Genetic modification (GM) provides a way of meeting the growing demand for food without placing even greater pressure on scarce resources.

A great deal has happened in this field since the proclamation of the GMO Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997). The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences. As such, it is recognised as being both comprehensive and well balanced.

The GMO Act, 1997, which was implemented in December 1999, provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, and states that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity. In terms of the Act, permits are issued for a specific GMO activity, such as trials for commercial release in the country. The permits may also specify conditions under which a particular activity with GMOs should take place.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The latest approval of GM crops for commercial use was in 2007, for GM maize that is resistant to certain insect species and herbicide-tolerant; and also for GM cotton that has an improved mechanism to enable herbicide tolerance.

Since the adoption of "biotech" crops in 1996, the areas planted with GM maize, soya beans and cotton in South Africa have increased to about 2,2 million ha. In 2010, white GM maize plantings totalled 1,139 million ha, representing a market share of about 80,3%; yellow maize plantings totalled 759 000 ha, representing 79,6% of the total yellow maize crop; GM soya bean plantings increased to 332 000 ha, representing 79,4% of the total soya bean crop; and GM cotton plantings totalled 12 925 ha, representing 98% of the total cotton crop.

In August 2011, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries invited stakeholders' comments on the draft National Policy on Organic Production.

Water use

Irrigated agriculture is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. It contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

Irrigation is an important factor in the South African economy. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has embarked on a process to rehabilitate the irrigation schemes that have the potential to increase food production, eradicate poverty, create jobs and contribute to economic growth. About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine are produced under irrigation. The department has identified the revitalisation of irrigation schemes and development as a priority area. This will be achieved by:

- increasing the water-use efficiency of irrigation systems and future irrigated land
- revitalising underused irrigation schemes/areas based on a sustainable and area-wide planning approach
- promoting mini-scale irrigated agriculture for household and community-level food security through efficient irrigation technologies

- identifying and developing new commercial irrigation areas in cooperation with the departments of water and of environmental affairs.

Production

The total gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2010 was estimated at R131 099 million, compared to R131 161 million the previous year – representing a decrease of 0,5%.

The gross value of animal products, field crops and horticultural products contributed 50%, 27,1% and 22,9% respectively to the total gross value of agricultural production.

The poultry-meat industry made the largest contribution with 17,5%, followed by cattle and calves slaughtered (11,6%) and maize (10,3%).

Prices

Producer prices of agricultural products decreased on average by 1,7% from 2009 to 2010. The weighted average price of field crops dropped by 6,2%. This was mainly the result of lower prices received for summer grains, dry beans and cotton. However, prices of vegetables, fruit and viticultural products increased by 42,3%, 6,8% and 1,8% respectively.

Summer grains, dry beans and hay decreased by 18,6%, 8,9% and 1,4% respectively. Prices of sugar cane, tobacco, oilseeds and winter grains increased by 15,1%, 10,9%, 3,6% and 1,4% respectively.

The weighted average price of animal products was 0,2% lower in 2010 than in 2009. Prices received for poultry and dairy products decreased by 4,1% and 1,5% respectively, while the average price of pastoral products and slaughtered stock increased by 21,6% and 4,1% respectively.

Demand for meat remained strong and meat prices increased between 8% and 15%. Whereas lamb prices are expected to rise constantly over the 2012 to 2013 period, beef, pork and chicken prices are expected to follow the typical cyclical trend that is largely influenced by feed prices.

The prices of milk and most dairy products decreased in 2010 due to the surplus production of raw milk in 2009 and a slump in international dairy prices. Over the long term, the use of milk is still projected to remain above its production, which implies that South Africa will remain a net importer of dairy products.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses, plus the value of changes in inventories) for the year ended 31 December 2010 amounted to R128 587 million, compared with R129 071 million in 2009 – a decrease of 0,4%.

Gross income from field crops decreased by 14,1%, from R32 168 million in 2009 to R27 617 million in 2010. This was mainly a result of decreased income from maize, wheat and sunflower seed by 18,1%, 45,1%, and 36,7% respectively. These decreases were the result of both a drop in production and lower prices received by farmers.

Gross income from horticultural products increased by 4,4% to R35 449 million in 2010. Income from vegetables decreased by 11,1% or R135 million, from R12 712 million to R12 577 million in 2010.

Income from potatoes, which contributed 38% to the gross income from vegetables, decreased by 9,5%, from R5 217 million in 2009 to R4 775 million in 2010. Income from deciduous and other summer fruit decreased by 2,1%, from R8 943 million to R8 757 million. Income from citrus fruit increased by 40,4%, from R4 598 million to R6 455 million. Income from subtropical fruit increased by 1,8% or R38 million, and amounted to R2 088 million.

Gross income from animal products was 4,1% higher in 2010 than in 2009 and amounted to R65 521 million, compared to R62 957 million. Red-meat producers earned R15 203 million from slaughtered cattle and calves – representing an increase of 17,6% compared with R12 931 million in 2009. The price that farmers received for beef rose on average by 3,1%, while the number of cattle slaughtered dropped slightly. Income from slaughtered sheep rose by 10,9%, from R3 220 million to R3 571 million. Income from poultry-meat production decreased by 1,1%, from R23 200 million to R22 940 million. Income from milk increased by 0,5%, from R9 204 million in 2009 to R9 253 million in 2010. Income from wool also increased by 4%, from R1 287 million to R1 424 million.

Net farm income (after the deduction of all production expenditures, excluding expenditure on fixed assets and capital goods) amounted to R34 233 million for the 12 months to 31 December 2010, which was 15,4% less than the R40 486 million of the previous 12 months.

Payments for salaries and wages, which represented 13% of total farming costs, increased by 4%, from R11 789 million to R12 261 million. Interest paid by farmers to banks and other financiers was about R5 129 million, or 5,6% of total farming cost, compared to R5 053 million paid in 2009 – showing an increase of 1,5%.

Overall vegetable production in the 2010 season reached 2 451 975 t, up 4,1% from the previous season, when 2 355 798 t were harvested.

However, despite the growth in production, vegetable consumption decreased in 2010 to 42,5 kg per capita per year (-6,3%).

Field crops and horticulture

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflower seed. The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one. According to the *Economic Review of South African Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops decreased by 14,1% to R27 617 million for the year ended 31 December 2009.

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the SADC for animal and human consumption. South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with production averaging about 9,7 million tons (Mt) a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that over 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the majority of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are responsible for the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 13,4 Mt of maize were produced in 2009/10 on 3,3 million ha of land (non-commercial agriculture included).

Wheat

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2010, 1,52 Mt were produced on 558 000 ha of land.

Malting barley

Malting barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 83 000 ha in 2010, and production totalled 218 418 t.

Production of important field crops and horticulture products, 2010 ('000 t)

Maize	13 431
Wheat	1 967
Sugar cane	16 866
Grain sorghum	226
Soya beans	566
Sunflower seed	509
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 826
Citrus fruit	2 167
Subtropical fruit	670
Vegetables	2 506
Potatoes	2 089

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape. An area of 54 550 ha was planted in 2009/10, producing 100 000 t.

Sunflower seed

South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed, which is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo. An area of 397 700 ha was planted in 2009/10, producing 509 000 t.

Sorghum

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer-rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West. In 2009/10, an estimated 87 000 ha were planted, with production totalling 196 500 t.

Soya beans

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. For the 2010 production season, soya beans were planted on 311 450 ha, with production totalling 566 000 t.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop that is grown mainly in the Western Cape. However, since the 2001 production season, smaller quantities have also been planted in North West and Limpopo. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans. For the 2010 production season, the canola crop was estimated at 39 650 t on an area of 34 820 ha.

Dry beans

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape produce small quantities of this crop. Local demand is substantially higher than local production and therefore large quantities of dry beans are imported each year. In 2010, 57 000 t of dry beans were produced on 44 000 ha of land.

Sugar

The South African sugar industry is one of the world's leading cost-competitive producers of high-quality sugar. It is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, and a range of by-products.

The cane-growing sector comprises approximately 35 300 registered sugar-cane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and some farming operations in the Eastern Cape. Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.

The industry produces an estimated average of 2,2 Mt of sugar per season. About 60% of this sugar is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu). The remainder is exported to markets in Africa, Asia and the Middle East.

Deciduous fruit

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Long Kloof Valley of the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. In 2010, South Africa produced 656 884 t of subtropical fruit, which were 642 t more than in 2009.

Wine

The 2011 overall wine grape crop size was estimated at 1 279 017 t according to the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems.

This was 1,4% more than the 2010 crop. With the exception of the Orange River, Breede Kloof and Worcester, all nine cultivation districts were expected to have bigger crops.

The 2011 crop – including juice and concentrate for non-alcoholic purposes, and wine for brandy and distilling wine – was expected to amount to 992,5 million litres, calculated at an average recovery of 776 litres per ton of grapes. This was 1% more than the 2010 wine crop.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks as the world's second-largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume behind Spain, and is ranked 14th in world citrus production. Despite increased competition in global markets, the country's citrus production is growing.

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha). Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced, mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Potatoes

The Northern Cape is one of the six largest seed-potato production areas in South Africa. North West has also started producing seed potatoes. In KwaZulu-Natal, seed-potato production centres on the Midlands. Some seed is also produced in the north, near Louwsburg, a traditionally virus-free area.

Nearly two thirds of the country's total potato crops are produced under irrigation.

Of the total crop, 50% is delivered to fresh produce markets and 19% is processed. The South African potato-processing industry has shown tremendous growth over the past five years, primarily in the crisps, chips and French fries sectors. Frozen French fries comprise 41% of all processed potato products in South Africa.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing about 39% to total income derived from vegetables. This is almost equal to the

40% derived collectively from tomatoes, onions, green mealies and sweet corn. In 2010, the gross value of potatoes was R5 155 176. During 2010, 2 072 000 t of potatoes were produced.

Tomatoes

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middelveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape.

In 2010, 571 000 t of tomatoes were produced. During the same year, the gross value of tomatoes was R1 555 089.

Limpopo is the main tomato-growing area in South Africa. The main production areas are Letaba (3 259 ha) around Mooketsi, and Musina (859 ha). Tomatoes are also planted in smaller areas in the Giyani, Polokwane and Mokopane districts. Total Limpopo annual production is approximately 227 990 t.

Onions

Onions are grown in Mpumalanga; in the districts of Caledon, Ceres and Worcester in the Western Cape; in Venterstad; and in the southern Free State. Onions are produced in all areas of Limpopo, with the main production areas being the Polokwane and Mokopane districts. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 7 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year. During 2010, the gross value of onions was R1 210 635. In 2010, 518 062 t of onions were produced.

Cabbage

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but are concentrated in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. South African cabbage production decreased in 2010 to 141 000 t. This decrease confirms the downward trend shown by cabbage production in the country since the 2004/05 season. During 2010, the gross value of cabbage and red cabbage production totalled R161 768. In 2010, 148 867 t of cabbages were produced.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, the Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa. Cotton is grown under irrigation as well as in dry-land conditions. Some 5 981 ha are dedicated to cotton production, with 71% under irrigation.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 80% to total production, with the number of hectares cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush tea grows in the wetter Eastern Cape mountains and spreads down along the Langeberg and Swartberg mountains into the Western Cape towards the coast as far as Bredasdorp. It is estimated that there are approximately 30 000 ha of mountainous land, including the Tsitsikamma, Kouga, Baviaans, Langeberg and Swartberg mountain ranges, where wild honeybush grows sporadically within the greater Fynbos Biome (8 524 000 ha).

There are approximately 230 ha of honeybush tea under cultivation. The tea is harvested from the natural mountainous veld and processed at on-farm processing facilities.

The honeybush industry has the potential to grow from an annual average of 150 t of processed tea to 1 500 t by 2021 and increase turnover from R10 million to R100 million. Local and international demand exceeds supply. Only 30% of honeybush tea is cultivated by less than 10 farmers, and the rest (70%) is wild harvested.

Rooibos tea is indigenous to the Cederberg area of the Western Cape, which is some 200 km north of Cape Town. Although this area remains the main centre, production has expanded to other regions. Rooibos tea is not produced anywhere else in the world and efforts to keep it this way are ongoing. In 2010, approximately 18 000 t of rooibos tea were produced.

In 2011, the South African Rooibos Council participated in an international project to improve the export competitiveness of rooibos. It was a combined effort by the council and the International Trade Centre – a joint agency of the World Trade Organisation and the United Nations (UN). Funding for the project is provided by the Netherlands.

Floriculture

The South African floriculture industry has the potential to develop into a significant international player. The total floriculture industry employs some 17 500 people. In terms of products and markets, there is a strong demand for South African floriculture worldwide. In particular, Germany, the United Kingdom, Japan and the Netherlands represent the greatest opportunities in the short term.

South Africa's indigenous flowers such as gladioli, nerines, freesias and gerberas, have undergone many years of extensive research in Europe, and have become major crops worldwide.

South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut-flowers, which account for more than half of the proteas sold on the world market. South African proteas and so-called Cape greens (fynbos) are marketed in Europe. Production occurs mainly in the Western Cape.

Indigenous food crops

Indigenous food crops refer to crops that have their origin in South Africa or Africa. Added to these are those that were introduced into the country or in Africa long ago and are now recognised as naturalised or traditional crops. They are produced and found growing in the country under various climatic conditions with many found in the wild. Crops are divided into three categories, namely grains, vegetables and fruits.

Grain crops can be further subdivided into cereals and pulses such as millet, cowpea, sorghum, bambara groundnut, mung bean and marama bean.

The vegetables have three subdivisions, namely leafy, tuber and roots and they include cassava, amadumbe, Zulu round potato, Livingstone potato, cleome, amaranth, Jews mallow, night shade, black jack and African kale. Examples of indigenous fruits are marula, kei apple, num-num, wild medlar, wild plum, red milkwood, raisin bush and African mangosteen.

The identification of producers and processors of indigenous crops is underway in selected provinces. The aim is to identify key issues and challenges associated with production and processing and how they can be addressed. By April 2011, 16 projects had been identified in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. Of these, seven are processing marula, wild medlar, tsamma melon, mobola plum and moringa tree into various products (jam, jelly, juice, achar, salad dressing, powder and chutney) while nine are producing cowpea, bambara groundnut, mung bean, cassava and amadumbe.

Organic agriculture

Organic farming respects the environment's own systems for controlling pests and diseases in raising crops, and avoids the use of synthetic pesticides, herbicides and chemical fertilisers. Instead, organic farmers use a range of techniques that help sustain ecosystems and reduce pollution. According to estimates, there are some 250 farms on 45 000 ha of certified land in South Africa.

South African organic farmers grow a large variety of produce. These include various cereals, vegetables, roots and tubers, herbs and spices, fruit, nuts and rooibos tea. The largest fruit crops, in terms of hectares, are bananas, avocados and mangoes, while the largest vegetable crops are cucurbits, tomatoes, asparagus, brassicas and potatoes. Organic wine and olive oil are also produced and organic dairy farming is in its early stages in some provinces.

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is suitable for extensive livestock farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions.

Stockbreeders concentrate on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions.

The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output in terms of value. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe. The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector.

National Livestock Development Strategy (NLDS)

The NLDS aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

Implementation includes establishing sector working groups, mobilising rural stock owners and keepers towards economic production, and supporting systems for the conservation of veld and livestock resources through sustainable use.

Dairy farming

Milk production in South Africa contributes approximately 0,5% to the world's milk production. There are four major dairy breeds in South Africa, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products. These activities involve the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, cheese and its by-products, namely whey, milk powder, sweetened and unsweetened concentrated milk, butter and butter oil (ghee).

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with over 4 000 milk producers employing 60 000 farm workers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain such as milk processing.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The amount of beef produced depends on infrastructure such as feedlots and abattoirs, and not necessarily on the number of cattle available in those areas. South Africa has highly developed transport infrastructure that allows movement of cattle from one area to another, even from other countries, for example Namibia.

Mpumalanga commands the greatest share of beef production in South Africa, accounting for 23% of the beef produced in 2009, followed with the Free State and Gauteng, taking up 20% and 13% respectively. Commercial farmers own 60% of the 14,1 million cattle available in South Africa. The Brahman, indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni, Tuli, Boron, and the locally developed Bonsmara, Drakensberger, Simbra, Beefmaster and Braford are popular beef breeds.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

Sheep farming is concentrated mainly in the arid and extensive grazing areas of the country. In 2011, most of the estimated 28,8 million sheep in South Africa were found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga. Most sheep are woolled or dual-purpose sheep.

There are approximately 8 000 commercial sheep farms and about 5 800 communal farmers.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head in South Africa is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, of which the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, the Afrino and Letelle are the most popular. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton income. These breeds have better body conformation than the Merino, but produce slightly less wool per kilogram of body weight.

Average Merino fleece weights vary from 4 kg to 5 kg a year in the semi-arid regions, and up to 8 kg a year from sheep grazing on cultivated pastures.

Mutton sheep are found mostly in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape.

The most popular mutton breed is the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found.

A large proportion of the goats in South Africa occur in communal grazing areas. The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (37%), followed by Limpopo (21%).

The indigenous meat-producing boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about a million goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilogram accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Poultry and pig farming

The South African pork industry is relatively large in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes about 2,15% to the primary agricultural sector. The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price received by farmers. The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices since the industry is characterised by volatile prices. The average gross value of pork over the past 10 years amounted to R1 592 million.

The predominant pig breeds are the South African Landrace, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain. Some 2,5 million pigs were slaughtered between July 2009 and June 2010.

Broiler production, especially broiler meat production, was the largest segment of South African agriculture at 24% in 2009 while all animal products in South Africa contributed 48%. The farm income from broiler meat for 2009 was R23 165 billion.

Game ranching

The National Game-Farming Working Group consists of all relevant stakeholders in the game-farming industry to ensure that all parties concerned are represented and participate fully.

Game ranching in South Africa is one of the fastest-growing sectors of the agricultural industry.

Since the 1970s, there has been a huge shift from cattle farming to game ranching. Provided they observe approved game-fencing rules, registered game ranches have permission to hunt throughout the year.

There are approximately 15 000 farms in South Africa on which game freely occur. On about 8 000 game-fenced ranches, some form of income-generating commercial game ranching is practised, earning some R767 million.

The total surface area on which game is kept in South Africa amounts to more than 21 million ha of which 15 million ha of this land under wildlife are in the hands of the private sector, with the rest belonging to government institutions such as national parks and nature reserves.

Approximately 200 000 local hunters use game on game ranches and conservation areas and earn a further income of approximately R113 million annually from an estimated 5 000 foreign trophy hunters.

The total local market in live game trade is estimated at R100 million annually. Marketing of venison in South Africa is estimated at R20 million annually, but a large potential for growth is envisaged, also for venison exports.

The game industry generates about R1 073 million annually, which amounts to 2,3% of the South African agricultural sector's contribution to the country's GDP.

Game ranches in South Africa supply work for approximately 56 000 people, paying salaries of about R410 million annually.

In terms of game ranching, game is considered to be an agricultural product as defined in the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996).

The Directorate: Animal Production of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has, as its primary objective, the sustainable management, use and ecological protection of range and forage resources, as used by both livestock- and wildlife (game)-production systems, across provincial boundaries.

The National Game-Farming Policy aims to:

- support the effective management of viable game-farming systems
- ensure the sustainable management of natural resources
- facilitate the development of norms and standards for sustainable game farming
- promote and support equitable access to health management
- establish a national game-farm and animal database
- facilitate promotion and marketing
- deal with relevant food-safety issues
- promote research, training and support services.

Beekeeping

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people. In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

Veterinary services

The State Veterinary Services constantly guards against the introduction of animal diseases from outside South Africa. Existing animal diseases, which may be detrimental to South Africa's economy and to human and animal health, are also monitored, controlled and combated.

Livestock in the high-risk areas are inspected at frequent intervals.

Legislation provides the necessary powers to control diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease (FMD), swine fever, rabies and anthrax. South Africa, excluding the Kruger National Park and surrounding game reserves, is recognised as an FMD-free zone by the *Office International des Épizooties* (OIE).

Animal-disease control is an important factor in ensuring the productivity of the livestock sector and in promoting international trade in agricultural products.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

OBP is a state-owned public company established in terms of the OBP Act, 1999 (Act 10 of 1999), with the capacity and technology to produce veterinary vaccines and related biological products for local and international markets. OBP is the sole or main producer of a number of vaccines against animal tropical diseases with the potential to cause serious economic disasters.

The last few years have seen OBP participating in projects to alleviate poverty and improve human health by providing millions of doses of vaccines against zoonotic diseases such as Rift Valley fever.

OBP contributes expert advice and vaccines to control other transboundary animal diseases such as contagious bovine pleural pneumonia, lumpy-skin disease, African horse sickness and anthrax, which affect most African countries.

Over the years, OBP has been participating actively in workshops and conferences arranged by organisations such as the Pan-African Vaccine Network, World Organisation for Animal Health, SADC and the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) of the UN to share and gain technology in improving its services.

Through collaboration with the FAO and the European Union, OBP has also been involved in projects to provide both technical support and vaccines to countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Zimbabwe, Lesotho and Angola.

OBP interacts with both national and international research and academic institutions to introduce new, improved and affordable products.

Animal identification

The Animal Identification Act (Aida), 2002 (Act 6 of 2002), administered by the Directorate: Veterinary Services in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, regulates the registration of unique markings for all declared animal species.

Under the Act, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the South African Police Service through the State Information Technology Agency to help it trace the ownership of individual animals to their owners.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

The directorate is also transferring knowledge to rural communities in consultation with the provincial departments of agriculture on various themes such as the Aida, 2002; animal management; preserving fodder; feeding animals; preventative activities; first aid to injured animals; marketing/harvesting of animals and their products; hygienic handling of meat; and milk handling.

The Epidemiology Section is responsible for monitoring animal diseases in the country for both disease-control purposes and as an early warning system.

Regulation services

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

South Africa liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

Migratory pests

In terms of the Agricultural Pest Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is obliged to control the registered national pests, namely red-billed quelea, locust and blackfly. These are migratory pests and individual farmers cannot be expected to control these to prevent damage in areas away from their own farms.

The ARC provides research support to the department to optimise control procedures in terms of efficacy, cost and environmental considerations. An international communication network has been established with neighbouring countries concerning migratory pest control.

By providing early warning information on cross-border invasions of migratory pests, such as army worm, locust and red-billed quelea, the Information Core for Southern African Migrant Pests enhances the forecasting efficiency of control organisations, thereby assisting national crop-protection agencies to ensure food security.

Marketing

The Directorate: Marketing of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries works closely with the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC) on agricultural marketing matters.

The directorate develops, promotes and facilitates the implementation of programmes and

The introduction of presidential outcomes and the signing of performance agreements by ministers and premiers have highlighted the need to align efforts to ensure that the agenda of a better life for all is fulfilled.

In line with this approach, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Ms Tina Joemat-Pettersson, signed a performance agreement with President Jacob Zuma, which focuses on Outcome 7 (vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all) and Outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources). Each of these has a set of related outputs, for which the department has determined annual targets.

measures aimed at supporting equitable access to competitive and profitable agricultural markets on a sustainable basis. This broad mandate is achieved by:

- administering market-access measures in the form of issuing trade permits (import and export permits)
- facilitating fair, open, efficient and competitive domestic markets
- developing policies and strategies aimed at enhancing market access, and facilitating the implementation of programmes and measures to promote equitable access to mainstream markets
- liaising with other government departments and relevant parties to enhance the efficiency of the agricultural marketing value chains.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

The NAMC was established in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996. The council provides the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries with strategic advice on all agricultural marketing issues to improve market efficiency and access for all participants, optimise export earnings and improve the viability of the agricultural sector.

The council has developed an economic and market research programme that tracks economic trends and provides market information aimed at improving South Africa's position in future global agricultural markets.

The NAMC's Food Price Monitoring initiative is a continuation of the Food Price Monitoring Project, which assists government in understanding the impact of high food-price inflation on the poor.

Agricultural land administration

In terms of the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 (Act 70 of 1970), the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for regulating the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture.

The core functions of the department in terms of the Act are to:

- protect agricultural land (high-potential and unique agricultural land) through the administration of the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 to enhance the sustainable management of natural resources for food security
- regulate the subdivision of agricultural land into non-viable units/portions and change in land use
- promote sustainable land-use planning.

The Subdirectorate: Subdivision of Agricultural Land Administration is responsible for the processing and approval of the following types of applications in terms of the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act,1970:

- subdivision of agricultural land
- coupling and consolidation
- registration of undivided shares
- registration of servitudes, of usufructs, share block schemes/sectional title schemes
- township establishment
- applicability
- long-term leases.

Resource Audit

In terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Cara), 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for providing control over the conservation and sustainable use of natural agricultural resources.

The objectives of the Act are to provide for the conservation of South Africa's natural agricultural resources by maintaining the production potential of land, combating and preventing erosion and weakening or destruction of water sources, protecting the vegetation and combating weeds and invader plants.

The prescribed control measures place a duty of care on all users of agricultural land to conduct farming activities that promote the objectives of the Act.

Land settlement

The overall goal of the Directorate: Land Settlement is to provide support to farmers through land-reform programmes, with the intention of developing viable and sustainable agricultural ventures.

The directorate develops and provides guidelines for the implementation of policies and programmes supporting land- and agrarian-reform beneficiaries. It also facilitates the implementation of land- and agrarian-reform projects and promotes sustainable agriculture for improved livelihoods. Furthermore, the directorate facilitates the effective administration and disposal of state agricultural land.

The directorate ensures farmer support by developing policies such as the Farmer-to-Farmer Mentorship Policy, and implementing programmes such as the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (Casp) and the Land Reform Revitalisation Programme.

In 2010/11, over 5 000 jobs were created as a result of Casp's support interventions, including programmes on state land managed by the department.

In pursuit of Outcome 7, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries aims to increase its support to new and existing smallholder farmers, working in close collaboration with the provinces to achieve its targets.

In the 2011/12 financial year, 15 000 smallholder farmers were targeted, including support provided to small-scale foresters and fishers.

A grant of over R1 billion was allocated to the nine provinces. By June 2011, the provinces had received the initial 10% of their allocation, which was followed by a further 20% in the next month, and the remaining allocations in October 2011 and January 2012.

Casp has been reprioritised to respond timeously to the demands of the Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP). The LARP is aimed at accelerating and aligning land and agrarian reform in South Africa.

The LARP focuses on the following objectives:

- redistributing five million ha of white-owned agricultural land to 10 000 new agricultural producers
- increasing black entrepreneurs in the agribusiness industry by 10%
- providing universal access to agricultural support services among the target groups
- increasing the target groups' agricultural production by 10% to 15% under the Ilima/Letsema Campaign
- increasing agricultural trade by 10% to 15% for the target groups.

The LARP is a joint project of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform; the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries; provincial departments of agriculture; agricultural state-owned enterprises; and sector partners.

Ilima/Letsema Campaign

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries encourages household food production through backyard gardens and programmes such as the Household Food Security and Ilima/Letsema Campaign, whose main objective is to motivate communities to plough, plant and produce their own food.

The Ilima/Letsema Campaign continues to elevate agricultural activities; realise the LARP; and function as a mechanism of collaboration towards food security and a developmental platform for local and indigenous resources that will help to continue the fight against high food prices.

This campaign also distributes agricultural starter-packs to poor households and supports small-scale farmers.

A budget of R400 million was earmarked in 2011/12 for this programme.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP) aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The IFSNP recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted, and which prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the UN World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

Food security at household level had been negatively affected by the general global economic decline of the past years.

To increase the capacity to assess vulnerability and target interventions, the department initiated a partnership with the FAO and, together with the SADC, set up the National Vulnerability Assessment Committee for South Africa.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries held the Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme (CAADP) Stakeholders' Sensitisation Seminar in October 2011, focusing on the implementation of the CAADP in South Africa. The seminar aimed to strengthen ongoing consultations with agricultural stakeholders on practical policies and programmes for agriculture-led socio-economic growth, especially among smallholder farming communities, and to start the CAADP implementation process. CAADP is envisaged to add value to agricultural development in South Africa, together with the country's existing food security and poverty-alleviation programmes.

With the implementation of viable production interventions, nutrition education is at the centre of the department's activities, and will be conducted in partnership with the departments of health and of basic education.

The implementation of the Zero Hunger Campaign gained momentum in 2010/11.

This focuses primarily on increasing production. It is underpinned by the implementation of the Food Purchase Programme and the facilitation of contract production. The Zero Hunger Campaign is geared towards assisting smallholder farmers to raise production and increase access to markets to generate income. The creation of self-employment opportunities is at the centre of this.

The department wants to ensure that sustainable production technologies are introduced, and that the integration of activities at household and community levels is strengthened.

The department is distributing seeds and seedlings to an increasing number of households.

Mechanisation

Government has embarked on a mechanisation strategy aimed at stimulating production by smallholders, with a special focus on rural areas and the former homelands.

By August 2011, the initial 85 tractors had been increased to 272 and were used in 40 projects to till 12 835 ha of land, benefiting 1 608 people in Mpumalanga.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the 85 tractors were increased to 190 and were used by nearly 200 traditional leaders to service over 9 000 ha.

Regional issues

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee (RAC) of the Regional Food Security Training Programme (RFSTP).

The RFSTP was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the RAC. Its activities focus on three main areas: strengthening the supply of food-security training services; strengthening the effective demand for training and development; and sustaining regional markets for food security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954. Regional plant-protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable regional coordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC). The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation for Africa. The council came into being as the African Union's (AU) phytosanitary coordinating body.

The SADC has produced the Memorandum of Understanding on the Harmonisation of Seed Regulations in the SADC Region, which is based on three technical documents, namely the Regional Variety Release System, Seed Certification and Quality Assurance, and Quarantine and Phytosanitary Measures.

The primary objective of harmonising seed regulations is to resolve the problems addressed in the three documents by integrating smaller and isolated national seed markets into a single, larger SADC seed market. This, in turn, will enhance the introduction of new improved varieties into the region and ease the movement of quality seed from countries with surplus to countries in need of seed. Lower costs and simpler administration will encourage local, small-scale seed producers and suppliers to expand their activities.

International issues

As a signatory to the Rome Declaration of 2003, South Africa has committed itself to the implementation of the World Food Summit Plan of Action. For this purpose, South Africa reports annually to the World Committee for Food Security. South Africa is also collaborating with the FAO on the implementation of the Special Programme for Food Security.

South Africa is an active participant in other international standard-setting bodies that are vital to its global market share, such as the IPPC, OIE and Codex Alimentarius.

International relations

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Directorate: International Relations facilitates and coordinates international activities on both multilateral and bilateral bases.

The department is a member of the FAO; the Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research; the Food, Agriculture and Natural Resources Sector of the SADC; the International Seed-Testing Association; the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development's Seed Schemes; the Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants; the World Organisation for Animal Health; the International Organisation of Vine and Wine; and the International Cotton Advisory Committee.

International trade

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' Directorate: International Trade analyses international trade and related policies, advises on multilateral and bilateral agricultural trade policy, presents the interests of South African agriculture in various trade-negotiating initiatives and promotes trade-development initiatives aimed at broadening the exporter base. The directorate works closely with the Department of Trade and Industry, and takes responsibility for the agricultural part of trade negotiations in the World Trade Organisation's (WTO) multilateral negotiations as well as in various bilateral trade-negotiating initiatives.

The directorate continuously conducts strategic market research to inform the positioning of the agricultural export sector in the global trading environment. It investigates and evaluates export opportunities for agricultural products on world markets.

These include strategies to access markets where preferential trade agreements do not exist.

The directorate facilitates national capacity-building and the training of role players in the use of trade tools.

The directorate is also responsible for implementing, monitoring and reporting on South Africa's commitments under the WTO Agreement on Agriculture. South Africa works with its alliance partners of the G20, the Cairns Group and the Africa Group.

The department's objectives in the Doha Development Round of the WTO are to:

- ensure policy space to support South Africa's developing agricultural sector
- bring about a substantial reduction in trade and production-distorting subsidies and export subsidies given mainly by developed countries
- improve the access of South African agricultural exports to other markets.

The overall objective is to establish a fair trading system in which South African agriculture can compete as an equal.

Trade with Africa

South Africa's trade relations with the rest of Africa, excluding the SADC and Sacu, are the result of bilateral cooperation agreements with individual countries.

The country is positioning itself in Africa by special interventions to expand the availability of South African services in the SADC region and improve the trading environment. Examples include agricultural trade information, technical cooperation, and interventions to mitigate production and trade risks.

South Africa, as a member of Sacu and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with the other nations in the region. Free trade within southern Africa under the SADC Trade Protocol started between Sacu and Mauritius in September 2000. Sacu opened its markets to the countries of the region by implementing the first phase of tariff reduction.

Since 2000, SADC tariffs have declined steadily, making it possible for the participating members to trade at a lower cost. Sacu can import from the region over 80% of agricultural products at zero duty. All other countries will have the same advantage at different deadlines between 2012 and 2015.

The signatories to the SADC Agreement are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. However, Angola, the DRC and Madagascar have not participated in the preferential trade as yet.

The main objectives of the SADC Trade Protocol are to:

- create an environment of free flow of trade within the region and therefore to provide diverse markets for the countries to exploit their comparative and competitive advantages
- establish cooperation and participation in the economic development of the region through consultation and policy harmonisation.

The alignment of sanitary and phytosanitary standards within the SADC is in progress. A number of member countries will take some time to establish the necessary infrastructure for the standards to be implemented efficiently. South Africa has offered technical assistance to member countries for this purpose. South African standards, in accordance with the WTO regulations, apply to all imports of fresh commodities.

An annex to the Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (SPS Agreement) as part of the Trade Protocol was signed in 2008, based on which the member states are establishing national legislation to match the required standards of the WTO. The faster the SADC countries achieve this, the easier it will be for South Africa to trade in agriculture with them.

The first objective of the Trade Protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade among SADC countries. The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers in which the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

Trade relations with African states are politically important, and of growing economic importance to South Africa. The country has strong and mutually dependent economic links with southern African states through Sacu and the SADC. The NGP Framework has also embraced intra-Africa trade as an important strategic focus in the context of developing and strengthening relations with neighbouring countries.

International agreements and conventions

South Africa is a signatory to several international agreements and conventions, requiring that the matter of sustainable resource-use and management be addressed responsibly.

Agenda 21 is an action plan and blueprint for sustainable development, and was one of five documents adopted by more than 178 governments at the UN Conference on Environment and Development in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. Specific to sustainable resource-use is Chapter 14, which addresses the promotion of agriculture and rural development.

International conventions that apply to aspects of sustainable resource-use include the Convention on Biological Diversity, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and the Convention to Combat Desertification (CCD). The CCD requires that South Africa compiles a national action programme. It will be integrated into a regional programme for the SADC region. All these activities are receiving attention under the leadership of the Department of Environmental Affairs, involving all stakeholders, including the national and provincial departments of agriculture.

Regulatory services

The directorates: inspection services (IS) and plant health primarily enforce the department's regulatory activities regarding plants and plant products. By granting import authorisation, the Directorate: Plant Production regulates imports of plant and propagating material of varieties not included in the national varietal lists.

The department's regulatory activities also include the inspection of plants, animals and their products. The Directorate: IS enforces this activity.

It is involved in inspections and other related activities aimed at ensuring that imported animals and their products are free from disease, and imported and exported plants and products are free from quarantine pests and diseases. Inspections take place at pre-border and post-border control levels, and comply with genetic resources and quality-assurance prescripts and standards.

Import requirements vary according to the product and the animal-health situation in individual countries.

South Africa is an active member of the OIE. Disease reports are received from the OIE and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products is based on a series of requirements considered appropriate by the importing country to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department is one of the key regulatory state departments with the authority to enforce laws enacted by Parliament to protect the South African consumer, producer and farmer; the environment; and other national interests.

The Division: Ports of Entry Point Control conducts inspections at designated ports of entry. To strengthen border inspections, the directorate has introduced the use of detector dogs at the OR Tambo International Airport in Kempton Park. They are trained to detect regulated agricultural products in international arrival halls and cargo terminals. Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements of trading partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

The Division: National Plants and Plant Products Inspection Services conducts these inspections, together with national control inspections, for compliance with plant-health, genetic-resources and food- and quality-assurance legislation. The division also carries out various surveys around the country.

The Directorate: Plant Health's core mandate is to facilitate safe trade in plants and plant products by managing the risks associated with plant pests and diseases by developing and amending phytosanitary legislation.

Control measures are published to prevent or combat the spread of pests to other areas in the country. Import control is vital to prevent the introduction of potentially harmful foreign pests. Prospective importers of plants and plant products have to apply for an import permit for those controlled goods mentioned in the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983).

The Pest Risk-Analysis (PRA) Division conducts scientific analyses of risks posed, based on scientific data. Specific phytosanitary requirements are set out according to the phytosanitary risk(s) involved. These are stipulated in the permit issued to the importer. Importers are obliged to present the consignment to the official inspection representative at the port of entry.

The Directorate: Quarantine Services manages the risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material. This is achieved by prescribing a compulsory quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories as determined by the PRA Division of the Directorate: Plant Health.

The core function of Diagnostic Services is to prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests by testing and auditing all imported plant material.

The Early Warning Division ensures early detection of economically important exotic pests and through surveillance, detection and rapid response prevents the spread of such pests, thereby maintaining pest-free areas in respect of specific pests. Closely linked to early detection is implementing proper pest-awareness programmes to ensure the agricultural sector and the general public are kept informed. The International Standards Division aims to facilitate effective and efficient official phytosanitary communication between the Directorate: Plant Health and its international, regional and other national plant-health clients.

This is done through the management of a national plant-protection contact point and participation in the initiatives of external clients such as the WTO Committee on Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures, the IPPC and its working groups and committees, the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, other national plant-protection organisations or governments, research institutes and members of the international agricultural trade sector.

The Import/Export Protocols Division's core function is to ensure and maintain market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant-health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes in compliance with trading-partner requirements according to established protocols.

Food import and export standards

The need for a centralised source of information and services for import and export standards and requirements for agricultural food products is fundamental in promoting smooth trade, both domestically and internationally. Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the WTO and to which South Africa is a signatory, such as the SPS Agreement, OIE, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the IPPC. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health. The Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards aims to serve as a central point and vehicle to collate information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The directorate also seeks to coordinate promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, plant and animal health.

National analytical services

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries' laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products.

In 2011, the laboratory worked on a project to expand the scope of testing for pesticide residues. By June 2011, 19 chemicals had been included in the existing scope of testing with the liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry/mass spectrometer. This is expected to ensure that South Africa meets its obligations in terms of food safety and quality risk monitoring and improve market access for South African agricultural products of plant origin.

Risk management

Information, policies and implementation

The Agricultural Flood Management Plan Workshop was held in Gauteng in November 2010 to solicit input and comments from stakeholders. The National Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Committee (Narmco) provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. Narmco comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as the National African Farmers' Union (Nafu), Agri SA, Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA), the ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster-management centres, organised agriculture such as Nafu, Agri SA, TAU SA, the ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The Mentorship Programme was rolled out to familiarise provincial departments with disaster risk-management issues.

In 2011, the directorate was developing an information management system. The interface includes features such as a database of farmers; climate-change information; applicable disaster risk-management policies; and early warning information, programmes and projects. The system will also serve provinces as a reporting platform.

Climate change

In implementing an effective climate-change programme in compliance with the National Climate Change Response Strategy and in support of disaster risk management, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has developed measures aimed at facilitating mitigation and adaptation to climate change in the sector; minimising vulnerability to the impacts of climate change; as well as greenhouse-gas (GHG) emissions.

The sector conducted a preliminary investigation into climate change in the Free State during 2010/11. The main aim was to identify areas in the south-western parts of the province (Petrusburg, Fauresmith and Luckhoff) vulnerable to the impact of climate change and variability in the agricultural sector.

The department supports research and development initiatives as well as programmes carried out throughout the world for the purpose of gaining a better understanding of the processes behind climate change. South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance. The objectives of the alliance are:

- enhancing collaborative research into agricultural emission reductions
- increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emission research
- improving understanding and measurement of agricultural emissions.

By June 2011, the research report on the *Agricultural GHG Inventory* and capacity-building for the sector had been published. The results of the project will inform the development of the Mitigation Strategy, which is expected to assist in contributing to achieving food security in the country.

The *Atlas of Climate Change* and *The South African Agricultural Sector: A 2010 Perspective*, aimed at investigating the first- to fourth-order impacts of climate change on agriculture, were completed and published.

The results of the atlas are expected to inform the development of an adaptation strategy for the sector. These were among the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries-supported climate-change projects earmarked for showcasing at the 17th Conference of the Parties (COP17) under the UNFCCC, held in Durban in November and December 2011.

As a precursor to the COP17, the department hosted the National Climate Change Conference for Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries in August 2011.

Early warning unit

The department's Early Warning System (EWS) communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings in support of disaster risk reduction. Twelve monthly advisories and 280 extreme weather warnings were issued in 2010/11. The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system so that it can be strengthened.

National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly according to the terms of reference. The objective of the committee is to assist in the implementation of the EWS. During 2010/11, stakeholders such as the South African Weather Service, the ARC, provincial departments of agriculture and academic institutions participated in four meetings.

Post-disaster recovery and rehabilitation

In 2010/11, 4 603 targeted beneficiaries were reached by three disaster-relief schemes. The schemes covered drought, floods and veld fires as these are the most common disasters experienced in the country. The farming communities affected by drought were assisted with the repair of agricultural infrastructure for livestock water and livestock feed, including the transportation of feed. Assistance made available through the Flood Relief Scheme included the repair of agricultural infrastructure and soil rehabilitation. Assistance provided by the Veld Fire Relief Scheme involved the repair of agricultural infrastructure, and provision and transportation of livestock feed.

Drought management

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower-than-average agricultural production yields. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has completed two policy documents: the Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan and the Agricultural Drought-Management Plan.

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land Bank (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the State (1%).

Business and Entrepreneurial Development (BED)

The Directorate: BED in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is mandated to ensure that emerging entrepreneurs and established enterprises have some synergy in the development of their agribusiness endeavours. The entire process addresses the strategic objectives of eliminating skewed participation and inequity; optimising growth, remunerative job opportunities and income; and ensuring efficient and effective governance. It further promotes and provides strategic support in the development of viable and empowered businesses, stimulating growth and promoting unity through partnerships and niches.

The Business Development Unit works closely with industries/commodity groups and other state departments and tiers of government, facilitating the establishment of grassroots commodity structures. The outcome is to provide a conduit for farmers to access resource reservoirs, government interventions and other support initiatives to grow their businesses, create jobs and increase their incomes.

It also assists marginalised groups in creating, expanding and rehabilitating business to become profitable and sustainable in the long term, focusing on growth and wealth creation based on mutual gains in the sector. It also encourages and facilitates win-win partnerships for niche enterprises at all levels in the agricultural value chain.

The directorate helps support and guide the cotton, grain and fruit industries' implementation of their developed strategies.

Through joint internal actions in the department, activities are being mainstreamed to reach more black farmer organisations and entrepreneurs and accelerate their participation in commodity groups through farmer-mobilisation interventions.

The unit supports Operation Gijima, Women in Agriculture and Rural Development, and the National Movement for Rural Women projects, as well as programmes involving people living with disabilities, youth and farm workers.

It collaborates with other tiers of government and sectors in rendering advice, support and guidance to agricultural value-chain projects owned by land-acquisition beneficiaries, designated groups and other departmental grant-funded projects.

The Entrepreneurial Development Unit is responsible for initiating and rolling out small, medium and micro-enterprise support interventions and capacity-building through facilitators and mentors in collaboration with partners within the provinces. These interventions focus on entrepreneurial development, increased agricultural enterprises' performance and job-creation activities, especially in rural development nodes.

The Directorate: Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charters Compliance is responsible for the development of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors' charters. Its functions are to:

- monitor the implementation of the developed AgriBEE and forestry charters
- report on the progress of the seven elements of empowerment as per the scorecard of these charters
- support the functioning of the sectors' charter council institutions.

LandCare Programme

The LandCare Programme is a community-based and government-supported approach to the sustainable management and use of agricultural natural resources.

The LandCare Programme's vision is one of communities and individuals leading the adoption of an ecologically sustainable approach to the management of South Africa's environmental and natural resources, while improving their quality of life. It implies that cultivation, livestock grazing and the harvesting of natural resources should be managed in such a manner that no further degradation (such as nutrient loss, soil erosion, loss of components of the vegetation and increased run-off) occurs.

The LandCare Programme continues to perform a significant role in reversing soil and land degradation through support provided to community initiatives. This programme contributes significantly to green job creation, poverty eradication, food security and a better life for all.

During 2010/11, the programme directly and indirectly benefited 28 161 land users. A total of 66 272 ha were rehabilitated in all provinces through the construction of soil conservation works, range-land use and protection works and the eradication of declared weeds and invasive plants.

As part of the 2011/12 LandCare Programme, about 15 000 job opportunities were created through rehabilitation and land-use activities.

In 2011/12, R57,7 million was earmarked for the LandCare Programme.

The LandCare Programme has been expanded into the following subprogrammes:

WaterCare

This theme establishes a framework for managing land and preventing the silting up of dams for irrigation. WaterCare works in partnership with the community to develop action plans for managing and restoring irrigation schemes. The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

VeldCare

This theme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production. It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development. Economic- and social-development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The SoilCare theme encourages rural farmers to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

The Conservation Agriculture (CA) approach has encouraged the proactive and sustainable use of agricultural natural resources. CA aims to ensure the effective and sustainable use and management of natural resources through minimum disturbance of the soil. CA integrates the management of soil, water and biological resources to maintain and enhance land productivity and reduce the level of risk. It further aims to protect the potential of natural resources, prevent soil and water degradation and ensure economic viability with a reduction in vulnerability to the effects of climate change. The result of these practices will ensure continued household and national food security through crop production, while conserving the environment.

CA is characterised by three principles:

- minimum mechanical soil disturbance (minimum tillage)
- permanent organic soil cover, particularly through available crop residues
- diversified crop-rotation practices.

Junior LandCare

Junior LandCare encourages young people to develop a sense of responsibility towards the land and other natural resources, and conserve these for future generations. The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes promoting food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

In 2010/11, the Junior LandCare Programme, focusing on enhancing an ethic of natural resources stewardship, reached 22 166 young people. In total, 14 815 green jobs were created through rehabilitation works related to soil, water and veld management.

Eco-Technology Programme (ETP)

The objective of the ETP is to identify, adapt, demonstrate and spread promising and appropriate eco-technologies (such as conservation, farming and water harvesting) locally, which will provide resource-poor farmers with social, economic and environmental benefits. The expected outcomes of this theme are an increased number of promising and appropriate eco-technologies identified and evaluated on farms; an increasing number of farmers adopting eco-technologies; and improved social, economic and environmental (e.g. employment) benefits.

ETPs will initially be implemented in presidential nodal areas where water is very scarce, such as KwaZulu-Natal (Umkhanyakude and Zululand) and Limpopo (Sekhukhune and Bohlabela).

> In August 2011, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced at the launch of the Land Bank's *2010/11 Annual Report* the bank's commitment to spend R1 billion on emerging farmers in the next two years. This is expected to unlock the long-term potential growth of agriculture as one of the pillars of South Africa's economic development. The Land Bank's allocation of resources towards emerging farmers was consistent with government's intention of mainstreaming agriculture sectoral growth in the New Growth Path.

Infield Rainwater Harvesting (IRWH)

IRWH technology, which improves efficiency of water use and increases yields with a suitable choice of crop combinations under low and erratic rainfall conditions on low-potential clay soils, has been transferred with great success to numerous communities in the Free State and Eastern Cape.

Using IRWH in croplands, community members have increased their maize and sunflower yields by between 26% and 40% compared with conventional methods. Socio-economic studies of vegetable gardens have shown that IRWH can ensure household food security for nine out of 10 years, compared to three out of 10 years using conventional cropping methods.

Transfer of technology, training and extension are used to implement IRWH, with consequent improvement in household livelihoods in rural communities where most members live below the poverty line.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The Land Bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services to the commercial farming sector and agribusiness, and make available new, appropriately designed financial products that facilitate access to finance by new entrants to agriculture from historically disadvantaged backgrounds.

In 2010/11, the bank showed a turnaround in its financial health and its effectiveness in supporting transformation in the farming sector. Capital adequacy was above the level set as a condition for the Government guarantee, and liquidity levels improved. The focus for 2011/12 was on increasing the bank's development impact, working with government to find suitable financing solutions for emerging farmers, growing the loan book while reducing the cost of funding and establishing a wholesale finance facility for strategic partners to on-lend to qualifying participants.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa)

By June 2011, the implementation of Mafisa was still on course.

The number of accredited institutions retailing Mafisa loans had increased to nine following the inclusion of the South African Sugar Association (Sasa) as one of the retail intermediaries. Sasa will be providing production loans to sugar-cane growers in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga.

In 2010/11, Mafisa disbursed loans amounting to R96 million.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries had set aside R470 million to provide agricultural production loans to qualifying applicants through financial institutions retailing Mafisa funds. Institutions accredited to retail Mafisa loans include cooperatives, commodity organisations and development finance institutions.

Mafisa loans are available for agriculture-related enterprises, covering the entire agricultural value chain. Funded enterprises include poultry, livestock, vegetables, sugar cane and grain crops.

Agri South Africa

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves some 70 000 large and small commercial farmers.

On behalf of its members, Agri SA promotes the development, profitability and stability of commercial agriculture through its involvement in and input at national and international policy levels.

Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC)

The ABC is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably, and prosper as a result. Other focus areas include:

- serving the broader and common business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa
- facilitating considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment
- being involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

The ABC is affiliated to Business Unity South Africa and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) Business Foundation, and associated with various international organisations.

In 2010/11, the ABC focused primarily on:

- economic policy, international trade, and national and international competitiveness
- BEE, transformation and the promotion of links between agribusinesses and the developing agricultural sector
- agrologistics and infrastructural constraints
- Nepad and African issues, through the Africa Agribusiness Forum, Nepad Business Foundation, Nepad-Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development Africa Investment Initiative, Alliance for a Green Africa and other forums
- skills training, labour issues and HIV and AIDS.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa

Nafu is an independent, non-governmental, voluntary organisation representing farmers in South Africa. The organisation was formed in 1991 with the assistance and support of the National African Federated Chamber of Commerce and Industries.

Agribusiness as an economic sector

Agribusiness can be divided into two categories: non-cooperative business ventures and cooperatives or transformed cooperatives.

Non-cooperative business ventures, also known as profit companies, are involved in the production and distribution of agricultural equipment and production requisites, and the marketing of agricultural products.

Cooperatives dominate the distribution of intermediate requisites and the handling, processing and marketing of agricultural products.

Agricultural cooperatives or agribusinesses are regarded as the farmers' own independent business organisations. They supply their members with production input such as seed, fertiliser, fuel and repair services. They also provide credit and extension services, and handle a large percentage of their members' produce.

Central cooperatives in the country aim to supply the primary cooperatives with specific services such as the processing and marketing of agricultural products, insurance services for crops, short-term cover and farming requisites.

The structure of agribusiness has changed since the deregulation of the agricultural sector into a free-market economy in 1994. Many cooperatives have transformed into private companies, consolidations and mergers have occurred, international groups have entered South Africa and agribusinesses have listed on the JSE Limited.

Smallholder development

In line with the outcome-based approach towards supporting farmers, Outcome 7 mandates the increase in the support of smallholder farmers from a baseline of 200 000 to 250 000 by 2014.

The Directorate: Smallholder Development, in collaboration with the provincial departments of agriculture, ensures the achievement of increased support to the 50 000 new and existing smallholder farmers. The support entails smallholder farmers having access to markets, finances, infrastructural support, training and production inputs. The directorate aims to:

- improve the production systems and development support of smallholder farmers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors to promote sustainable livelihoods
- promote and facilitate the design and planning of farmer-settlement guidelines for new farmers
- support existing farmers through food-security intervention programmes
- develop and promote national policy and standards for support leading to the graduation of smallholder farmers to commercial farmers
- monitor and evaluate policies and programmes that target smallholder farmer support
- coordinate activities that are cross-cutting with other entities to promote household food-security programmes.

Extension and advisory services

Over the past three years, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has implemented an extension and advisory service revitalisation programme of R555,5 million. To improve the ratio of extension officers to farmers, by the end of 2010/11, more than 1 000 extension and advisory officers had been recruited.

To ensure that these officers are visible on the ground and accountable, the *Farmer's Green Book* was instituted as a tool to be used by farmers to record extension officers' visits.

To ensure access to appropriate information, the department facilitated the countrywide adoption of the state-of-the-art Extension Suite On-Line. This computerised system enables extension officers to access relevant information on the spot as and when it is needed by farmers.

By June 2011, a total of 1 149 extension officers were registered for qualification upgrades in line with the approved norms and standards, and 5 110 extension officers had completed short technical, generic and information and communications technology skills training programmes.

Training and research

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

At grassroots level, South Africa has a number of specialised agricultural high schools and regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture.

Universities (including those with and without designated faculties of agriculture) offer advanced degree courses and B Tech degrees. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with a productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities, various private-sector organisations and by some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The ARC, a state-owned entity, set up in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), is the largest agricultural research organisation in Africa.

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries coordinates all agricultural research and development (R&D) activities.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural R&D Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on R&D matters within the national agricultural research system. The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government and others on the coordination of R&D and technology transfer to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability. Annual meetings are held to discuss research needs, priorities and budgeting.

At a conference on rural poverty hosted by the United Nations International Fund for Agricultural Development in May 2011, the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Ms Tina Joemat-Pettersson, said that Africa could improve food security and boost economic growth by increasing support for smallholder farmers.

There are about 500 million smallholder farms worldwide and about two billion people depend on them for their livelihoods, according to the International Fund for Agricultural Development. These farms produce about 80% of food consumed in Asia and sub-Saharan Africa.

Agriculture has a significant role in economic development and job creation. The agriculture value-chain has been identified in the New Growth Path as one of the key sectors to grow the country's employment.

Colleges of agriculture

In 2011, the department was in the process of transforming the colleges of agriculture into national agricultural training institutes (ATIs) and completed a comprehensive audit of these institutions. The audit looked at the state of infrastructure at these institutions, the academic and skills training programmes offered, their accreditation status, the governance structures in place and the financial and logistical systems.

In 2011/12, R50 million was made available to the 12 ATIs. The focus was on infrastructure improvement, including revitalising the computer laboratories at these institutions.

The department received R20 million through a partnership with the Netherlands Institute for Capacity-Building at Higher Education Institutions.

This project will strengthen the capacity of ATIs as centres of excellence, especially in the provision of training for smallholder producers in the country. Government also enlisted technical assistance from Germany in developing a national strategy on relevant vocational training to be incorporated as part of the ATIs' curricula.

In 2011/12, the department aimed to accelerate work towards the promulgation of the Agricultural Training Institute Bill, which will prescribe a national model of governance for ATIs.

Forestry

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation.

In terms of land use, the area under forestry totals about 1,275 million ha or approximately 1% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha. The forestry sector (forestry and forest products) contributes 1,20% to GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 4,5%; in Mpumalanga 4,7%; in the Eastern Cape 0,9%; and about 0,5% in Limpopo. The value of exported forest products increased from R9,5 billion in 2001 to R13,4 billion in 2010.

The forestry sector employed around 201 025 people in 2009.

That year, total investment in the forestry industry amounted to R24,8 billion. This comprised 58,5% in trees; 19,4% in land; 13% in roads; 6,2% in fixed assets; and 2,8% in moveable assets. Regarding investment in the forest products sector by type of processing plant for 2009, the total book value of investments amounted to R15,7 billion. This investment comprised 82,7% in pulp and board plants; 11,8% in sawmills and veneer plants; 1% in pole plants; 0,3% in mining timber; and 4,2% other plants.

South Africa also has rich indigenous forests, which have been inventoried by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and are closely monitored and protected. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth found in South Africa, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, encompassed in the Garden Route National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The UN General Assembly declared 2011 to be the International Year of Forests.

A total of R451,6 million was allocated to the Forestry Branch to be used to pursue the desired outcomes. The UN afforded South Africa the opportunity to host the World Forestry Congress in 2015.

In recognising the forestry sector's important contribution to the economy and in line with the provisions of the Forestry Charter, role players have taken steps to ensure there is continued and sustainable use of forestry land for timber production.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries aims to significantly contribute to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme, by focusing on basic needs, saving cash resources and providing a safety net. Firewood, building poles, medicinal plants and edible fruits are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department aims to develop human resources through forestry-sector skills-develop ment initiatives and to promote employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans will assist the Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The department aims to pursue the afforestation target of 10 000 ha of net new afforestation a year. Nearly 3 000 ha of area had been afforested in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal by the end of March 2011.

The focus will remain on encouraging co-operatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process. In the Eastern Cape, funds have been secured to assist communities with the processes of environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite to precede any afforestation activity.

Afforestation will take place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity. The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants. All these will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

Over the past few years, much work has been done in the forestry sector to improve yields, restructure institutions, provide community access and redefine government's role.

The forestry programme also encompasses expanded greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on fire-fighting programmes (for example, the Working on Fire Programme) and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations (FPAs).

The total industry turnover was about R20,4 billion in 2009, including R10,7 billion worth of wood-pulp.

In August 2011, a Sydney gum tree (*Eucalyptus saligna*), over 80 m tall, broke the previous South African tree height record held by two gum trees, known as the "Twin Giants of Magoebaskloof", by a metre. This tree has also reached a new African tree height record. The Sydney gum tree towers above a stand of gum trees planted in 1906 in the Woodbush Forest Estate in Limpopo. The tree-measuring expedition was organised by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and sponsored by Stihl South Africa. Three giant Mexican pine trees (*Pinus oocarpa*) were also climbed. The tallest measured over 50 m. Few pine trees anywhere in the world grow this tall. It is estimated that the pine trees, like their gum tree counterparts nearby, are more than a century old.

A pulpwood intake of about 12,9 million m^3; mining timber of 759 000 m^3; charcoal of 264 000 m^3; 4,1 million m^3 of sawlogs; and veneer logs and poles of about 546 000 m^3 were transferred to processing plants in 2009.

Forestry initiatives

Two different trees of the year are nominated annually: a common variety and the scarcer, possibly endangered, species.

The common tree of the year for 2011 was *Pappea capensis* (jacket-plum, indaba tree or bushveld cherry) and the rare trees were the *Genus Pavetta* (bride's bushes) and the *Nuxia congesta* (common wild elder).

National Arbour Week (1 to 7 September) promotes the planting and maintenance of indigenous trees throughout South Africa. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry to create a better life for all. The Arbour Week Campaign aims to:

- promote a better understanding of trees, especially indigenous ones
- highlight the essential role trees play in sustainable development and the livelihoods of people and their environment
- provide stakeholders with the opportunity to raise awareness of South Africa's urban greening initiatives
- encourage communities and businesses to participate in various greening activities
- encourage the youth to participate in tree-planting activities and related environmental-education programmes.

The theme for Arbour Week 2011 was *Forests for People*.

Champion Tree Project

South Africa has a rich heritage of trees. The Champion Tree Project is aimed at identifying and protecting individual trees of national conservation importance under the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 30 of 1998).

Trees can be nominated on the basis of their size, age, aesthetic value, cultural-historic value or importance for tourism.

Only trees of national importance are protected. In the long run, however, provincial and local authorities will be encouraged to develop their own local Champion Tree lists.

The first individual tree to be declared as protected under the National Forests Act, 1998 in 2003, was a historic English oak tree, the only remnant of the old Sophiatown that was razed by the previous government when it resettled that community in the 1950s. This intervention was an attempt by a property owner to stop the imminent destruction of the tree. Protection was afforded only after the tree was severely pruned. This was the starting point of the Champion Tree Project, aimed at preventing similar destruction of other trees of national importance by identifying and declaring them as protected.

By May 2011, 56 trees and groups of trees had been declared protected as champion trees.

Among the protected trees are the:

- Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route
- Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay
- Sagole baobab in Limpopo
- camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

The oldest planted tree is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Company's Gardens more than three centuries ago.

Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer (daughter of Bram Fischer who was a founder member of the South African Communist Party).

The Champion Tree project of South Africa is the only one of its kind in Africa.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched as a greening initiative in 2007. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees are planted every year. The majority of trees planted comprise fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees. The programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

The Million Trees Programme contributes towards global initiatives to promote greening and tree planting.

Since the inception of this programme, more than four million trees have been planted by the department and other stakeholders. A major focus area for this programme has been the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme's (CRDP) nodal areas. In an effort to ensure the programme is implemented more broadly, government is calling on the corporate sector to make a contribution, and for citizens and organisations to participate in this important undertaking.

In 2007/08, around 1 700 000 trees were planted, followed by around 1 300 000 trees in 2008/09 and 1 277 805 trees in 2009/10.

Contributing to socio-economic reform and growth

Government recognises that BEE will not be effective if it does not have the support of the private sector.

The BBBEE Charter for the Forest Sector will be instrumental in achieving the objectives of the scorecard as suggested by the Department of Trade and Industry.

The vision of the charter is that of:

- an inclusive and equitable forestry sector in which previously disadvantaged women and men participate fully
- a forestry sector that is characterised by the sustainable use of resources, sustainable growth, international competitiveness and profitability for all its participants
- a forestry sector that contributes meaningfully to poverty eradication, job creation, rural development and economic value-adding activities.

Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha a year for the next 10 years to obtain a net increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

Forestry enterprise development (FED) relates to the concept of using forests and forest-based resources as a vehicle for economic growth, employment and socio-economic upliftment that takes people from a subsistence livelihood system into a market economy. The concept is also central to the department's pro-poor agenda and a key component of BBBEE in the forestry sector.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries supports FED. This includes transferring state forests, developing an afforestation strategy for the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, and including forestry as a key sector in provincial growth and development plans.

The Directorate: Forestry Development supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff.

Current projects include beekeeping, which is a partnership with the ARC, and establishing medicinal nurseries in partnership with various stakeholders.

Following restructuring, the commercial plantation forests of the South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol) and the then Department of Water Affairs and Forestry were combined and packaged into five stand-alone special-purpose vehicles, operating as wholly owned subsidiaries of Safcol.

South African Forestry Company Limited

Safcol continues to contribute to rural welfare and development. In Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal where unemployment levels are high, the company provides approximately 2 200 permanent jobs and 2 000 contractual jobs.

The department has been exploring a range of different business models and institutional structures through which the developmental impact of Safcol's human and financial resources could be optimised. This was expected to assist in providing certainty for the business and direction for the company's operations. Keen consultation with key stakeholders will also be required before taking the matter to Cabinet for consideration. Downstream economic activities in rural areas, from timber-milling to furniture manufacture, have also been encouraged.

Furthermore, a process was underway in 2011 with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, to dispose of the remaining shareholding in four privatised forestry companies to the communities surrounding Safcol's forestry operations.

Also, as approximately 61% of land under Safcol's operation is subject to land claims, the department is playing a proactive role in facilitating the resolution of these claims through effective interdepartmental cooperation.

In 2010/11, while not dependent on the fiscus, Safcol was reliant on cash reserves and limited usage of debt finance. A key focus for 2011/12 was on ensuring improved financial and commercial sustainability.

Komatiland Forests (KLF) owns and manages the prime softwood sawlog forestry assets in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal. It consists of 18 plantations covering a total area of 187 320,27 ha. Its main business is forestry, timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities. The plantation stock consists of approximately 91% pine, 7% eucalyptus and 2% acacia. KLF is one of the largest producers of high-quality sawlogs in South Africa. Its customer base includes the Timbadola Sawmill, a sawmill run by KLF, and other large as well as small processors in and around its plantations.

KLF's research centre and nursery manage various trial plots in plantations across Limpopo, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal. The nursery produces plants for all plantations operated by KLF. At an in-house training centre, Platorand, outside Sabie, various forestry-related training courses for students and employees are presented.

Industry and exports

The industry was a net exporter of almost R3,9 billion worth of goods in 2010, of which more than 99% took the form of converted value-added products.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,27% to total exports and 1,61% to total imports in 2010. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R45 billion in 2010.

The value of forest-product exports grew by 53% over the past decade, from R8,7 billion in 2000 to R13,4 billion in 2010. In real terms, however, (taking inflation into account) this growth was -14% over the period in question. The net trade balance in foreign trade in forest products decreased from 2000 by - 22% in nominal terms (- 56% in real terms) to R3,9 billion in 2010.

In 2009, paper products were the most important exports (R6 139 billion or 42% of the total), followed by pulp (R4 643 billion or 34%), solid wood products (R2 573 billion or 21%) and other products (R330 million or 3%). Woodchip exports, mainly to Japan, accounted for 61% (R1 578 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the global economic crisis combined with the strength of the Rand negatively effected the Rand-value of forest-product exports, with the total value of exports in 2009 (R12,5 billion) being R1,3 billion less than in 2008. Exports in 2010 showed an improvement, with sales of R13,4 billion being recorded. Increased demand from Asia, particularly Japan, was expected to bode well for export demand in 2011.

Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities. The Chief Directorate: Forestry of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries promotes optimal development of forestry and arboriculture in South Africa. The National Forests Advisory Council (NFAC) was established in terms of the National Forests Act, 1998. It advises the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on all aspects of forestry in the country.

The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management (SFM), and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests can be improved.

Achieving sustainable forest management

Apart from ecological considerations in determining where it is appropriate to grow trees, there are ecological, social and economic considerations that must be addressed when growing trees.

These criteria, indicators and standards form the basis for monitoring the sustainability of forestry operations in commercial and natural forests. Managers and owners are required to report against these criteria, which also form useful guidelines for new entrants to the sector.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising SFM and is a world leader in forest certification. Over a million hectares, or over 80% of the entire planted area of commercial forestry plantations in South Africa, are certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) and the ISO 14001 certification schemes as being sustainably managed. By the end of 2009, 1 572 568 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa were certified by the FSC, the second-largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are carried out.

There has also been a large increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This can be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably. The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

As part of its commitment to the practice of SFM, the forestry industry is also involved in the NFAC's Committee for SFM, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for SFM, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions. The industry, in conjunction with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, is also involved in an FSC national initiative, the result of which will be the acceptance and use by FSC auditors of criteria, indicators and standards for SFM which take into account South African conditions. These were field-tested and finalised during 2009.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. This represents a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 reflects the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. This vision emphasises SFM, and explains how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Act sets out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree and shrub species. Some are threatened, and a total of 47 species are protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut; damaged or destroyed or possessed; collected; removed; transported; exported; purchased; sold; donated or in any other manner acquired or disposed of except under a licence granted by the Minister or in terms of an exemption.

The listing of protected trees is not primarily aimed at preventing the use of such trees, but rather at ensuring sustainable use through licensing-control measures.

In terms of the National Forests Act, 1998, all natural forests are protected. A policy was drafted to guide decisions on land-use change affecting forests, implemented by regional staff with scientific and legal support. The aim of the policy is to reduce development impacts on natural forests.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act (NVFFA), 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), is the primary piece of legislation regulating veldfire management in the country. The purpose of the NVFFA, 1998 is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires (veldfires) throughout South Africa. The NVFFA, 1998 provides for a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. This Act places an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of veldfire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs, which may be formed by landowners for purposes of veldfire management in a specific area.

The NVFFA, 1998 provides for FPAs for two reasons:

- Veldfires often become emergencies because they threaten life and assets on the property where they have started, or when they spread, or threaten to spread, beyond the boundaries of any one property.
- Cooperation is needed to manage the conditions that determine their occurrence, to prevent and control veldfires, and to use controlled burning for environmental and other purposes. By April 2011, the department had registered 219 FPAs countrywide, covering approximately 600 000 km^2 (58 million ha), which is approximately 49% of the country's total land cover of the country.

The following are among the activities undertaken by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on an ongoing basis to support FPAs in implementing their business plans:

- developing the National Fire Danger Rating System
- developing applicable policies, guidelines and regulations required for the effective implementation of the NVFFA, 1998
- compliance and enforcement
- building capacity and awareness
- providing training
- facilitating cross-border fire-management agreements.

The department continues to work with all stakeholders involved in integrated veldfire management to reduce the risk posed by veldfires.

Indigenous forests

Indigenous forests are indispensable to the country's heritage, beauty, wildlife and environment, while commercial forests provide jobs and economic opportunities for many people, especially in rural areas. Forestry represents a substantial investment in the country and plays an important role in the CRDP.

Plantations cover about 1,3 million ha of South Africa. Over 80% of these are found in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. They produced over 219 million m^3 (or 16,2 Mt) of commercial roundwood, worth R6,7 billion, in 2009.

Natural forest cover is low, which has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector in South Africa over the last 100 years. Nonetheless, natural forests have continued to play a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food. An estimated 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests. South Africa now has a detailed inventory of all its natural forests, which is used to monitor changes in forest areas.

The former Department of Water Affairs and Forestry completed a forest-type classification for natural forests, which are represented by 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System, completed for all forests in 2004, guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in areas of the production-management class of the southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 m^3 of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species). Another valuable product of the indigenous forests is the seven-week fern *(Rumohra adiantiformis)*, harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests.

The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

Savanna woodlands are dominated by trees, but not to the extent that the canopies are continuous and overlapping. The estimated extent of savanna woodlands cover varies from 29 to 41 million ha (roughly more than a third of the country's land cover), depending on the extent of wood cover considered to be woodland.

This vegetation covers extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savanna woodlands (5 900 plants, 175 mammals and 540 birds), including iconic species such as the Big Five that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braaiwood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Savanna woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are, however, a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest is worth some R1,1 billion a year to rural communities.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared a protected woodland under the National Forests Act, 1998. There are 87 savanna woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many underprotected savanna types have been identified. They must be prioritised for inclusion in future protected areas.

Another woodland type is the albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

During the 1930s, government began establishing extensive plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities in a diversified economy during the Depression. Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle trees.

By mid-2009, the private sector owned 1 058 908 ha (or 83%) of the total plantation area of 1 274 869 ha, and virtually all the processing plants in the country.

The remaining 17% (215 961 ha) was under public ownership, although this figure includes KLF, the remaining Safcol package. The extent of public ownership has decreased significantly in recent years because of restructuring.

In 2009, capital investment in these plantations stood at R24,8 billion, 59% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 19% was tied up in land, 13% in roads, 6% in fixed assets and 3% in machinery and equipment.

Plantation yields

Of the 1 274 869 ha of plantations in 2009, 51% comprised softwood species and 49% hardwood species. Some 34% of the plantation area was managed mainly for sawlog production, 57% for pulpwood and 5% for mining timber, while the balance of 4% was grown for the production of poles, matchwood (poplar) and other minor products.

Plantation yields vary from an average of 16 m^3 per ha per year for softwood, to 21 m^3 per ha per year for eucalyptus and 10 m^3 per ha per year for wattle (timber and bark).

Likewise, the rotation ages vary from a maximum of 30 years in the case of pine sawlogs, to six to 10 years in the case of eucalyptus pulp and mining timber. Production from plantations amounted to 18,9 million m^3 (or 16,2 Mt) in 2009.

Primary wood-processing

In 2010/11, South Africa had 192 primary wood-processing plants, 188 of which were owned by the private sector and the remainder by local and state authorities. Of these, 108 were sawmills; 16 were mining-timber sawmills; 47 pole-treating plants; 16 pulp, paper and board mills; one match factory; and four charcoal plants.

The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2009 was 18,5 million m^3, valued at R6,7 billion.

The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R20,4 billion. Some R15,7 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R45 billion.

The pulp industry in South Africa is dominated by two main pulp-and-paper manufacturing companies, Sappi and Mondi. They rank among the largest in the southern hemisphere.

The sawmilling industry produces sawn timber, which is used in producing solid-wood products, such as lumber for roof trusses and flooring, and consumer products, such as furniture. The furniture industry consumes about 283 000 m^3 of mainly industrial timber.

A large number of companies operate in this sector, with the five biggest companies contributing 51% of total production. Some 49% of total sawn timber is produced in Mpumalanga.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry-research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The priority fields of research include tree-breeding through applied silviculture, climate and soils, environmental impact and management solutions, forest biology, hydrology and forest protection.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines. The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FP&M) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta), formerly the Forest Industries Education and Training Authority (Fieta), is among other things, responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FP&M Seta, offers bursaries to students who choose to study in the forestry field.

The Fieta ceased to exist in April 2011 – it was amalgamated with the Clothing, Leather, Textile and Footware Seta and the Publishing, Packaging and Printing parts of the Media, Avertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Seta into the FP&M Seta.

Community forestry

The *White Paper on Sustainable Forest Development in South Africa* states that community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to favour local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals. Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory Forest Management (PFM) of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the SFM of South African forests.

Elements of PFM were initially developed for indigenous state forests. However, the aim is to use PFM as an approach to managing all forest types where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to a healthy and sustainable quality of life for all, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes. By August 2011, the FTFA had planted more than 4,1 million trees, facilitated over 2 500 organic food gardens for the poorest in South Africa and launched the first carbon calculator and the Carbon Standard (now the Carbon Protocol) in this country.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors and civil society. It attempts to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The Urban Greening Fund is managed by the FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Fisheries

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past 10 years.

The country also has a well-developed fisheries management system and is one of the world's leading countries in the implementation of an ecosystem approach for fisheries management. South Africa plays an important role internationally in the regional fisheries management organisations and regional programmes such as the Benguela Current Commission and other related programmes.

The programme aims to promote the equitable and sustainable management and efficient use of marine living resources.

The South African coast provides substantial opportunities for economic and social development. However, it is a resource threatened by inappropriate development, pollution, poaching and over-use. The sector has two components, the wild capture and the aquaculture sectors. The department plans to look at the economic prospects of marine culture, namely the husbanding and harvesting of sea plants for economic purposes.

The department plans to reduce the degradation of the marine environment through policies that promote conservation and sustainable use of marine-living resources. It also aims to restore and maintain productive capacity and biodiversity of the marine environment and protect human health.

The projected increase in demand for high-end fisheries products provides an opportunity for substantial increases in aquaculture production.

South Africa's commercial fishery industry is valued at some R2 billion annually and employs about 27 000 people.

Total annual fish production from marine fisheries exceeds 600 000 t. Given the market trends, South Africa's environmental potential for aquaculture and the state of development of its industry, production could grow from 3 543 t (worth R218 million) to more than 90 000 t (worth R2,4 billion) over the next 10 to 20 years.

The fishing industry has an annual turnover of about R80 billion and contributes 0,5% to the GDP.

As of July 2010, the commercial harvesting of abalone was opened to allow fishing communities to derive a livelihood from the sea. The opening came with multifaceted conditions to ensure that social, economic and security plans and structures were in place to support communities, especially along the entire south-western and west coast of South Africa.

With the implementation of the Abalone Recovery Strategy, abalone farming is set to increase significantly, relieving pressure on wild abalone stocks.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries undertook a comprehensive review in 2010 in support of the sustainable use of the marine resources and as part of the process of developing the Integrated National Fisheries Development Plan to address the challenges of sustainability. This plan is also expected to support the departmental action plan towards achieving the Industrial Policy Action Plan.

The department supports the adoption of sustainable aquaculture that benefits the poor, through its commitment to investing in infrastructure and skills transfer to the amount of R150 million over the 2010/13 period.

Fisheries management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the Working for Fisheries Programme.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the "eyes and ears" of government.

Since re-opening the abalone fishery in July 2010, by mid-2011 with the support of communities and law-enforcement agencies, 25 boats and 20 vehicles used in abalone poaching had been seized and 240 arrests made. After many years of decline through poaching, the West Coast rock lobster stocks are showing signs of recovery.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators as well as small-scale, artisanal or even recreational fishermen and women. In its efforts to regulate and support women, the department had finalised the Small-Scale Fisheries Policy, through which it aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture is a growing source of food in many countries. The department developed the national Aquaculture Development Programme and Strategic Framework, which is aimed at creating jobs and wealth, as well as increasing productivity and sustainability in the fisheries and aquaculture sectors.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries initiated the Aquaculture and Rural Livelihoods Programme, which is formulated to assist in developing provincial aquaculture strategic plans, revitalising state hatcheries and training aquaculture extension officers. The department initiated a regional capacity-building programme for state veterinarians at Rhodes University in the Eastern Cape in Aquatic Animal Diseases Diagnostics and Management.

In 2011, the department launched a state-owned abalone hatchery costing R15 million, through which 200 jobs will be created. In collaboration with the Chinese Government, the department is finalising the Gariep Dam Aquaculture Demonstration Centre in the Free State.

A financial commitment of R6 million had been made for the construction phase of the project, and another R40 million had been committed by the Chinese Government.

The development of the Qolora Aquaculture Development Zone (ADZ) in the Eastern Cape had been proposed to facilitate growth of the subsector. This area is situated approximately 60 km from East London. In 2011, the department committed R20 million to this project.

The Hamburg area of the Eastern Cape has also been identified as a specific location where intervention is required. The department invested R10 million towards the revitalisation of an oyster farm in the area and the establishment of a kob (kabeljou) fish-farming project, which is expected to produce up to 10 tons of fish a year.

The local community will benefit through the transfer of technology, skills development and the creation of approximately 60 direct jobs.

The department submitted a proposal to the Western Cape Provincial Department of Human Settlements to facilitate the development of the Silwerstroom Strand ADZ. Consultation with the custodian of the land had taken place and a Letter of Consent obtained. The department commissioned an environmental impact assessment as a final stage before implementation in June 2011.

Acknowledgements

Agricultural Research Council
BuaNews
Business Day
C.A.P.E. (*www.capeaction.org.za*)
Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011
Forestry South Africa
Sowetan

http://afis.meraka.org.za
http://land.pwv.gov.za
www.agis.agri.co.za
www.brassicastoday.com
www.bizcommunity.com
www.brandsouthafrica.com
www.buanews.gov.za
www.daff.gov.za
www.fin24.com
www.freshplaza.com
www.gov.za
www.info.gov.za
www.komatilandforests.co.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.mediaclub.com
www.myfundi.co.za
www.nda.agric.za
www.news24.com
www.capehoneybushtea.co.za
www.sasa.co.za
www.safcol.co.za
www.sawis.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.trees.co.za

Suggested reading

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.
Binswanger-Mkhize, HP, Bourguignon, C and Van den Brink, R (eds). 2009. *Agricultural Land Redistribution: Toward Greater Consensus.* Washington, DC: World Bank.
Economic Review of South African Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.
Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa.* Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.
Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.
Market Risk, Water Management and the Multiplier Effects of Irrigation Agriculture with Reference to the Northern Cape. 2008. Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
The National Agricultural Directory = Die Nasionale Landbougids. 2009. (South Africa): Rainbow SA.
Wenhold, F. 2008. *Nutritional Status of South Africans: Links to Agriculture and Water.* Gezina: WRC.

Arts and culture

South Africa's arts and culture are as varied as one might expect from such a diverse nation. The blend of local cultures and diverse influences make for a melting pot of creativity that never disappoints.

As custodians of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage, the Department of Arts and Culture aims to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

Funding

The department allocated its budget for 2011/12 as follows:

- administration: R178,757 million
- performing arts, including arts-related institutions: R549,379 million
- National Language Service (NLS), including the Pan South African Language Board (PanSalb): R101,570 million
- cultural development: R180,717 million
- heritage, which includes the heritage institutions and museums: R763,702 million
- National Archives and Language Services, including conditional grants for community libraries: R694,452 million.

Arts and culture summit

A national consultative summit on the contribution of the arts, culture and heritage sector to the economy was held in April 2011 and took a number of far-reaching resolutions. The aim of the summit was to craft a new growth plan to enhance the cultural industries' contribution to the national effort to grow the economy and create jobs.

The more than 1 000 delegates at the summit resolved that the following be established:

- an art bank
- a public art programme
- cultural precincts in all provinces.

A tour company is expected to be established to support exhibitions and performances to tour locally and internationally.

The summit also resolved to continue the implementation of the National Liberation Heritage Route (LHR) Project, which will tell the stories of the country's liberation struggle.

The summit committed to initiating a process that will lead to the establishment of the National Skills Academy for the Arts.

The academy will pool all the activities of the various arts training organisations in the country. It is planned as a centre of excellence responsible for developing the best talent in South Africa to compete successfully on the world stage.

The department is also working with the Department of Basic Education to include visual and performing arts in the curriculum.

The departments will identify and nurture artistic talent at an early age, promote the arts as a career of choice and develop an appreciation of the arts among learners.

By June 2011, the implementation of some of the resolutions of the summit was well underway. This included the establishment of multistakeholder task teams and ongoing discussions with provinces and municipalities to ensure joint implementation of these resolutions.

Arts and culture organisations and institutions

National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC, a statutory body that aims to bring equity to heritage promotion and conservation, was officially constituted on 26 February 2004 in terms of the NHC Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999). The council creates an environment for preserving and promoting South African heritage.

In 2011, the NHC hosted provincial summits on the LHR Project to ensure full participation and the contribution of all communities and organisations towards the identification of liberation routes throughout the country.

The LHR Project is a process of identifying liberation milestones around the country that will be recognised as liberation routes – a network of sites reflecting South Africa's liberation struggle and the road to democracy. These sites will be listed with the World Heritage Committee of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco).

South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra)

The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999), established Sahra to provide for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations.

Sahra has established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to an approved body or individual, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:
- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- underwater cultural heritage, including historical shipwrecks.

In July 2011, Sahra declared the Voortrekker Monument, situated outside Pretoria, a national heritage site.

The monument was constructed between 1937 and 1949, and commemorates the pioneer history of southern Africa and the Afrikaner. This sight is architecturally renowned for its art deco style designed by well-known South African architect, Gerhard Moerdijk.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC is an official government body established in terms of the SAGNC Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998), to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty or jurisdiction acquired by treaty.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission recommended the renaming of geographical features as a form of symbolic reparations to address South Africa's past, as many of the existing names of geographical features were not reflective of South Africa's society and its quest for national unity.

The following principles are adhered to:
- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names should generally be avoided:
  - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
  - names of places in other countries, and names of countries
  - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
  - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
  - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
  - names of living persons.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)

The NAC, formed in 1997, is a statutory public entity with the Department of Arts and Culture as its executive authority.

The institution is subject to a complex governance framework that includes the NAC Act, 1997 (Act 56 of 1997), and the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

The NAC is governed by a council whose members are appointed by the Minister of Arts and Culture after a process of public nominations. The current council was appointed in March 2011.

The mandate of the NAC is set out in its founding legislation as follows:
- to provide and encourage the provision of opportunities for persons to practise the arts
- to promote the appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts
- to promote the general application of the arts in the community
- to foster the expression of a national identity and consciousness by means of the arts
- to uphold and promote the right of any person to freedom in the practice of the arts
- to give the historically disadvantaged such additional help and resources as are required to give them greater access to the arts
- to address historical imbalances in the provision of infrastructure for the promotion of the arts
- to promote and facilitate national and international liaison between individuals and institutions in respect of the arts
- to develop and promote the arts and encourage excellence in this regard.

In 2010/11, the NAC met its legal mandate of disbursing 75% of its allocated budget to projects and organisations, and bursaries to individuals and institutions across all the seven arts disciplines.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa is a not-for-profit company whose primary aim is to promote mutually beneficial and sustainable business-arts partnerships that will benefit society as a whole.

Basa was founded in 1997 as a joint initiative between the then Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology and the private sector. Basa has peer agencies in the United Kingdom and Australia, and has over 160 corporate members.

Its mission is to ensure the relevance and sustainability of the arts in South Africa by providing expertise in developing partnerships between business and the arts.

The annual *Business Day* Awards pay tribute to those businesses that are actively making a difference by sponsoring arts and culture events throughout the country.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest funding agency in South Africa. It was established to secure financial and other resources for arts, culture and heritage; and to promote the needs and role of the sector in the public domain. Its vision is to establish a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the development of arts, culture and heritage in South Africa.

The ACT is responsible for:

- developing and promoting arts, culture and heritage in general
- advancing artists and cultural and heritage practitioners
- promoting arts, cultural and heritage education
- constructing facilities and creating and developing an infrastructure for these purposes.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including, but not limited to, arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

Several capacity-building and sustainability initiatives have been supported by the ACT Building Blocks Programme.

The annual ACT Awards recognise the significant contributions made by communities, artists, administrators, educators and journalists towards the development and advancement of arts and culture in South Africa.

Community art centres and other cultural organisations

More than 160 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres. They operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

The centres also vary from craft centres to community halls and theatres. Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development.

The national anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

The Department of Arts and Culture endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

The annual ACT Awards recognise the significant contributions made by communities, artists, administrators, educators and journalists towards the development and advancement of arts and culture in South Africa.

Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry, located in the Department of Arts and Culture, is responsible for registering coats of arms; badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order; registering names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities; and promoting national symbols. The Bureau of Heraldry is governed by the Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962), as amended.

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are the:

- national animal: springbok
- national bird: blue crane
- national fish: galjoen
- national flower: king protea
- national tree: real yellowwood.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika)*. *The Call of South Africa* was written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918.

The music was composed by Rev ML de Villiers in 1921. *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* was composed by a Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

A focal point of the coat of arms is the indigenous secretary bird with its uplifted wings, crowned with an image of the rising sun. The sun symbolises a life-giving force, and represents the flight of darkness and the triumph of discovery, knowledge and understanding of things that have been hidden. It also illuminates the new life that is coming into being. An indigenous South African flower, the protea, is placed below the bird. It represents beauty, the aesthetic harmony of the different cultures and South Africa flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat symbolise the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant, depicted in pairs to represent man and woman, also represent wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

The shield, placed in the centre, signifies the protection of South Africans from one generation to the next. The spear and a knobkierie above it are representative of the defence of peace rather than the pursuit of war. This shield of peace, which also brings to mind an African drum, conveys the message of a people imbued with a love of culture. Its upper part is a shield imaginatively represented by the protea.

Contained within the shield are some of the earliest representations of humanity. Those depicted were the very first inhabitants of the land, namely the Khoisan people.

These figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art. The motto on the coat of arms, *!ke e:/xarra//ke*, written in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National orders

National orders are the highest awards the country, through its President, can bestow on

National orders and symbols


The Order of the Baobab


The Order of Luthuli


The Order of Mendi for Bravery


The Order of Mapungubwe


The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo


The Order of Ikhamanga


National bird: blue crane


National flower: king protea


National fish: galjoen


National tree: real yellowwood


The coat of arms


National animal: springbok

individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities. They are presented on 27 April, Freedom Day:

- the Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement
- the Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service
- the Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa
- the Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution
- the Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport
- the Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for South Africa's diverse peoples and their cultures. These are: Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, SiSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

National Language Service

The NLS is located in the Department of Arts and Culture. It is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations on multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

The winners of the PanSalb 2010/11 Multilingualism Awards were announced at a ceremony held at the Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg in March 2011. The awards recognise individuals and organisations which actively promote and preserve South Africa's 11 official languages as well as the Khoi, San, Nama and Sign languages.

The Lifetime Achievement Award went to Pixley ka Isaka Seme, a founder and president of the African National Congress.

The Department of Arts and Culture launched the Multilingualism Campaign in February 2010, recognising the national wealth in linguistic diversity and the importance of multilingualism in heritage, culture, education, science and technology.

Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities as well as training in language practice.

In promoting multilingualism, the department has partnered with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research's (CSIR) Meraka Institute on the Lwazi Project to:

- develop a multilingual telephone-based information system aimed at improving communication between government and communities
- facilitate access to reliable information whatever the location of citizens (whether living in an urban or remote rural area), whatever their level of literacy and whatever their language of choice.

More than R14 million has been allocated for this project, which will target mainly underdeveloped parts of the country.

Pan South African Language Board

PanSalb is a constitutional organisation that was established in 1995 to support and safeguard the language rights of all South Africans.

In terms of Section 4 of the PanSalb Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995), the board is an independent organ of state, subject only to the Constitution and its founding legislation, and must perform its duties without fear, favour or prejudice.

PanSalb is mandated to, among other things:

- make recommendations with regard to any proposed or existing legislation, practice or policy dealing directly or indirectly with language matters at any level of government
- promote awareness of multilingualism as a national resource
- promote the development of previously marginalised languages

- initiate studies and research aimed at promoting and creating conditions for the development and use of:
  - all the official languages of South Africa
  - the Khoi, Nama and San languages
  - Sign Language
- promote and ensure respect for all other languages commonly used by communities in South Africa
- facilitate cooperation with language-planning agencies outside South Africa
- establish provincial language committees and national language bodies to advise it on any language matter affecting a province or a specific language
- establish national lexicography units.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in culture

The Investing in Culture Programme promotes job creation, skills development and economic empowerment, supporting business start-ups and poverty-alleviation projects.

Funds are transferred to participants in the programme's projects and are disbursed on the basis of annual business plans and service level agreements between the department and the individual or group contractors.

Legacy projects

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and to celebrate its heritage.

The legacy projects include:

- The Women's Monument: The objective of this project is to commemorate the contribution of the women of South Africa to the struggle for freedom. The monument was unveiled at the Union Buildings in Pretoria on 9 August 2000.
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal: This house has been restored by the Department of Arts and Culture as a museum with a visitors' interpretative centre. The project also involved the unveiling of Chief Luthuli's statue at the KwaDukuza municipal grounds. President-General of the African National Congress (ANC) from December 1952 until his death in 1967, and recipient of the Nobel Peace Prize in 1960, Chief Luthuli was one of the most widely known and respected African leaders of his era.
- The Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project: Following the unveiling of the Ncome Monument and Wall of Remembrance on 16 December 1998, the Ncome Museum was opened on 26 November 1999. The structures honour the role played by the Zulu nation in the war against the Voortrekkers in 1838.
- The Samora Machel Project: The Samora Machel Monument in Mbuzini, Mpumalanga, was unveiled on 19 October 1998. Machel was a Mozambican military commander, revolutionary socialist leader and eventually President of Mozambique. He led the country from independence in 1975 until his death in 1986, when his presidential aircraft crashed in mountainous terrain where the borders of Mozambique, Swaziland and South Africa converge.
- The Nelson Mandela Museum: This museum in the Eastern Cape was opened on 11 February 2000. It comprises a museum in Mthatha, a youth and heritage centre at Qunu and conference facilities in Mvezo. The Mthatha site was temporarily closed for renovations at the end of October 2011. The museum is now operating from the multifaced Qunu site. The upgrade will take 30 months and result in a state-of-the-art museum.
- The Constitution Hill Project: The Old Fort Prison in Hillbrow, Johannesburg, was developed into a multidimensional and multipurpose precinct that houses the Constitutional Court and accommodates various constitutional commissions.
- The Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance in Hankey in the Eastern Cape and the Sarah Baartman Human Rights Memorial in the Western Cape: These centres include a multipurpose space, a library, exhibition spaces, an indigenous garden and a nursery. Baartman (1789 – 1815) was a famous Khoikhoi woman who was displayed around Britain in the 1800s as a "scientific freak" because of her physical features. In 2002, her remains were returned to South Africa.
- The Freedom Park Project: The objective of this project is to establish visible cultural structures that celebrate and commemorate diverse and important South African events, spanning pre-history, colonisation and the struggle for democracy, and ending with a vision for the future.
- The Khoisan Heritage and Culture Institution in Hankey, Kouga Municipality, as part of the

Laduma Ngxokolo, a textile graduate from the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, made the international fashion industry sit up and take notice in 2011.

It all started as a BTech research project – Ngxokolo developed a Xhosa-inspired range of knitwear for *amakrwala*, or new Xhosa initiates.

Before *amakrwala* attend circumcision school, all their clothes are given away, symbolising the end of their boyhood. They must be bought new clothes, including high-quality men's knitwear. Usually these are imported brands, bearing no connection to Xhosa tradition. Seeing a gap, he developed knitwear using only traditional Xhosa designs and colours.

When he entered an international competition initiated by the Society of Dyes and Colourists, Ngxokolo won the national leg of the competition, earning him a trip to London, some prize money and the Veronica Bell Trophy. In London, he competed against eight other countries, walking away with first prize.

Khoisan Legacy Project: Sites under consideration include the Kat River valley settlement, which rose in rebellion against British colonialism in 1850; Adam Kok's grave in Griqualand (he was a leader of the Griqua people in South Africa); the graves at Kinderlê, where 32 Khoi children were killed in 1804; Wonderwerk Cave; Phillipolis; Ratelgat, owned by the Griqua Ratelgat Development Trust; the sites of Griqua churches and other institutions in the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Western Cape; as well as battle sites associated with the war of 1799 to 1803.

- The Dulcie September Legacy Project: This aims to acknowledge the heroes who sacrificed their lives for the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa. The project also highlights the contribution of anti-apartheid activist Dulcie September in fighting cultural intolerance and building a democratic, non-racial, non-sexist and cohesive society.
- The Matola Raid Memorial Project: In February 2011, the 30th anniversary of the 1981 Matola Raid in Mozambique was celebrated. The highlight of this event was the signing of a memorandum of understanding with the Government of Mozambique and the unveiling of the design of the Matola Raid Monument and Interpretation Centre.
- The Bhambatha Project: The aim is to construct a statue of Chief Bhambatha and a plaque of heroes and heroines to commemorate their contribution in resisting the poll tax of 1906 imposed by the colonial government.
- The Albert Luthuli Annual Memorial Lecture, which is funded by the Department of Arts and Culture and held at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

Other projects underway are the rehabilitation and development of the Lock Street Women's Prison in East London into a women's museum and rehabilitation centre; the development of the former apartheid state security farm Vlakplaas into a heritage memorial site; and the OR Tambo Memorial Project in Mbizana in the Eastern Cape.

Indigenous Music and Oral History

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand. The mandate for these universities is not only to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, but also to identify and collect all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions. These showcase the diverse indigenous music and dance in South Africa.

In October 2011, the Annual National Oral History Conference was held in North West in partnership with the North West Archives and the Oral History Association of South Africa, under the theme *Past Distortions, Present Realities; Reconstructions and Reconfigurations of Oral History*. This gathering enabled practitioners to share knowledge of South Africa's past that contributed to nation-building and encouraged the establishment of community oral history groups.

Heritage Month celebrations

The Department of Arts and Culture is responsible for coordinating the Heritage Month celebrations in September every year. Heritage Month promotes and celebrates various aspects of South African heritage.

The provinces host heritage activities during Heritage Month. These culminate in National Heritage Day on 24 September.

The theme for 2011's celebrations was *Celebrating the Heroes and Heroines of the Liberation Struggle in South Africa*.

Education and training

Training is critical for the development of arts and culture to achieve both the developmental and economic potential of the sector.

The creative industries form part of the Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing, Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta).

The Mappp-Seta, in partnership with the departments of arts and culture and of labour, the NAC and the National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), initiated the Creative Research Education and Training Enterprise South Africa (Create SA) Strategic Project to develop a comprehensive on-the-job training framework for the creative industries. The project is funded by the National Skills Fund and the Department of Arts and Culture, and focuses on people who otherwise might not have had access to training opportunities.

The Artists in Schools Project places artists with a flair for education and teaching within schools that wish to offer arts curricula.

In 2011, the Department of Arts and Culture completed an audit on skills in the heritage sector. The audit identified critical, priority and scarce skills in the sector, as well as a number of challenges that impede skills development. The audit findings have been used to develop the Heritage Human Resources Development Strategy. The strategy is a medium- and long-term framework for skills development in the sector.

Cultural tourism

Cultural tourism is one of the most rapidly growing sectors of the multibillion-Rand international tourism industry, and is an area in which South Africa is well placed to compete. South Africa's natural heritage, measured by the value of ecotourism, contributes R21 billion a year to the economy.

Professional and innovative museums, galleries and theatres are key attractions for cultural tourists.

Cultural villages

In recent years, many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people. (See Chapter 22: *Tourism*.)

These projects also offer insight into rituals in rural areas, as well as excursions into the urban and township milieux that give South Africa its defining features.

These include Khaya Lendaba near Port Elizabeth; the Basotho Cultural Village situated in the Golden Gate Highlands National Park, Free State; the Makhosini Cultural Village and Tourism Initiative in the Valley of Kings at Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal; the Lesedi Cultural Village near Johannesburg; Tlholego in Magaliesburg; the KoMjekejeke Cultural Village, north of Pretoria; the Mapoch Ndebele Village in Winterveld, north-west of Pretoria; the Gaabo Motho Cultural Village in Mabopane; the Rainbow Cultural Village, west of the Hartbeespoort Dam, North West; Botshabelo in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; and Shangana in Hazyview, Mpumalanga.

Cultural industries

South Africa's cultural and creative industry is a good revenue generator, and still has great potential to produce more and contribute to job creation.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries.

The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

In September 2011, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Mr Paul Mashatile, announced the National Liberation Heritage Route Project, to honour the women and men who fought against apartheid.

Among other things, R20 million has been set aside for the construction of a museum at OR Tambo's home in the Eastern Cape, while R50 million has been set aside for Ngquza Hill, where the Pondoland revolt and massacre of 1960 took place.

In Mvezo, the birthplace of Nelson Mandela, the Department of Arts and Culture is building a museum and a proposal for funding of R70 million has been developed. Roads and other infrastructure in the areas around museums and monuments will also be upgraded.

The restoration of Liliesleaf, the farm where many of the Rivonia Trial members were seized during a 1963 police raid, has been completed, while work on the Steve Biko Centre in King Williams Town in the Eastern Cape is also underway.

The department is also looking at setting up museums and sites across the border in countries such as Mozambique, Angola, Tanzania and Zambia.

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnerships with significant stakeholders to map the cultural industries.

Cabinet has identified the creative and cultural industries as one of the drivers of economic growth and job creation in the implementation of the New Growth Path.

The Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 identifies the cultural industries, in particular the craft sector, music, jewellery production, clothing, leather, footwear and textiles as some of the sectors that will be subjected to focused and significant support by the State.

International relations

The Department of Arts and Culture's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting African heritage.

The department's mandate is to ensure that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and to use artistry as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the United Kingdom, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the Department of Arts and Culture is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco)

Unesco works to create the conditions for dialogue among civilisations, cultures and peoples, based upon respect for commonly shared values. It is through this dialogue that the world can achieve the global vision of sustainable development, encompassing the observance of human rights, mutual respect and the alleviation of poverty.

Unesco's mission is to contribute to the building of peace, the eradication of poverty, sustainable development and intercultural dialogue through education, the sciences, culture, communication and the sharing of information.

Cultural diplomacy

The Department of Arts and Culture continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

A priority is the finalisation of the policy on cultural diplomacy in partnership with the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.

Among other things, the policy will result in the deployment of cultural attachés in South Africa's diplomatic missions.

Southern African Development Community (SADC) initiative

The Department of Arts and Culture initiated the establishment of the Forum of Directors-General of Culture in the SADC region to implement and monitor the recommendations by the ministers of culture.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF was launched in May 2006 in South Africa to support the effective conservation and management of natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value in Africa.

Heritage sites are catalysts in transforming Africa's image and stimulating socio-economic growth.

The AWHF works in close cooperation with key partners: the AU, Unesco/World Heritage Centre, heritage institutions and economic development organisations.

Africa and the Diaspora

Discussions around a structured relationship between Africa and Africans in the Diaspora to ensure strong beneficial ties are on the agenda of the annual Nairobi Summit of African Ministers of Culture. This partnership presents an opportunity for cultural goods and services from the developing world to access global markets.

The AU Africa and Diaspora Summit is a culmination of efforts to establish sustainable partnerships between Africans on the continent and those in the Diaspora.

Bilateral cooperation

The Department of Arts and Culture has signed a number of cultural agreements and programmes

Celebrated South African playwright Athol Fugard received special honours at the 2011 Tony Awards.

Fugard received a Special Tony Award for Lifetime Achievement in the Theatre. Over the years, he has received six Tony nominations, including four for Best Play, for *Sizwe Banzi is Dead* and *The Island* (1975), *A Lesson from Aloes* (1982), *Master Harold ... and The Boys* (1982) and *Blood Knot* (1986).

of cooperation with foreign-partner countries outside the African continent, including several film co-production treaties.

Arts festivals

A range of arts festivals is held in South Africa annually. These have become popular events, with many of them seeing growing attendance numbers.

South Africa's National Arts Festival is held in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape. In 2011, the festival featured about 2 500 performances of 600 shows on the main and fringe programmes, spanning theatre; dance; opera; cabaret; fine art; craft art; classical music; jazz; poetry readings and lectures. It is one of the most diverse festivals in the world.

The 2011 National Arts Festival saw a 7,45% increase in overall attendance, with 200 771 people attending the various events on offer. This continued the trend of growth over the last seven years.

The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is a vibrant festival for the performing arts, presented mainly, but not exclusively, in Afrikaans. It is held annually in Oudtshoorn in the first quarter of the year. Disciplines include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.

The Arts Alive International Festival, held in Johannesburg, is an annual festival of music, dance, theatre and visual arts. Over the years, Arts Alive has become synonymous with high-quality performances by artists from around the globe.

Heritage-reclamation festivals are also held in communities destroyed by apartheid, such as Vrededorp (Fietas) in Johannesburg.

The Mangaung Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa.

The Aardklop National Arts Festival, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists. The 2011 festival hosted more than 100 productions of which 41 were theatre productions.

Other festivals that attract visitors on both national and international levels are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and Innibos, in Nelspruit.

The Department of Arts and Culture and the NAC support numerous festivals throughout South Africa, including the Cape Town International Jazz Festival, the Port St Johns Festival and the Splashy Fen Music Festival in Durban.

The departments of arts and culture and of tourism have a forum of festival directors to maximise tourism opportunities.

Theatre

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top class.

Apart from early productions, notably the ground-breaking musical *King Kong* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only began to make an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was here that Johannesburg theatregoers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small,

In May 2011, the Handspring Puppet Company's Adrian Kohler and Basil Jones were awarded a special Tony Award for their work in the successful play, *The War Horse.* The play took Broadway by storm and received rave reviews. It also had a successful run at West End.

PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes, Master Harold … and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinatti – Scenes from City Life*, *Call Me Woman*, *Black Dog Inj'emnyana*, *Outers*, *Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa to overseas audiences most effectively during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions enjoy in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

In nurseries such as the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square, Saturday Children's Theatre Workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the National Children's Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events like the Market's Community and Young Writers' Festivals. Many new names are being added to the roll call of South African playwrights such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Xoli Norman, Mondi Mayepu, Heinrich Reisenhofer, Oscar Petersen, Mark Lottering, Nazli George, Craig Freimond and Rajesh Gopie.

In January 2011, the Ministry of Arts and Culture launched the New Plays Writing Programme at the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. The programme is a partnership between the Department of Arts and Culture, the university, the British Council and Sustained Theatre.

The objective of the programme is to equip a new generation of South African writers with skills that will enable them to develop dramatic work that resonates with the challenges of the world around them. The programme comprises a series of playwriting workshops, the development of new plays and the production of selected work, both locally and internationally.

Music

South Africa's music industry was worth around R1,7 billion in sales and ranked 17th in the world in 2007.

South Africa is the 25th-largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwela music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined, while the country has a rich choral tradition and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally. Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

In this industry, the department has solid foundations to build on. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Basic Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The Department of Arts and Culture funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Midem 2011

The *Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale* (Midem) is an international music market, held in Cannes, France. The fair, which has been held annually since 1967, brings together major players in the international music industry, including musicians, businesspeople, members of the media and cultural policy-makers.

In 2011, the Department of Arts and Culture, in conjunction with the Department of Trade and Industry, again supported the South African Music

> The Cape Town International Jazz Festival contributed more than R498,6 million to the economy of Cape Town in 2011. As a result, South Africa's gross domestic product benefited by R761 million, and 2 700 jobs were created for staff and service-providers.

Pretty Yende, a graduate of the South African College of Music, won the prestigious Operalia Competition in Moscow, Russia, in July 2011.

Operalia took place in three stages with 40 contestants selected to compete during the quarter- and semi-finals from 18 to 23 July. Only 13 contestants made it to the finals on 24 July – these included past winners, Erwin Schrott and Rolando Villazon.

Founded in 1993 to give young, early-career singers exposure on an international scale, Operalia is held in a different city each year. The 2011 edition was the 19th.

Yende, the only African to compete, won the US$30 000 (R200 000) first prize for Best Female Singer and the Audience Favourite Prize.

Recording Industry's participation at Midem, which took place from 22 to 26 January 2011.

The event was attended by 850 delegates and 3 120 companies from 77 countries. A number of local music industry experts, stakeholders and learners also attended.

South Africa was also offered an opportunity to showcase its own talent once more at the 2012 Midem edition.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The Department of Arts and Culture continues to host the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, which has become a key music event on the African continent.

The exhibition is aimed at promoting collaboration among players from both the private and public sectors.

The annual event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 17th MTN Samas were held in Johannesburg in May 2011. More than 5 000 guests and members of the public attended the ceremony. Winners included:

- Album of the Year: Liquideep – *Fabrics of the Heart*
- Newcomer of the Year: Locnville – *Sun in my Pocket*
- Male Artist of the Year: Professor – *University of Kalawa Jazmee*
- Female Artist of the Year: Thandiswa Mazwai – *Dance of the Forgotten – Free Live In Concert*
- Best Music Video of the Year: The Parlotones – *The Stars Fall Down*
- International Achievement Award: Die Antwoord
- Lifetime Achievement Award: Lance James, Sipho Gumede
- Best Pop Album: English: Jax Panik – *I am Jax Panik*
- Best Pop Album: Afrikaans: Juanita du Plessis – *Engel van my Hart*
- Best Popular Classical Album: Peter Martens and Luis Magalhães – *Beethoven Cello Sonatas*
- MTN Best-Selling Mobile Music Download: DJ Mzi featuring DJ Cleo – *Nababantwana*
- Best Reggae Album: Jah Seed – *No Retreat No Surrender*
- Best Afrikaans Traditional Music Album: Mooiplaas Boere Orkes – *Boere Lekkerkry*
- Best Adult Contemporary Album: English: Freshlyground – *Radio Africa*
- Best Alternative Music Album: English: Yoav – *A Foolproof Escape Plan*
- Best Global Dance Album: Goldfish – *Get Busy Living.*

Dance

Dance has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Music and dance are pulling in new audiences and a number of home-grown productions, particularly those aimed at the popular market, have taken South Africa and, in some cases, the world, by storm.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The Wits Theatre (part of the University of the Witwatersrand) is also a popular dance venue. It is home to the annual First National Bank (FNB) Dance Umbrella.

The Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform, which includes performances of youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professional practitioners.

Foreign dance companies also show their work, often with assistance from their respective diplomatic missions.

The FNB Dance Umbrella 2011, held in association with the NAC and the Market Theatre, ran from 24 February to 6 March.

There were performances at various Johannesburg theatres: the University of Johannesburg Arts Centre in Auckland Park, the Wits Theatre, Wits Campus, Wits Downstairs, The Dance Factory, The Nunnery and Goethe on Main.

The festival featured choreographers and companies from all over South Africa, and presented work ranging from community-based/youth groups, young up-and-coming choreographers and newly commissioned work from South African artists, to international companies.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country.

The largest is the South African Ballet Theatre (SABT), based in Johannesburg.

The SABT celebrated 10 years of existence in February 2011. Marking this celebration, the SABT's two full-length seasons in 2011 included productions of *Romeo and Juliet* and *Sleeping Beauty*, as well as its annual year-end concert.

Visual arts

The visual arts sector has a turnover of nearly R2 billion a year. An estimated 17 000 people work in the sector.

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities (such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape) display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary work.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest. These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

Corporate collections of national interest include those of Standard Bank, Absa and the MTN cellular phone network.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects that promote the visual arts. These range from arts publications and women-empowerment programmes to national and international exhibitions and infrastructure funding.

The Department of Arts and Culture's art collection has been restored and the works are displayed in the building occupied by the department.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

National and international photographic exhibitions and competitions are held in South Africa annually, and various national awards are bestowed on local photographers.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage to which all the cultural groups in the country have contributed. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

Today, this is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and

South African Jodi Bieber's iconic and shocking *Time* magazine cover portrait of 18-year-old Afghani girl Bibi Aisha, whose face was mutilated by her Taliban husband, was selected as the World Press Photo of 2010.

Bieber, who previously won eight World Press Photo awards, is only the second South African photographer to win the highest honour in the prestigious contest.

The portrait of Aisha, which featured on the cover of the 1 August 2010 issue of *Time*, was also awarded first prize in the Portraits Singles Category of the 2011 contest.

South African paintings broke three records at an auction in London in March 2011, according to auctioneers Bonhams. A painting by Irma Stern was sold for R34 million, one by Alexis Preller for R8,4 million and one by Gerard Sekoto for R6,7 million. The sale total was just under R101,2 million and was expected to end closer to R112,4 million with the after sales.

public buildings, to modern commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities. Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value. More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit private organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in the country in the distant past.

Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in South Africa, which is also the largest of its type in the world.

The mountains, especially the Drakensberg range and those in the Cape, are home to a myriad of fascinating rock-art panels.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space. Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoin fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone some 10 200 years old, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Crafts

The craft sector contributes R11 billion annually to gross domestic product (GDP) and employs approximately 38 000 people.

The crafts industry can be used as a catalyst for rural economic development and can create opportunities for expanded participation in the economy, especially by women and young people.

The Vhutsila a vhu Tibiwi Art and Craft Gallery is a dream come true for the ideals of skills development and the preservation of heritage and the indigenous knowledge system in the Vhembe district, Limpopo.

Design

The Department of Arts and Culture has put in place several initiatives to improve product design and the use of computer-aided design (CAD).

These include:

- a partnership with South African Fashion Week on developmental initiatives to address the Second Economy
- established designers facilitating workshops to unearth new talent and fuse design with craft
- the National Product Development Centre at the CSIR, which operates within a national framework, optimising the contributions of service-providers throughout the country in the field of design technology
- the CAD initiative at the CSIR, which is linked to the technology station at the Free State University of Technology and similar institutions in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape

In 2011, Duduzile Cynthia Jele won the Commonwealth Writers' Prize (Africa Region) with her debut novel, *Happiness is a Four Letter Word*.

Lauren Beukes received the Arthur C Clark Award for her book, *Zoo City*, beating some well-known international best-selling authors.

Cape Town hosted the 29th International Publishers Association Publishers Congress from 12 to 14 June 2012 in the week preceding the sixth Cape Town Book Fair.

- the Cape Craft and Design Institute
- the awarding of design learnerships through Create SA to assist and support emerging designers
- the annual Design Indaba Conference and Expo held in Cape Town in February.

The indaba is regarded as one of the premier design events in the world. The expo is a gallery, marketplace, school and theatre, featuring the finest original South African design, covering everything from homeware and jewellery to architecture, fashion, film, multimedia and graphic design.

The 2011 Design Indaba attracted 379 exhibitors and some 38 000 visitors. It contributed R261 million to GDP, up from R232 million in 2010 and R191 million in 2009.

Literature

The South African book sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect across the world.

The Department of Arts and Culture is committed to the preservation, development and promotion of South African literature.

Its strategic objective is to promote the culture of reading and writing and to develop a sustainable book industry that supports the equitable development of all South African languages.

The total net turnover of the book publishing industry in 2007 was estimated at R3,2 billion. More than 16 000 authors earn an estimated R308 million in royalties. The publishing industry employs about 3 000 individuals full-time and 2 400 freelancers.

More than 7 000 people are employed in the printing industry.

The pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish.

The establishment of the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), which was launched in June 2007, has created a platform for the book industry to develop an integrated growth strategy. Among other accomplishments, the SABDC has been able to consolidate industry indicators that are fundamental to the development of the sector. One of the major projects of the SABDC is the development of the Draft Framework for the National Book Policy to serve as a legislative framework to guide growth and development strategies in the book sector.

Magazines and literary journals have always played a pivotal role in the development of South African literary contours. In the recent past, a number of literary magazines and journals have emerged and provide regular publishing space for both seasoned and budding writers.

The South African Literary Awards include categories such as the Literary Lifetime Achievement Award, the National Poet Laureate Prize, the K Sello Duiker Award for Young Novelists, the Literary Journalism Award and many other categories. Other awards include the M-Net Awards and the BTA/Anglo Platinum Short Story Award.

In 2010, the Department of Arts and Culture, in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), undertook to reprint various out-of-print books that are considered classics in indigenous African languages.

In December 2010, the department launched 20 additional titles as part of this initiative.

It is continuing with the Indigenous Languages Publishing Programme, a partnership with the SABDC, to produce new material in the nine previously marginalised indigenous languages.

South African crime-fiction writer Deon Meyer's *Thirteen Hours* won the prestigious American Barry Prize for Best Thriller of 2011.

The book, originally published in Afrikaans, was nominated in the Best Thriller Category alongside works such as Vince Flynn's *American Assassin* and Charles Charters' *Bolt Action*.

The Barry Prize, presented by America's top crime-fiction magazine *Deadly Pleasures,* is named after the book critic Barry Gardner. The winners were announced at the Bouchercon 2011, a crime-fiction conference held in St Louis, Missouri.

The programme offers publishing opportunities to emerging writers and support to independent small publishers.

By June 2011, the programme had produced titles such as *A Hi Fambe Munghaname* (Xitsonga), *Tikhatsi Tegugcina* (isiSwati) *Ziyodlula Izinsizwa* (isiZulu) and *Boiteko Ba Ka* (Sesotho).

The Department of Arts and Culture, in collaboration with the SABDC, established the very first National Book Week (NBW) with resounding success in September 2010.

With government's support of this platform, the book sector and civil society have established a dynamic partnership for the promotion of the culture of reading and writing. NBW in 2011 was celebrated from 5 to 10 September throughout the country.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports the *Baobab Literary Journal* with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals held annually in Durban. These also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WorldFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages.

Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English literary museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature. The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

Film

The first ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916 when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg, and the studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922.

In February 2011, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Mr Paul Mashatile, launched the French Film Festival in Johannesburg.

As signatory to the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity, South Africa will continue to support initiatives such as the French Film Festival in South Africa, whose purpose is to promote diversity in the fields of arts and culture.

The festival is also part of ongoing efforts to strengthen ties between the South African and French film industries. It offers film-makers and producers from both countries an opportunity to exchange ideas, learn from each other and identify opportunities for collaboration.

The Department of Arts and Culture in South Africa and the French Ministry of Culture and Communication signed a film co-production treaty in May 2010.

When access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, the so-called 30-year lull began, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans film-makers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The local film industry has matured and has earned international recognition. The film *Tsotsi* won an Academy Award in 2006 in the category Best Foreign Language Film. In 2009, the sci-fi hit *District Nine* was nominated for an Oscar for Best Film.

The South African film and television industry is valued at around R12 billion a year and creates direct and indirect jobs for more than 30 000 people.

There was an estimated 20% increase in the number of bed nights used by film producers in Cape Town in the 2010/11 summer season compared with the previous summer. Most came from Britain and Europe (Germany, Italy, Spain and the Scandinavian countries), but also from the United States of America (USA) and, increasingly, India.

By the third quarter of the 2010/11 financial year, 3 793 permits had been issued for, among other productions, South African, Italian, Dutch, US, British and Indian productions.

The National Film and Video Foundation was established to develop and promote the film and video industry in South Africa. It provides for and encourages the creation of opportunities for people from disadvantaged communities to participate in the industry. The foundation also promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry, and

South African literary classic *Jock of the Bushveld* was turned into the country's first 3D animation film and featured the voices of, among others, Bryan Adams and global peace icon Desmond Tutu.

The film, which opened in 2011 in southern Africa, is based on the 1907 bestseller by Percy Fitzpatrick, who details his true-life bush adventures during the 1880s gold rush with his pup Jock, which became a national icon.

The film drew top names, with the narrator "Fitz" voiced by Donald Sutherland and Oscar-winner Helen Hunt playing Jock's mother. South Africa's singer Johnny Clegg and English lyricist Tim Rice worked on the music.

addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure skills and resources in the industry.

In 2010, the Department of Arts and Culture supported the NFVF with a R10-million grant to set up cooperatives in rural areas and townships that focus on taking cinemas to the people, and developing skills in areas related to film production.

Through the NFVF, in 2010, the Department of Arts and Culture trained 142 writers, scriptwriters, commissioning editors and producers.

A revised rebate for foreign and local film and television production was launched in March 2008.

The film and television production incentive comprises the Location Film and Television Production Scheme and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Scheme. The incentive is intended to increase local content generation and improve location competitiveness for filming in South Africa. These programmes paid out R209 million to 44 projects in 2009.

In the past, South Africa's tax rebate programme was restricted to R20 million per project. From October 2011, there is no limit on the tax refunds productions can claim. Any international production that qualifies for the scheme can claim the 15% tax rebate on the entire local spend for its South African shoot. Foreign productions still need to qualify for the tax reimbursement by adhering to a list of requirements. A foreign production must shoot in South Africa for a minimum of four weeks so that at least half of the film's principle photography makes up the final product. A minimum spend of R12 million has been set in place for foreign productions, including feature films, mini-series, TV-movies, documentaries, long-running dramas and animation.

In July 2011, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Mr Paul Mashatile, opened a new cinema in KwaMashu, Durban. The KwaMashu Cinema is a pilot project led by the Department of Arts and Culture and will precede the national roll-out of state-of-the-art cinema equipment for viewing by the public.

The project is part of the department's efforts to stimulate appreciation for film products and to promote the culture of movie-going in communities.

The project is expected to contribute to the growth and sustainability of the local film industry by bringing film products closer to communities, thus strengthening efforts aimed at audience development and increasing demand, especially for local film products.

The department, through the NFVF, was allocated R10 million in 2010/11 for the roll-out of this project throughout the country.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit called Cinema Nouveau with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The FPB was established by the Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), to:

- regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by means of classification, the imposition of age restrictions and giving consumer advice
- make punishable the exploitive use of children in pornographic publications, films or on the Internet.

The board also alerts the public, through age restrictions and consumer advice, about the frequency and intensity of these classifiable elements in a particular film.

Any person who distributes or exhibits a film or interactive computer game in South Africa must first register with the board as a distributor or exhibitor of films or interactive games.

Any film intended for distribution or exhibition must first be submitted to the board for classification in terms of the Film and Publications Act, 1996.

To monitor distributors on-site and to ensure that films are distributed in compliance with the provisions of the Act, the board has appointed compliance monitors. They advise distributors and exhibitors of films and interactive games of the Act's requirements and ensure that all products display the classification reference number, age restriction, consumer advice and such other conditions as may have been imposed by the board. The Film and Publications Act, 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

Child pornography is defined as any image, however created, or any description of a person, real or simulated, who is depicted or described as being under the age of 18 years, engaged in sexual conduct; participating in or assisting another person to participate in sexual conduct; or showing or describing the body, or parts of the body of such a person in a manner that amounts to sexual exploitation.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported on the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

More than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died in the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions (national museums that have framework autonomy and are managed by their own councils), and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the Department of Arts and Culture. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa consist of the National Cultural History Museum (NCHM) and its former satellite museums (Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum and the Coert Steynberg Museum), the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town consist of the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the Department of Arts and Culture declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).

In 2011, Xoliswa Sithole won the British Film and Television Award for the documentary *The Orphans of Nkandla*. Sithole was nominated in two categories.

She was also the winner of the Peabody Award in the United States of America.

Freedom Park opened the doors of its museum *//hapo* (meaning "dream" in Khoisan) to the public in June 2010. Other elements include a vast wall commemmorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom; an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines; a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity; a symbolic resting place for those who have died; and the story of southern Africa's 3,6 billion years of history.

Apart from the declared museums that fall under the department, there are other museums administered by central government departments or research councils.

Notable examples are the Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria); the Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria); the South African Air Force Museum at Zwartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban; the museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the Department of Arts and Culture but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, and in the following:

- Durban Local History Museum
- Museum Africa, Johannesburg.

The following art galleries report to the Department of Arts and Culture:

- South African National Gallery, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent. The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The NCHM in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit in Gauteng. This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on their extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg aims to preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. It also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years. Exhibitions in the museum include, among other things, audio-visual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

One of the most common types of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks, outside Pretoria; the Victorian affluence mirrored in Melrose House, Pretoria; and the Kruger House Museum in Pretoria, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaanse Republiek.

Simpler architectural variations have not been neglected, for instance, the pioneer-dwelling in Silverton, Pretoria; and the humble farmhouse at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example Tsongakraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums. The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War-Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives and Records Service functions in terms of the National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives. Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. The provincialisation process has been completed. All nine provinces now run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System (*www.national.archives.gov.za*), which includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs, audiovisual material, etc. The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities. The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme. The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions.

The Act also provides government with a measure of control over private collections. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

In April 2011, South Africa hosted the 67th Federation of International Film Archives Congress and summer school.

The National Film and Video Archives of South Africa was co-opted into the executive of this body to represent the interests of African film archivists.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the Multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the Unesco Memory of the World International Register. This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, a national library for the blind, public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries and higher education (HE) libraries.

The Library and Information Association of South Africa (Liasa) conducts an annual survey of the number of libraries in South Africa.

In 2010, there were 7 384 libraries, made up of:

- 366 community libraries within the six metropolitan areas
- 1 386 community libraries affiliated to the nine provincial library services
- 210 HE libraries
- 5 310 school libraries
- 112 special and government departmental libraries.

By June 2011, government was consolidating the implementation of the Community Library Recapitalisation Programme and the first three years of this project had been successfully completed. Government has allocated an additional R1,6 billion to be used over the next three years to expand access to LIS, especially in previously disadvantaged communities.

Between 2008 and 2011, more than 600 professional and support staff members were appointed at community libraries across the country.

In addition, 170 libraries were upgraded and 20 new libraries built. To bridge the digital divide, public Internet access facilities are being established in all libraries.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was constituted in 1999 in terms of the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998), which is administered by the Department of Arts and Culture.

This institution was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town. The new building of the Pretoria Campus, funded by the Department of Arts and Culture, was inaugurated in August 2008. It covers 33 000 m² and has seating for 1 300 library users. The NLSA offers free Internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria. The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide. The National Library's collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest, including Africana material and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the National Library in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections. The National Library is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

Library and Information Association of South Africa

Liasa, which was constituted in 1997, is a professional non-profit organisation, uniting and representing all institutions and people working in libraries and information services in South Africa. It strives to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field into an organisation that provides dynamic leadership in transforming, developing and sustaining library and information services for all people in South Africa.

The national office is based at the Pretoria Campus of the NLSA. The association has a paid-up membership of 1 189 and is divided into 10 branches that reside in each of the nine provinces in the country, with two branches based in Gauteng. The association is governed by a representative council elected by its members. An executive committee consisting of elected officials is mandated by the council to implement its policies and programmes.

Liasa is a member of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) and has a number of members who serve in various leadership positions in IFLA. The current Liasa President is the Chair of the IFLA Africa Section.

Liasa has two flagship programmes, namely South African Library Week and the Liasa Annual Conference. South African Library Week is celebrated annually during March and aims to promote the role of libraries in the community. Programmes and activities are presented across the country and a national launch event is hosted in one of the provinces. The theme celebrated during 2011 was *Read in Your Language @ Your Library*, promoting the 11 official languages of South Africa.

The annual conference is attended by an average of 700 library practitioners and hosts an exhibition in which at least 50 library suppliers and vendors participate.

Provincial library services

Hundreds of public libraries situated in local municipalities, excluding some larger metropolitan areas, are affiliated to their provincial library services within their respective provincial departments of arts and culture.

These provincial services provide, among other things, centralised buying and distribution of processed library material in all formats to libraries through regional distribution centres. Professional support, training, a centralised reference and information service, and a network library computer system are included in this service. The provision of free Internet access to the public via libraries is a current focus of development. Most provinces also provide a library infrastructure programme to fund an increase in access to facilities. Promotion of the culture of reading is a major function of the services, offering outreach, literacy and reading, and school programmes.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS was established in terms of the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001), which is administered by the Department of Arts and Culture. The NCLIS advises the ministers of arts and culture and of basic education on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The functions of the council are to develop and coordinate LIS in the country. It developed the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government.

Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997, which is administered by the Department of Arts and Culture. The committee was reconstituted in July 2010. The members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The aims of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 are to:

- provide for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensure the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- provide for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee are to:

- advise the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- make recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinate the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit
- advise any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act
- establish subcommittees or working groups when necessary to
  - investigate any matter dealt with in the Act
  - execute any tasks relating to the implementation of this Act
  - co-opt persons to such subcommittees or working groups for the duration of the investigation or task.

The places of legal deposit are the NLSA (both the Pretoria and Cape Town campuses); the Library of Parliament in Cape Town; the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein; the Msunduzi Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg; and the National Film, Video and Sound Archives in Pretoria.

The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs) in line with sections 6 (2) and (3) of the Act. The Constitutional Court Library was the first OPD to be designated, with the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State the second. The North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service was designated OPD status with effect from 1 January 2009.

South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown, in the Eastern Cape. Its aim is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities need to read. The SALB is based on five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute to:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind persons and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of more than 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of over 25 626 books, and an annual circulation of more than 133 222 books in Braille or audio format. To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners 82 public libraries, providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg. One of its primary objectives is to provide services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages.

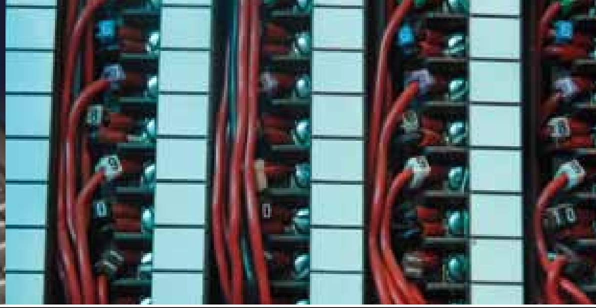
Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Arts and Culture
Department of Arts and Culture's 2011 Budget Vote
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
FNB Dance Umbrella
The Sunday Times

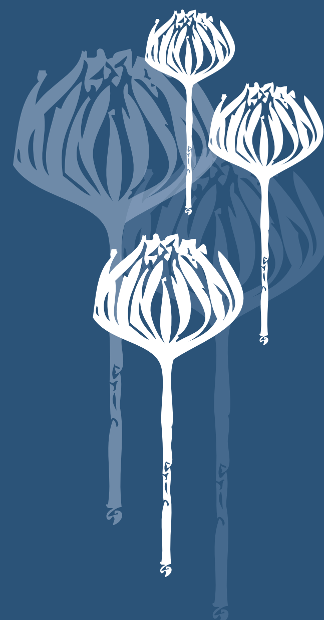
www.act.org.za
www.artsculturetrust.co.za
www.actonline.co.za
www.artzone.co.za
www.basa.co.za
www.beeld.com
www.bizcommunity.co.za
www.blindsa.org.za
www.businessday.co.za
www.capetownbookfair.com
www.createsa.org.za
www.gautengfilm.co.za
www.gov.za
www.litnet.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.nac.org.za
www.nelsonmandelamuseum.org.za
www.nelsonmandela.org
www.news24.com
www.nlsa.ac.za
www.pansa.co.za
www.risa.org.za
www.sahra.org.za
www.salb.org.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.tonight.co.za

Suggested reading

Brink, Y. 2008. *They Came to Stay: Discovering Meaning in the 18th Century Cape Country Dwelling*. Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
Coplan, DB. 2008. *In Township Tonight! South Africa's Black City Music and Theatre*. Chicago, Ill: University of Chicago Press.
Dubin, SC. 2009. *Mounting Queen Victoria: Curating Cultural Change in South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana.
Jaji, S. 2008. *An Aspect of the South African Experience in Literature and Reading*. Ibadan: HEBN Publishers.
Kombuis, K. 2009. *Short Drive to Freedom: A Personal Perspective on the Afrikaans Rock Rebellion*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau.
Kumalo, A. 2009. *Through my Lens: A Photographic Memoir*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Mojapelo, M. 2008. *Beyond Memory: Recording the History, Moments and Memories of South African Music*. Somerset West: African Minds.
Muller, CA. 2008. *Focus: Music of South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
Newbury, D. 2009. *Defiant Images: Photography and Apartheid South Africa.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Ngatane, E. 2009. *Ephraim Ngatane: A Setting Apart*. Johannesburg: Blank Books.
Peffer, J. 2009. *Art and the End of Apartheid*. Minneapolis: University of Minneapolis Press.
Watterson, L (ed). 2009. *Standard Bank Young Artist Awards, 25 Years*. Randburg: DeskLink Media.
Williamson, S. 2009. *South African Art Now*.
Zapiro. 2009. *Don't Mess with the President's Head: Cartoons from the* Mail & Guardian, Sunday Times *and* The Times. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.


Communications

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

Since 2007, the information and communications technology (ICT) market has grown by over R131 billion to R179 billion in 2010. It was estimated that the sector would grow to R187 billion in 2011, with an estimated figure of R250 billion by 2020. This growth will be driven by the rapid uptake and use of data and applications-driven mobile communications.

The Department of Communications' policies are enabling the development of a robust, vibrant and competitive ICT sector that has seen the emergence of strong mobile-technology companies, the roll-out of wireless broadband service offerings and an increased diversity in ownership.

With a network that is 99,9% digital and includes the latest in fixed-line, wireless and satellite communications, the country has the most developed telecommunications network in Africa.

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable ICT environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world. This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans.

The department's core functions are to:

- develop ICT policies and legislation that create conditions for the accelerated and shared growth of the South African economy, which positively impacts on the well-being of the people and is sustainable
- ensure the development of robust, reliable and affordable ICT infrastructure that supports and enables the provision of a multiplicity of applications and services to meet the needs of the country and its people
- strengthen the ICT regulator, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa), to enable it to regulate the sector in the public interest and ensure growth and stability in the sector
- fulfil South Africa's continental and international responsibilities in the ICT field.

Policy and initiatives

In March 2010, the Radio Frequency Spectrum Policy was approved. It seeks, among other things, to:

- ensure the efficient use and management of the radio frequency spectrum
- facilitate the achievement of key socio-economic objectives, such as increasing access to ICT
- create an information society via wireless technologies
- ensure access to broadband services and public-service broadcasting content.

The National Broadband Policy for South Africa was gazetted in July 2010. The policy seeks to address the availability, accessibility and affordability of broadband; the building of an information society; and promoting the uptake and usage of broadband.

The department, together with the ICT industry, has committed to delivering a 100% broadband penetration by 2020. It signed a compact with the ICT industry in August 2011.

ICT infrastructure is a basic foundation for economic competitiveness. During the last few years, government has increased investment in infrastructure to create jobs and stimulate the economy, and will accelerate broadband infrastructure spending.

In this regard, an initial R450 million has been allocated for the provision of broadband services over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

In 2011, the department was finalising the ICT Rural Development Strategy to determine priority underserviced areas and accelerate the provision of universal service and access through integrated government interventions.

As per the target set out in the New Growth Path, the department, together with the ICT sector, aims to facilitate the creation of over 150 000 direct and indirect jobs by 2020.

An industry-wide committee will be established to identify opportunities, using a collective database to ensure effective monitoring and evaluation.

Jobs will be created across various subsectors of the industry through:

- providing broadband infrastructure
- establishing content hubs for radio and TV

> The Department of Communications launched the first-ever *South African e-Barometer Report* on 4 August 2011.
>
> The department has embarked on a project that will assist the industry to measure the progress of South Africa's uptake and use of information and communications technology (ICT) tools using an e-barometer. This measuring tool will assist in analysing the country's e-readiness, primarily because government needs to be informed of the impact of ICT initiatives across multiple sectors within the country.

- animation
- e-cooperatives
- using ICTs in further education and training colleges
- tailor-made solutions for small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs)
- digital broadcasting and distributing set-top boxes (STBs)
- rolling out Postbank.

The department participates in the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, which includes the Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System (EASSy) Project.

The 9 900-km long EASSy cable links South Africa with Sudan and provides for landing stations in countries along the coast of eastern Africa. The cable is connected to adjacent landlocked countries and will have a lifespan of 25 years. The EASSy cable landing in South Africa is at Mtunzini, in KwaZulu-Natal.

Other Nepad projects include the E-Schools Initiative, the Uhurunet submarine cable, the Umojanet terrestrial cable and the e-Africa cable.

The Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy for South Africa was approved in July 2008.

By January 2012, the department had finalised amendments to the 2008 Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy and these were expected to be gazetted in February 2012.

The department had also finalised the STB Manufacturing Sector Development Strategy and the Scheme for Ownership Support Roll-Out Framework, which were scheduled to be presented to Cabinet in February 2012.

With regard to signal distribution, Sentech was making significant progress in the roll-out of DVB-T2 transmitters. By March 2012, the digital signal was expected to cover more than 60% of the population.

By January 2012, the finalisation of the national Digital Terrestrial Television Standard for South Africa by the South African Bureau of Standards was at an advanced stage. The department aims to achieve about 23 500 direct and indirect jobs through the manufacturing value chain.

Other strategies and initiatives include:

- The Universal Service and Access Policy and Strategy: The Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) was established in terms of Section 58 of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005). The agency promotes universal service and access to ICTs and services for all South Africans.
- The ICT Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Charter: In terms of the charter, several BEE and job-creation initiatives are planned by companies in the sector.
- Active participation in international organisations and events: South Africa participates in international organisations such as the International Telecommunications Union, African Telecommunications Union, African Union, Universal Postal Union (UPU), the Pan-African Postal Union (PAPU) and the World Radio Communication Conference. In 2011, government worked with other African countries through PAPU to ensure it contributes meaningfully to preparations for and debates at the UPU plenipotentiary conference to be held in Qatar in 2012.
- The High-Level Expert Group (HLEG) under the ITU umbrella is one of the international initiatives aimed at developing strategies and giving guidance to countries dealing with cybercrime.

The HLEG has adopted the following focus areas:

- legal measures
- technical and procedural measures
- capacity-building
- international cooperation
- organisational structures.

South Africa used the preliminary output of the HLEG towards the development of the national Cybersecurity Policy Framework.

Initiatives such as the International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism also contribute to forging partnerships and collaborations geared towards combating cybercrime.

Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD)

The PNC on ISAD provides timely and informed advice to the President on matters related to the development of an inclusive information society. It also facilitates the coordinated development of an inclusive information society in South Africa and achievement of the country's information society vision: "To establish South Africa as an advanced information-based society in which information and ICT tools are key drivers of economic and societal development."

The commission comprises leaders in government, industry and civil society. During its deliberations, important recommendations are made regarding the need for planning and foresight; coordination and integration; and evaluation and impact assessment in the building of the information society. The ISAD plan and the institutional mechanisms followed from these recommendations.

A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications

The following public entities and agencies report to the Minister of Communications: Icasa, the South African Post Office (Sapo), Sentech, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa), Usaasa and the .za Domain Name Authority (DNA).

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Icasa is the regulator for the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sector. Its mandate is spelt out in the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 for the licensing and regulation of electronic communications and broadcasting services, and by the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), for the regulation of the postal sector.

Enabling legislation also empowers Icasa to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers of these and services.

Icasa's functions are to:

- license broadcasters, signal distributors, and providers of telecommunications services and postal services
- make regulations
- impose licence conditions
- plan, assign, control, enforce and manage the frequency spectrum
- ensure international and regional cooperation
- ensure the efficient allocation of numbers
- ensure interoperability of networks
- receive and resolve complaints.

In 2011/12, R313 million was allocated to Icasa to cater for operational and project expenses. Icasa will pursue further liberalisation of the pay-TV market by issuing new television licences.

Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa

Usaasa promotes the goals of universal access and service in the underserviced areas of South Africa.

The agency is mandated to:

- make recommendations to the Minister of Communications to determine what constitutes universal access by all areas and communities in South Africa
- foster the adoption and use of new methods of attaining universal access and service
- encourage, facilitate and offer guidance in respect of any scheme to provide universal access and service
- encourage any scheme to provide telecommunications services as part of reconstruction and development projects
- stimulate public awareness of the benefits of telecommunications services.

Government has tasked Usaasa with establishing a targeted 400 ICT access centres in underserviced areas, linked to rural priority nodes, by 2015. This ideally means that the agency will have to establish at least 100 centres per year.

It was announced in 2011 that a review of Usaasa's strategic direction in the provision of universal access and service was to be undertaken. This repositioning seeks to transform Usaasa into a digital opportunity foundation and to remove the bottlenecks that have made it difficult to exploit the Universal Service and Access Fund.

The new strategic direction will be presented to Parliament in 2012/13. Usaasa will also play a role in the delivery of digital broadcasting. An initial R690 million over the MTEF period is allocated for the subsidisation of STBs to poor households that own televisions.

Internet

Many South Africans still rely on broadband services at their place of work to access the Internet, hence broadband penetration stands at approximately 5% of the population.

Current research indicates that under conditions characterised by high cost of services, saturation in urban markets and limited access in rural areas, the Internet's rate of expansion in South Africa will decline from above 15% to 10% per year by 2015. This projection envisages 11,3 million Internet users by 2015, which is approximately 22% of the population.

To address this, the Department of Communications is working with key stakeholders, including organised labour, civil society and academia, towards the development of a shared Vision 2020 for the country.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Work has begun on a comprehensive cybersecurity policy framework for the country, which was expected to be finalised in 2011/12. It aims to create a secure, dependable, reliable and trustworthy cyber environment.

In September 2011, it was announced that South Africa was teaming up with Nepad and the Southern African Development Community to launch the Southern African Internet Governance Forum (SAIGF). Issues that the SAIGF will address include local content, access and diversity, cybersecurity and its impact on vulnerable groups, managing critical resources, cross-border Internet governance, openness and privacy, domain names, cloud computing and mobile Internet access.

These issues were discussed at a three-day conference in the beginning of September 2011. The outcomes were taken to the sixth annual meeting of the Internet Governance Forum later that month in Nairobi, Kenya.

.za Domain Name Authority

The .za DNA was established for the purpose of assuming responsibility for the .za domain name space.

The .za DNA was established in 2002 in terms of Chapter 10 of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002).

The Department of Communications provides funding for the .za DNA and will continue its support and participation until the .za DNA is fully operational and sustainable.

A 2011 study revealed that more than half of participants accessed the Internet on their cellphones daily.

Of the 8 000 people who were surveyed, 57% engaged in some form of banking or financial activity on their cellphones, including balance checks and transfer of funds, while about 21% had paid a bill via their mobile service.

Eighty-nine per cent used their cellphones to research or purchase a digital or physical product.

Globally, 72% of participants use mobile Internet daily, while 18% no longer use fixed-line access to the Internet. Twenty-seven per cent of consumers said they would make purchases via their cellphones if security issues were better addressed.

Funding will then be sourced through a funding model developed in accordance with Section 66(3) of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002. The DNA will also oversee the implementation of the alternative resolution mechanism.

South African Accreditation Authority

The office of the South African Accreditation Authority is established in terms of Chapter Six of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002. The authority is responsible for the accreditation of authentication and certification products and services used in support of electronic signatures. It is also concerned with monitoring the activities of authentication and certification service-providers whose products or services have been accredited.

Mobile communications

South Africa is one of the fastest-growing mobile communications markets in the world. According to the All Media Products Survey (AMPS) 2010, 79,5% of all South Africans older than 15 years own or rent a cellphone, totalling more than 27 million people.

South Africa has five operators: Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Virgin Mobile and Telkom (8ta).

The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Information Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 48 of 2008), aims to help law-enforcement agencies investigate and combat serious crime. It gives law enforcement access to the identity and whereabouts of SIM-card owners who use cellphones in planning and executing serious crimes.

As of July 2011, cellphone service-providers are prohibited from activating a new SIM card unless they have recorded the customer's cell number, full names, identity number and address, and verified the information.

Telkom

Telkom is Africa's largest integrated communications company, providing integrated communications solutions to a range of customers.

The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

In October 2010, Telkom launched its mobile operator, 8ta. In September 2011, it launched Telkom Business Mobile, which focuses exclusively on the business market.

In 2011, Telkom received the Black Management Forum's Progressive Company of the Year Award in recognition of the strides the company has taken in the area of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE).

Telkom Foundation

Established in 2002, the Telkom Foundation provides ICT, education, infrastructure and community projects and support in underresourced areas.

Centres of excellence (CoEs)

This is a collaborative programme between Telkom, the telecommunications industry and government to promote postgraduate research in ICT and allied social sciences. It also provides facilities that encourage young scientists and engineers to pursue their interests in South Africa.

Launched in 1997, the programme improves local telecommunications and information technology skills, yielding substantial benefits for the academic institutions involved. It has helped Telkom and its local technology partners to solve technical problems and cut costs.

Telkom's corporate partners are also reaping rewards, as the work undertaken at the CoEs is relevant to their areas of business.

Liberalisation

The creation of an enabling policy and regulatory environment is important for increasing competition in the ICT sector, and reducing the cost of communications.

Since the signing of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 64 of 2001), the Department of Communications has focused on policies that grow the economy, attract foreign direct investment, increase competition, encourage BBBEE and develop and sustain SMMEs.

The department also aims to improve service delivery and expand the provision of telecommunications services. The introduction of underserviced area licences (USALs) addressed this need.

The cost of communications will be brought down by increased competition in the sector and the removal of constraints to growth.

Section 40 of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 requires that USALs provide telecommunications services, including voice-over Internet protocol, fixed mobile services and public pay telephones. Policies have also been implemented, among other things, to allow mobile operators to use fixed lines to provide both voice- and data-transmission services.

According to the Department of Communications' Strategic Plan for 2010 – 2013, the department will focus on implementing the ICT Rural Development Strategy with focused interventions in priority nodes. It will also review the business models for USALs and community radio and television stations.

The postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard of service for all citizens.

To ensure this, a universal service obligation (USO) has been placed on Sapo. To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

A USO provides specified services to the whole community, even though these services may not be commercially viable in their own right. The universal postal service implies that all citizens have equal access to a basic letter service:

- that is reasonably accessible to all people
- at a single uniform rate of postage
- at the lowest price consistent with meeting all its obligations, financial and otherwise
- to places outside the country
- at a standard of performance that reasonably meets the needs of the population.

According to the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 24 of 1998), Sapo enjoys certain exclusive rights and privileges, including a monopoly on letter mail up to one kilogram. In addition, Sapo is obliged to operate under a 25-year licence, with explicit universal service targets and other terms

> In August 2011, undersea cable company Seacom and United States-based Infinera achieved a global first by successfully trialling a 500 gigabits-per-second (Gb/s) transmission over Seacom's newly built network between KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng.
>
> The trial used five 100 Gb/s channels of coherent optical transmission over a distance of 1 732 km.

and conditions. The monopoly and compliance with the terms and conditions of the licence will be reviewed and monitored.

South African Post Office

Mail Business boasts 26 mail sorting centres for domestic mail and parcels, and three international sorting centres for international mail and parcels. Between these centres, approximately six million mail items are handled daily and 50 tons of parcels are processed a year. Mail is transported to and from these sorting centres domestically to 7 188 delivery offices (delivery depot centres, lobby boxes and 2 443 Post Office branches). In 2010/11, over 1,7 million new addresses were rolled out, of which 65% were in rural and underserviced areas.

Technological changes and advances in communications such as e-mail and social networking are placing increasing pressure on traditional forms of communications worldwide, especially postal services. The Post Office is expanding the use of this infrastructure to make it available to the wider South African community. In particular, focus areas include:

- education: delivery of textbook and stationery consignments to all schools in the country
- health: movement of antiretroviral and other medicine to clinics and hospitals across the country
- home affairs: delivery of identity documents and passports to the wider South African community
- security forces (South African Police Service and the South African National Defence Force): delivery of uniform consignments
- transport: renewal of vehicle licences.

Some R180 million has been allocated for Sapo's distribution network to be expanded to ensure the inclusion of rural communities into the mainstream of the country's activities and economy. Sapo will further be setting up new outlets in needy communities.

Sapo is focusing on growing its financial services and logistics businesses, while maintaining the performance of the mail business. It will also continue servicing the private sector by providing opportunities for companies to connect with the broader South African public.

Financial services

The Postbank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010), was signed into law in December 2010 and took effect in July 2011. This allows Sapo, through the Postbank, to prioritise the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream.

The Act established the Postbank division of the Post Office as a seperate legal entity, whose principal aim will be to expand the existing range of banking services to, among other things:

- improve access to affordable services, including loans, especially in rural and lower-income communities
- promote a culture of saving

In doing so, the Postbank will use the existing Post Office infrastructure but it is not bound by the Act to do so exclusively.

The Postbank's vision is to provide a national banking system that delivers stable, accessible and dependable services to the public and small businesses. It stands to be one of the best guarantees underpinning economic resilience, promoting financial inclusion and allowing people and businesses to invest and save with confidence and security.

Specialised Post Office products

These products include:

- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

International and regional cooperation

South Africa is a member of the UPU, a department of the United Nations, that coordinates worldwide postal services. The country participates in technical-assistance programmes within the UPU, and uses its international accounting facility.

It also participates in other international bodies such as the PAPU, the Council of Commonwealth Postal Administrations and the Southern African Transport and Communications Commission.

South Africa, through the Department of Communications, is a signatory to international treaties, conventions and agreements.

It cooperates and works in partnership with other postal administrations, through either bilateral or multilateral agreements relating to letters, parcels and financial postal services.

The media

Media freedom

In 1994, with South Africa becoming a democracy, the media was freed from all restrictions.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Broadcasting

Broadcasting role players

Radio

The first radio broadcasts in South Africa took place under the auspices of a broadcasting committee of the South African Railways.

The first experimental broadcast was undertaken in Johannesburg on 18 December 1923 by the Western Electric Company. During 1924, the Associated Scientific and Technical Association of South Africa began regular broadcasts in Johannesburg. The Cape Peninsula Publicity Broadcasting Association began a similar service, and the Durban Municipality followed suit with its own regular broadcasts. The first radio station, JB Calling, went on air in July 1924. By 1926, all radio transmission and reception was placed under the control of the Postmaster-General, under the Radio Act, 1926 (Act 20 of 1926).

Following the contribution made by Sir John Reith, then Director-General of the British Broadcasting Corporation, the SABC was established on 1 August 1936. The SABC celebrated its 75th anniversary on 1 August 2011.

The SABC is the country's public broadcaster. It introduced its own national news service on 17 July 1950, with daily news bulletins on the English service, the Afrikaans service and Springbok Radio. Radio Zulu, Radio Xhosa and Radio Sesotho were established on 1 June 1960.

In 2010/11, the SABC's national radio network comprised 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these were dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and included 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape. The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM.

Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Radio KFM.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains a critical project for the Department of Communications. Some R10 million has been allocated to support the development of content by community radio stations. During 2011/12, the department planned to provide broadcasting infrastructure to 15 community stations, and R6 million was allocated for this. The department plans to implement measures such as setting aside frequencies for community broadcasting, in particular community TV, aimed at promoting the growth of this sector.

By May 2011, 94% of the population had access to radio, while 84% had access to television.

A study was conducted to develop a sustainability model for community radio stations and TV.

By May 2012, there were 165 community radio stations in South Africa.

The department assists them with broadcast infrastructure, signal distribution costs and capacity-building (technical and human-resource development in the areas of management and marketing).

Television

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is South Africa's national public-service broadcaster. As such, it is obliged to provide a comprehensive range of distinctive programmes and services. It must inform, educate, entertain, support and develop culture and education and, as far as possible, secure fair and equal treatment for the various groupings in the country, while offering world-class programming on television and radio.

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. SABC Television reaches a weekly audience of 26,6 million adults aged 15 and older. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and also in Sign Language.

SABC News and Current Affairs is responsible for:

- 1 255 radio news bulletins in 13 languages on 18 radio stations every week
- thirty-two daily current affairs radio shows
- six television news bulletins broadcast daily and 10 television current affairs shows on SABC 1, SABC 2 and SABC 3 every week.

The SABC's online news service, *SABCNews.com*, attracts about 600 000 visits a month.

In 2011/12, the SABC was allocated R84 million to improve its technological capabilities and educational programming. Another R41 million was allocated to Channel Africa, whose future role and social obligations were to be discussed as part of the Broadcasting Policy review process.

The SABC intends to launch a 24-hour news channel on the free-to-air space, which will contribute to the diversity of views in society.

In 2011, government was engaging the SABC on future funding required to facilitate the introduction of new digital channels, which will be broadcast to the population on a free-to-air platform. The number of television channels is expected to increase from three to about 10.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent.

MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium. Its premium service provides more than 96 video channels, six HD video channels, 40 CD-quality audio channels, 33 radio stations and three interactive services.

Free-to-air television

Launched in 1998, e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, which broadcasts a full-spectrum programming service to 80,5% of South Africa's population.

The station is owned by BEE group Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited (Ltd) and Venfin Ltd, and employs some 500 people countrywide, with offices in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein.

In 2011, eNews started broadcasting Afrikaans news bulletins on M-Net's Afrikaans channel kykNET.

In October 2011, the 24-hour eNews Channel extended its broadcast footprint to include Namibia, Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland, Zambia and Malawi on the DStv southern African bouquet on channel 403.

The West Africa Cable System (WACS), linking southern Africa and Europe, promises to double South Africa's broadband capacity. The 14 000-km long fibre cable system is expected to raise South Africa's broadband capacity by over 500 gigabits per second. The US$650-million submarine cable, which has been under construction since 2009, is an initiative of the WACS Consortium, whose South African members are Broadband Infraco, MTN, Telkom, Neotel and Vodacom.

The cable system also boasts 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

Community television

By September 2010, Icasa had licensed community TV services in Soweto, Pretoria, Cape Town, Bojanala District, Nelson Mandela Metro and Richards Bay.

These stations will be allowed either to reapply or renew their licences when they expire, as a way of protecting community investment in these services. There is no legislative framework that provides for the Department of Communications to support community television broadcasting services. This means that stations need to secure sponsorships to sustain themselves.

The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Signal distribution

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996), and the Sentech Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 44 of 1999).

Sentech is a state-owned, fully commercial enterprise. It was awarded multimedia and carrier-of-carrier licences in 2002. During the past few years, the company has evolved from the technical and broadcast arm of the SABC into a leader in converging communications technologies.

The company aims to provide communications solutions such as voice, data and video on one integrated digital Internet-protocol network.

Sentech's long-term growth depends on its success in markets traditionally served by telecommunications companies. While its core business remains broadcasting signal networks, the broadband business is envisaged as a major element of the product mix in future.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, Internet service-providers and other value-added network service-providers.

The state-owned enterprise is set to spend over half a billion rand on new broadband infrastructure in 2012/13.

It has a 13 600-kilometre network of long-distance fibre and five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas – with an additional seven open access points of presence expected over the next few years.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Infraco co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

The roots of the print media in South Africa can be traced back to the 19th century, when the first issue of a government newspaper, the *Cape Town Gazette*, *African Advertiser/Kaapsche Stads Courant en Afrikaansche Berigter*, was published in 1800.

The first independent publication, *The South African Commercial Advertiser*, was published in 1824 by Thomas Pringle and John Fairbairn. It was banned 18 months later and reappeared only after various representations had been made to the authorities in London.

The country's vibrant economy, the introduction of regional tabloid newspapers and a glut of new magazine titles have helped to feed the popularity of newspapers and magazines in Africa's largest economy.

High consumer spending has coincided with strong circulation in specific newspaper genres, particularly tabloids and free-sheets. The adoption of more efficient delivery and distribution systems has boosted the growth of tabloids, community newspapers and free-sheets, in particular.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media. The issue of BEE is being addressed by all companies, some of which have progressed further than others.

Newspapers

South Africa's daily newspapers

Daily Sun is the first South African tabloid aimed at the black working class. In the few years since its launch by Media24, it has become the largest daily newspaper in South Africa.

The Star, owned by Independent Newspapers, is published in Johannesburg and distributed throughout South Africa, with the majority of sales in Gauteng. It was launched in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape in 1887 as the *Eastern Star*, and moved to Johannesburg in 1889.

Sowetan is one of South Africa's most widely read daily newspapers aimed at an English black readership. Initially distributed as a weekly free-sheet in Soweto, the paper was transformed into a daily newspaper in 1981. This was to fill the void left by the *Post*, which was deregistered by the apartheid government. *Sowetan* is owned by Avusa Ltd.

Afrikaans daily newspaper *Die Burger*, first published in 1915, is distributed in the Western Cape. Media24 owns the paper.

Beeld is an Afrikaans daily newspaper that was launched on 16 September 1974. It is distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Limpopo, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. It is the largest Afrikaans newspaper in South Africa and is owned by Media24.

The Citizen is published six days a week and distributed mainly in Gauteng. The newspaper is published by Caxton.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Argus* is an afternoon daily aimed at middle- to upper-income readers in Cape Town.

Isolezwe is the premier isiZulu newspaper, published Mondays to Fridays, and recently as a Sunday version, *Isolezwe NgeSonto*. The paper has also launched the first Zulu-language website in the world. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

Independent Newspapers' *Daily News*, first published in 1878 as the *Natal Mercantile Advertiser*, targets the middle market of Durban and the rest of KwaZulu-Natal.

Independent Newspapers' *Cape Times*, a daily published since 1876, aims at the middle class of Cape Town.

When *Business Day* was launched in 1986, it was the country's first mainstream business daily. The paper covers corporate reporting, BEE, economic policy, corporate governance and the financial markets. It is published by BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd.

The Mercury, published since 1852, is Durban's morning newspaper. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

The first issue of the *East London Daily Dispatch* was published in 1898. The newspaper is the Eastern Cape's biggest selling daily, with an isiXhosa and English supplement published on Wednesdays.

The Dispatch was edited by Donald Woods from 1965 until his arrest and banning in 1977 for exposing the government's responsibility for the death of Steve Biko. It is owned by Avusa Ltd.

Founded in 1845 as the *Eastern Province Herald*, *The Herald* is one of South Africa's oldest newspapers. Its first edition – of four pages – came out in May 1845 and cost one penny. *The Herald* is owned by Avusa Ltd and distributed in the Eastern Cape, with its main base in Port Elizabeth.

First published in 1904, *Volksblad* is the oldest Afrikaans daily in the country and the largest in the Free State and Northern Cape. It is owned by Media24.

Pretoria News, first published in 1898, is Independent Newspapers' daily in the capital city. Sold mainly in Gauteng, it is also distributed in Mpumalanga and North West.

South Africa's oldest newspaper, *The Witness*, serves English readers throughout KwaZulu-Natal, with most of its readers in the greater Pietermaritzburg area and inland KwaZulu-Natal. Owned by Media24, it was formerly known as *Natal Witness*.

Established in 1878, Independent Newspapers' *Diamond Fields Advertiser* is based in Kimberley and targets the communities of the Northern Cape.

Launched in 1995, *Business Report* is inserted in all Independent Newspapers' morning titles in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Son is the first tabloid to be published in Afrikaans. It is distributed from Monday to Thursday.

> The Printing Industries Federation of South Africa (PIFSA) celebrated its 100th anniversary in 2011.
>
> The R45-billion industry ranks sixth in South Africa, in terms of contribution to gross domestic product with more than 45 000 employees through six regional PIFSA chambers and more than 800 registered company members.

The Times is a daily newspaper with both sold and free circulation.

Daily News concentrates on local news, with over 90% of its readers coming from the greater Durban area. It is owned by Independent Newspapers.

The *New Age* newspaper was launched in 2010. TNA Media publishes the paper daily.

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) in August 2011, daily newspapers sold 126 000 fewer copies in the second quarter of 2011, compared to 70 000 less in the first quarter of 2011. Digital growth increased significantly, albeit off a small base.

Among the top six dailies listed by the ABC in terms of year-on-year copy sales – *Daily Sun*, *Isolezwe*, *Son* (Afrikaans), *Sowetan*, *The Star*, *The Citizen* – only Zulu title *Isolezwe* showed creditable growth of 9,5%. Ten titles declined and eight remained static.

South Africa's weekly newspapers

Avusa Ltd's *Sunday Times* is South Africa's biggest national newspaper, read by over three million people. Established in 1906, the *Sunday Times* is distributed all over South Africa and in neighbouring countries such as Lesotho, Botswana and Swaziland.

In November 2010, *Saturday Times* launced a Zulu edition in parts of KwaZulu-Natal.

Rapport, South Africa's national Afrikaans Sunday newspaper, is distributed countrywide and also in Namibia. *Rapport* is the Afrikaans newspaper with the biggest market penetration in South Africa.

A specialist soccer newspaper, *Soccer Laduma,* published on Wednesdays, is aimed primarily at men – 87% of its readership is male. It is published by Media24.

First published in 1982 as *Golden City Press*, *City Press* is aimed at the black market. Media24 acquired the paper in 1984. It is published on Sundays.

Established at the beginning of 2002 and aimed at black readers, *Sunday Sun* is the fastest-growing newspaper in the country. Its content is largely of a tabloid nature. Owned by Media24 and published by RCP Media, *Sunday Sun* is sold countrywide as well as in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland.

The *Sunday World*, launched in 1999, is a tabloid aimed mainly at black readers. The paper is owned by Avusa Ltd and is distributed in Gauteng, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The *Sunday Tribune* caters for KwaZulu-Natal readers. It is published by Independent Newspapers.

The *Independent on Saturday* caters for the KwaZulu-Natal market. It is published by Independent Newspapers.

Post was launched in the mid-1950s. Targeted at the Indian communities of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, it is owned by Independent Newspapers. *Post* is published on Wednesdays, with the leisure and sport edition, *Postweekend*, appearing on Fridays.

The *Sunday Independent* was established in 1995 and targets readers in the higher-income bracket. It is a weekly English language newspaper owned by Independent Newspapers.

Despite the total newspaper circulation in South Africa falling by 14 000 copies in the second quarter of 2011, weeklies have outcompeted their counterparts (daily and weekend), increasing their circulation by 15% – all in copy sales, according to figures released in August 2011 by the ABC, amid worsening media inflation.

Zulu publication *Ilanga* scored 34,3%, *Soccer Laduma* 20% and *Mail & Guardian* 8,6%, emerging as the frontrunners of the weekly newspapers and possibly of all newspapers, in an industry that continues to diminish as transportation costs soar by as much as 40%.

The weekend newspaper struggle continued – 14 titles declined and five remained static, while only four grew.

Zulu titles *Isolezwe ngeSonto* (9,5%) and *Ilanga Langesonto* (11%) performed well, while Afrikaans newspapers *Volksblad* (-19%) and *Rapport* (-12%) reflected the largest declines.

Free and community newspapers and magazines

According to *Media Facts 2011*, in March 2011, there were 470 community newspapers and magazines in South Africa.

> In August 2011, the then Minister of Communications, Mr Roy Padayachie, signed a statement of cooperation with his Lesotho counterpart, the Minister of Communications, Science and Technology, Mr Mothejoa Metsing.
>
> Some of the areas of potential cooperation identified by the two ministers included digital migration, cybersecurity, home and away roaming, postal services and broadband.

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC circulation (July – Sept 2011)
Beeld (Daily)	Media 24	PO Box 333, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 713-9000 / F. 011 713-9956 E-mail: *nuus@beeld.com*	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	76 951
Beeld (Saturday) *www.beeld.com*			Wknd		76 321
Die Burger (Daily)	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406-2121 / F. 021 406-3965 E-mail: *dbnred@dieburger.co.za*	MD. Mo-Fr	Afr	132 082
Die Burger (Weekly) *www.dieburger.com*			Wknd		167 802
Business Day *www.businessday.co.za*	BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 1746, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-5548 / F. 011 280-5505 E-mail: *busday@bdfm.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	36 103
Cape Argus, The *www.capeargus.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4156 E-mail: *argusnews@ctn.independent. co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	45 128
Cape Times *www.iol.co.za*	Cape Ltd Independent Newspapers	PO Box 11, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4717 E-mail: *chriswh@independent.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	43 274
Citizen, The (Daily)	Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042 T. 011 248-6000 / F. 011 248-6213 E-mail: *citizen@citizen.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	69 649
Citizen, The (Weekly) *www.citizen.co.za*			Weekly, Sat		42 342
City Press *www.citypress.co.za*	Media 24	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001/ F. 011 713-9966 E-mail: *news@citypress.co.za*	Sun	Eng	157 306
Daily Dispatch *www.dispatch.co.za*	Dispatch Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 131, East London, 5200 T. 043 702-2000 / F. 043 743-5155 E-mail: *news@dispatch.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	28 041
Daily News *www.dailynews.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 46915, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: *dennis.pather@inl.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	33 214
Daily Sun	KZN Media 24	PO Box 121, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 877-6000 / F. 011 877-6046 E-mail: *news@dailysun.co.za*	Mo-Fr	Eng	374 400
Diamond Fields Advertiser	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 610, Kimberley, 8300 T. 053 832-6261 / F. 053 832-8902 E-mail: *pbe@independent.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	9 495
Herald, The *www.theherald.co.za*	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: *theherald@johnnicec.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	22 319
Ilanga Langesonto *www.ilanganews.co.za*	Mandla Matla Publishing Co	PO Box 2159, Durban, 4000 T. 031 337-4000 / F. 031 337-9785 E-mail: *newsroom@ilanganews.co.za*	Wknd	isiZulu	85 726
Isolezwe	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 031 308 2879 E-mail: *isolezwe@inl.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	isiZulu	106 734
Independent on Saturday *www.iol.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 4759, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2934 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: *trevor.bruce@inl.co.za*	Wknd	Eng	46 008
Mail & Guardian *www.mg.co.za*	M&G Media	PO Box 91667, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 250-7300 / F. 011 250-7502 E-mail: *newsdesk@mg.co.za*	Weekly	Eng	45 692
The Mercury *www.themercury.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 031 308-2333 E-mail: *mercnews@inl.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	31 474

Major daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	ABC Circulation (July – Sept 2011)
Post	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2529 / F. 031 308-2555 E-mail: *khalil.aniff@inl.co.za*	Weekly Wed	Eng	43 413
Pretoria News (Daily)	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 439, Pretoria, 0001 E-mail: *pta.news@inl.co.za* T. 012 300 2000 / F. 012 328 7166	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	23 148
Pretoria News (Saturday) *www.ptanews.co.za*			Wknd		14 248
Rapport *www.rapport.co.za*	Media 24	PO Box 8422, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9537 / F. 012 713-9977 E-mail: *rapport@rapport.co.za*	Weekly	Afr	231 911
Saturday Star	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-2792 / F. 011 633-2794 E-mail: *star@inl.co.za*	Wknd	Eng	97 257
Soccer Laduma *www.soccerladuma.o.za*	Media 24	PO Box 787, Sea Point, 8060 T. 021 425-1200 / F. 021 425-1247 E-mail: *clint@soccerladuma.co.za*	Weekly	Eng	345 088
Son *www.dieson.co.za*	Media 24	PO Box 692,Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406-2075 / F. 021 406-3221 E-mail: *akoopman@kaapseson.com*	MD, Mo-Fr	Afr	103 056
Sowetan *www.sowetan.co.za*	Avusa Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 E-mail: *editor@sowetan.co.za* T. 011 280 3000 / F. 011 340 9637	Mo-Fr	Eng	116 347
The Star *www.iol.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 836-6186 E-mail: *starnews@star.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	136 552
The Sunday Independent *www.iol.co.za*	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 834-7520 E-mail: *jovial.rantao@inl.co.za*	Weekly	Eng	39 569
Sunday Sun	Media 24	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001 / F. 011 713-9731 prince.chauke@dailysun.co.za	Wknd	Eng	221 002
Sunday Times *www.sundaytimes.co.za*	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: *suntimes@tml.co.za*	Wknd	Eng	451 361
Sunday Tribune	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2711 / F. 011 308-2357 E-mail: *tribunenews@inl.co.za*	Sun	Eng	82 477
Sunday World *www.sundayworld.co.za*	Avusa Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 471-4200 / F. 011 471-4164 E-mail: *newsed@sundayworld.co.za*	Sun	Eng	147 614
Volksblad	Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-6949 E-mail: *nuus@volksblad.com*	Mo-Fr	Afr	23 473
Volksblad (Saturday) *www.volksblad.com*			Wknd		21 353
Weekend Argus	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4528 / F. 021 488-4597 E-mail: *ryan.cresswell@inl.co.za*	Wknd	Eng	157 220
Weekend Post	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: *weekend@johnnicec.co.za*	Wknd	Eng	23 656
Witness *www.witness.co.za*	Media 24	PO Box 362, Pietermaritzburg, 3200 T. 033 355-1111 / F. 033 355-1122 E-mail: *newsed@witness.co.za*	Mo-Fr	Eng	19 546
The Times *www.thetimes.co.za*	Avusa Ltd	P/Bag X57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: *suntimes@tml.co.za*	MD, Mo-Fr	Eng	142 024

Magazine circulation and readership

The magazine industry in South Africa is a fiercely competitive environment in which new titles appear all the time, despite the worldwide competition from electronic and interactive media. Considering the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, it seems that many readers are still attracted to print.

According to the figures for the second quarter of 2011, released in August 2011, media inflation dropped further (13,4%), meaning the return on investment derived from print had worsened.

Afrikaans title *Kuier* (consumer, women's general) scored 108% in a highly inconsistent and unstable environment, where circulation had declined dramatically again.

Other winners for the second quarter included *Club X* (72%), *Reality* (60%), *Mamas & Papas* (38,6%), *Foschini Sport* (38%), *Commercial Trader* (35%), *Stuff* (29%), *Fitness* (20%), *Amakhosi* (19%), *Elle* (17%), *Drum* (14%), *Baba & Kleuter* (14%), *Succeed* (12,2%) and *Move!* (11%).

Online media

According to the February 2011 Nielsen Online total traffic ranking report, *News24* was the largest South African website, followed by *Howzit, MSN Live* and *SuperSport*.

When it comes to mobile websites, the tables are turned. *Supersport Mobile* reins supreme, followed by *News24 Mobile* and *Junkmail*.

The Nielsen Online statistics only incorporated South African websites registered with the Digital Media and Marketing Association (DMMA); international sites such as *Google*, *Facebook* and *Youtube* do not feature on this list.

Media organisations and role players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), established in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation in South Africa, established in 1882), the Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP). The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP was formed in September 2004 and represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was conceived at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/ Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

Against the backdrop of positive political developments on the African continent, Sanef spearheaded the formation of the All Africa Editor's Conference. The Southern African Editors' Forum was subsequently formed in 2003.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman.

Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

As self-regulating mechanisms of the media industry, the Press Ombudsman and the appeal panel act in accordance with the Constitution and embrace the spirit of transformation in South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

Another body that protects freedom of speech is the Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust. Backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations, the trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the CPA into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993). It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

If a member of the public is concerned that a broadcaster is not observing its licence conditions, that person may lodge a complaint with Icasa. If a broadcaster is found to be guilty of contravening its licence conditions, the BMCC makes recommendations to Icasa about action that should be taken.

Material that could be considered X-rated must be submitted to the Film and Publication Board prior to being shown. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

The mission of the DMMA is to provide a forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), launched in December 1993, lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and -run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

The Professional Journalists' Association was launched in March 2010. Its mission is to give a voice to working journalists and represent their interests in newsrooms across the country.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, the Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union, the Specialist Press Association, the South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, Professional Photographers of South Africa, the Media Institute of Southern Africa, the Publishers' Association of South Africa and press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The South African Press Association (Sapa), a national news agency, is a cooperative, non-profit news-gathering and -distribution organisation operating in the interests of its members and the public. Sapa's foreign news is received from Associated Press and its representatives in London.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are Bloomberg and Reuters. Other

The press code governing print media was amended after its scheduled five-year review. The amended code came into effect on 15 October 2011.

One of the new clauses in the code relates to dignity and reputation and reads: "The press shall exercise exceptional care and consideration in matters involving dignity and reputation, bearing in mind that any right to privacy may be overridden only by a legitimate public interest."

The Press Council received a substantial number of public complaints regarding the reporting of children. Previously, the code stipulated only that child pornography could not be published. Under the new regulations, no child under 18 could be interviewed, photographed or filmed without the consent of a parent or guardian - if there was any chance coverage might cause harm of any kind. It also states that the media may not identify children who had been victims of, were charged with, or convicted of abuse or exploitation.

The two new clauses in the section dictate that journalists should use anonymous sources only if there is no other way to handle a story. The press may also not publish information that constitutes a breach of confidence, unless there is a legitimate public interest.

For the first time, plagiarism has been banned in the code. A further addition was reporting on the HIV/AIDS status of people without their consent.

agencies are the Eastern Cape News Agency and African Eye News Service in Mpumalanga.

Training centres

Over 40 institutions offer media training in South Africa. Tertiary institutions include various universities of technology such as Tshwane, Walter Sisulu, Nelson Mandela, the Cape Peninsula and Durban; and Rhodes, North-West, Stellenbosch and Witwatersrand universities.

Other organisations such as the Cape Town Film and Television School; the SABC's Television Training Centre; the Radio Freedom Institute; the Institute for the Advancement of Journalism; the Cross Media Training Centre; and Nemisa,a government-funded training institute, specialise in broadcasting, news media and multimedia skills.

The Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta) was gazetted on 15 March 2000. Its sectoral categories were as follows:

- advertising and visual arts
- publishing
- printing
- packaging
- film and electronic media
- performing arts
- cultural heritage.

From 1 April 2011, the publishing, printing and packaging subsectors of the Mappp-Seta were included in a new Seta, the Fibre Processing and Manufacturing Seta.

Parallel to this, the South African Qualifications Authority has approved the establishment of several standard-generating bodies for the media industry.

Similar bodies have been implemented for journalism training and communication studies. These bodies are substructures of the National Standards Body (language and communication) that coordinates standard-setting in the communication and language sectors.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

Nemisa is a non-profit organisation established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), which provides much-needed advanced skills training for the broadcasting industry. It has Council for Higher Education accreditation and offers diploma courses, short courses and internships in TV and radio production and creative multimedia. It has forged valuable international linkages with training institutions in Canada, France, India and Malaysia. It has also established links with the Commonwealth Broadcasting Association.

It collaborates with other entities such as the SABC, the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA), as well as industry and academia, contributing to reducing poverty and joblessness.

Nemisa partners youth formations, especially in rural communities, to ensure youth access its skills programme where they live. Government allocated R33 million to Nemisa in 2011/12.

Winners of major annual press trophies, 2011

Frewin*	McCall**	Joel Mervis***
Beeld	*Volksblad*	*Naweek Beeld*

* Best daily newspaper with a circulation above 50 000
** Best daily with a circulation under 50 000
*** Best urban weekly

Source: Print Media South Africa

Journalism awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa PICA Awards
- Sanlam Community Press Awards
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums
- South African Breweries Journalism Awards
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Sanef's Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism. In 2011, the judges agreed not to give the award to anyone, but rather make special mention of the work of Anton Hammerl, a photojournalist who was killed while reporting on the war in Libya

Media diversity

Media diversity in any country is regarded as a measure of the depth of its democracy. Every citizen should have access to a diverse range of media. South Africa is on its way towards achieving this mission.

The Constitution provides for freedom of expression and access to information. To deepen media diversity, government has partnered with commercial media entities to assist the MDDA, which is tasked with providing financial and other support to community and small commercial media projects.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002), which provides for the establishment of an independent, statutory body, jointly funded by government, the media industry and other donors. The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 provides for a sustainable mechanism for funding the objects of the MDDA Act, 2002 through contributions from broadcasting service licensees*.* The MDDA is an entity of the Government Communication and Information System.

The MDDA is tasked with creating an enabling environment for media diversity and development by providing support to media projects, and facilitating research into media development and diversity issues. The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

The MDDA provides support to existing grassroots media projects and assists in establishing new media projects targeting neglected audiences. The purpose is to strengthen the sector though the provision of resources, knowledge and skills in pursuit of promoting media development and diversity.

By mid-2011, the MDDA was providing support to more than 343 media projects across South Africa, focusing on historically disadvantaged communities, using indigenous languages.

By mid-2011, the agency had trained over 1 300 people, provided 143 bursaries to different radio and print media and created approximately 200 direct and indirect job opportunities and beneficiary projects.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising awards

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South

Above-the-line adspend in R millions

Category	**2000 R'm**	**%**	**2009 R'm**	**%**	**2010 R'm**	**%**
Daily newspapers	1 307,2	15,6	3 268,2	13,4	3 500,6	12,2
Weekend newspapers	583,3	7,0	1 573,4	6,4	1 644,3	5,7
Black/coloured/Asian papers	172,8	2,1	included in other categories			
Community newspapers	411,6	4,9	1 535,5	6,3	1 635,0	5,7
Consumer magazines	973,5	10,4	2 048,2	8,4	2 112,0	7,3
Trade, technical, financial	373,1	4,5	484,7	2,0	494,4	1,7
Total print	3 721,5	44,4	8 910,0	36,4	9 386,3	32,6
TV	2 977,1	35,5	10 487,2	42,9	13 408,3	46,6
Radio	1 224,6	14,6	3 041,0	12,4	3 687,8	12,8
Cinema	69,8	0,8	299,4	1,2	351,3	1,2
Outdoor	326,9	3,9	1 075,1	4,4	1 226,0	4,3
Direct mail (unaddressed)	not monitored		151,2	0,6	141,2	0,5
Internet	13,7+	0,2	469,3	1,9	557,4	1,9
Total	**8 383,5**	**100**	**24 433,2**	**100**	**28 778,3**	**100**

Rounding off occurs. Important note: 2009 revised upward from original data published in *2010 Media Facts*.
Excludes self-promotion by media. This table reads: According to Multimedia, TV accounted for R2 977,1 million (35,5%) of the R8 383,5 million spent on the media in 2000. This rose to R10 487,2 million (42,8%) in 2009 and R13 408,3 (46,6%) in 2010.

Source: *Nielsen Media Research's Multimedia, South Africa & SADC Media Facts, 2011*

African awards recognising distinction in advertising. The Association of Marketers established these awards in 1978 to coincide with the advent of commercial television in South Africa. The first ceremony took place in 1979.

The Loerie Awards ceremony sees excess monies being ploughed back into the industry in the form of bursaries for underprivileged advertising and marketing students via the Loerie Education Trust Fund, and as a donation to the Advertising Benevolent Fund. The main objective of the Loerie Awards is to encourage creative advertising. Other important annual awards are the Eagles and the Pendoring Awards.

In 2011, the two Grand Prix winners were:

- Ogilvy Cape Town, Live Activations entry for Volkswagen, “Marching Band”
- Net#Work BBDO, Radio Commercial Campaign for Mercedes-Benz, “New Friends”.

At the 2011 *AdReview* Awards, held in April 2011, Carat SA was named Media Agency of the Year for 2011. Carat, in partnership with Vizeum and Isobar, walked off with the coveted Grand Prix Roger Garlick Award for Best Use of Mixed Media with its Cell C Photo Code Campaign and a Roger Garlick Gold Award for Best Use of New Media with its Adidas 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Campaign. The Jupiter Drawing Room and TBWA\Hunt\Lascaris were jointly named AdReview Agencies of the Decade. The judges were unable to reach agreement on a single winner.

In June 2011, advertising agency Net#work BBDO won a Radio Grand Prix – its second since 2009 – at the 58th Cannes Lions International Advertising Festival in France.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

The ASA is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to regulate advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

Acknowledgements

AdFocus, Financial Mail
Audit Bureau of Circulations
BuaNews
Engineering News
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
ICT Trends and Developments, January 2010
Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
M-Net
Print Media SA
Sapa
South African Broadcasting Corporation, *Annual Report 2010/11*
South Africa & SADC Media Facts, *2011*

www.abc.org.za
www.arivia.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.epnetwork.co.za
www.etv.co.za
www.fxi.org.za
www.gov.za
www.icasa.org.za
www.joburg.co.za
www.media24.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mfsa.co.za
www.mtn.co.za
www.multichoice.co.za
www.news24.com
www.nrf.ac.za
www.opa.co.za
www.orbicom.co.za
www.researchchannel.co.za
www.saaa.gov.za
www.saarf.co.za
www.sabc.co.za
www.sabinetlaw.co.za
www.saitnews.co.za
www.sanef.org.za
www.sapo.co.za
www.sentech.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.telkom.co.za
www.theworx.biz
www.vodacom.co.za

Suggested reading

Andersson, M. 2010. *Intertexuality, Violence and Memory in* Yizo Yizo*: Youth TV Drama*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Cameron-Dow, J. 2007. *A Newspaper History of South Africa*. Wynberg: Don Nelson Publishers.
Cole, CM. 2010. *Performing South Africa's Truth Commission: Stages of Transition*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
Gibson, R. 2007. *Final Deadline: The Last Days of the* Rand Daily Mail. Claremont: David Philip Pub.
Hadland, A, Cowling, L & Tabe, BFT. 2007. *Advertising in the News: Paid-For Content and the South African Print Media*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.
Hadland, A, Aldridge, M & Ogada, J. 2007. *Revisioning Television: Policy, Strategy and Models for the Sustainable Development of Community Television in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Krabill, R. 2010. *Starring Mandela and Cosby: Media and the End(s) of Apartheid.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Maseko, L (ed). 2007. Sowetan: *Celebrating 25 Years of the Soul Truth*. Johannesburg: *The Sowetan*.
Meeting their Mandates? A Critical Analysis of South African Media Statutory Bodies. 2007.
Newlands: Media Programme of Open Society Foundation for South Africa.
Paging Through History: 150 Years with the Cape Argus*: 1857 – 2007*. 2007. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball Publishers.
Van der Merwe, D. 2008. *Information and Communications Technology Law*. Durban: Lexis Nexis.

Economy

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) announced in May 2011 that the economy showed growth of 4,51% in the first quarter of 2011. Parallel to the weak growth of the advanced economies, economic activity in the developing economies also registered a slower pace of increase in the second quarter of 2011. Following the brisk rate of economic expansion recorded in the first quarter of 2011, real growth in the South African economy slowed substantially in the second quarter to an annualised rate of 1,3%.

Growth was expected to be 3,4% in 2012, rising to just over 4% in 2014 and 2015.

However, foreign investors are increasingly aware of the huge long-term growth possibilities that Africa presents. According to Ernst & Young's first *Africa Attractiveness Survey*, foreign direct investment (FDI) inflows into the continent will reach US$ 150 billion by 2015.

Published in May 2011, it combines an analysis of investment in Africa over the last decade with a survey of over 562 global executives' views about how and where investment will take place in the next decade.

The survey shows Africa has seen an 87% increase in inward FDI over the last decade, from 338 new projects in 2003 to 633 in 2010.

Economic indicators

Domestic output

The pace of real output growth in the South African economy slowed considerably in the second quarter of 2011.

Following growth at a revised annualised rate of 4,5% in the first quarter of 2011, the pace of increase in real gross domestic product (GDP) decelerated to only 1,3% in the second quarter.

Growth in real GDP, excluding the volatile primary sector, also moderated steeply from an annualised rate of 5,5% in the first quarter of 2011 to 1,6% in the second quarter.

The real value added by the primary sector continued to decline at an annualised rate of 5,2% in the second quarter of 2011, following a contraction of 3,9% in the first quarter.

The real output of the agricultural sector contracted at an annualised rate of 7,8% in the second quarter of 2011 – its second consecutive quarterly decline following a revised decrease of 3,7% in the first quarter.

The size of the commercial maize crop for 2011 is estimated at 10,7 million ton (Mt), lower than the 12,8 Mt harvested in 2010.

In the mining sector, real value added declined further at an annualised rate of 4,2% in the second quarter of 2011.

After having increased at an annualised rate of 11,1% in the first quarter of 2011, the real value added by the secondary sector contracted at a rate of 5,2% in the second quarter.

Subsequent to an increase of 14,5% in the first quarter of 2011, the real value added by the manufacturing sector declined at a rate of 7% in the second quarter, subtracting 1,1 percentage point from the overall rate of economic growth.

The negative impact of the natural disaster in Japan in March 2011 became evident in the second quarter when motor-vehicle production was adversely affected by supply disruptions in the sector's component segment.

The real value added by the electricity, gas and water sector increased moderately at an annualised rate of 0,9% in the second quarter of 2011, compared to an increase of 3,3% in the first quarter.

The pace of growth in the real value added by the tertiary sector increased from an annualised rate of 3,7% in the first quarter of 2011 to 4% in the second quarter.

Growth in the real value added by the trade sector decelerated from an annualised rate of 4,4% in the first quarter of 2011 to 4,1% in the second quarter, reflecting slower output growth in the retail and motor trade subsectors.

The lack of availability of certain vehicle components from Japan negatively affected the production of certain product lines in South Africa and, together with shortages in various models sourced from Japan, resulted in lower growth in the motor trade subsector.

In contrast, the real output of the wholesale trade subsector increased in the second quarter of 2011.

Growth in the real value added by the transport, storage and communications sector accelerated marginally from an annualised rate of 3,6% in the first quarter of 2011 to 4,1% in the second quarter.

According to the *Global Competitiveness Report 2011 to 2012,* which was released in September 2011, South Africa improved its ranking to attain 50th position and hold the second place among the BRICS (Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa) economies, remaining the highest-ranked country in sub-Saharan Africa on the World Economic Forum's global competitiveness index in 2011.

The stronger transport activity in the second quarter was broadly consistent with the increase in merchandise import and export volumes.

The pace of growth in real value added by the finance, insurance, real-estate and business services sector moderated from an annualised rate of 4,8% in the first quarter of 2011 to 2,9% in the second quarter.

The low level of activity in the banking sector in the second quarter reflected hesitant domestic demand conditions and relatively low levels of business and consumer confidence in the country.

In contrast to the general slowdown from the first to the second quarter of 2011, growth in the real value added by the general government sector accelerated from an annualised rate of 1,8% in the first quarter to 5,7% in the second quarter, mainly due to the higher level of employment in the sector.

Domestic expenditure

Consistent with the moderation in domestic production, growth in real gross domestic expenditure decelerated from an annualised rate of 7,9% in the first quarter of 2011 to 1,3% in the second quarter.

Real inventory investment slowed, while real gross fixed capital formation accelerated meaningfully over the period. Following a robust increase of 5,2% in the first quarter of 2011, growth in real final consumption expenditure by households slowed to an annualised rate of 3,8% in the second quarter.

The slower pace of increase in household spending was fairly broad-based, with spending being partly constrained by underlying inflationary pressures that affected the disposable income of households.

Alongside increased spending on computers and related equipment, expenditure on most other durable goods categories decelerated from an annualised rate of increase of 21,5% in the first quarter of 2011 to a still-high rate of 12,5% in the second quarter.

The persistent decline in the prices of both clothing and footwear boosted expenditure in this category, while households also prepared for cold winter temperatures to a greater extent than in previous years.

However, spending on motor-vehicle tyres, parts and accessories, and on recreational and entertainment goods continued to decline in the second quarter.

Households' real spending on non-durable goods increased at an annualised rate of 3,6% in the second quarter of 2011, which was roughly similar to the pace recorded in the preceding quarter.

Real expenditure on household fuel and power decelerated in the face of high prices, while spending on recreational and entertainment goods also edged lower.

In addition, spending on services, the largest category of spending by households, registered a slower pace of increase in the second quarter of 2011.

Following an annualised increase of 5,4% in the first quarter of 2011, growth in the real disposable income of households slowed to 4,1% in the second quarter.

Simultaneously, the nominal level of household debt increased further in the second quarter of 2011, albeit at a slower pace, indicating that households were somewhat less inclined to incur additional debt.

Sustained caution among consumers was reflected in the ratio of household debt to disposable income, which went from 76,8% in the first quarter of 2011 to 75,9% in the second quarter.

Real final consumption expenditure by general government contracted at an annualised rate of 0,1% in the second quarter of 2011, following an increase of 9,5% in the first quarter of the year.

Real government expenditure increased at an annualised rate of 4,3% in the first quarter of 2011 and 4,8% in the second.

Growth in real gross fixed capital formation accelerated from an annualised rate of 3,1% in the first quarter of 2011 to 4,1% in the second quarter.

The change in gross fixed capital formation contributed 0,7 percentage points to growth in real gross domestic expenditure in the second quarter of 2011 compared to a 0,6 percentage point contribution in the first quarter.

South Africa's ascension to the BRICS (Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa) grouping is recognition of the country's potential and places it alongside leading economies of the future. South Africa's economy is smaller than those of Brazil, Russia, India and China, but it is also the gateway to the African continent, linking the BRIC economies to more than a billion consumers. Africa is the fastest-growing region after China and India. South Africa is the 27th-biggest economy in the world, with a gross domestic product that the International Monetary Fund puts at US$354 billion.

Growth in real gross fixed capital formation by private business enterprises gathered further momentum and accelerated from an annualised rate of 2,7% in the first quarter of 2011 to 4% in the second quarter.

Real capital spending by the agricultural sector continued at a steady pace, boosted by prospects of relatively high commodity prices and the competitive pricing of agricultural equipment largely due to the relative strength of the Rand.

Global demand continued driving expansion in the mining sector. This gave rise to further capital outlays for the development of coal, gold and platinum mines.

Broadband capacity constraints in South Africa, fierce competition and an increased number of subscribers contributed to ongoing capital spending on the fibre-optic and cellular networks by enterprises in the communications sector.

Real fixed-capital expenditure by public corporations increased at a brisk annualised pace of 4,4% in the second quarter of 2011. This was moderately below the rate of 6,6% in the preceding quarter.

Eskom raised its capital spending on especially vehicles and machinery and other equipment as work on its ongoing projects continued, notably the construction of the Medupi, Kusile and Ingula power stations.

Transnet's ongoing capital projects, in particular the new multiproduct pipeline, gave rise to increased expenditure, especially on machinery, equipment and construction works.

Having contracted uninterruptedly for nine consecutive quarters, real gross fixed-capital expenditure by general government increased by 3,8% in the second quarter of 2011 as provincial and local government departments stepped up capital spending in the areas of housing and construction.

The level of real inventory accumulation slowed from the first to the second quarter of 2011 – real inventory investment (annualised at 2005 prices) amounted to R5,6 billion in the second quarter of 2011, compared to R9,3 billion in the first quarter.

The level of industrial and commercial inventories as a percentage of non-agricultural GDP increased further from 11,4% in the first quarter of 2011 to 11,8% in the second quarter.

Employment

The *Quarterly Employment Statistics Survey* of Stats SA shows that formal non-agricultural employment in the public and private sectors rose further in the first quarter of 2011, as the series recorded its fourth consecutive quarterly increase.

Public-sector employment rose at an annualised rate of 15,3%, outpacing the 1,9% rise recorded in the private sector by a fair margin.

Pronounced first-quarter employment gains expressed at annualised rates were noted in the non-gold mining sector (10,2%); the construction sector (6,9%); the community, social and personal services sector (3,9%); and the finance, insurance, real-estate and business services sector (1,4%). However, in the manufacturing and electricity sectors, employment levels were up only marginally.

Overall formal non-agricultural employment increased at an adjusted and annualised rate of 5% in the first quarter of 2011, roughly equal to 100 000 new job opportunities, bringing the level of enterprise-surveyed formal non-agricultural employment to 8,3 million. On a year-on-year basis, employment gains in the private sector accelerated from 0,4% in the fourth quarter of 2010 to 1,2% in the first quarter of 2011, while employment growth in the public sector accelerated from 3,5% to 6,7% over the same period.

In total, employment grew by 2,5% (202 000 jobs) in the year to the first quarter of 2011.

In the mining sector, employment gains occurred predominantly in the non-gold-mining industry, reflecting the relatively strong demand for South African commodities by especially Asian and other emerging market economies, alongside elevated commodity prices.

On a year-on-year basis, employment growth in the electricity sector went from 4,6% in the fourth quarter of 2010 to 5,2% in the first quarter of 2011, confirming the authorities' commitment to upgrading existing electricity-generation and transmission facilities.

Increases in demand in the first quarter of 2011 underpinned employment gains in the trade, catering and accommodation services sector, and in finance, insurance, real-estate and

In the *Annual Report* of the South African Reserve Bank, released in June 2011, it was reported that the value of bank notes in circulation in the year ended March 2011 increased by 6,41% to R72,7 billion from R68,3 billion in the 2009/10 financial year. The average value of coin in circulation increased from R3,8 billion in 2009 to R4,1 billion in 2010.

The New Growth Path (NGP) sets out a vision for creating a competitive, fair and socially cohesive economy. The NGP puts employment at the centre of economic policy. It identifies how greater efficiencies can be achieved in the economy, and the investments needed to create an advanced, 21st-century infrastructure. The NGP is expected to create large-scale, sustainable jobs in key sectors through a collaborative approach. This will encourage trade, innovation and economic growth of up to 7% per year – ensuring South Africa remains at the forefront of fast-growing emerging economies and an attractive investment destination. South Africa is open to increasing trade and investment among the BRIC (Brazil-Russia-India-China) countries, being a viable emerging market with potential as an innovative hub, a sound investment destination and a leading emerging market economy.

business services, which together account for around 42% of total formal non-agricultural sector employment.

Employment in the construction sector, which contracted in 2009 and 2010, increased by 6 700 jobs in the first quarter of 2011.

The official unemployment rate rose from 25% in the first quarter of 2011 to 25,7% in the second quarter.

The number of work seekers in the economy increased by roughly 600 000 to 2,2 million during 2011/12.

Price inflation

Headline consumer price inflation accelerated from 3,2% in September 2010 to 5,3% in the year to July 2011, remaining within the inflation target range of 3% to 6% for 18 consecutive months after entering it in February 2010.

Producer price increases for domestic output moderated in the second half of 2010 from a peak year-on-year rate of 9,4% in June 2010 to a low of 5,5% in January 2011, before accelerating to 8,9% in July 2011, particularly as a result of rising electricity prices.

Imported producer price inflation climbed markedly from 0,5% in November 2010 to 10,4% in June 2011, before moderating to 10,2% in July.

At agricultural level, imported producer price inflation rose to 13,6% in April 2011, before moderating in ensuing months to 5% in July.

The moderation in headline consumer price inflation since September 2008 continued until September 2010, speeding up steadily thereafter to 5,3% to July 2011.

Year-on-year consumer goods price inflation moderated to below the lower limit of the inflation target range in June 2010, amounting to 1,5% in September 2010, before surging to 5,1% in July 2011.

In the consumer goods basket, the food, housing and utilities categories registered rates of increase above the upper limit of the inflation target range, amounting to 7,5% and 12,8% respectively in July 2011.

Twelve-month headline consumer services price inflation decelerated to within the inflation target range in July 2010, moderating in subsequent months to 4,5% in February 2011, before rising to 5,5% in July 2011. In the consumer services basket, price increases in the health, transport and education categories exceeded the upper limit of the inflation target range in July 2011.

Changes in food prices at the manufactured level reverted to inflation from November 2010 and continued to climb in ensuing months to the level of 6,3% in July 2011.

At the agricultural level, a period of producer food price deflation lasting 26 consecutive months made way for inflation, when it soared to 8,9% in May 2011 before moderating again to 5% in July.

Total producer food price changes moved from deflation lasting 19 months to inflation from February 2011, amounting to year-on-year rates of 5,4% in June 2011 and 5,9% in July.

Year-on-year consumer food price inflation decelerated markedly to 1,1% in July 2010, but then picked up considerably and amounted to 7,5% in July 2011.

Over the same period, processed food price inflation accelerated from 1,2% to 8,9%, while unprocessed food price inflation went from 0,9% to 6,2%.

Twelve-month headline consumer services price inflation dropped to within the inflation target range in July 2010, moderating in subsequent months to 4,5% in February 2011, before rising to 5,5% in July 2011.

When comparing changes in the prices of the various food categories from July 2010 to July 2011, almost all the different food categories registered price increases over this period.

Price changes in three categories went from rates of decline in July 2010 to rates of increase in July 2011, with the oils and fats category moving from a rate of decline of 4,3% in July 2010 to a rate of increase of 24,1% a year later.

Of all the food categories, only inflation in the prices of milk, eggs and cheese as well as fish and vegetables decelerated in the year to July 2011. Price changes in meat, representing the highest individual weight of all the different food categories, reversed from a rate of decline of 0,1% to a rate of increase of 11,3% over the period.

If energy prices (predominantly electricity) are excluded from the calculation of headline consumer price inflation, an even lower rate of 3,9% results.

The 12-month increase of only three of the 12 categories exceeded the 6% upper limit of the inflation target range in July 2011.

The three categories that increased at rates above 6% in July 2011, with a combined weight of 40,43%, included food and non-alcoholic beverages, housing and utilities and education.

Twelve-month administered price inflation accelerated from 7,1% in September 2010 to 12% in June 2011, before receding to 11,7% in July 2011, marking the 20th consecutive month that the inflation rate for administered prices had exceeded the upper limit of the inflation target range.

During this period, petrol prices increased by 185 cents/litre, while the year-on-year increase in electricity prices amounted to 18,9%.

If the effect of petrol prices is excluded from the calculation of administered prices, the rate decreases to 9,3% in the year to July 2011.

If electricity prices are also excluded, the rate of increase in administered prices amounted to 6,8% in July 2011.

Inflation expectations, as reflected in the survey conducted by the Bureau for Economic Research in the second quarter of 2011, remained unchanged at 5,3% for 2011.

Inflation expectations for 2012 were revised slightly upwards from 5,7% to 5,8%.

Annual average Consumer Price Index (CPI) inflation is expected to accelerate from 4,3% in 2010 to 5,3% in 2011, before rising to 5,8% in 2012 and remaining there in 2013.

Exchange rates

Subsequent to a decline of 5% in the first quarter of 2011, the effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by a further 1,5% from the end of March 2011 to the end of June.

The Rand depreciated most notably against the Euro and the Japanese Yen, partly as a result of the rescue packages granted to certain European countries to avoid sovereign debt restructuring and to assist Japan in recovering from the natural disaster it experienced earlier in 2011.

Elevated commodity prices and a weaker United States (US) Dollar partly supported the external value of the Rand in April 2011.

During July and August 2011, the nominal effective exchange value of the Rand decreased by 4% as it depreciated against all major currencies.

The real effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by 0,7% in the year to June 2011.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange decreased from US$23,3 billion in the first quarter of 2011 to US$22,6 billion in the second quarter. This could largely be attributed to a decline in the value of non-resident swap transactions, which went from US$11,1 billion a day to US$9,5 billion a day over the period.

As a result, domestic banks' shares (authorised dealers in foreign exchange) in turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange gained some ground.

South Africa's modern financial systems provide an ideal gateway for investment in the rest of Africa. Eight out of the 10 largest companies in Africa are based in South Africa, and the *World Investment Prospects Survey* of June 2011 rated the country as a top-20 economy for foreign direct investment.

Other factors that make South Africa an ideal trade and investment destination are:

- its mineral wealth: the country has the world's largest deposits of gold, chromium, platinum and manganese
- the quality of South African institutions, its strong intellectual property protection, the accountability of its private institutions, and a stable and well-regulated financial sector
- Johannesburg's JSE Ltd Stock Exchange is the 14th-largest equities exchange in the world, with a total market capitalisation of some R2,3 trillion.

Foreign trade and payments

International economic developments

Preliminary estimates suggest that the global economic recovery moderated significantly to an estimated annualised rate of around 2,5% in the second quarter of 2011.

Economic growth in excess of 5% was registered in the year to June 2010, followed by a slower pace of increase of about 4% in the second half of 2010 and the first quarter of 2011.

According to the June 2011 International Monetary Fund (IMF) *World Economic Outlook Update*, the global economy was expected to expand by 4,3% in 2011 and 4,5% in 2012.

The IMF also expected a slowdown in the second quarter of 2011, with global activity picking up in the second half of the year.

The JP Morgan global manufacturing Purchasing Managers Index declined from an average of 53,4 index points in the second quarter of 2011 to 50,1 index points in August 2011.

Although the pace of economic recovery slowed, annualised real output growth in the USA accelerated from 0,4% in the first quarter of 2011 to 1% in the second quarter, mainly driven by positive contributions from non-residential fixed investment, exports, personal consumption expenditure and federal government spending.

Although economic activity in Japan showed signs of improvement following the natural disasters that struck the country, real output shrank, recording annualised rates of decline of 3,6% in the first quarter of 2011 and 1,3% in the second quarter.

Industrial production fell by 2,8% in July 2011 compared to declines of 1,7% and 5,5% in the preceding two months – signalling a gradual moderation of supply constraints.

After recording annualised growth of 3,4% in the first quarter of 2011, the growth momentum in the Euro area moderated to 0,7% in the second quarter.

The slowdown in emerging Asia was due to the moderation of growth in China, India, Indonesia and the Philippines, and to a contraction in output registered in Thailand.

Growth in Latin America also slowed in the second quarter of 2011, mainly due to slower growth in Brazil, Argentina, Colombia, Peru and Ecuador, and to a decline in output recorded in Venezuela.

The slower growth registered in Europe was underpinned by a significant moderation of growth in Russia and Hungary.

Most countries in the sub-Saharan region are recovering from the slowdown after the global financial crisis.

Growth was expected to average 5,5% in 2011 and 5,9% in 2012.

The Brent crude oil price reached levels of US$127 a barrel early in April 2011. It retreated somewhat in the following months due to increased output by Saudi Arabia, the release of strategic crude oil reserves by the International Energy Agency (IEA), concerns about the Euro area debt crisis and the USA approaching its public-debt limit.

2011 was a year which gave effect to the ethos of "Working Together" with a number of ground-breaking accords that committed government and various sectors to taking the country forward jointly. These include:

- Deepening social dialogue and partnership within the ambit of the National Economic Development and Labour Council.
- A historic Skills Accord, committing business and the State to enrol at least 30 000 artisan trainees over the next 12 months in training programmes.
- A Green Economy Accord between government and economic sectors, paving the way for new economic activity and jobs linked to efforts to make South Africa more responsive to the effects of climate change.
- A Basic Education Accord in terms of which government, business and labour will work together to improve learning and teaching in the country.
- A Local Procurement Accord, committing the social partners to work together to increase local procurement. The procurement regulations giving effect to this accord came into effect on 7 December 2011.

However, the IEA's decision not to continue releasing oil from emergency reserves and the announcement of a second bailout package for Greece in July 2011 contributed to higher crude oil prices.

Furthermore, production outages in countries not members of the Organisation of the Petroleum Exporting Countries, a weaker US dollar and prospects for higher seasonal demand in the third quarter of 2011 kept crude oil prices above US$115 a barrel for most of July 2011.

Oil prices increased to levels of around US$115 a barrel towards the end of August 2011.

In its August 2011 *Oil Market Report,* the IEA lowered global oil demand for 2011 to 89,5 million barrels a day and projected global oil demand at 91 million barrels a day in 2012.

According to the June 2011 *IMF World Economic Outlook Update*, projected inflation in advanced economies was revised upwards to 2,6% in 2011 and left unchanged at 1,7% in 2012.

Inflation in emerging-market and developing economies was left unchanged at 6,9% in 2011 and revised upwards to 5,6% for 2012.

Annual consumer price inflation in the USA accelerated sharply from the end of 2010, before stabilising at 3,6% in July 2011.

Core inflation reached 1,8% in July 2011.

Consumer prices in Japan rose due to higher commodity prices, with core price changes moving to positive territory.

Annual harmonised index of consumer prices and core inflation for the Euro area trended upwards during the second quarter of 2011, reaching 2,7% and 1,6% in June 2011, before moderating to 2,5% and 1,2% in July respectively.

Inflationary pressures remained elevated in Russia, Turkey, China, India, Brazil and Argentina. Consumer price inflation in China accelerated further, reaching 6,5% in July 2011.

Current account

The pickup in global demand alongside elevated international commodity prices boosted South African producers' export earnings and brought about a steady widening of the surplus on the trade account of the balance of payments throughout 2010.

In the first half of 2011, imports rose stronger than exports, resulting in smaller trade surpluses in the first and second quarters.

These developments, and also a moderate increase in the shortfall on the services, income and current transfer account of the balance of payments, gave rise to the current-account deficit going from 1% of GDP in the fourth quarter of 2010 to 3,1% and 3,3% respectively in the first and second quarters of 2011.

Having contracted by 3,6% in the first quarter of 2011, the volume of merchandise exports rose by 3,7% in the second quarter, in part also reflecting the low base in the preceding quarter.

Although international commodity prices moved broadly sideways in US dollar terms from the first to the second quarter of 2011, the Rand price of a basket of South African mining exports declined over the period due to the appreciation of the Rand against the US Dollar.

The value of merchandise exports accordingly advanced by 3,4% in the second quarter of 2011, following an increase of 1,2% in the first quarter.

The fixing price of gold on the London market, however, increased by 8,7% from US$1 385 a fine ounce in the first quarter of 2011 to US$1 506 a fine ounce in the second quarter, reflecting investors' increased appetite for gold as a safe-haven investment amid prevailing uncertainty in global financial markets.

The price of gold surged to US$1 881 a fine ounce in August 2011, affected by large-scale global portfolio allocations in favour of commodities and by speculative transactions in the wake of the downgrading of US government debt by one of the credit-rating agencies, sovereign debt concerns in Europe and weakening global growth.

South Africa is a key player in global institutions and is performing an increasingly critical role in the fast-changing governance landscape.

The country is a member of the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, the World Trade Organisation and the United Nations System, including the International Atomic Energy Agency. South Africa plays a pivotal role in reshaping global governance and financial and trade architecture. This is reflected in its membership of the G20 group of advanced and emerging economies which, in line with the shifting balance of global economic power, has begun to supersede the old G7/8.

Despite the moderate appreciation in the quarterly average exchange value of the Rand against the US Dollar, the realised Rand price of South Africa's net gold exports increased by 5,5% from the first quarter of 2011 to the second quarter.

Moreover, the volume of net gold exports advanced by 4,6%, after declining for three consecutive quarters.

Domestic gold producers benefited from the surge in demand for gold by, among other things, various central banks, amid uncertainty in global financial markets. Central banks that increased their gold holdings included Korea, Russia and Mexico. The value of South Africa's net gold exports consequently rose by 10,3% over the period.

The value of merchandise imports, which increased strongly in the first quarter of 2011, rose by a further 5,2% in the second, primarily due to an increase in the volume of imported goods.

Imports from Asia comprised crude oil originating from Saudi Arabia and Iran.

The volume of crude oil imports surged by 10,1% in the second quarter of 2011, whereas the volume of non-oil merchandise imports increased by 3,3%.

Although domestic demand for imported vehicles and transport equipment contracted somewhat in the second quarter of 2011, it remained fairly firm, still exceeding levels registered in 2010. At the same time, the value of imported capital goods declined.

The deficit on the services, income and current transfer account widened from R109,8 billion in the first quarter of 2011 to R110,6 billion in the second quarter.

Net current transfers to the other members of the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu)

In June 2011, the National Treasury's R9-billion Jobs Fund, which aims to create 150 000 jobs over three years, was accepting applications from companies and non-governmental organisations with innovative job-creation projects.

The aim was to give R2 billion in grants in the 2011/12 financial year to those companies in the private sector that create jobs. The fund will run for three years and will be administered by the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA). The department chose the DBSA to administer the fund because of its footprint, which covers over 200 municipalities across the country and its experience in funding community development projects.

The fund will target four areas, namely: enterprise development, local infrastructure development, support for work seekers and institutional capacity-building.

Other initiatives that government put in place during 2011 included:

- establishing more than 300 cooperatives under the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
- 521 831 work opportunities were created by the end of October 2011 through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)
- job opportunities for more than 80 000 people under the Community Work Programme
- 15 132 jobs created under the LandCare, Forestry Operations, Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa, Working for Fisheries and Comprehensive Agricultural Support programmes
- a further 83 791 job opportunities created in all nine provinces across 63 municipalities between April and September 2011
- 600 EPWP jobs through the Square Kilometre Array Project.

increased on the basis of a partial recovery in trade in merchandise as a new fiscal year commenced.

The Rand prices of both exports and imports rose in the second quarter of 2011.

Department of Economic Development

The aim of the Department of Economy Development is to promote economic development through participatory, coherent and coordinated economic policy and planning for the benefit of all South Africans.

The department is responsible for:

- coordinating government departments, state entities and civil society's contribution to economic development
- ensuring the alignment of economic policies and government's political and economic objectives and mandate
- promoting government's goals of advancing economic development and opportunities for decent work.

Transforming the economy requires a pro-employment growth path that addresses structural aspects that constrain the absorption of large numbers of people into the economy and the creation of decent work. Government's new outcomes approach attempts to address this. The department contributes directly to the creation of decent work through inclusive economic growth (Outcome 4), and the ministerial service delivery agreement that was signed in October 2010.

The department has assumed responsibility for key outputs relating to this outcome, including:

- developing of the New Growth Path (NGP)
- analysing data on income distribution
- concluding social pacts to create decent work
- strengthening the implementation of the framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis
- developing spatial programmes
- developing the green economy
- implementing a multipronged strategy to reduce unemployment among the youth
- improving cost structures in the economy
- better integrating Second-Economy activities with the mainstream economy.

The department's budget is distributed as follows:

- R219,4 million for small business funding, through transfers to Khula and the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf)
- R141,8 million for the competition authorities
- R69,6 million for trade administration to the International Trade and Administration Commission (ITAC)
- R34 million for promoting agroprocessing to the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)
- R23,3 million for policy development within the Department of Economic Development
- R35,1 million for economic planning and coordination
- R16,3 million for economic development and dialogue
- R55 million for administration and capital expenditure.

Economic planning and coordination

The Department of Economic Development's work on sector policy aims to support the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP II) as well as rural economic development initiatives.

The department guides the work of three economic regulatory bodies, namely the Competition Commission, the Competition Tribunal and the ITAC; and three development finance institutions (DFIs), namely Khula, Samaf and the IDC.

The competition authorities will be strongly supported in their efforts to combat price-fixing, collusion and tender-rigging.

Social dialogue

In 2011, the department engaged in social dialogue with business and labour, who agreed to work closely with government to unlock the economy's jobs potential. As a first step, business, labour and government made far-reaching commitments towards the Skills Accord. In the discussions, businesses were asked to train artisans and technicians beyond their immediate needs; use their training facilities to the full; provide internships for graduates from Further Education and Training colleges and universities; and increase expenditure on training.

Organised labour was asked to recognise that persons trained in excess of company needs were not employees but trainees, that Sector Education and Training Authority governance needs be improved and that sector skills plans be aligned with the NGP.

New Growth Path

Cabinet endorsed the NGP in October 2010, and set a target for the generation of five million new jobs by 2020 to significantly reduce unemployment. The NGP drivers, resource drivers and institutional drivers will help realise inclusive growth and decent employment over the next 10 years.

Among the job drivers, the NGP identifies the following key sectors to support employment creation:

- infrastructure
- agriculture
- rural development and agroprocessing
- mining and beneficiation
- manufacturing, with the emphasis on implementing IPAP II
- the green economy
- the tourism, creative industries and business service industries.

Cross-cutting areas include the public and knowledge-based sectors, the social economy and African economic development.

The Department of Economic Development has two roles in the NGP's implementation, namely to:

- bolster the integration of diverse government policies, programmes and projects to support employment creation
- ensure that the DFIs and regulatory agencies for which it is responsible become central agents in achieving a more inclusive, equitable and jobs-rich economy.

By August 2011, government had created thousands of jobs, including:

- almost 60 000 jobs created by the Department of Trade and Industry's support and incentive programmes in 2010/11
- the support of over 100 000 smallholder farmers by the national and provincial agricultural departments
- environmental employment schemes, such as the Department of Water Affairs' Working for Water and the Working for Land programmes, which were expected to provide over 30 000 full-time job equivalents in 2011, and doubling to 60 000 in 2012
- a rural youth employment programme, which had created 7 500 jobs.

The NGP is not isolated from other government initiatives such as the IPAP II and various infrastructure programmes that will lead to job creation, which is the central focus of the NGP. These include:

- addressing the country's ageing water and sanitation infrastructure, which requires R10 billion over the next five years
- replacing commuter rail rolling stock at a budget of about R89 billion, to be accompanied by the recapitalising investment in related and auxiliary infrastructure
- redressing South Africa's modal imbalance of freight as an attempt to increase rail capacity and rail use capacity – Transnet has budgeted R35 billion for this
- arresting degradation of the non-toll road network (140 000 km of the total 750 000 km need to be maintained) will require R75 billion in the next few years
- Eskom plans to spend R550 billion in capital expenditure until 2017 and has to create an additional 50 GW by 2025.

Framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis

The Department of Economic Development leads the implementation of the measures in the framework for South Africa's response to the international crisis.

The following measures have been implemented:

Trade relations between India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) have improved despite the global economic recession. The IBSA international tripartite grouping is aimed at boosting cooperation between the three countries.

IBSA has done particularly well in the targets it set for increasing trade and is expected to achieve the target of US$25 billion dollar in combined trade by 2015.

- The IDC established a R6,1-billion fund to assist distressed companies. By February 2012, the IDC had saved and created 26 309 jobs.
- The IDC established a jobs fund, financed through the issue of a R2-billion development bond, which the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF) purchased. Some R219 million of this R2 billion is included in the R6,1-billion fund for distressed companies. It was announced in February 2012 that the UIF would invest another R2 million in job creation.
- The department, together with the Department of Labour, the IDC and the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA), established a R2,9-billion training lay-off scheme, to provide for the training of workers as an alternative to retrenchment. By the end of January 2011, 6 351 workers had benefited.

Green economy

According to the *Green Jobs* report, released on 25 November 2011, growing South Africa's green economy could create more than 460 000 new jobs by 2025, while cutting the country's dependence on carbon-intensive industries.

Green-economy projects in South Africa will be boosted by a R25-billion investment by the IDC over the next five years.

The IDC is funding some of the renewable-energy initiatives such as the project to co-fund a solar water-heater undertaking for low-income housing. By April 2011, some 38 000 such units had been installed.

The IDC's funding will help support the Department of Energy's Integrated Resource Plan (IRP). It maps out how South Africa will double its electricity supply capacity over the next 20 years.

According to the IRP, renewable energy will supply as much as 42% of the country's power in the future; nuclear, 23%; coal, 15%; with a small amount of gas and hydro making up the difference.

Transnet's new pipeline is one of the projects that government is backing to ensure a more energy-efficient transport system in the future. The 550-km-long fuel pipeline is being constructed between Durban and Johannesburg.

Once operational, it's expected to reduce the number of tankers on the road by at least 60%, decreasing traffic congestion and the country's carbon footprint.

Government expects thousands of jobs will be created via green-economy projects in new sectors such as biotechnology, nanotechnology and prototype building technologies.

The projects are expected to play a significant role in the realisation of the NGP.

The IDC is also an investor in the Joule, the first locally designed fully electric car in South Africa. It's being developed in the Western Cape and expected to enter the market in 2012.

Competition policy

The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), promotes competition in South Africa to:

- enhance the efficiency, adaptability and development of the economy
- provide consumers with competitive prices and product choices
- promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of South Africans
- expand opportunities for South African participation in world markets, and recognise the role of foreign competition in the country
- ensure that small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) have an equitable opportunity to participate in the economy
- promote a greater spread of ownership, in particular by increasing the ownership stakes of historically disadvantaged individuals.

The Competition Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 1 of 2009), provides for:

- concurrent jurisdiction between the Competition Commission and other regulatory authorities
- provisions to address other practices that tend to prevent or distort competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- more guidance in relation to conducting market enquiries as a tool to identify and make recommendations with respect to conditions that tend to prevent, distort or restrict competition in the market for any particular goods or services
- provisions to hold personally accountable those individuals who cause firms to engage in cartel conduct
- authority to the Competition Commission to excuse a respondent to a complaint if the respondent has assisted the competition

authorities in the detection and investigation of cartel conduct.

The Department of Economic Development guides the work of the Competition Commission and the Competition Tribunal.

The Competition Commission is independent, but its decisions may be appealed to the Competition Tribunal and the Competition Appeal Court.

In 2011, the competition authorities focused on the construction industry. The commission identified 70 cases of possible price-fixing or collusion.

This is an important investigation for government since the NGP relies heavily on cost-effective infrastructure, with investments set at over a quarter trillion rand a year.

The Competition Tribunal adjudicates competition matters in accordance with the Competition Act, 1998. The tribunal is subject to the Constitution and the law, and acts independently. The tribunal may hear matters relating to mergers and acquisitions, complaints regarding cartels and other anti-competitive business practices, and may impose remedies, including the ordering of fines to be paid by transgressors.

In 2010/11, of the 229 notified mergers, 200 were unconditionally approved, 14 approved with conditions, and two were prohibited.

Significant mergers considered included the Walmart/Massmart, Pioneer Hi-bred/Pannar Seed, and Kansai/Freeworld. In the same period, 22 settlements were reached and a total of R794 million administrative penalties were levied, of which R490 million was paid into the National Revenue Fund.

Department of Trade and Industry

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens. In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

The department's medium-term strategy is guided by three main objectives:

- increased investment levels
- enhanced labour absorption and competitiveness
- broader participation in the economy.

Meeting these objectives involves:

- coordinating the implementation of government priorities
- promoting direct investment and growth in the industrial and services economy
- focusing on creating employment
- raising the level of exports and promoting equitable trade
- promoting broader participation, equity and redress in the economy
- contributing to the development and regional integration of Africa within the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) framework.

In addition, the department's strategy has been aligned with government's 12 outcomes. The department contributes directly to the creation of decent employment through inclusive economic growth (Outcome 4) through the following outputs:

- faster and sustainable inclusive growth (Output 1)
- more labour-absorbing growth (Output 2)
- increased competitiveness to raise net exports, grow trade as a share of world trade and improve its composition (Output 4)
- improved support to small businesses and cooperatives (Output 6)
- the development of a competitive and integrated small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) sector.

The department will contribute to these outputs through specific programmes developed over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

The department is responsible for managing government's industrial policy. It developed a detailed implementation plan, the IPAP II, released in February 2010. The document lays out specific projects, many of which are housed within the department's programmes and entities.

Besides its internal capacity, the Department of Trade and Industry relies on a group of specialised, regulatory and financial development agencies and institutions in supporting its economic growth, employment and equity ideals, and in delivering products and services to the economic citizens of the country.

These agencies or Council of Trade and Industry Institutions, include the:

- Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)
- Companies and Intellectual Property Commission
- National Empowerment Fund (NEF)
- Estate Agency Affairs Board
- Export Credit Insurance Corporation
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- National Credit Regulator
- National Lotteries Board
- National Gambling Board
- South African National Accreditation System
- National Consumer Tribunal
- National Consumer Commission
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa
- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications.

Trade, investment and exports

Increasing the level of international trade is critical to domestic economic growth and development, and it is also an output linked to the outcome to create decent employment through inclusive economic growth.

The Department of Trade and Industry provides leadership on trade policy, and released the Trade Policy and Strategy Framework, which Cabinet adopted in July 2010.

South African trade by country (Rand'000) (Jan 2011 – Nov 2011)

South African exports	
Taiwan	8 463
Taly	12 106
Belgium	13 660
Zambia	14 678
Zimbabwe	15 596
Korea Rep South	15 599
Mozambique	15 683
Switserland	19 010
Netherlands	19 377
India	21 922
United Kingdom	26 470
Germany	40 304
Japan	50 900
United States	55 332
China	78 405
Imports	
Brazil	11 080
Sweden	11 980
Korea Rep South	14 742
Thailand	15 406
France	17 547
Italy	17 574
Nigeria	21 165
Iran	25 852
India	26 337
United Kingdom	26 950
Saudi Arabia	30 173
Japan	31 592
United States	53 493
Germany	71 914
China	94 210

Source: Department of Trade and Industry

The framework aims to promote the development of higher value-added, labour-absorbing production.

To complement this framework, the department has also developed strategies for export development and promotion, as well as investment promotion and facilitation.

Building on this framework, significant engagements took place within the Sacu, resulting in consensus being reached on a focused work programme in Sacu on industrialisation, infrastructure development, trade facilitation, revenue sharing and unified engagement in trade negotiations.

Complementary to the work undertaken within Sacu, the department continued to prioritise development and regional integration in Africa. Moreover, work was started to develop a common position on a tripartite free-trade area consisting of the Southern African Development Community (SADC), the East African Community and the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa.

A single integrated facilitation centre has been created to deal with investors and exporters.

By February 2011, the department had a network of 45 foreign economic offices abroad to facilitate business on behalf of South African companies.

The network is spread over 38 countries and provides a substantial footprint for South African business to access markets globally.

The department assists exporters by providing information, financial support and practical assistance to sustain growth in traditional markets and penetrate new high-growth markets, such as China, India, Russia and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

The focus is on investments that have a greater multiplier effect in the South African economy.

At multilateral level, South Africa continues to play a prominent and active role in the World Trade Organisation, and supports the consolidation of the G20 group of developing countries, which seeks to ensure a developmental outcome in industrial tariff negotiations.

Industrial development

The clothing, textiles and automotive sectors have been identified as key strategic sectors for which the Department of Trade and Industry will continue improving incentive schemes to boost manufacturing capacity and support job creation.

Industrial policy interventions to support developmental objectives will be reviewed.

The challenge is to substantially raise the level of industrial policy interventions in a range of sectors and simultaneously build the necessary capacity in the department to manage this upscaling.

In relation to incentives for industries and enterprises, further work is planned to align the industrial financing regime with industrial policy objectives.

Production incentives in the clothing and textiles and automotive sectors will be increasingly grant-based, thus reducing reliance on tax incentives.

Over the medium term, the department will also focus on improving the efficiency of the incentive administration system to record applications and deal with claims, verify information and document all correspondence.

Industrial Policy Action Plan II

The IPAP II 2011/12 to 2013/14 was launched in April 2011 as a three-year rolling industrial development road map. In terms of the breadth of the interventions outlined and the requirement of intergovernmental coordination and multistakeholder involvement, IPAP II was a first of its kind in South Africa.

Procurement policy

Cabinet approved revisions to the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), regulations, which, after promulgation, will allow for the:

- alignment of the PPPFA, 2000 with Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) codes
- Department of Trade and Industry to designate sectors or subsectors for domestic production at specified levels of local content
- development of sector-designation methodology and compilation of necessary research to designate a range of sectors
- introduction of localisation and supplier development within state-owned enterprises (SOEs), encouraging these entities to introduce new policies, processes and systems, and increase capacity-building to embed supplier procurement leverage more systematically.

Proof of the efficacy of this type of policy instrument is illustrated in the R4,2-billion anti-retroviral (ARV) government tender, 72% by value of which went to South African manufacturers with significant price reductions relative to the 2008 ARV tender.

Industrial financing

The IDC reviewed its business model and balance sheet, and identified R66 billion over the next five years for investment in the NGP and IPAP II sectors, depending on economic conditions.

Trade

ITAC has processed numerous applications for increases, rebates and reductions of duties, in line with IPAP priorities. The SABS has developed an early warning system to identify technical barriers to trade for exporters. Outcomes are distributed to exporters monthly.

Automotives

The finalised Automotive Investment Scheme (AIS) led to investment commitments of R13 billion, from assemblers and component suppliers, supporting 24 000 jobs in the sector.

Clothing and textiles

The roll-out of the Clothing Textile Competitive Programme (CTCP) and Production Incentive (PI), with 106 and 94 companies benefiting under the CTCP and PI respectively, was achieved.

Business process services

Investments of up to R40 million resulted in the creation of 950 jobs within nine months. Approval of R42 million for new investment commitments was linked to 806 jobs. A total of 3 400 recruits were trained under the Monyetla II Programme – 70% constitute guaranteed employment by a Business Process Outsourcing (BPO) consortium.

Green industries

The revision of building standards, which will require higher levels of energy efficiency and mandatory installation of solar water-heaters in new buildings, was completed.

The SABS finalised enabling standards for solar water-heaters; wind-energy turbines; energy-efficient lighting, appliances and products; electric batteries and alternative fuel vehicles; and co-generation of electricity and biofuels.

Significant progress in developing the renewable energy feed-in tariff rules was achieved.

The intra-departmental South African Renewables Initiative will leverage international climate finance to supplement domestic funding sources for renewable energy production linked to domestic manufacturing.

> South Africa chaired the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) from 15 July 2010 to 15 July 2011. During its tenure, it successfully refocused the Sacu work programme, resulting in the development of a five-point work programme that is expected to unlock the development potential for the region when fully implemented.
>
> The five-point programme consists of trade facilitation, industrial development, unified engagement in negotiations, development of common institutions and the review of revenue-sharing formulas. By October 2011, action plans for each priority area were being developed.

Industrial development zones (IDZs)

Since the inception of the IDZ Project in 2001, over R4,8 billion has been allocated to the three IDZs. Coega received R3,5 billion; East London R1,2 billion; and Richards Bay R88,4 million. Thirty-eight investors with an investment value of R12,8 billion had been secured and 41 451 jobs created. Over the medium term, R1,6 billion has been allocated to the three zones: Coega R1,1 billion; East London R421,3 million; and Richards Bay R132,7 million.

The Coega IDZ, which is the flagship IDZ Project, was designated in 2001. The site near Port Elizabeth, which was originally a greenfield area, includes 11 500 ha of land and is adjacent to Ngqura deepwater port. Some of the key sectors at the Coega IDZ include:

- agroprocessing
- general manufacturing
- business process services
- energy
- the automotive industry
- petrochemicals.

Infrastructure programmes include road construction, earthworks, electricity, water and sewerage, factory buildings and offices.

The Coega IDZ is designed to attract private-sector investment in export-oriented industries. It aims to create jobs within the IDZ, promote the use of domestic industries outside Coega and boost growth through increased exports, technology transfer and increased employment.

Coega has a pipeline of 22 private commitments worth over R40 billion. By August 2011, 24 commitments worth R49 billion had been finalised.

A total of 10 investors with more than R500 million invested are already operational in the IDZ. The Coega Development Corporation's expenditure increased from R726 million in 2007/08 to R859,9 million in 2009/10 and decreased to R714 million in 2010/11.

The budget allocated to the corporation over the medium term is R1,1 billion. The corporation's expenditure is expected to decline to R308,2 million over the medium term.

The East London IDZ was designated in 2001. The zone's key focus sectors are:
- the automotive industry
- marine aquaculture
- agroprocessing
- the pharmaceutical industry
- information and communications technology
- electronics
- business process services
- the automotive supplier park.

Since inception, 25 investors have been secured, 21 of whom are operational on site and have generated investment worth R1,3 billion.

The zone has created 930 direct jobs and 11 300 construction jobs. It is projected to attract nine investors with an estimated investment value of R1,6 billion and 3 200 jobs over the medium term.

The East London IDZ received R124,9 million in 2007/08; R154 million in 2008/09; and R373,4 million in 2009/10.

In 2010/11, the zone received R198 million and over the MTEF is expected to receive R171,3 million in 2011/12; R150 million in 2012/13; and R100 million in 2013/14.

It is estimated that over 11 120 direct job opportunities are to be supported through the Critical Infrastructure Programme (CIP) over the MTEF.

The projects supported by the CIP have committed to support upstream and downstream industries to produce value-added products in line with national industrial policy.

The budget allocation for the programme increased from R60,2 million in 2007/08 to R80,7 million in 2010/11.

Over the MTEF, expenditure is set to rise to R191,7 million. The programme covers multiple sectors, including mining, tourism and manufacturing.

In September 2011, the Richards Bay IDZ commenced its Phase 1A development in preparation for forthcoming investors.

The 216-ha industrial estate was promulgated in 2002 as a public entity, with 60% of its shares held by the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Economic Development and Tourism and 40% by the City of uMhlatuze, the municipality that incorporates Richards Bay and Empangeni.

The Richards Bay IDZ is developing infrastructure to enable investors to locate in KwaZulu-Natal. The sectoral focus of the zone includes aluminium clustering, wood, chemicals and mineral beneficiation.

In 2006/07, the zone attracted an investment of R650 million from Tata Steel. The zone projected to secure eight investors with an investment value of R1,2 billion and create 600 jobs over the medium term.

The zone's allocation was R68,4 million in 2009/10 and R20 million in 2010/11.

Over the MTEF, the allocation will increase to R30 million.

Broadening participation

One of the key industrial policy goals is the promotion of a broader-based industrial path where there is more participation by historically disadvantaged economic citizens and marginalised regions in the mainstream of the industrial economy. To this end, the department will promote enterprise development, economic empowerment, the development of skills, the facilitation of economic infrastructure, and enhance technology and innovation.

The focus will be on:
- improving productivity
- reducing the regulatory burden and cost of doing business
- improving access to finance for SMMEs and cooperatives

South Africa's Motor Industry Development Programme (MIDP) – set to be replaced by a new programme in 2013 – has facilitated more than R32 billion in investments since 2000, with R4 billion expected to be invested in 2011.

The motor industry is a substantial employer in South Africa, contributing at least 6% to the country's gross domestic product and almost 12% to its total exports. An estimated 90 000 people are directly employed in automotive manufacturing, while about 200 000 are employed in retail and aftermarket. activities. A new incentive programme, the Automotive Production and Development Programme, will come into effect in 2013, seeking to pick up where the MIDP leaves off by stimulating the expansion of local production to 1,2 million vehicles a year by 2020. The sector will also benefit from new preferential procurement regulations that came into effect in December 2011.

- improving innovation in the domestic economy
- promoting the development and sustainability of SMMEs and cooperatives
- encouraging entrepreneurship and self-employment.

Business-development support programmes will be strengthened and regulatory impact assessment will be addressed to create a conducive environment for enterprise growth.

The department will work to increase and diversify economic opportunities for black people, and for black-owned and women-owned enterprises, especially in priority industrial sectors.

It will undertake a review of the BBBEE legislation and regulations to enhance efficiency, and expand opportunities for broader participation in the economy. Special attention will be given to preferential procurement and black supplier development initiatives.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to foster the growth of SMMEs and cooperatives by:

- facilitating the provision of business-development support to expand the current number of SMMEs (estimated at two million) and to increase the contributions of SMMEs and cooperatives to GDP from the current estimated 40% to 45% by 2014
- funding equipment to assist with the establishment of 300 small-scale cooperatives over the next three years, resulting in 1 500 new jobs or memberships of cooperatives
- facilitating access to procurement opportunities for SMMEs and cooperatives during the course of 2012 by overseeing the implementation of the 10-products strategy, which is aimed at increasing the share of SMMEs and cooperatives in government and SOEs procurement
- integrating entrepreneurship into the curriculum and research activities of four universities and two Further Education and Training Colleges over the next three years
- strengthening and upscaling the incubator programme to generate 600 new enterprises that can provide at least 5 000 jobs by 2014
- aligning BEE with industrial policy to facilitate the increased participation of black people and women in priority sectors by 2013
- supporting 60 innovative projects and at least 6 000 students to participate in the development of new technologies over the next three years, thus contributing to the establishment of new SMMEs
- supporting the development of at least three underdeveloped areas through targeted interventions by 2014
- improving the competitiveness of at least 120 companies by 2013 through the Workplace Challenge Programme.

Institutional support framework National Small Business Advisory Council (NSBAC)

The NSBAC advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses. The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

There are three primary working groups in each of the following primary areas:

- access to finance
- demand and markets
- regulatory review.

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Seda provides non-financial business-development and support services for small enterprises in partnership with other role players. Its mission is to develop, support and promote small enterprises to ensure their growth and sustainability. It aims to enhance the competitiveness and capabilities of small enterprises through coordinated services, programmes and projects and to ensure equitable access to business-support services.

In terms of IPAP II, the agency is expected to contribute to the following action programmes prioritised by the department over the medium term:

- providing accessibility to financing for the national tooling initiative
- mentoring small- to medium-component manufacturers
- participating in the skills transfer and technology upgrading programme for small-scale saw millers

  developing and establishing business-management structures
- providing training to charcoal manufacturing enterprises and cooperatives in communities showing interest in charcoal production.

In April 2011, the Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, announced that Seda was to roll out support for 250 SMME incubation schemes over the next five years as the first phase towards a target of 1 000 small business incubators.

Seda's Cooperatives and Community Public-Private Partnership programmes aim to grow sustainable enterprises in rural and peri-urban areas.

The programmes, which focus on agroprocessing, community tourism and protected areas, mining and mineral beneficiation and trading and auxiliary sectors, have assisted over 100 co-operatives with a collective membership of about 3 000 since inception in September 2009.

Seda assisted cooperatives with registration as a formal business enterprise, and provided them with cooperative, business-management, customer-care and start-up training.

South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund

Samaf's work is guided by the Department of Economic Development.

The fund has been operational since 2006 and provides wholesale funding and capacity-building support to on-lending financial intermediaries for the provision of affordable financial services to the enterprising poor in South Africa.

The fund focuses on establishing a network of sustainable micro-finance institutions and will provide loans amounting to R230 million over the medium term to on-lending financial intermediaries.

This represents a substantial increase in the entity's operations, with disbursements projected to go from R33 million in 2010/11 to R101 million in 2013/14.

The entity focuses on rural and semi-urban areas and contributes to the national priorities of creating decent work and rural development.

Samaf has implemented a major review and evaluation to assess the efficiencies and effectiveness of its operating model in achieving its mandate and will continue implementing the recommendations of the review over the medium term.

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited

Khula's work is guided by the Department of Economic Development.

Established in 1996, Khula is dedicated to the development and sustainability of SMMEs in South Africa.

The company is a wholesale finance institution, which operates across the public and private sectors, through a network of channels, to supply much-needed funding to small business. Khula's channels include South Africa's leading commercial banks, retail financial institutions, specialist funds and joint ventures in which Khula itself is a participant.

Research has shown that there is a significant portion of the SMME market that is underserviced by financial institutions. Khula plans to correct this by offering loans directly to SMMEs. A pilot project was approved for 2011/12 and R55 million allocated to fund this trial.

A full business plan for the pilot was developed in 2011. As from the 2011/12 financial year, 50% of all new loans issued by Khula Enterprise would be allocated to women.

As a DFI focusing on small businesses, Khula Enterprise Finance has been a financial facilitator for the development of the rapidly growing SME sector in South Africa.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialist risk-finance company for SMEs in South Africa and selected African countries. The company actively supports entrepreneurial growth by providing specialist risk finance for SMEs, specialist sectoral knowledge and added-value services to viable small and medium businesses.

It is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Remgro Ltd, Khula, major South African banks, insurance companies, mining houses and others.

Business Partners Ltd has 22 offices throughout South Africa.

Over the past few years, Business Partners' reach was extended into Africa, with country-specific pilot SME investment funds providing scalable risk-finance solutions in Kenya and Madagascar. The establishment of SME risk-finance funds in Mozambique and Rwanda was finalised in 2010. Groundwork was also undertaken in 2010/11 to establish a southern African SME risk-finance fund covering Namibia, Malawi, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

National Empowerment Fund

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation. It provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors. It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

The fund's strategic objectives over the medium term are to:

- encourage and promote savings, investments and meaningful economic participation by black people
- promote and support business ventures pioneered and run by black enterprises
- promote the universal understanding of equity ownership among black people
- contribute to creating employment opportunities
- encourage the development of a competitive, effective and inclusive equities market.

South African Women Entrepreneurs Network (Sawen)

Sawen assists aspiring and existing business women with their business enterprises.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the Department of Trade and Industry has been using vehicles such as Sawen, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business.

Isivande Women's Fund

The IWF aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing affordable, usable and responsive finance.

In the automotive sector, government's industrial incentive schemes and the solid platform for investment are attracting new investment by major multinational corporations.

In February 2011, it was announced that Mercedes-Benz would use South Africa as one of only four locations globally to build the next-generation popular C-class vehicle at its East London plant, creating about 1 500 new jobs in supplier industries.

General Motors will produce the Spark entry-level passenger car at its Port Elizabeth plant, creating 500 additional jobs. Volkswagen is producing the new Polo left-hand drive in Uitenhage for export markets. Ford Motor Company is assembling the new-generation pick-up truck at its Pretoria plant and will increase the local content of its vehicles from 35% to more than 60%.

From August 2011, BMW started producing the new 3-series all-wheel drive in South Africa. Toyota has announced a major expansion of its warehouse capacity, involving close to R10 billion in new investment and creating additional work opportunities.

It renders financial support for deals requiring start-up funding, involving business expansion, rehabilitation, turnaround and franchising. It provides loans that range from R30 000 to R2 million per business, with a maximum loan-repayment period of five years.

Industrial Development Corporation

The IDC is a national DFI and has been reporting to the Department of Economic Development since April 2010.

The primary objective of the corporation is to support industrial capacity development in line with the NGP and IPAP II.

The main outcome that the corporation aims to achieve is to facilitate the creation of sustainable employment opportunities.

Secondary outcomes include regional equity, a more vibrant SMME sector, BBBEE, new entrepreneurs in the economy and environmentally sustainable growth.

The corporation aims to more than double its funding over the next five years to R100 billion, compared with the R39 billion over the five years to 2009/10.

In April 2011, the Minister of Economic Development, Mr Ebrahim Patel, announced that the IDC would invest R102 billion over the next five years to improve the industrial sector.

Technology support

The Department of Trade and Industry implements skills-development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans. Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (Thrip), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for the following transfer payments and subsidies:

- the Seda's Technology Programme, which is managed by Seda to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- Thrip, which is managed by the National Research Foundation to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance

In April 2011, the Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008), came into effect. The law ensures an implied six-month guarantee on any goods purchased, regardless of the guarantees offered by the specific supplier.

The law also protects consumers against direct marketing. It provides for an exclusion register, which makes it illegal for salespeople to communicate electronically with a consumer whose name has been listed on this register.

Consumers contacted by direct marketing are allowed a five-day cooling-off period after entering into a sales agreement. One of the important elements introduced by the Act is the acknowledgement of the rights that all consumers enjoy.

- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

Black Economic Empowerment

BEE remains an important government policy to address the monopoly domination of the economy, which remains an obstacle to the goals of economic transformation, growth and development.

The BBBEE Advisory Council monitors the implementation of BBBEE by all organs of state, public entities, government departments, sector charter councils and the general public at large. Other tasks of the advisory council include:

- policy refinement and amendment of legislation to address identified gaps
- finalising the alignment of the PPPFA, 2000 to BBBEE Codes of Good Practice
- increasing BEE verification capacity and refining the accreditation process.

The department aims to integrate gender equity measures into more of its programmes.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE assist and advise both the public and private sectors on their implementation of the objectives of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

The codes provide definitions, interpretation and principles of BBBEE; different categories of BEE entities; and qualification criteria for preferential procurement purposes and other economic activities.

The Codes of Good Practice also provide the weightings, indicators, targets and guidelines for stakeholders in the relevant sectors of the economy to draw up transformation charters for their sectors.

The BEE Advisory Council has recommended a review of the BEE codes and of the BBBEE Act, 2003 to harmonise the implementation of BEE across government. The council also recommended stern measures to eradicate the fraudulent practice of fronting. The council aims to shift the focus of BEE away from equity investment and ownership towards productive activities.

In August 2011, the implementation of BBBEE received a boost when the Minister of Trade and Industry launched the BBBEE Management Development Programme (MDP).

The programme, which will be offered by the University of South Africa and the University of the Witwatersrand, is aimed at ensuring uniformity and consistency in the application and implementation of BBBEE.

It will create and build capacity in the BBBEE verification industry. The programme presents career opportunities for new entrants into this industry and students can now elect to study BBBEE as a profession.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP)

The BBSDP is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprise to assist them to improve their competitiveness and sustain tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology on a 80:20 cost-sharing basis.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- fast-track existing SMMEs that exhibit good potential for growth into the mainstream economy
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

Consumer and corporate regulation

The Consumer and Corporate Regulation Division of the Department of Trade and Industry aims to develop and implement coherent, predictable and transparent regulatory solutions that provide access to redress for inventors and consumers, and renders policy coherence and certainty and efficient regulatory services for business.

The Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008), was signed into law in April 2009.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring

BPO&O is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries with the required skills, cost advantage and infrastructure.

In 2010, investments of R40 million in the business process services sector led to the creation of 950 new jobs. Approval of a further R42 million worth of new investment commitments linked to 806 jobs was made. Under the Monyetla II Programme, 3 400 recruits were trained, of whom 70% have been guaranteed employment by the BPO consortium.

Monyetla, which means "opportunities", was launched in 2008 by the Business Trust, the Department of Trade and Industry and BPeSA, the traditional association for companies operating in the business process service and outsourcing market, as a pilot project to provide the unemployed youth of South Africa with employment through the BPO industry.

In September 2011, the Department of Trade and Industry approved grants worth R157,76 million for the BPO incentive scheme. The grants will be disbursed to 10 projects over the next three years and are expected to create more than 11 000 jobs. The incentives will be used to offset expenditure to make applicants globally competitive when servicing offshore clients out of South Africa. The grants cover only a portion of the operational costs related to the project. Disbursements are not made upfront but are paid only after confirmation that jobs have been created.

The jobs created by the beneficiaries have to be in place for a minimum period of three years. This implies that if a company creates additional employment at the end of the third year it will have to retain all jobs over a period of five years.

Department of Public Enterprises

The Department of Public Enterprises provides shareholder management to nine SOEs: Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom, the South African Forestry Company (Safcol), South African Airways (SAA), South African Express Airways (SAX) and Transnet.

The SOEs are strategic instruments of industrial policy and core players in the NGP. The department aims to provide decisive strategic direction to the SOEs so that their businesses are aligned with the national growth strategies arising out of the NGP.

In relation to government's 12 outcomes, the Department of Public Enterprises contributes directly to creating an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (Outcome 6). Over the medium term, the department will focus on:

- improving the delivery and maintenance of infrastructure and monitoring the roll-out of the Transnet and Eskom build programmes
- achieving policy and regulatory clarity in sectors in which the SOEs operate
- improving the operational efficiencies of the SOEs, particularly in relation to the reliable delivery of rail and ports services and the reliable generation, distribution and transmission of electricity
- developing operational indicators for each of the required suboutputs identified as part of the delivery agreement.

During 2010/11, the department used 98% of its R555,5-million budget and SOEs made good progress in enhancing the State's developmental agenda. Steps were taken to enhance the performance of the department by, among other things:

- committing to ensure the security of electricity supply by approving a funding strategy for Eskom
- restoring leadership stability in Transnet
- commencing the fleet renewal plan at SAA
- investing in Broadband Infraco's national backbone fibre optic network, which enabled the company to provide strategic international connectivity to operators in the SADC region and on the west coast of Africa.

State-owned enterprises

SOEs invested over R105 billion, mostly in infrastructure, during 2011/12.

The NGP sets the target of five million new jobs by 2020. The SOEs can contribute by:

- expanding their direct employment
- providing the infrastructure that can unlock jobs in the private sector and in rural areas
- expanding procurement of locally manufactured components and consumer goods used by SOEs, thereby expanding employment in the SOE supply chains

By June 2011, there were over 9 000 learners enrolled in training processes in state-owned enterprises (SOEs). The bulk of the training was related to scarce and critical skills – 2 242 engineering students, 1 064 technicians and 4 273 artisan students.

The Department of Public Enterprises increased the output of artisans from SOE training facilities by 60% to 6 780 students in 2011/12.

- providing skills to the wider economy through their mandate to produce more artisans and other key skills
- keeping tariffs for services competitive and thus helping to reduce input costs in the economy.

Accordingly, the vision for the department is to drive investment, efficiencies and transformation in its portfolio of SOEs, their customers and their suppliers to unlock growth, create jobs and develop skills.

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for 2009/14 states the need to review the SOEs as part of the economic transformation agenda.

In July 2011, Cabinet announced that President Jacob Zuma was heading the Infrastructure Commission, which was set up to improve visibility and coordination of South Africa's R860-billion public investment drive. It will include all spheres of government, various national departments and SOEs.

It will seek to unblock regulatory and funding constraints, set five-year project priorities, create certainty about expected developmental and industrial spin-offs, support the revitalisation of rail infrastructure, gain a handle on the life-cycle maintenance challenge and improve linkages to poor and rural communities.

Alexkor

Alexkor's distinctive competencies are its quality of diamonds and its unique land and marine mineral resources. Alexkor focuses on implementing the Richtersveld land restitution order imposed on it by the Land Claims Court.

It obliges Alexkor to transfer land and mineral rights to the Richtersveld community, establish Alexander Bay as a formal township, undertake environmental rehabilitation and establish a pooling and sharing joint venture with the Richtersveld Mining Company for future mining activities.

By June 2011, significant progress had been made in the implementation of the Deed of Settlement. All Alexkor state and Northern Cape Provincial Government land, including land-mining rights, had been transferred, except the township erven.

There was a redirection of Alexkor's strategy to ensure that it operated on a commercially viable basis and contributed towards the socio-economic upliftment of the communities and regions in which it operated.

Alexkor was also mandated to explore opportunities to procure new mining ventures to secure new revenue streams and ensure its future growth. This entails:

- exploring opportunities for downstream beneficiation to contribute to job creation
- developing requisite skills
- investing in research and development
- economic growth, sustainable development and cost-effective support for the broader policies of government.

This new strategy will ensure the company's long-term viability, while contributing to the socio-economic upliftment and development of the Richtersveld region.

South African Forestry Company

In 1998, Cabinet took a decision to restructure Safcol and the former Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's plantations in South Africa. Having noted and acknowledged that the plantations are affected by land-reform issues, Cabinet resolved that the process of state forestry restructuring should proceed in a way that would cater for and protect the right of land-reform beneficiaries in future.

To implement the Cabinet decision, government entered into lease agreements with four forestry companies, namely Mountain to Ocean in the Western Cape, Amathole and Singisi in the Eastern Cape and SiyaQhubeka in KwaZulu-Natal, where levels of unemployment are high.

Safcol aims to contribute to rural welfare and development.

It provides almost 2 200 permanent jobs and 2 000 contractual jobs in rural areas in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

In 2011, the Department of Trade and Industry explored a range of different business models and institutional structures through which the developmental impact of Safcol's human and financial resources could be optimised.

Consultation with key stakeholders took place before the matter was taken to Cabinet for consideration. Downstream economic activities in rural areas, from timber-milling to furniture manufacture, have also been encouraged.

In 2011, a process was underway with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform to dispose of the remaining shareholding in the four privatised forestry companies to the communities surrounding Safcol's forestry operations.

As almost 61% of land under Safcol's operation is subject to land claims, the department is playing a proactive role in facilitating the resolution of these claims through effective interdepartmental cooperation.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco provides strategic international connectivity to operators in the SADC region and on the West Coast of Africa. Broadband Infraco operates within specific focus areas of the telecommunications sector in South Africa.

In 2011, the department explored strategic synergies between Infraco and Sentech to optimise capacity.

The network established 13 600 km of long-distance fibre, as well as five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas. A further seven open access points to roll out broadband access in remote rural areas and to facilities such as hospitals, clinics and schools were also established.

Wholesale long-distance connectivity prices have come down by more than 75% over the past two years, partly as a consequence of the establishment of Broadband Infraco, thus further unlocking economic value by reducing the cost of connectivity.

Denel

Denel (Pty) Ltd is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. Incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the South African Companies Act, 1973 (Act 62 of 1973), Denel's sole shareholder is the South African Government.

A structured mechanism is required to effect the necessary alignment of Denel's business plan with the requirements of the Department of Defence.

Shrinking defence budgets have resulted in downscaling certain procurement programmes, with lower economies of scale and increasing unit costs.

Denel was expected to accelerate its efforts towards skills development and transformation. The company is expected to generate skills across the full spectrum, ranging from artisan level to engineers and high-tech technologists.

Eskom

During 2011/12, Eskom invested over R76 billion in infrastructure.

Its rolling capital investment programme increased from R92 billion in 2005 to R549 billion in 2011.

Through its Medium-Term Power Purchase Programme, Eskom signed contracts with five independent power producers, totalling some 373 MW of capacity. It also signed up about 200 MW of municipal generation for the 2011 winter.

The African Development Bank approved a US$365-million loan to Eskom for the 100-MW Concentrated Solar Power Plant and the 100-MW Wind Power Plant.

Eskom submitted a US$250-million loan application to the World Bank for funding from the Clean Technology Fund.

In 2011, Eskom provided apprenticeships to 10 000 young people – up from 4 500 – and implemented a youth programme to support about 5 000 young people to find their way into employment – up from 200 – by 2015.

South African Airways

SAA's primary focus on the African continent is to establish itself as a leading network carrier from OR Tambo International Airport to other primary airports across the continent. SAA plans to introduce additional routes and frequencies to broaden operations and improve its African footprint.

This strategic focus is also fundamental to SAA's strategy to strengthen its balance sheet as the African market boasts good demand and better profit margins.

The department commenced with the fleet renewal plan at SAA with the acquisition of the Airbus A300-200 long-range aircraft.

Between 2011 and 2015, SAA will acquire 25 additional aircraft capable of varying ranges, which will be used for long-range as well as domestic and regional hauls. These new fuel-efficient aircraft are expected to improve the airline's service offering and have a positive impact on SAA's reputation as a leading airline on the continent.

South African Express

SAX has a route network covering four African countries and acts as a strategic feeder, connecting secondary airports with each other and also with large hub airports.

In 2010/11, SAX embarked on a fleet renewal plan, with the objective of meeting demand over the next 10 years aimed at delivering improvements in reliability, introducing cleaner technology to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and offering greater customer comfort while remaining cost-efficient.

The acquisition of new aircraft commenced in 2011 and is expected to result in average capacity growth of 8,6% per year over the next four years.

Transnet

Transnet is a public company wholly owned by government. It is the largest and most crucial part of the freight logistics chain that delivers goods to each South African. Transnet delivers thousands of tons of goods daily around South Africa, through its pipelines and to and from its ports.

Transnet's budget for 2011/12 was R25,8 billion, of which R15,1 billion (58,6%) was spent on rail. Transnet's rolling five-year investment programme is expected to total R110,6 billion.

The New Multi-Product Pipeline connecting Durban with Johannesburg will ensure the supply of liquid fuels to the hinterland.

Public works programmes

The Department of Public Works is responsible for providing official accommodation for all national departments and all members of Parliament, and rendering construction- and property-management services to client departments at national level. The department is also responsible for providing leadership for and coordinating the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The department's planning is aligned with government's MTSF and three of the Government's 12 outcomes: decent employment through inclusive economic growth (Outcome 4); sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life (Outcome 8); an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service; and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship (Outcome 12).

The EPWP is supporting Outcome 4, focusing on alleviating youth unemployment and meeting targets for annual work opportunities created.

The Department of Public Works is required to contribute land for low-income housing to the Department of Human Settlements in support of Outcome 8. In this regard, the department has identified 9 000 ha of land to be transferred to the Department of Human Settlements over the medium term.

In support of Outcome 12, the department will continue ensuring the provision of quality infrastructure and office accommodation to its clients by implementing building and maintenance programmes that support service delivery and will ensure that state buildings are accessible to all citizens.

By June 2011, 45 municipalities were implementing the Community Work Programme, giving almost 90 000 individuals work opportunities and a steady income.

The innovative Food for Waste Programme has communities collecting waste and receiving compensation in the form of food parcels. By August 2011, over 3 000 job opportunities had been created for poor and vulnerable communities through the programme.

By 2011, 39 municipalities were participating in the programme. It was also helping municipalities to deal with the waste-management backlog.

Expanded Public Works Programme

In 2011, Phase Two of the EPWP was in the second year of implementation. The programme had committed to delivering 4,5 million work opportunities over five years.

Cabinet's adoption of the NGP provides more opportunities for the EPWP in the area of job creation.

The National Youth Service, a critical component of the EPWP, will continue benefiting from the building and maintenance programmes of the Department of Public Works and client departments. The EPWP is a major benefactor of the infrastructure sector projects and this will continue over the medium term. The social and environmental sectors will continue implementing upscaled projects to contribute to the attainment of the EPWP's work opportunity targets.

The EPWP had been allocated R679 million for incentive grants to municipalities and R267 million for provinces.

The EPWP created 643 116 work opportunities in 2010/11, exceeding its target of 642 000 work opportunities for the financial year.

The sector breakdown of work opportunities created under the EPWP in 2010/11 is:

- infrastructure: 277 100
- environment and culture: 107 189
- social: 131 979
- non-state (community works programme): 92 136
- non-profit organisations: 34 712.

Building, maintenance and capital works programmes

Implementation of all departmental programmes pertaining to building, maintenance and capital works will continue over the medium term. Some of the projects include:

- upgrading 110 facilities to allow access to the disabled
- upgrading and constructing 45 department offices
- developing 12 national government precincts
- redeveloping 136 infrastructure-related border-post centres.

These projects were funded from the capital works budgets of the Department of Public Works and client departments.

In January 2011, the Department of Public Works announced a R150-million budget to rid the country of potholes and mud schools. The multimillion-Rand project is expected to create at least 14 000 jobs. It started in March 2011.

Construction and Property Industry Development Programme

Construction industry growth cannot be seen in isolation of the pressing need to transform the industry into one that performs better in terms of quality, employment, safety, health and the environment.

The Department of Public Works seeks to support and empower women-owned construction enterprises through its existing contractor-development programmes. Since the inception of the procurement-reform process in 1995, the department has been actively involved in conceptualising and implementing programmes to promote emerging contractors in the built environment. These programmes included Targeted Procurement and the Emerging Contractor Development Programme.

The National Contractor Development Programme is jointly managed by the Department of Public Works and its entity, the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB). It entails registering and empowering contractors through various developmental interventions.

The scarcity of skills in the construction and built-environment sectors requires targeted ongoing human capital-development initiatives by the department. It is facing major challenges around operational resources and the filling of strategic professional and technical skills in areas like project management, financial management and business analysis, which are critical for it to deliver on its the mandate. The department is addressing these challenges by working on a number of initiatives, such as learnerships and internships in some professional councils in partnership with the Council for the Built Environment (CBE), a bursary scheme for students, a young professionals programme and adult basic education and training.

Construction Industry Development Board

The CIDB was established by the Construction Industry Development Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000), as a statutory body to:

- provide leadership to stakeholders
- stimulate sustainable growth
- reform and encourage improvements in the construction sector
- improve its role in the economy.

The CIDB reports to the Minister of Public Works and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector.

Council for the Built Environment

The CBE is a statutory body established under the CBE Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000). It is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils (architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying) for promoting good conduct within the professions, transforming them and advising government on built environment-related issues.

Labour programmes

The aim of the Department of Labour's programmes is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improved economic efficiency and productivity
- employment creation
- sound labour relations

- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- alleviating poverty in employment
- enhancing occupational health and safety (OHS) awareness and compliance in the workplace
- nurturing the culture of acceptance that worker rights are human rights.

To contribute to the strategic priorities of government, over the next three years, the department will focus on service-delivery outcomes and strategic objectives which include: contributing to decent employment creation; protecting vulnerable workers; promoting equity in the labour market; strengthening social protection; promoting sound labour relations; monitoring the impact of legislation; enhancing multilateral and bilateral relations; and strengthening the institutional capacity of the department.

The Department of Labour prides itself on contributing indirectly to employment through the UIF and Compensation Fund (CF) reserves' investment in a commercial socially responsible investment portfolio with the Public Investment Corporation.

As part of a drive to ensure decent work, the department will pursue its target to inspect some 200 000 workplaces and ensure 80% compliance with all labour legislation.

The Department of Labour has an infrastructure network of 421 service points spread across the country. These include 126 labour centres, 31 satellite offices, 19 mobile offices, 153 visiting points, and also services provided at Thusong Service Centres.

As part of government's commitment and effort to bring about a society based on justice and equality for all, the department identified policy gaps in some pieces of legislation and submitted the following amendments to Parliament:

- Labour Relations Amendment Bill, 2010
- Basic Conditions of Employment Amendment Bill, 2010
- Employment Equity Amendment Bill, 2010
- The new Employment Services Bill, 2010.

The Department of Labour was addressing policy gaps in sheltered employment factories (SEF), concentrating specifically on accommodating the needs of people with disabilities and gender equality.

One of the department's key aims in amending labour legislation is to address labour brokering and its associated abusive tendencies.

The new Employment Services Bill sets out the proposed legal framework for the operation of employment services. The Bill also sets out the role of Productivity South Africa under the mandate of the department and provides a legal basis for the operation of SEF.

During 2010/11, the department's Employment Services for South Africa (Essa) registered 472 179 job seekers. The service linked 70% of these registered jobseekers to career counselling, skills-development interventions, work-placement opportunities and UIF and CF benefits.

Through Essa, the department aims to provide assistance to 51 500 workers in distressed sectors over the 2011/12 to 2015/16 period.

There are 151 000 people from designated groups who will be placed in training and income-generating opportunities over the 2011/12 to 2015/16 period. The total targeted group comprises 10 000 youth, 15 000 women and 4 000 persons with disabilities.

The SEF, which falls under the Public Employment Services Branch, aims to increase orders for goods leading to the creation of jobs for 3 500 people with disabilities over the same period. In addition to job creation, the SEF aims to accommodate more people with disabilities from disadvantaged communities, as it previously accommodated only a certain category of ex-combatants.

About 3 200 learners will be recruited between 2011/12 to 2015/16 to participate in the SEF's Centre of Excellence to train them as mentors and place in both the SEF and in the open economy.

Unemployment Insurance Fund

The main tasks of the UIF are to:

- maintain an employer/employee database
- process claims and pay benefits
- invest excess funds
- reduce opportunities for fraud
- collect contributions.

The Property Incubator Programme and the Construction Incubator Programme of the Department of Public Works are linked to the transformation of the property and construction industries. The Property Incubator Programme aims to bring previously disadvantaged individuals into the property sector. Under the Contractor Incubator Programme, the department will provide support to users and custodian departments regarding the development of life-cycle asset-management plans.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003), deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits. It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries. The South African Revenue Service (Sars) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

During 2010/11, the UIF experienced a decrease in unemployment benefit payments compared to the same period in 2009/10. This was mainly due to the effects of the recession wearing off, highlighting the importance of the UIF as a safety net during times of unemployment and economic crisis.

In the period up to March 2011, the UIF paid benefits totalling R5,3 billion to 693 000 people, as opposed to R5,7 billion to 779 604 beneficiaries in 2009/10

The UIF identified a number of projects in pursuit of the decent work agenda in South Africa. The fund invested R35 billion of its R52-billion portfolio in government, municipal and parastatal bonds (including an investment in the IDC through the purchase of a R2-billion bond in 2010), as well as money-market instruments that support infrastructure projects aimed at creating jobs. The UIF paid out over R1,4 billion to unemployed and retrenched workers between April and June 2011.

Occupational Health and Safety

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations and providing advocacy and statutory services. Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments.

The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS in terms of the OHS Act, 1993. The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996). The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

The Employment Services for South Africa (Essa) is an employment service provided by the Department of Labour's Public Employment Services Branch, whereby those who are unemployed and prospective employers register on the system. The system matches people to posts.

The *Essa Research Report* revealed that over 700 000 of the 4,3 million unemployed people were registered as work seekers on the Essa system.

From 2007 to 2010, 251 748 opportunities were registered with Essa, growing by an average of 96%. There are 2 714 employers registered on Essa.

Compensation Fund

The CF administers the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993, as amended. The fund financially supports workers who have become injured or ill owing to injuries or accidents at work.

In 2011, the CF invested R9 billion in support of investment in infrastructure projects aimed at creating jobs.

The CF processed injured-on-duty claims and paid compensation benefits in 2010/11 to the amount of R2,1 billion.

In terms of medical claims, the CF paid 186 563 medical accounts in 2010/11 worth R1,9 billion, compared to 135 829 accounts worth R1,5 billion in the same period in 2009/10. Revenue of R4,5 billion was raised in 2010/11. Because of increased debt-collection capacity, debt worth R431 million was recovered. The CF's total investments increased by R3,2 billion, from R23,3 billion to R26,5 billion.

The CF aimed to increase the number of registered employers in 2011/12 to improve revenue collection through employer assessments.

To promote a return to work, development of skills and an improvement in the functionality of injured and diseased employees, the CF began developing an integrated comprehensive policy framework for rehabilitation, reintegration and return to work of its beneficiaries. This will require amendment of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993. The amendments are projected to be promulgated in 2014/15.

Directorate: Collective Bargaining

The Directorate: Collective Bargaining has to:

- extend the collective bargaining system to cover more vulnerable workers

- ensure that the implementation and impact of the Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), are optimised
- effectively monitor dispute resolution.

The directorate:

- registers trade unions, employers' organisations, and bargaining and statutory councils
- publishes bargaining council agreements for the extension thereof to non-parties
- promotes and monitors collective bargaining.

Dispute resolution

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996 in terms of the LRA, 1995. It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

Despite the caseload pressures, the CCMA meets and often exceeds its performance targets. In 2010/11, the number of pre-conciliations increased by 4%, with a significant 9% increase in the number settled. The total number of conciliations scheduled outside the 30-day period decreased by 72%.

The actual number of cases settled increased by 9%, with the final settlement rate standing at 69%, the highest it has been in years.

Labour-market policy

The Labour-Market Policy Programme consists of three directorates, namely Research Policy and Planning (RPP), Labour-Market Information and Statistics (LMIS) and International Relations (IR).

The Directorate: RPP is responsible for:

- analysing labour-market information and conditions
- identifying relevant labour-market interventions
- formulating labour-market policies
- researching, monitoring and evaluating policies affecting the labour market.

The Directorate: LMIS is responsible for:

- creating and maintaining capacity to monitor, analyse and disseminate labour-market information and statistics pertaining to trends in the labour market and the impact of labour-market policies
- creating and maintaining linkages with other producers and users of labour-market information and statistics, with the aim of avoiding duplication and promoting clear use of concepts
- developing the departmental library as an expanded resource centre
- assisting other departmental directorates with statistical procedures to develop and monitor departmental activities.

The Directorate: IR is responsible for:

- developing strategies to consolidate South Africa's presence in international forums
- monitoring developments in the African region and southern African subregion
- facilitating the department's participation in bilateral and multilateral organisations in the region
- discharging South Africa's obligations to international organisations of which the country is a member
- developing strategies to encourage conformity with international labour standards in the region.

Employment equity (EE)

To support and accelerate the implementation of the EE Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), the Directorate: EE focused mainly on developing an EE system aimed at strengthening the implementation and enforcement mechanisms of the Act. An online EE reporting service was developed and implemented as from 1 September 2005.

In addition, the Director-General Review System was developed to assess employers' substantive compliance with the EE Act, 1998. The programme supports capacity-building in trade-union organisations by means of the Strengthening of Civil Society Fund.

For 2011 EE reporting, only those employing more than 150 employees were expected to submit EE reports. The EE Unit of the Department of Labour analysed 4 211 EE reports in 2011, compared with 3 369 reports in 2009.

In September 2011, the department embarked on a national roadshow hosting a series of workshops with stakeholders to create awareness concerning compliance with the law and help employers understand how to follow requirements of the Act.

The focus of the 2011 EE roadshows was on promoting and gathering public comments on the Draft Revised Code of Good Practice on HIV and AIDS in the World of Work and Employment and EE reporting requirements for 2011.

The *11th Commission on EE Annual Report,* which covered the period from 1 April 2010 to 31 March 2011, showed that 18 534 reports were received, of which 16 698, covering more than 5,2 million employees, were analysed.

National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac)

Nedlac was established in terms of the Nedlac Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994). It requires organised labour, organised business, community-based organisations and government, as a collective, to:

- promote the goals of economic growth
- participate in economic decision-making and social equity
- seek to reach consensus, and conclude agreements on matters pertaining to social and economic policy
- consider all proposed labour legislation relating to labour-market policy before it is introduced in Parliament
- consider all significant changes to social and economic policy before they are implemented or introduced in Parliament
- encourage and promote the formulation of coordinated policy on social and economic matters.

Over the medium term, the council will continue to focus on the implementation of the national framework for South Africa's response to the global economic crisis, and on policy work on trade, investment and industrial development matters.

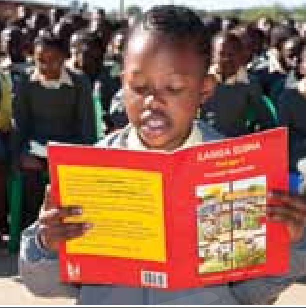
Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Business Day
Business Map
Business Partners Limited
Business Report
Department of Trade and Industry
Development Indicators, 2010
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011 published by National Treasury
Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14
Fifteen-Year Review, published by The Presidency
Medium Term Strategic Framework
Office for Public Enterprises
Pretoria News
Quarterly Bulletin, September 2011, published by the South African Reserve Bank
Sapa
South African Reserve Bank
Statistics South Africa
Sunday Times
Sowetan online
Towards a Ten-Year Review

www.buanews.gov.za
www.dpe.gov.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.godisa.net
www.gov.za
www.idc.co.za
www.khula.org.za
www.labour.gov.za
www.polity.org.za
www.sacu.int
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.twib.co.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
http://allafrica.com
http://retail.bizcommunity.com

Suggested reading

Descriptive Accounting. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
Dyubhele, N. 2008. *Isigama Seqoqoqosho: Economic Terms and Concepts Made Simple.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Gordon-Davis, L. 2008. *Legal Requirements for Hospitality Businesses*. 2nd ed. Wetton, Cape Town: Juta.
Grobbelaar, N & Besada, H (eds). 2008. *Unlocking Africa's Potential: The Role of Corporate South Africa in Strengthening Africa's Private Sector*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs.
Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors & Skills: The Need for Policy Alignment*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.
Leon, J (comp ed). 2009. *Gaffney's Business Contacts in South Africa 2009: The Chambers of Commerce & Industries Yearbook & Buyer's Guide*. Johannesburg: Gaffney Group.
Nel, R. 2009. *Puppets or People. People and Organisational Development: An Integrated Approach*. Cape Town: Juta.
Scerri, M. 2009. *The Evolution of the South African System of Innovation Since 1916*. Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars.
South African Banking Sector Analysis. 2008. Delhi: RNCOS.
The South African Business Forecast Report: Includes 10-Year Forecasts to End-2018. London: Business Monitor.
Turok, B. 2008. *From the Freedom Charter to Polokwane: The Evolution of ANC Economic Policy*. Cape Town: New Agenda.
Turok, B (ed). 2008. *Wealth doesn't Trickle Down: The Case for a Developmental State in South Africa*. Cape Town: New Agenda: South African Journal of Social and Economic Policy.
Zumanomics: Which Way to Shared Prosperity in South Africa? Challenges for a New Government. 2009. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.



Education

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2011/12

In response to government's decision to prioritise basic education, the responsibility for education was split into two ministries in May 2009. The Ministry of Basic Education includes all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, as well as mass adult literacy programmes, while the Ministry of Higher Education and Training deals with universities, the whole field of training, including post-school education and training, as well as coordinating the Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa (HRD-SA).

Government places education and skills development at the centre of its policies and education spending remains government's largest expenditure item.

Among the closely monitored performance areas are the number of Grade 12 learners qualifying for university entry as well as those students' Mathematics and Physical Science pass rates.

In 2011, the national Grade 12 pass rate was 70,2%, compared to the 67,8% previous year.

Government aims to increase the number of Grade 12s qualifying to enrol for a Bachelor's Degree to 175 000 by 2014.

One way of doing this is to do an annual national assessment (ANA) that is standardised and internationally benchmarked. Analysis of the results of such assessments will inform the plans the department will adopt to improve the quality of learning and teaching.

In February 2011, more than six million primary school learners from grades one to six sat for the first ANA tests in Languages (home and first additional language) and Mathematics.

The results were released in April 2011 and showed several weaknesses in Numeracy and Literacy that need urgent intervention. Government aims to increase the pass rate for these tests from between 35% and 40% to at least 60% by 2014.

The Ten Point Plan for schools emphasises better quality learning and teaching in early childhood development (ECD) and primary schooling. The plan emphasises that teachers must be in class, on time, teaching and making use of textbooks, echoing the "triple T" of the Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign, a multistakeholder campaign, which underlines the importance of "teachers, textbooks and time" in improving learning.

Policy reviews and statements acknowledge South Africa's considerable successes. The average highest school grade completed for 20-year-old South Africans improved from 9,5 grades in 1995 to 11,2 grades in 2009 (with the highest being 12 grades, which would mean everyone completed Grade 12). By 2009, 98,5% of children aged seven to 15 and 98,8% of children aged seven to 14 were enrolled in a school (if compulsory schooling were fully implemented, the second statistic would be 100% – learners may legally leave school if they are 15 or turned 15 in the previous year).

Day-to-day attendance of learners is below what it should be. Around 200 000 children do not attend school at all, while others who drop out in grades nine, 10 and 11 represent lost opportunities for thousands of youths each year.

Public spending in South Africa on primary and secondary schooling as a proportion of gross national product compares well to what occurs elsewhere. In South Africa, the figure is 4%, against an average of 3,1% for developing countries and 2,9% in sub-Saharan Africa. Absolute spending per learner is also good in South Africa by international standards. At primary level, spending per enrolled learner is around US$1 383, against US$167 in sub-Saharan Africa and US$614 in Latin America. Similarly, large differences are seen at secondary level, where the figures are US$1 726, US$376 and US$594 for South Africa, sub-Saharan Africa and Latin America respectively.

Government is committed to raising the status of teachers in society through better in-service training, resulting in more motivated and capable teaching, coupled with further improvements in teachers' service conditions.

In July 2010, government announced plans to get more than 200 000 children between the ages of seven and 15 enrolled in schools by 2014, by increasing the number of no-fee schools and widening feeding schemes.

By February 2012, there were more than 12 million learners in 24 365 public schools and 1 486 private schools. They were taught by 365 447 teachers.

The Department of Basic Education finalised a comprehensive turnaround plan for improving the quality of learning and teaching in schools called Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

The action plan aims to improve all aspects of education such as teacher recruitment, learner enrolment, school funding, mass literacy and numeracy, and overall quality of education through specific measurable targets.

The adoption in 2010 of an outcomes-based approach in implementing government's priorities ensures that the work of government is measured according to outcomes. The performance outcomes are politically determined positions of government to achieve greater and more focused development. The outcomes approach enables the Department of Basic Education to set measurable targets and deliverables for monitoring progress in addressing challenges in education.

Legislative framework and policies

Since 1994, a number of policies have been implemented and legislation promulgated to create a framework for transformation in education and training.

The Constitution requires that education be transformed and democratised in accordance with the values of human dignity, equality, human rights and freedom, non-racism and non-sexism. It guarantees access to basic education for all, with the provision that everyone has the right to basic education, including adult basic education.

The fundamental policy framework of the Ministry of Basic Education is stated in the Ministry's first *White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa: First Steps to Develop a New System,* published in February 1995.

The National Education Policy Act (Nepa), 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), brought into law the policies, and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education, as well as the formal relations between national and provincial authorities. It laid the foundation for the establishment of the Council of Education Ministers (CEM), as well as the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom), as intergovernmental forums that would collaborate in the development of a new education system. Nepa, 1996 therefore provided for the formulation of national policy in general, and Further Education and Training (FET) policies for curriculum, assessment, language and quality assurance. Nepa, 1996 embodies the principle of cooperative governance, elaborated on in Schedule Three of the Constitution.

The South African Schools Act (Sasa), 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), promotes access, quality and democratic governance in the schooling system. Its purpose is to ensure that all learners have right of access to quality education without discrimination, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15. It provides for two types of schools, namely independent and public schools. The provision in the Act for democratic school governance, through school governing bodies (SGBs), has been effected in public schools countrywide.

The school-funding norms, outlined in Sasa, 1996 prioritise redress and target poverty with regard to the allocation of funds for the public schooling system. Sasa, 1996 has been amended by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), which authorises the declaration of schools in poverty-stricken areas as "no-fee schools", and by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007), which provides for the functions and responsibilities of school principals.

The Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as teachers' competency requirements. The Act and the South African Council of Educators (SACE) regulate the teaching corps.

The South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), provides for the establishment of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF), which forms the scaffolding for a national learning system that integrates education and training at all levels.

The design of the NQF was refined with the publication of the Higher Education Qualifications Framework in the *Government Gazette* (No 928, 5 October 2007) to provide 10 NQF levels. The school and college level qualifications occupy levels one to four as in the original formulation, with plans to accommodate some of the college-level qualifications at Level Five. Higher Education (HE) qualifications in the new formulation of the NQF occupy six levels, namely levels five to 10. Levels five to seven are undergraduate and levels eight to 10 are postgraduate.

The National Curriculum Statement (NCS) grades R to 12, a policy statement for learning and teaching in schools, replaced the policy document, *A Résumé of Industrial Programmes in Schools, Report 550 (89/03)*. It embodies the vision for general education to move away from a racist, apartheid role model of learning and teaching, to a liberating, nation-building and learner-centred and outcomes-based initiative. In line with training strategies, the reformulation is intended to allow greater mobility between different levels and between institutional sites, and promote the integration of knowledge and skills through learning pathways. Its assessment, qualifications, competency and skills-based framework encourages the development of curriculum models that are aligned to the NQF in theory and practice.

The Education White Papers on Early ChildhoodEducation, 2001 provides for the expansion and full participation of five-year-olds in pre-school reception grade (Grade R) education, and an improvement in the quality of programmes, curricula and teacher development for birth to four-year-olds and six- to nine-year-olds.

The Education White Paper 6 on Special Needs Education, 2001 describes the Department of Education's intention to implement inclusive education at all levels in the system by 2020. Such an inclusive system will facilitate the inclusion of vulnerable learners and reduce the barriers to learning, through targeted support structures and mechanisms that will improve the retention of learners in the education system, particularly learners who are prone to dropping out.

The General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001), provides for the establishment of Umalusi. This body is responsible for providing quality assurance in general and FET, issuing certificates at the various exit points, controlling norms and standards of curricula and assessments, and conducting actual assessments.

Budget allocation

The Department of Basic Education received a budget allocation of R6,166 billion for the 2010/11 financial year, an increase of R2,23 billion from the previous year. Additional funds were received for the following priorities, with expected growth in the budgets over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework:

- the supply of learners' workbooks: R750 million was allocated, reaching R1 billion in 2012/13
- the National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (Needu) was allocated R11,031 million
- the recapitalisation of technical high schools received an allocation of R80 million, building on the R5 million allocated in 2009/10
- spending by provincial education departments is expected to grow by 8,1% a year to R162 billion between 2011/12 and 2013/14 to ensure the system responds to the educational needs of all learners.

Additional funds were granted for the following priorities:

- The National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) Conditional Grant increased to cater for implementation of school feeding in Quintile Two secondary schools.
- Allocations to the Kha Ri Gude illiteracy programme increased from R468 million in 2010/11 to more than R520 million in 2012/13.
- Funza Lushaka bursaries to enable students to complete a full teaching qualification in an area of national priority, increased to R449,44 million in 2011/12 and will reach R893,867 million in 2013/14. Through the Funza Lushaka Bursary Scheme, the department produced close on 5 534 teachers in four years; over 65% are employed in Quintile One to Three schools, and serve the poorest of the poor.

National and provincial departments of education

The role of the national department is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework. It is the legislative mandate of the Department of Basic Education to develop and maintain national policies for the basic education sector. The national department has to work closely with provincial departments to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments of education for school education and ECD. However, it is not the responsibility of the national department to finance and manage schools directly but rather the task of the provinces. Together, national and provincial departments must meet the responsibilities set out in Chapter Three of the Constitution through cooperative governance.

Relations with provincial departments of education are guided by national policy, within which the provincial departments have to set their own priorities and implementation programmes.

Outcomes focus

In 2010, as part of a major overhaul of government's planning systems, improving the quality of basic education was declared Outcome One of a total of 12 outcomes representing government's top priorities.

The Department of Basic Education has set a number of key targets and outcomes through Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

Schooling 2025 is expected to coordinate and guide all interventions in the basic education system to turn the system around. The plan establishes key outcomes and performance deliverables for the entire education system, including the national and provincial departments. The plan commits provinces and provincial education departments to clear, agreed-to outcomes and ensures that all in the system are accountable for attaining them.

Education systems will have to improve to achieve the targets. The turnaround strategies include a social compact with unions to achieve the goal to have all teachers in school doing their jobs.

Targets

To address the challenges set by the turnaround strategies, the department established the following targets to be achieved by 2014:

- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass the national examinations and qualify to enter a Bachelor's Programme at a university will increase from 105 000 to 175 000
- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass Mathematics and Physical Science will total 225 000 and 165 000 respectively
- the percentage of learners in grades three, six and nine in public schools who obtain the minimum acceptable mark in the ANA for Language and Mathematics (or Numeracy) will improve from between 27% and 38% to at least 60%.

Priorities

To support the achievement of the targets, the Department of Basic Education has set out the following priorities:

- by 2014, there will be universal access to Grade R for all age-appropriate children
- adequate learning and teaching material will be developed and distributed, particularly to those schools the department has identified
- standardised ANA of the quality of learning will take place in grades three, six and nine annually.

Policy developments and programmes

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit

Nepa, 1996 compels the Minister and the Department of Basic Education to monitor and report on the implementation of education policies and the system's progress.

In March 2011, the Minister of Basic Education, Ms Angie Motshekga, launched Needu, which is expected to identify the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and to make focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement.

Needu is a result of an agreement to establish an external agency that will evaluate the entire education system and report to the Minister on the state of education in South Africa, and in particular on the status of teaching and learning in all schools.

Its core responsibilities will be:

- providing the Minister with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system
- identifying, on a system-wide basis, the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement; and making focused recommendations for redressing the problem areas that undermine school improvement
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners
- assessing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly to ensure clarity and coherence in the ways schools and teachers are assessed and supported
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement and in their particular context promote school improvement through good practice.

Curriculum

The Department of Basic Education has undertaken a process of curriculum revision as a result of the main recommendations of the report prepared by the ministerial committee established in 2009 to review the implementation of the NCS.

Changes are ongoing with minimal disruption, to create relief and improve systems. The longer-term change to the curriculum requires coherent action and needs to be done properly. To provide short-term relief, the number of projects for learners was reduced, and portfolio files of learner assessments and the continuous task of assessment for Grade Nine learners done away with. Instead, the tests for grades three, six and nine will be set nationally, administered by schools and moderated externally. The department will make available exemplar question papers.

The Minister established three committees to enable smooth implementation of curriculum streamlining. The review committee raised questions about the lack of clarity in the NCS. The first committee's task is to provide clear guidelines of what teachers ought to teach on a grade-by-grade and subject-by-subject basis. The time frame for this committee will be two years rather than the one year proposed by the review committee. This will enable it to consult widely and test the statements with teachers.

Its work is supported by two other committees: one to plan for implementation of learning areas in the Intermediate Phase from eight to six, and the other to consider recommendations for improving the distribution and use of learning and teaching support material in schools.

The curriculum challenge is a comprehensive one. It requires ongoing research and development. Effective communication of all these changes is also critical. The Department of Basic Education began a curriculum newsletter, which is distributed to all teachers and officials. Its purpose is to ensure that all teachers and officials are kept abreast of changes and what to expect in future.

Learning and teaching support material

One of the key priorities of Schooling 2025 is to develop and distribute learning and teaching material, especially learner workbooks. The Department of Basic Education has a plan in place to develop workbooks for grades one to six.

The R750-million workbook allocation in 2011/12 is expected to rise to R1 billion in 2012/13. This is a significant contribution towards assisting the department to meet its challenges in providing support for the curriculum.

The national Department of Basic Education set aside R8 billion over a period of three years to replace mud and inappropriate structures. Some 119 new schools were completed in 2010 as multi-year projects.

In 2011/12, over 3 322 students were supported with bursaries to study at Higher Education and Further Education and Training (FET) institutions. Through Human Resource Development Council-initiatives, 90 FET college lecturers were trained at the universities of Fort Hare, Walter Sisulu and Nelson Mandela Metropolitan.

The Foundations for Learning Programme, implemented in 2011, focuses on strengthening Literacy and Numeracy. Learning and teaching packs for Grade R teachers were distributed to all 13 900 schools that offer Grade R. These packs included lesson plans for Literacy, Numeracy and Life Skills; learners' workbooks and resource books; and posters and story books. Lesson plans in Literacy and Numeracy for grades one to six teachers were also distributed.

By February 2012, 54 million workbooks were delivered to 26 000 schools compared to 24 million in 2011.

Procurement reforms, especially for textbooks, is a key element of the department's commitment to improve education. These reforms include the setting up of a national agency to handle all textbook procurement-related matters. Provincial departments will mainly deal with the distribution of textbooks. It is expected that the new approach will eliminate challenges, ensure a more competitive and transparent bidding process, timely delivery of the exact quantities and at the scheduled time.

Educational portal

The educational portal *www.thutong.org za* offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning "a place of learning" in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the Department of Basic Education and various role players in the field.

Lakeside Primary School in Vryheid, KwaZulu-Natal, is a non-fee-paying school. Most of its 600 learners come from nearby informal settlements and a sub-economic housing complex. Here, learning is done using gaming technology. The school has partnered with Microsoft to use an Xbox360 and Kinect to teach learners in grades one to three Literacy and Numeracy. It saw an improvement in learners' confidence and vocabulary levels after the first week. By March 2011, six classrooms had been fitted with LCD screens, an Xbox and Kinect and a number of games to encourage learning.

The department also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has over 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs, where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay, or who can only afford a lesser amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 provided the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.

By February 2012, over eight million pupils in over 80% of public schools benefited from the no-fee school policy.

National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST) Education

In 2005, the then Department of Education introduced the National Strategy for MST Education to increase the number of learners passing high-level Mathematics.

The primary objective of the Dinaledi Schools Project is to ensure that selected schools are supported to significantly increase the participation and performance of learners, especially African and girl learners, in Mathematics and Physical Science.

Since the project's inception in 2002 with 102 schools, the project has been expanded to 500 schools in all nine provinces. This number includes 18 schools that were adopted by the Department of Science and Technology as part of the Adopt-A-School initiative.

The Dinaledi Schools Project is one of many initiatives to improve learning outcomes in schools. The 500 Dinaledi schools continue to demonstrate that learners can perform well above the national average with the necessary focus and support.

The 2010 National Senior Certificate (NSC) results showed a marked improvement in the Mathematics and Physical Science results achieved at Dinaledi schools compared to previous years.

Dinaledi schools contributed 47 760 of the 263 034 learners who wrote Mathematics in the 2010 NSC examinations, with 27 109 (57%) of the Dinaledi learners achieving a pass. Dinaledi learners also accounted for 32% of the total number of learners who achieved more than 50% for Mathematics, which was considered a pass at the previous higher grade level for the old senior certificate.

In Physical Science, 36 861 of the 205 364 NSC candidates attended Dinaledi schools, and of these, 21 925 achieved a pass. More than a third of these candidates achieved between 60% and 69%.

School-admission policy

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002), set the age of admission to Grade One as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade One was changed to age five if children turned six on or before 30 June in their Grade One year.

When applying for admission, parents must present the school with an official birth certificate and proof that the child has been immunised against communicable diseases.

For non-South African citizens, a study permit, temporary or permanent residence permit, or evidence of application for permission to stay in South Africa, is also required.

Early Childhood Development

Quality ECD has the ability to improve learning outcomes throughout primary and secondary schooling. For this reason, expanding ECD has been a government priority for many years. The 2009 Medium Term Strategic Framework envisaged that by 2014, the process of universalising access to Grade R should be complete.

ECD is a general classification that refers to the process by which children from birth to age nine grow and flourish socially, physically, mentally, emotionally, spiritually and morally.

One of the priorities of the Department of Basic Education is to increase access to ECD provisioning through an accredited reception-year programme as proposed in the *Education White Paper 5 (2001).*

The non-profit sector plays a major role in ECD. Most of the early learning sites across South Africa have been initiated by the non-profit sector in partnership with communities.

The department's target is that, by 2014, all children should have participated in a Grade R programme before entering Grade One and at least 37% of children from birth to five years should have participated in an ECD programme.

Comprehensive early-childhood care and education include various health, social services and education programmes, brought together in the National Integrated Plan for ECD. The plan includes primary healthcare services, birth registration, child-support grants, and early stimulation offered at home in community programmes or at ECD centres.

The Department of Social Development co-ordinates the activities of the three partner departments, namely social development, health and basic education. The integrated plan includes the development of national early learning standards, the training of ECD practitioners, which is part of government's employment-creating Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), and the development of national norms and standards for Grade R funding.

The Department of Social Development leads government departments for services to children under the age of four years. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), it is the department's responsibility to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for those children where a need exists.

In 2010, the department trained over 10 000 ECD practitioners through the EPWP.

The Department of Social Development launched the National ECD Awareness Campaign in June 2011, focusing on registering ECD facilities in rural areas and providing subsidies to eligible children.

By February 2011, more than 400 000 children accessing registered ECD facilities were being subsidised by government at a cost of between R12 and R25 per day. In 2011/12, the department expected to increase the number of subsidised ECD facilities from 16 250 to 17 000.

By February 2012, there were 19 331 ECD centres in the country. More than 848 000 children recieved ECD services and over 514 000 of them were subsidised by government.

Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe opened the University of Johannesburg's newly refurbished Soweto Campus in February 2011. The facility serves as the centre for management sciences and education and includes the installation of new information technology, student accommodation, lecture halls, a student centre, law and health clinics, computer laboratories and sport facilities. The campus was custom-made to complement the strong development history of the Sowetan community and that of the university.

Education of learners with special needs

In July 2001, the then Department of Education gazetted the *White Paper 6, Special Needs Education: Building an Inclusive Education and Training System.* This White Paper provided strategies for developing an inclusive system and increasing access to quality education for children experiencing barriers to learning.

The department's approach to inclusive education is geared to promote the democratic values enshrined in the Constitution.

Statistics for 2009 show that there were 124 535 learners with disabilities in ordinary schools and 111 619 learners with disabilities in special schools.

The national and provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual impairment
- tuberculosis
- conflict with the law
- physical disabilities
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- multidisabilities
- intellectual disabilities
- hearing impairments
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- being over-aged learners.

Educator development

A detailed national teacher-development action plan, including activities, timelines, responsibilities and output for the next five years, nested in a longer-term plan to ensure a sustainable teacher-development system, was completed in 2010.

Between 2010/11 and 2014/15, the department will target at least 8 000 principals and deputy principals to complete the Advanced Certificate in Education: School Leadership and Management (ACE). In addition, all school leaders from under-performing secondary schools and their feeder primary schools completed specific stand-alone ACE modules.

The department aims to strengthen subject advisers' knowledge of the school curriculum and their skills by supporting teachers to implement the curriculum through specific programmes. The training of ECD and Foundation Phase practitioners took place through FET colleges.

To ensure equity in the provision of infrastructure to schools, the department published the *National Policy on an Equitable Provision of an Enabling School Physical Teaching and Learning Environment* in June 2010 in the *Government Gazette*.

The aim of the policy is to:

- regulate and formalise the provision of school infrastructure
- provide guidelines towards equitable provision of an enabling physical teaching and learning environment for all learners
- indicate clear roles and responsibilities of all role players
- unify accountability in the provision of school infrastructure.

In April 2011, the Integrated Strategic Plan for Teacher Education and Development in South Africa for the period 2011 to 2025 was launched.

This plan is expected to:

- ensure that there are enough teachers to serve the needs of schools
- ensure that increasing numbers of high-achieving school-leavers are attracted to the teaching profession
- provide teachers with ongoing support to improve their education and skills.

Existing university-based teacher education will be strengthened; and new, dedicated institutions and campuses established where needed.

Where feasible, FET colleges engaged in the training of ECD practitioners will also be involved.

The department was also working on a plan for the education and development of lecturers for FET colleges and adult education and training practitioners.

From 2011 to 2014, the department is expected to increase the number of universities offering Foundation Phase teacher education programmes, specifically for the preparation of teachers who are able to teach in African languages.

The Department of Basic Education completed the curriculum and assessment policy statements and will be incorporating them into the Foundation Phase and Grade 10 in 2012. The department trained subject advisers and the provinces are continuing with the training of teachers. Based on the ANA results, there should be a more scripted approach to teacher development, including training and support to teachers to help them manage and use efficient methods to teach specific content areas that the assessment showed to be particularly challenging to learners.

The department is also strengthening the campaign to attract young people to the teaching profession through the Funza Lushaka Bursary programme.

In addition, as part of the efforts to strengthen accountability in the system, the department is working closely with the Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC) to develop performance-management contracts with principals and deputy principals.

School management

District offices are a vital link between the education departments and schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, they perform a vital support and intervention function. This includes organising training for personnel, dealing with funding and resourcing bottlenecks, solving labour-relations disputes and many other functions. They are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to the provincial department and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the SGB are maintained. Districts are the provincial departments' main interface with schools.

Education infrastructure

The National Education Infrastructure Management System is accessible to all provinces and is being used to provide information on infrastructure progress in education.

Better information is available as a basis for monitoring and planning. It provides historical information, capability for data-updating, verification of data, automatic updating of learner numbers and a platform for data downloading to enable distribution to provinces.

Cabinet also mandated the department, on the basis of this information, to investigate innovative mechanisms to accelerate school-infrastructure delivery to deal with the significant remaining infrastructure backlogs and challenges.

The Department of Basic Education, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the National Treasury worked together on developing appropriate financing models and capacity for the Accelerated School Infrastructure Improvement Programme.

The department developed the initiative to eliminate all backlogs in schools by 2014, including water, sanitation, electricity, fencing and inappropriate structures.

Provinces made progress in reducing infrastructure backlogs, which included libraries, computer centres and related facilities.

Schooling 2025 provides for short- to medium-term initiatives to procure resources for school-infrastructure development.

The department established a working relationship with provincial education departments to develop a national framework for quality education in rural areas.

The department announced a strategy aimed at partnering with the Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, as well as with other relevant ministries such as public works, water affairs and transport, to alleviate conditions at rural schools.

The department also developed an initiative that aims to achieve basic functionality levels in targeted schools' infrastructure within the 2010 to 2014 strategic plan period.

Provincial departments of education, within their normal school-building programmes, made significant progress in the eradication of backlogs.

In line with government's key objectives of delivering services to the public and in particular the poor, the Department of Basic Education has been working with the departments of water affairs and energy to implement and manage the provision of water, sanitation and electricity infrastructure in schools.

In 2011, government allocated about R8,2 billion to eradicate some 3 600 mud schools between 2011 and 2014.

Equity in education expenditure

Equity between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula (ESF), the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The Government's ESF promotes financial equity between provinces through the distribution of national revenue to provinces on the basis of relative need and backlogs. In the area of education, the size of the school-age population and the number of learners enrolled in public ordinary schools as well as capital-investment needs are taken into account.

The National Norms and Standards for School Funding, which became national policy in 1999, aim to achieve equality and redress poverty in schools in terms of non-personnel expenditure within a province.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

To enhance the attainment of equity in funding ordinary public schools, the school-funding norms provide for full, partial and conditional exemption for parents who cannot afford to pay school fees, thus ensuring that learners with financial difficulties are never denied access to education.

Considering that about 88% of provincial education expenditure goes towards personnel costs, the distribution of personnel, in particular educators, is a key driver of equity within provinces.

Equity in this regard is promoted by the national post-provisioning norms. These norms have contributed to the narrowing of inequalities regarding educator-learner ratios, and the availability of more educator posts in historically disadvantaged areas.

National School Nutrition Programme

The NSNP is one of the most important components of the Government's Programme of Action. It was specifically assigned the responsibility of addressing children's ability to learn by providing them with nutritious meals.

By February 2012, the NSNP was reaching 8,6 million learners, providing them with a healthy, nutritious and balanced lunch.

According to the *General Household Survey*, the percentage of five-year-olds attending educational institutions increased from 40% in 2002 to 63% in 2008. These figures include children in school-based as well as non-school education programmes.

This significant growth is the result of government's prioritisation of the reception-year programme.

Government's prioritisation of early childhood development (ECD) is also reflected in public expenditure on this programme, which is projected to grow over the medium term. This includes the Department of Basic Education's plans to build 1 300 Grade R facilities over the next three years in public schools.

Government's target is to ensure that, through the combination of public, private and subsidised Grade R programmes, all five- to six-year-old children should have access to Grade R programmes by 2014. A successful ECD programme will ensure that the education system is free from underprepared learners and will reduce the risk of failure or drop-out at formal school level.

School safety and enrichment

In May 2011, Sport and Recreation South Africa announced the School Sport Programme to ensure active participation in various sporting codes in all schools across the country. The programme was launched at the end of June 2011.

The department's goal is to ensure that there is sport in each school in South Africa, which will culminate in the National Olympics Championship every year. All strategic stakeholders, including trade unions, universities and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee, support this programme.

According to the Department of Basic Education, sport is going to be an integral part of the school curriculum in future. This includes establishing a well-coordinated and seamless school sport system, and access to and delivery of school sport irrespective of ability in all schools.

The department coordinates and strengthens the delivery of national extramural/extracurricular school-enrichment programmes, not only to promote mass participation in sport by young people, but also to enhance social transformation and cohesion.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department coordinates in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival and the National Language Festival and Concert.

Business Against Crime and the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention (CJCP) focus on eliminating crime and violence in schools. In 2011, the department, in partnership with the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund (Unicef) and SuperSport television channel, implemented the Sport for Development Pilot Programme in nine school communities affected by increasing levels of crime, violence and vandalism.

Since 2007, the department has intensified efforts to ensure that all schools are safe and secure for both learners and teachers.

The following measures were introduced and implemented:

- The CJCP was appointed by the department and Unicef to conduct a baseline audit to collect information to guide the design and implementation of operational plans to support provinces in curbing crime and violence.
- The department identified 585 schools (65 schools per province) presenting with high levels of crime and violence, and from these one school per province was identified to become part of a ministerial pilot project to create safe, caring and child-friendly schools.
- Interventions were designed and implemented to meet the specific safety needs of the identified schools. Although the initial focus is on the nine ministerial schools, it is envisaged that the provinces will roll out this programme to more schools.

Values

The Values Initiative continues to focus on all forms of discrimination in education within a broader framework of human rights.

The department finalised the Bill of Responsibilities for the Youth of South Africa, developed in partnership with the National Religious Leaders Forum. It is a mirror of the Bill of Rights, indicating the responsibilities that young people have as they claim the rights afforded them by the Constitution.

The department, in partnership with the Department of Arts and Culture, allocated 2 000 national flags through the Flag in Every School Project, which aims to ensure that all schools fly the national flag with pride.

Gender equity

One of the key programmes of the Directorate: Gender Equity in the Department of Basic Education is the Girls Education Movement (Gem), which was launched in 2003.

This programme aims to ensure that female learners not only access education, but that their retention and achievement rate increases. It is founded on three pillars, namely career mentorship, skills development and advocacy. The Gem Skills Development Programme aims to address gender disparities through education and advocacy.

The movement has also incorporated boys, where young people in schools form clubs known as girls and boys education movement clubs. These clubs are the department's avenue to instil in young people constructive values and empower them with information pertaining to life-skills competencies to cope with different social problems, including learner pregnancies, gender-based violence, HIV and AIDS, and sexual harassment.

The *Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Sexual Violence and Harassment in Public Schools* were developed in 2008. They support schools and school communities in responding to cases of sexual harassment and sexual violence perpetrated against learners and educators within schools, and those that come to the attention of school authorities. The document also sets out standard measures to be taken to respond to situations of alleged and actual sexual violence and harassment across school communities, as well as assisting victims with reporting procedures and seeking intervention and support.

The *Measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy* were also developed and distributed to public schools. The measures are intended to provide an environment in which learners are fully informed about reproductive matters and have the information that assists them in making responsible decisions. It also provides affected learners with information pertaining to their rights to education and support.

Kha Ri Gude Mass Literacy Campaign

The Kha Ri Gude (Tshivenda for "let us learn") Mass Literacy Campaign was launched in February 2008, to enable 4,7 million adults above the age of 15 years to become literate and numerate in one of the 11 official languages. Achieving this goal will enable South Africa to reach its UN: Education For All Commitment made at Dakar in 2000, namely that of halving the country's illiteracy rate by 2015.

Initiated and managed by the Department of Basic Education, Kha Ri Gude delivers across all nine provinces. The campaign enables adult learners to read, write and calculate in their mother tongue in line with the Unit Standards for Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) Level One, and also to learn spoken English. The specifically designed campaign material teaches reading, writing and numeracy and integrates themes and life skills such as health, gender, the environment and civic education. The material has been adapted for use in Braille in 11 languages, and for use by the hearing impaired.

The campaign makes specific efforts to target vulnerable groups. In 2011, 80% of the learners were women, 8% people with disabilities, 25% were youth, and 20% were above the age of 60.

Kha Ri Gude provides visually impaired learners with a range of assistive devices, including braillette boards and Perkins braillers for use in class. Learner packs include a full set of material in Braille and a talking calculator. The large-scale printing of Braille material is made possible by Kha Ri Gude owning one of the two high-bulk printers available in South Africa.

Between the inception of the programme and March 2011, approximately 1,5 million learners became literate. From 2010 to March 2011, 609 199 learners successfully completed the programme.

Statutory bodies

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM, consisting of the Minister of Basic Education, the Minister of Higher Education and Training and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa, and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom consists of the Director-General (DG) of the Department of Basic Education, the deputy DGs of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The committee facilitates the development of a national education system, shares information and views on national education, coordinates administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advises the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

Quality assurance: Umalusi

Umalusi is a statutory organisation that sets and monitors standards for general and further education and training in South Africa with the purpose of continually enhancing the quality of education and training.

Umalusi's key functions are:

- evaluating qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
- moderating assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
- conducting research to ensure educational quality
- accrediting educational and assessment-providers
- certifying learner attainments.

All examination processes for qualifications offered by schools, Abet centres and FET colleges have been quality assured. Accreditation, monitoring and visiting the sites of private providers of education and training continue across schools, Abet centres and FET colleges. Existing assessment bodies (public and private) are monitored, while new applications for accreditation are processed.

Education Labour Relations Council

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but now draws authority from the LRA, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995). The ELRC was primarily established with the aim of maintaining labour peace within public education. This is achieved through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

The ELRC is integrally involved in initiatives to prevent disputes from arising within the public education sector. This is achieved by facilitating the process of constructive collective bargaining between the educator unions and the Department of Basic Education as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

Disputes are generally resolved through the processes of conciliation and arbitration. While the bargaining council is guided by its own constitution in resolving disputes, the framework for this is governed by South Africa's labour legislation.

South African Council for Educators

The SACE is a professional council that aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession and promote the development of educators and their professional conduct. The SACE was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The council's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Educators are required to register with SACE before they are employed by any authority. The SACE has a register of about 500 000 educators.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include, among other things, the Professional Development Portfolio Project that aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development; teacher education and development research activities; setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development System; and celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators.

The ethics function ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics.

The Continuing Professional Teacher-Development System recognises professional development undertaken by teachers on their own initiative. In 2010, the system was tested in 144 schools nationwide over 18 months and was expected to roll out to the profession in 2011.

Educator unions

The majority of educators are organised into six educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union, the Professional Educators' Union, Cape Professional Teachers' Association and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the former Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an occupation specific dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It provides for longer salary bands so that they do not reach a plateau in their salaries too soon in their careers.

It also provides for a new category of posts of teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

The Education Management Service (EMS) will assist in ensuring that duties and responsibilities are clearly distinguished. The roles of principals are clearly separated from those of classroom educators and specialists. Educators employed in the EMS, whether school- or office-based, will sign performance agreements with their supervisors. Their new salaries will consist of a flexible remuneration package.

> In March 2011, the Deputy Minister of Basic Education, Mr Enver Surty, launched the Bill of Responsibilities Campaign in partnership with Lead SA and the South African Interfaith Council.
>
> The Bill of Responsibilities was introduced in March 2008 as a guide that must draw the attention of learners and schools to the fact that rights come with responsibilities and must be exercised without violating the rights of others. It is a practical document outlining the responsibilities and obligations corresponding with the rights found in the Bill of Rights, in Chapter 2 of the Constitution.
>
> The Department of Basic Education developed a teacher's guide to assist schools in promoting rights and responsibilities among the young.

Higher education and training

The aim of the Department of Higher Education and Training is to develop and support a quality higher and vocational education sector, and promote access to higher and vocational education and skills development training opportunities.

The department was established during the national macro reorganisation exercise in 2009 to create a single and coherent post-school education and training system structured to meet the aspirations of youth and adults, and became operational with its own budget in April 2010. The department consists of functions inherited from the former Department of Education, such as university education, FET at college level, and adult education and training (excluding basic literacy and numeracy). It is also responsible for functions related to skills development, including providing oversight of and strategic direction to the National Skills Fund (NSF), coordinating the sector education and training authorities (Setas), and providing oversight of the Institute for the National Development of Learnerships Employment Skills and Labour Assessments, transferred from the Department of Labour.

The NSF enables government to drive key skills strategies as well as meet the training needs of the unemployed, non-levy-paying entities, cooperatives, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), community structures and vulnerable groups. As such, it promotes strategic partnerships and innovation in project delivery.

The department is responsible for developing the country's education and training institutional capacity and resources into a coherent but diverse and differentiated post-school learning system, serving adults and youth within the framework of the HRD-SA.

The department's budget for 2011/12 was R9,1 billion. Universities received R19,5 billion and R4,3 billion was allocated to FET colleges.

While the public university system is relatively stable and growing, governance and management aspects within certain HE institutions remain a challenge.

The college system is expected to expand and achieve the goal of one million students by 2014.

Over the 2011 Medium Term Expenditure Framework period, R14,29 billion was allocated as subsidies to FET colleges. Of this, R1,42 billion was earmarked for the expansion of FET college student enrolment, especially to increase artisans. Particular attention will be given to expanding access to students in rural areas.

The reach of FET colleges' bursaries tripled in 2011. Some R1,235 billion was available to financially needy yet academically capable students, meaning that 100% of eligible students from poor and working-class households enrolled in the National Certificate (Vocational) and 191 were totally exempted from college fees.

The importance of information and communications technology in HE and training is increasing. The department aims to intensify a consultative process on an e-education policy for the post-school education and training system.

e-Learning has the potential to fast-track open and distance education and training, which will enable access for vulnerable groups, including the disabled and learners from rural communities.

The Techno-Girls Project is aimed at exposing vulnerable young girls from rural and poor families. Girls who have gone through the programme will increase the number of girls in critical and scarce skills, such as Engineering, Mathematics and Technology.

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- Rhodes University
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of the Western Cape
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State
- North West University
- University of Pretoria
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of South Africa (Unisa)
- Tshwane University of Technology
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- University of Johannesburg
- University of Limpopo
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- Walter Sisulu University
- University of Fort Hare
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- National Institute for HE, Northern Cape
- National Institute for HE, Mpumalanga
- Vaal University of Technology.

President Jacob Zuma announced in his State of the Nation Address in February 2012 that a total of R300 million had been allocated for preparatory work towards building new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape.

HE and training is also referred to as tertiary education. The HE band provides the highest level of education. Entry into HE is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Private institutions offering HE must register with the department in accordance with the HE Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997).

Transformation of universities

A ministerial committee was established to review the funding framework of universities and make recommendations, taking into account the needs of universities over the next 15 years. It will also consider ways of improving the funding framework to strengthen rural institutions and ensure that historically disadvantaged students are supported within the system. The Ministry also allocated R686 million for 2010/12 to address accommodation needs, including more student residences on campuses.

A report on unbundling and developing health sciences at Medunsa and the University of Limpopo was published in the *Government Gazette* and submitted in 2011. As a result, work to separate the University of Limpopo and Medunsa was underway by late-2011. It was envisaged that, in the long term, Medunsa would become part of a new single-purpose Health and Allied Sciences University, and that a new medical school would be established in Polokwane to cater for growing needs there.

While the public university system is relatively stable and growing, governance and management aspects within some HE institutions remain a challenge.

The Ministerial Committee for the Review of the Provision of Student Housing was expected to submit a final report at the end of June 2011.

Further Education and Training

The number of young people who are neither studying nor working is estimated to be over three million in the 18- to 24-year age group alone. In response, the Department of Higher Education and Training has to expand educational opportunities for adults outside the universities and FET colleges.

Government, through the department, has developed a strategy to increase the ratio of young people who are in education, employment or training by 2014/15.

The aim of this strategy is to strengthen the education and training system's capacity to provide pivotal programmes to a growing number of young post-school learners as well as adults at turning points in their careers.

Pivotal programmes are professional, vocational, technical and academic learning programmes, which meet critical needs for economic growth and social development.

These programmes generally combine course work at universities, universities of technology or colleges with structured learning at work through, among other things, professional placements, work-integrated learning, apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

The FET sector with its 50 colleges and 160 campuses nationally is the primary site for skills-development training.

The FET college system carries about 220 000 students in the public colleges and less than 100 000 in private colleges.

Statutory bodies

National Board for Further Education and Training (NBFET)

The NBFET provides the Minister with independent and strategic advice on matters relating to the transformation of FET. It was launched in June 1999 in terms of Nepa 1996. The board may, on its own initiative, advise the Minister on any aspect of FET, as well as:

- national FET policy, goals and priorities
- norms and standards, including those regarding funding
- norms and the terms, purposes and conditions of earmarked grants
- reports on FET from provincial advisory bodies.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS)

The NSFAS, established in terms of the NSFAS Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999), is responsible for administering and allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students; developing criteria and conditions for granting loans and bursaries in consultation with the Minister; raising funds; recovering loans; maintaining and analysing a database; and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources. The scheme also advises the Minister on student financial aid in general, and performs other functions assigned to it by the Minister.

By February 2012, South Africa's higher education and training system had:

- 11 universities: traditional universities that offer Bachelor degrees and have strong research capacity and high proportions of postgraduate students
- six universities of technology: vocationally oriented institutions that award higher certificates, diplomas and degrees in technology; and have some postgraduate and research capacity
- six comprehensive universities: offering both Bachelor and technology qualifications, and focusing on teaching but also conducting research and postgraduate studies
- 50 Further Education and Training colleges with over 269 campuses spread across the nine provinces, which offer the National Certificate (Vocational) and the Report 191 known as the "N courses" and a number of short skills programmes.

Over the medium term, the scheme will be restructured based on the recommendations made after a 2009/10 review of the organisation and its operations. This will include strengthening the scheme's financial and oversight capacity.

The number of students assisted through bursaries and loans increased by 19,1%, from 113 519 in 2007/08 to 135 208 in 2009/10. In 2010/11, this was expected to increase by 39% to 187 500 students. Growth is expected to continue over the medium term, resulting in 450 674 students receiving support by 2013/14.

The NSFAS was expected to disburse R5,4 billion in loans and bursaries during 2011/12, double the R2,7 billion disbursed during 2010. In 2011, further assistance was also given to final-year university undergraduates and FET students who qualified for the NSFAS.

In May 2011, the Minister announced further changes to make HE more affordable. In the past, NSFAS charged interest on student loans throughout the study period. This resulted in students being in debt when leaving university.

In future, the NSFAS will not start charging interest on student loans until 12 months after a student has graduated or left university. This will apply to all NSFAS loans to students registered from 1 April 2011 onwards.

To enable the NSFAS to grant loans to students who have completed their studies but not received their certificates or graduated due to outstanding debt, an amount of R200 million was provided. This will enable about 25 000 students to receive their certificates and enter the job market.

In July 2011, South Africa hosted the Education International Sixth World Congress. Educators from across the globe attempted to address challenges in education to help bring about a better world. The theme of the congress was *Building the Future through Quality Education.*

All students who met the requirements for graduation between 2000 and 2010 and were eligible for NSFAS loans could apply for this special funding through their student financial aid offices. In cases of scarce skills, consideration was given to Honours students.

A further R50 million was provided for postgraduate students who required financial assistance to complete their Honours, Masters and Doctoral degrees. These students entered into loan agreements with NSFAS. The money they repay will fund future postgraduate students.

Quality assurance

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The QCTO has the mandate to address the quality of training in and for the workplace, and to ensure that such training and knowledge is accredited and certified, including proper recognition of prior learning. The National Artisan Moderating Body was established under the QCTO's umbrella.

The QCTO is expected to bring the needs of industry closer to the education and training system. This is an effort to meet the aspirations of youth and adults and ensure that education, training and skills-development initiatives respond adequately to the country's social and economic needs. It will ensure that qualifications are not only linked to labour-market needs, but also build on qualifications from other institutions. More learners from HE and FET institutions need to proceed seamlessly to the skills-development system and workplace, with easy pathways across the different learning sites.

To achieve this, the QCTO is expected to work closely with Saqa, Umalusi and the Council on Higher Education (CHE).

South African Qualifications Authority

Saqa is a statutory body originally set up in terms of the Saqa Act, 1995. It is well-recognised nationally and internationally. Since April 2009, the authority has been in existence under the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), which replaced the previous Act. Under the new legislation, the organisation continues to focus on upholding the principles of the NQF, including ensuring access, quality, redress and development for all learners through an integrated national framework of learning achievements.

The authority's main responsibilities are:

- registering qualifications and part-qualifications on the NQF
- maintaining and developing the National Learners' Records Database as the key national source of information for human resource and skills development in policy, infrastructure and planning
- maintaining and developing the authority's role as the national source of advice on foreign and domestic learning and qualifications
- conducting research
- monitoring and undertaking evaluation studies that contribute to the development of the NQF and a culture of lifelong learning
- registering professional bodies and professional designations on the NQF.

In terms of the NQF Act, 2008, the executive functions for setting standards and quality assurance will move to the three quality councils.

The NQF and Career Advice Service was launched in January 2011 under the auspices of Saqa. The project has a website, a career advice help line, guidance material and a weekly radio programme in partnership with SABC Education. Broadcasting on nine regional radio stations in nine languages reached about 2,3 million South Africans in 2010/11.

Council on Higher Education

The CHE was established in terms of the HE Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997). The HE Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 39 of 2008), and the NQF Act, 2008 implied a significant change for the council, which was previously an advisory institution, monitoring and evaluating the achievement of South African HE policy goals and objectives. The council now also functions as a quality council for HE.

To ensure that quality HE is delivered, the council's priorities over the medium term will be to implement the HE qualifications framework by generating and setting standards and other quality assurance functions; and monitoring and evaluating the achievement of South African HE policy goals and objectives.

Higher Education South Africa (Hesa)

Hesa is the voice of South Africa's university leadership as it represents vice-chancellors of public universities. Since 2005, Hesa has provided strong and effective representation for its members. Its mandate is to facilitate the development of public policy on HE and encourage co-operation among universities, government, industry and other sectors in South Africa.

Hesa provides services to member universities in five main areas, namely:

- strategic research
- policy advocacy and stakeholder engagement
- sector support, including providing university leaders and their institutions with a supportive network and opportunities for collective action
- special programmes to strengthen institutions' capacity
- value-adding services, including scholarships and international programmes.

National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS 3)

The NSDS 3 was launched in January 2011. It draws on lessons learned from NSDS I and II. The key driving force of this strategy is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It represents an explicit commitment to encouraging the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on those who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions (FET colleges, universities of technology and universities), private training-providers and Setas, to ensure that cross-sectoral and inter-sectoral needs are addressed. The NSDS 3 will be guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives: race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability and HIV and AIDS.

NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the Setas. The Setas are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of NSDS 3, address employer demand and deliver results. They must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors. NSDS 3 provides a stronger base for the Setas and the Department of Higher Education and Training, through service level agreements, to set targets that align with sector skills needs and ensure an improved focus on the core Setas' mandate.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes to ensure that they contribute to reducing poverty and eradicating inequality. It focuses on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors
- increasing access to occupationally-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications
- promoting the growth of a public FET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development
- encouraging and supporting cooperatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated, NGO and community-training initiatives
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state
- building career and vocational guidance.

In 2011, the department also undertook a comprehensive review of the NSF's spending priorities to reprioritise its funding allocations in line with the goals of NSDS 3 and the overarching HRDS for South Africa.

> In August 2011, the National Artisan Moderation Body was formally launched to ensure coordination of artisan development nationally and thereby achieve a single, common national standard across all sectors for artisan development.
>
> The Quality Council for Trades and Occupations started developing new occupational artisan trade qualifications and a curriculum.

In July 2011, skills development and education received a significant boost through the signing of the National Skills Accord and Accord on Basic Education and Partnerships with schools that will, among other things, see 30 000 new artisans receiving training. The accords are a partnership between business, government, labour and the community.

This follows on engagements after the release of the New Growth Path, designed to create five million jobs in the next decade. Skills and education are key elements in the growth path. The Skills Accord has eight key commitments designed to drive training and development and, under it, up to 30 000 new artisan students were expected to enter training in 2012.

Government will contribute 31% of the funds, while 13% will come from state-owned enterprises and 56% from the private sector. It will also provide opportunities for training in a work environment for at least 16 000 lecturers at Further Education and Training colleges, which will be phased in.

Business and labour have committed to ensuring that the funding of training is available through the Skills Development Levy. Business also undertook to improve spending on training beyond the 1% compulsory training levy.

The accord stipulates that business will urge companies to spend between 3% and 5% of their total salary bill voluntarily on training. The National Skills Fund will be used effectively to support skills that address the priorities of the growth path.

Organised labour, business as well as community organisations committed to a target of between 100 and 200 schools to be supported in the Adopt-a-School initiative.

Human Resources Development Council of South Africa (HRDCSA)

The HRDCSA, which was launched in March 2010, represents a milestone in fighting unemployment and growing the economy.

It advises government on sector mobilisation and on an HRDS, managed through the Ministry of Higher Education and Training.

The council's priorities are to:

- accelerate the annual introduction of artisans into the economy
- ensure greater access to FET opportunities
- support the jobs fund by developing worker education and on-the-job training programmes
- review sector skills plans.

Sector education and training authorities

Government's adoption of the New Growth Path recognises that poverty, inequality and social inequities stem from the exclusion of the majority from the labour market.

The South African labour market is plagued by skills shortages that impede the economy's potential growth. In this regard, as part of its ongoing efforts to improve the new Seta landscape, the Department of Higher Education and Training initiated interventions to increase access to training and skills development opportunities.

The launch of the new Seta landscape led to the restructuring of the Setas in April 2011, to improve governance, administration and increase training levels overall. A standard constitution for all Setas was introduced to ensure consistency and alignment with regard to the Setas' functioning.

Setas were reduced from 23 to 21, in an effort to streamline them and their work. Measures were also taken to strengthen the manner in which they are governed.

During 2010, 23 517 apprentices were registered by the Setas compared to 17 228 in 2009. Also in 2010, 11 778 apprentices were certificated partly because the number of learners who passed their trade tests has been increasing over the past four years. This indicates that the target of 10 000 artisans a year is being met.

The number of learners entering artisan training is expected to increase further over the next five years due to commitments made by or expected from both business and the Setas. In 2010, the learnership and other learning programmes registered by the Setas had increased from 109 351 in 2009 to 120 615.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act, 1998, to advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSF allocations
- liaising with Setas about policy, strategy and sector skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of the NSF annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Skills Fund

The NSF is funded by 20% of the skills-development levies collected by the South African Revenue Service (Sars) (of which 2% is paid to Sars as collection fees and 2% is allocated for administrative costs). One of the NSF's key tasks is to advise the Minister on the Seta landscape and the NSDS. The Minister of Higher Education and Training, on advice from the NSA, allocates subsidies from the NSF. The DG of Higher Education and Training is the accounting officer of the fund. The fund is to be used to target gaps and complement resource shortages for national priorities. Funds were set aside for competitive grants/bids from community-initiated skills development projects and other initiatives in line with the objectives and goals of NSDS 3.

Libraries

Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, school libraries, special libraries, government libraries and HE libraries.

The Department of Basic Education recognises the necessity for school library resource provision and addressed this during 2010, holistically through the development of the *National Guidelines for School Library and Information Services.* The guidelines are part of the broader strategy, which is expected to contribute to ensuring that each school has a functional school library and information service.

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries, among other things, increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

Libraries in the Higher Education sector

The HE libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all interlibrary loan requests. Pressure on HE libraries includes redistribution of educational resources and rising prices.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
BuaNews
Department of Basic Education
Department of Education, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Development Indicators, 2010
Education for All, 2010 Country Report, South Africa
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Library and Information Association of South Africa
Mail & Guardian
Mail and Guardian Online
National Library of South Africa
South African Qualifications Authority
Sowetan

www.bizcommunity.com
www.buanews.gov.za
www.education.gov.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.gov.za
www.hesa.org.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za
www.mg.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.umalusi.org.za

Suggested reading

Booyse, JJ *et al*. 2011. *A History of Schooling in South Africa: Method and Context*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Christie, P. 2010. *Opening the Doors of Learning: Changing Schools in South Africa*. Cape Town: Pearson.
Cooper, D. 2011. *The University in Development: Case Studies of Use-Oriented Research*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Curriculum Studies in South Africa: Intellectual Histories and Present Circumstances. 2010. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Haupt, A and Malange, NJ. 2010. *Corporate Law for Commerce Students*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Higher Education in South Africa: A Scholarly Look Behind the Scenes. 2009. Stellenbosch: Sun Media.
Joubert, HJ. 2009. *The Law of Education in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.
Lemmer, E and Van Wyk, N (eds). 2010. *Themes in South African Education: For the Comparative Educationist*. Cape Town: Pearson.
Marishane, RN and Botha, RJ. 2011. *School Leadership in a Changing Context*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Oosthuizen, IJ, Rossouw, JP and De Wet, A. 2011. *Introduction to Education Law*. Second edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Paterson, A. 2009. *Teacher Graduate Production in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Rossouw, JP. 2010. *Labour Relations Education: A South African Perspective*. 2010. Pretoria: Van Schaik.


Engineering Graphics



Energy

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2011/12

Energy use in South Africa is characterised by a high level of dependence on cheap and abundantly available coal. South Africa imports a large amount of crude oil. A limited quantity of natural gas is also available.

The country also mines uranium, which is exported, and imports enriched uranium for its nuclear power plant, Koeberg. South Africa uses renewable energy in the form of electricity generated by hydropower, most of which is imported.

Electricity is also generated from other renewable energy sources, mainly biomass and to a lesser extent solar and wind energy.

The Government intends to diversify energy supply and is promoting the use of renewable energy technology and other new energy technologies. In addition, it aims to improve energy efficiency throughout the economy.

The energy sector is critical to South Africa's economy, contributing about 15% to the country's gross domestic product.

The Department of Energy is responsible for ensuring exploration, development, processing, use and management of South Africa's energy resources. As the country's economy continues to grow, energy is increasingly becoming a key focus.

Over the past 20 years, South Africa has not made significant investments in the energy sector. The capacity that was created in the 1980s was sufficient to carry the country through to the early 2000s, when it became clear that growth, fuelled by the commodity boom, outpaced power supply and that there was an urgent need to increase it.

Government has implemented a planning framework for the energy sector, anchored by the Integrated Energy Plan (IEP) and the Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), as the instruments to drive government's set objectives over and above supply adequacy. Issues such as job creation, reducing greenhouse-gas (GHG) emissions, and alignment with the New Growth Path and Government's Programme of Action, will be an integral part of this strategic plan over the next few years.

Government further aims to achieve 92% distribution penetration in accessing the electricity distribution grid by 2014.

For government to attain this objective, the Department of Energy has to ensure that the old electricity distribution infrastructure in municipalities is stable and sustainable. The financial impact of this on electricity-distributing municipalities will be large. The distribution of electricity by municipalities is driven by political and social responsibility that ensures that tariff increases do not affect the poorest of the poor. This is achieved by employing an indigent policy and block tariffs to ensure the electrification of every household and supply of energy.

The strategic economic policy identifies energy as one of the drivers for economic growth, a sustainable environment and the supply of clean energy. As part of this, government hosted the United Nations (UN) Framework Convention on Climate Change Conference of the Parties (COP17), with the aim of brainstorming climate change and the use of green energy as a mechanism for job creation, the reduction of carbon emissions and to take advantage of the technological developments in the industry.

The strategic objectives of the Department of Energy expressed as desired end-states are:

- a secure energy supply and well-managed demand
- an efficient, competitive and responsive energy infrastructure network
- improved energy regulation and competition
- an efficient and diverse energy mix for universal access within a transformed energy sector
- environmental assets and natural resources being protected and continually enhanced by cleaner energy technologies
- mitigation against, and adaptation to, the impacts of climate change
- good corporate governance for effective and efficient service delivery.

The Minister of Energy is responsible for overseeing five state-owned enterprises (SOEs) and their subsidiaries, which are either classified as Schedule 2 or 3 institutions in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). They are the National Nuclear Regulator (NNR), the Central Energy Fund (CEF) group of companies under CEF (Pty) Ltd, the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa), the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa) and the South African National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi).

The department is represented on all of these enterprises' boards, with the exception of Nersa, which is independent. The closing process of Electricity Distribution Industry Holdings (EDIH), another SOE in the Department of Energy's stable, was completed in 2011/12 as per the Cabinet decision in December 2010 on the future of the electricity distribution industry.

President Jacob Zuma co-signed a performance agreement with the Minister of Energy, Ms Dipuo Peters, in April 2010 that, together with the associated delivery agreements, initiates government's new outcomes-based approach as it relates to energy.

The Department of Energy will primarily contribute to three of the 12 priority outcomes referred to as the Change Agenda, namely decent employment through inclusive growth (Outcome 4); an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (Outcome 6); and environmental assets and natural resources that are protected and continually enhanced (Outcome 10); and, to a lesser extent, to the remaining nine expected outcomes. At the same time, the department will continue to deliver on its core mandate, also termed the Sustained Agenda.

The department aims to introduce independent power producers (IPPs) in the electricity space. Unserved communities' access to electricity through the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP) will continue to be funded through the Department of Energy.

Energy demand-side management (DSM) remains important over the medium term, although the funding mechanism will change to the standardised offer model, which will enable more and newer technologies to enter the energy-efficiency market.

South Africa has committed to substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025 and supports research and technology development aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

Government will focus on improving biodiversity protection.

Legislation

National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008)

The National Energy Act, 2008 empowers the Minister of Energy to ensure that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. This supports economic growth and poverty alleviation, while also taking into account environmental considerations. In addition, the Act provides for the increased use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.

The Department of Energy is mandated to provide for energy planning and measures for the provision of certain data and information regarding energy demand, supply and generation.

Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 27 of 2007)

The Electricity Regulation Act, 2007 establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by Nersa. The Minister of Energy, in terms of Section 34 (1), is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of IPPs for the purpose of greater competition in the electricity generation sector to increase electricity supply.

Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977)

The Act provides for measures in the saving of petroleum products and the economy in the cost of distribution, and for the maintenance and control of price.

It also provides for the furnishing of certain information regarding petroleum products and for the rendering of service of a particular kind or service of a particular standard in connection with petroleum products.

The Act further provides for the licensing of persons involved in the manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing of prescribed petroleum products, to promote the transformation of the South African petroleum and liquid fuels industry and to provide for the promulgation of regulations relating to such licences.

Central Energy Fund Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977)

The Act provides for the determination of state levies.

Nuclear energy

Following the *White Paper on the Energy Policy of the Republic of South Africa, 1998*, the Nuclear Energy Policy was approved by Cabinet in June 2008. The policy provides a framework within which prospecting, mining, milling and the use of nuclear material as well as the development and use of nuclear energy for peaceful purposes will take place.

The long-term vision of the policy is for South Africa to become globally competitive in the use of innovative technology for the design, manufacture and deployment of state-of-the-art nuclear energy systems and power reactors, and nuclear fuel-cycle systems.

The Department of Energy is also planning to review and update the *White Paper on the Energy Policy of the Republic of South Africa* during the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) 2011 to 2014.

Nuclear energy is governed by the following primary pieces of legislation: Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), the NNR Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999), and the National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008).

Other legislative mandates

Other mandates in the field include:

- CEF Amendment Act, 1994 (Act 48 of 1994)
- Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003)
- Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001)
- Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002)
- Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004)
- National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004).

The Department of Energy derives its mandate from the *White Paper on the Energy Policy of the Republic of South Africa*. The department is responsible for ensuring energy security within the country. It does this by undertaking IEP, regulating energy industries and promoting electric power investment in accordance with the IRP. The Department of Energy also continues to implement the Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007, especially with respect to creating the necessary conditions for the introduction of an independent systems operator and IPPs in the electricity market.

The recommendations made in the Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short- to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

Integrated Resource Plan for Energy

The IRP is a subset of the IEP. It directs the expansion of the electricity supply over the given period. Its purpose is the identification of the requisite investments in the electricity sector that maximise the national interest; and investments in the electricity sector that allow the country to meet the forecast demand with the minimum cost to the country.

The IRP lays the foundation for the country's energy mix up to 2030, and seeks to find an appropriate balance between the expectations of different stakeholders, considering a number of key constraints and risks, including:

- reducing carbon emissions
- new technology uncertainties such as costs, operability and lead time to build
- water use
- localisation and job creation
- southern African regional development and integration
- security of supply.

The IRP provides for a diversified energy mix, in terms of new-generation capacity, that will comprise:

- coal at 14% (government's view is that there is a future for coal in the energy mix, and that it should continue research and development [R&D] to find ways to clean the country's abundant coal resources)
- nuclear at 22,6%
- open-cycle gas turbine at 9,2% and closed-cycle gas turbine at 5,6%
- renewable energy carriers, which include hydro at 6,1%, wind at 19,7%, concentrated solar power (CSP) at 2,4% and photovoltaic (PV) at 19,7%.

Policy initiatives

Ensuring energy security

In 2011, the department was working on an Integrated Energy Planning Strategy. The

In December 2011, South Africa released its first list of preferred independent power producers (IPPs), accepting 28 bids from companies to generate over 1 400 MW of electricity from solar and wind sources. The announcement was made on the sidelines of the United Nations Climate Change Conference in Durban.

The Department of Energy put out a request for proposals on new-generation energy in August 2011, asking IPPs to submit their proposals for the first window, which closed on 4 November.

According to the Government's Integrated Resource Plan, a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 42% of electricity generated in the country – about 3 725 MW – is required to come from renewable resources.

From Phase One of the large-scale renewable project, 53 bids amounting to 2 128 MW were received across wind, photovoltaic solar power, concentrated solar power and small hydro-electric projects.

strategy is expected to outline the requisite processes, systems and structures that will lead to the development of a comprehensive IEP.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuel identified a number of capacity constraints and challenges faced by the petroleum sector in meeting the energy demand. In response to these, the National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy was expected to be submitted to Cabinet during 2011/12. It will set the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It also seeks to guide the necessary investment decisions within the liquid-fuels sector to ensure the security of energy supply. Towards the end of September 2010, the department drafted and published regulations in respect of strategic stocks to be kept by oil companies, which was expected to be finalised during 2011/12.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

As part of the promotion of clean energy sources, the department drafted the LPG Strategy, which was submitted to Cabinet in 2011/12. The strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

Cleaner Fuels Programme

To improve the quality of transport fuels, the department reviewed the fuel specifications and standards to reduce harmful emissions, and to align standards with global vehicle-technology trends and environmental requirements. This is expected to encourage vehicle manufacturers to introduce more fuel-efficient engine technologies with lower carbon and noxious gas emissions. The department drafted a position paper for consultation and intended to announce new fuel specifications in 2011/12.

Promoting clean and renewable energy resources

Promoting the development and use of clean and renewable energy resources remains a priority for the Department of Energy. Renewable energy feed-in tariffs have been set for a diverse portfolio of renewable energy sources, including wind, solar, biomass and small-scale hydro. Producers who invest in renewable energy are encouraged by tariffs that cover the cost of generation plus an attractive return.

Similarly, energy-efficiency programmes are prioritised and the department has developed a solar water-heating framework, which consolidates all solar water-heating programmes run by various municipalities, public entities and the private sector. A standard offer framework, which provides incentives for interventions that improve energy efficiency in the domestic, industrial and commercial sectors, was developed and expected to be finalised in 2011/12.

These initiatives assist the department to achieve its target of producing 10 000 GWh of electricity from renewable sources by 2013, and to improve energy efficiency by 12% by 2015.

Independent power producers

The department will initiate a procurement process for renewable energy investment under the Renewable Energy Feed-In Tariff (Refit) Programme. Technologies, including solar, wind, biomass, hydro and landfill gas, will form part of a diversified portfolio of renewable energy. In addition to the renewable-energy IPPs, other non-Eskom generation opportunities will be procured, particularly co-generation and other options identified as part of the IRP implementation process.

In August 2011, the chairperson of the Infrastructure Development Cluster and Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, announced that five contracts had been signed with IPPs, adding 373 MW of electricity to the national grid, as part of the initiative to supplement Eskom's electricity generation capacity.

Infrastructure rehabilitation

It has become critical to address the problems facing the electricity distribution network, particularly municipal infrastructure. The Approach to Distribution Asset Management Programme is expected to rehabilitate identified municipal structures that pose a risk to energy security.

Funding

The department has been allocated R15,9 billion over the MTEF period, with an allocation of R6,09 billion for 2011/12.

Of the 2011/12 budget, 95% (R5,78 billion) was transferred to the following:

- INEP: R3,2 billion for distribution to municipalities and Eskom, to continue with electrification and the non-grid programme
- Necsa: R586 million to continue with its central role as the anchor for nuclear energy R&D and innovation
- energy efficiency and demand-side management (DSM): R398 million for DSM interventions in 21 municipalities and through Eskom
- Transnet: R375 million quarterly.

Public entities and other role players

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

Nersa regulates electricity (in terms of the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006), gas (in terms of the Gas Act, 2001) and petroleum pipelines (in terms of Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003).

Nersa adopted high-level strategic objectives over the next few years, namely:

- creating regulatory certainty in the energy sector
- protecting the interests of the public and customers
- creating dispensation for fair competition for industry players
- creating energy supply certainty
- creating an effective organisation that delivers on its mandate and purpose.

The total budgeted income for 2011/12 was R223,022 million.

National Nuclear Regulator

The purpose of the NNR is to provide for the protection of persons, property and the environment against nuclear damage, through the establishment of safety standards and regulatory practices.

Strategic objectives to be pursued entail:

- optimising the regulatory framework
- creating a high-quality performance and service culture
- promoting good governance
- developing and maintaining sound organisational infrastructure
- developing a financially viable and sustainable funding model
- managing talent and knowledge
- enhancing stakeholder relations.

The budget for 2011/12 was R149,751 million, of which R103,435 million was funded from fees paid by authorisation holders, and the balance from the State.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa

Necsa was established as a public company in terms of the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 and is wholly owned by the State.

The Act provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to the corporation, including the implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations. The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to R&D and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

The corporation's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy R&D and innovation in South Africa. The strong research focus is directed mainly at nuclear technology applications, particularly relating to:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle (including waste).

The corporation is also responsible for operating the Safari-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science R&D and to provide irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes; decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities; and implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency, the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty.

Over the MTEF, the corporation will focus on:

- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel R&D in relation to low enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear-component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

Necsa's products and service offerings are delivered through three main programme clusters, namely:

- the Nuclear Power Cluster, which undertakes nuclear fuel development and production, and projects and services in support of South Africa's Nuclear Power Programme
- the Radiation Science and Applications Cluster, which delivers radiation-sciences research services, and develops products and services for the industry, including isotopes for the medical sector
- the Necsa as Host of Nuclear Programmes Cluster, which refers to Necsa's services to house nuclear programmes due to its unique integrated system, licensed nuclear infrastructure and specialised supporting services.

Necsa has a nuclear science centre where members of the public can learn more about nuclear energy.

Recognising the need for skills for nuclear expansion, Necsa, with the support of the Department of Trade and Industry, invests in artisan skills.

South African National Energy Development Institute

Sanedi (previously Saneri) was restructured during the MTEF.

The original institute's aims were to stimulate innovation in energy R&D, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally. This was done by procuring research, facilitating cooperation with others in the research community and commercialising innovations achieved under its auspices by disseminating R&D results and, if required, conducting its own research programmes. It also provided support to postgraduate research students, promoted career development and assisted internationally renowned researchers to return to or remain in South Africa.

With the restructuring process, the institute's aims were expanded to also promote energy-efficiency initiatives and DSM. Sanedi will house South Africa's carbon capture and storage R&D, and other energy research programmes.

Sanedi's budget for 2011/12 was R20,1 million.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF is a private company, governed by the CEF Act, 1977. It researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs. It is also mandated to manage the Equalisation Fund, which collects levies from the retail sales of petroleum products to eliminate unnecessary fluctuations in the retail price of liquid fuel and to give tariff protection to the synthetic fuel industry.

The objectives of the CEF are:

- managing the energy business for the benefit of all South Africans
- playing an active role in the governance and planning of all its subsidiaries and coordinating the long-term future of the group
- improving energy security of supply by diversifying sources, and building and managing strategic energy stocks and energy infrastructure
- developing and investing in renewable and alternative energy sources and in energy efficiency
- developing human capacity and investing in relevant R&D
- managing and optimally exploiting local strategic energy and related resources
- mitigating against environmental impacts and maximising sustainable development.

The group's total operating costs for 2010/11 amounted to R11,283 billion.

> The Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa continues to produce, through its subsidiary, the National Toxicology Programme, radioisotopes that are critical to diagnose and treat cancer. They have become the leading commercial supplier of medical radioisotopes that are produced from low-enriched uranium as opposed to nuclear weapons-grade uranium.

Integrated energy centres (IECs)

The IECs Programme is one of the initiatives the department has adopted to contribute to rural development and job creation in the fight against energy poverty.

Sasol supported the drive to commemorate the 20th anniversary of the release of former President Nelson Mandela by establishing an IEC at Qunu in Eastern Cape.

The department is also working with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform to develop future IECs in line with the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme. The two departments conducted an energy needs assessment in Muyexe Village in Giyani, Limpopo.

In 2011, the department launched a further two IECs, funded by PetroSA, the national oil company of South Africa.

Energy efficiency

Government has set a target of 15% energy efficiency for the industry and 12% nationally to be achieved by 2015.

The objective of the Energy-Efficiency Campaign is to raise and enhance awareness of the benefits of efficient use of energy to all stakeholders, while simultaneously increasing the flow of energy-efficient information. There are other components of the campaign that involve partnership with other key role players such as government, the business community, Sanedi, the UN Development Programme (Unido) and the Swiss Development Corporation.

The Industrial Energy-Efficiency Programme will provide capacity-building among employees in the industry. It is an initiative between government, business and Unido. Its main objectives are skills transfer and technical support in the intensive roll-out of optimised energy systems in industry, and the implementation of sound energy-management practices.

In the building sector especially, it is necessary to raise awareness of the importance of energy efficiency and the market profile of a building's energy performance, while ensuring that energy efficiency in buildings is visible. It is also important to provide information on major energy-saving opportunities to all in the building sector. The national building codes and regulations also addressed energy efficiency as one of its components for enforcement.

National Treasury has set in place tax incentive regulations for companies within the energy-efficient value chain, which are expected to come into force once the energy-efficiency regulations are completed.

The Energy-Efficiency Monitoring System is a collaboration between government, through the Department of Energy and the Swiss Development Corporation. The programme aims to ensure that energy-efficient policies are supported by adequate end-use information systems, by substantially increasing the effort to collect data about energy efficiency and information across all sectors.

Another way government aims to encourage energy efficiency is through local government initiatives, led by the South African Local Government Association. Five municipalities have been selected to pilot the Energy-Efficiency Campaign: Sol Plaatje, Polokwane, Rustenburg, King Sabata Dalindyebo and Mbombela. Among other projects, the installation of one million solar water heaters by 2014 is underway in these municipalities.

The energy sector accounts for a large percentage of CO_2 emissions, which directly contribute to climate change. It is imperative that government implement practices that will reduce demand, choose cleaner resources and deploy the best available energy technologies, while also creating jobs.

Over the past few years, standards have been developed to enhance the Energy-Efficient Appliance Labelling Programme. By August 2011, they were very close to publication, and entail methods of measuring the power consumption of audio, video and related appliances; household electrical appliances – the measurement of standby power; and methods for measuring the energy efficiency of electrical lamps for household use.

Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy. To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The five phases of the roadmap and their status are as follows:

- A preliminary investigation was undertaken by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research for the then Department of Minerals and Energy to ascertain whether South Africa had potential capturable carbon-dioxide sources and storage sites. The results of that investigation, released in 2004, showed that South Africa had capturable emissions and potential storage sites. Based on this premise, further investigations were initiated. The preliminary investigation also identified that the synfuel industry in South Africa produced 30 million tons (Mt) per year of 95% concentration carbon dioxide.
- The *Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas* (launched in August 2010) will locate and characterise potential storage sites at a theoretical level and on a geological basin extent. The

atlas will then be taken into the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage's programme of work and be developed to locate a storage site suitable for a test injection. Pre-atlas knowledge had identified four possible carbon-dioxide geological storage basins:
- Orange Basin (off-shore of the west coast)
- Outeniqua Basin (off-shore of the southern coastline and site of the only producing gas/petroleum wells in South Africa)
- Durban/Zululand Basin (east coast)
- Karoo On-Shore Basin (near the main coalfields and most coal-based electricity generation and synfuel production).

  The first three are conventional types of storage – that is depleted oil/gas wells and deep saline formations. The fourth, the Karoo Basin, has sandstone formations that are subject to low permeability and also to dolerite intrusions. Consequently, further investigation is required as to how carbon dioxide could be stored in these less favourable formations. The Karoo Basin is the closest to the current major sources of carbon dioxide emissions.

• The CO_2 Test Injection Experiment of safely injecting carbon dioxide into South African reservoirs is essential to understanding the suitability of the local geology as a storage medium. It is also necessary to ascertain the dispersion and transformation reactions of carbon dioxide in the storage medium and its effects on the surroundings of the storage medium. This experiment will be informed by similar injection activities underway internationally.
• A demonstration plant will test an integrated operating system under local conditions and form an essential link between feasibility trials and a full-scale commercial plant. This phase will demonstrate the safe injection of carbon dioxide into South African geological formations. The magnitude of the demonstration plant is in the order of hundreds of thousands of tons of carbon dioxide per year.
• If positive outcomes of the demonstration plant ensue, a full-scale commercial plant is envisaged. This phase will be dependent on the outputs of the previous phases.

Working for Energy Programme

In 2010, the Department of Energy launched the Working for Energy Programme, with the primary objective of using the feedstock created from clearing alien biomass vegetation to produce power.

The programme focuses on two things – the provision of energy through renewable-energy technologies and the facilitation of energy management. Both use labour-intensive methodologies to stimulate sustainable job creation, local economic development, technology skills transfer and capacity development within a South African context.

During 2011, the department spent R25 million on the Working for Energy Programme.

Through this programme, it intends to diversify its energy mix and increase access to energy. The department will ensure that all projects under this programme are labour-intensive and educational and empower communities.

National building standards

In 2010, members of the public and interested parties were invited to submit comments and input on the energy-efficiency regulations for new buildings, which were published in the *Government Gazette*.

The regulations form part of the deliverables of the National Energy Strategy that was identified in the Industrial Policy Action Plan to strengthen South African standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficiency regulations for residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of buildings make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. Significant energy savings can be effected by users, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

The different elements of the building envelope, namely, roofs, ceilings, walls and windows, will have to meet minimum requirements for preventing heat loss (in winter) or heat gain (in summer) to meet the energy-efficiency targets.

All buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with the South African National Standards (SANS).

The regulations require that buildings, heaters, air-conditioners and mechanical ventilation systems be energy efficient.

The Department of Trade and Industry, in partnership with the South African Bureau of Standards and the National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications, was instrumental in developing regulations and supporting the SANS.

Designated National Authority (DNA)

As a signatory to the Kyoto Protocol, government has established the DNA to facilitate the development of clean development mechanism (CDM) projects. The purpose of this initiative is to ensure that the CDM investment taking place in South Africa is in line with sustainable development objectives addressing economic, environmental and social development, with the emphasis on investments, job creation, poverty alleviation, technology and skills transfer.

The projects submitted to the DNA for initial review and approval included biofuels, energy efficiency, waste management, co-generation, fuel switching and hydro-power, and sectors such as manufacturing, mining, agriculture, energy, waste management, housing, transport and residential.

These projects will help South Africa reduce GHG emissions such as carbon dioxide, which is emitted mainly by the energy sector.

A number of big industries such as Sasol, Eskom, Mittal Steel, Mondi, Sappi and South African Breweries have also taken up CDM investments with the aim of contributing to sustainable development objectives and emission reduction.

South Africa is assisting other countries in Africa to establish DNAs.

Energy statistics

Detailed, complete, timely and reliable statistics are essential to monitor the energy situation in South Africa. In addition, energy statistics on supply, trade, stocks, transformation and demand are the basis for any sound policy decision.

The Department of Energy, in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is responsible for providing energy data and statistics.

The department initiated a programme to strengthen its staff's expertise and experience in collecting, verifying, analysing and publishing energy statistics. Energy statistics are available from publications such as the *Energy Digest* and *Energy Price Report*, as well as in electronic format and on the department's website.

The department, through the National Energy Act, 2008 intends to make the provision of energy data mandatory.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy-resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

About 77% of South Africa's primary energy needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source. Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground. The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% of saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output. South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer in the world.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, which make them easier and cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, it is estimated that there is more than 50 years of coal supply left.

Nuclear

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 and the NNR Act, 1999. The Department of Energy administers these Acts.

The Department of Health administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to groups III and IV hazardous substances. Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in 2008.

Skills-development strategies and acquisition and retention of the relevant skills to support the nuclear programme have to be formulated. The following categories will be addressed:

- construction skills
- plant-operation skills
- skills for the relevant government departments
- regulatory skills
- supporting industry skills
- decommissioning and rehabilitation skills
- radioactive waste management.

The Nuclear Fuel Cycle Strategy for the beneficiation of uranium resources is a key factor with special focus on:

- securing South African uranium mineral resources
- developing a uranium conversion plant
- developing a uranium enrichment plant
- developing a fuel fabrication plant.

Eskom is investigating the possibility of generating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This will entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The following main organisations are directly involved in the nuclear sector:

- The Department of Health (Directorate: Radiation Control) issues licences for Group III hazardous substances (electronic product-generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group IV hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, the only nuclear power station on the African continent, is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation. It is owned by Eskom, which reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises.
- The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences brings together scientists working in the physical, medical and biological sciences. The facilities provide opportunities for modern research, advanced education, the treatment of cancers and the production of unique radioisotopes.
- The Nuclear Fuels Corporation of South Africa is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export.

The department participates in the Women in Nuclear South Africa (Winsa) Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and Winsa to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Liquid fuels

The South African liquid-fuels sector presents several opportunities for investors throughout the petroleum value chain.

In 2010, PetroSA concluded its feasibility study on a 400 000-barrels-a-day refinery at the Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) in the Eastern Cape.

The proposed Mthombo oil refinery will save South Africa some R12,6 billion a year in energy costs once it is running and exporting oil across Africa. The refinery will also create employment for 27 500 people. Construction of the refinery, which will be the biggest in Africa, was expected to start in 2012, with completion by 2015.

A key feature of the South African liquid-fuels sector is that most transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, about 68% of which is consumed in the inland Gauteng region. This requires investments in storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

A new R15-billion pipeline to transport petroleum from Durban to Johannesburg is under construction.

The 555-km trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km inland pipeline network, will increase capacity from the existing 4,4 billion

South African miner Gold Fields' innovative Methane Capture Project at its Beatrix Mine in Welkom has been registered as a Clean Development Mechanism (CDM) Project with the United Nations (UN) Framework Convention on Climate Change, allowing the company to earn carbon credits.

In a bid to slow climate change, the UN gives credits to corporations and entities that initiate projects to reduce the level of pollution. Once the project has been registered as a CDM, the carbon credits can be earned and traded.

This transaction was awarded the European Energy Risk Deal of the Year Award in 2010 because it was the first Carbon Credit Project of this size undertaken by a gold mine.

The project not only reduces carbon emissions and significantly increases safety, but also generates an alternative source of clean energy, as it captures methane gas at its source, which is then piped to the surface where it is either flared or used to generate electricity. This is the first time that such a project has been implemented in South Africa.

It is expected that the carbon emissions at the operation will be reduced by 1,7 million tons between 2011 and 2018.

The revenue generated by the carbon credits has enabled Gold Fields to extract methane gas at the source, which has had a positive impact on safety as it prevents the methane from entering the mine ventilation system.

litres to 8,4 billion litres and is expected to become operational by the end of December 2013.

These mega infrastructural projects and related support infrastructure require a close and ongoing partnership between SOEs and private companies.

Sasol

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemical company. It beneficiates coal, oil and gas into liquid fuels, fuel components and chemicals with the help of its proprietary Fischer-Tropsch processes.

Sasol mines coal in South Africa, and produces gas in Mozambique and oil in Gabon. Its chemical manufacturing and marketing operations span the globe. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and retail liquid fuels through its network of retail convenience centres. Sasol also supplies fuels to other distributors in the region and gas to industrial customers in South Africa.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquid (GTL) and coal-to-liquid (CTL) technology.

Sasol has chosen a location in south-western Louisiana as the site for what could be the first plant in the United States of America (USA) to produce GTL transportation fuels and other products.

The company will embark on a feasibility study to evaluate the viability of a GTL venture in Calcasieu Parish, and will consider two options – a two-Mt per year and a four-Mt per year facility.

The potential GTL complex will entail a capital investment of approximately US$8 billion to $10 billion, and could create up to 850 permanent positions and up to approximately 5 500 jobs during peak construction periods.

In December 2010, Sasol announced the world's first ethylene tetramerization unit, also to be built in Calcasieu Parish.

In September 2011, Sasol, together with partners Uzbekneftegaz and Petronas, signed an investment agreement with the Minister of Foreign Economic Relations, Investment and Trade for the Uzbekistan Government, for the development and implementation of a GTL project in that country.

Under the investment agreement, the investors and the GTL project will enjoy investment protection and fiscal benefits, to ensure the successful implementation and operation of the GTL facility.

The next phase will be the front-end engineering and design of the GTL project, which was expected to commence by the end of 2011. Depending on the final investment decision, the plant will be operational in the second half of this decade.

In 2010, Sasol approved the construction of a R1,9-billion ethylene purification unit at its Sasol polymers plant in Sasolburg.

The plant is expected to go on stream in the second half of 2013 and should be operating at full capacity by 2015, enabling the company to boost ethylene production by about 48 000 tons per year.

The ethylene will be used in the manufacture of polyethylene, and will greatly benefit South Africa's plastics conversion industry, which imports large quantities of this raw material.

Oil and gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves and about 60% of its crude oil requirements are met

Government's infrastructure development realised important achievements with the development and approval by Cabinet in March 2011 of the Integrated Resource Plan and the Independent Systems Market Operator Bill, with the latter to stimulate greater private investment in electricity generation. Nearly 195 000 additional households were given electricity connections and five contracts were signed, adding 373 MW of capacity to the national electricity grid.

by imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola).

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, liquid petrolium gas (LPG) and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls.

Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The department views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

The Integrated Resources Plan 2010 (IRP2010) incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia.

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

> The first diesel exhaust fluid blend plant in Africa was opened in Centurion, Gauteng, in May 2011. The plant is the result of the Department of Energy's efforts to improve the quality of liquid transport fuels in the country.
>
> The establishment of the plant by Blue Sky Environmental Technologies introduces AdBlue to the South African market and is a display of confidence in and support of government's efforts to improve the quality of liquid fuels as outlined in the *Discussion Document on the Review of Fuel Specifications and Standards for South Africa*.
>
> Bluesky Environmental Technologies is a South African registered company that represents a joint venture between Kruse Gruppe Germany and Viscol South Africa.
>
> AdBlue is used to reduce emissions of nitrogen oxide from fuels, through a process called Selective Catalytic Reduction, which is compatible with Euro four and five standards.
>
> Euro four and five fuels contribute comparatively less to environmental pollution than earlier specifications, and are more efficient, thus leading to less carbon emissions per kilometre.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, owing to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho and Swaziland.

Biofuels

The biofuel sector has grown rapidly internationally. However, South Africa has remained only a peripheral participant in the sector's growth. There are several reasons for this:

- being a relatively new sector, there are various complex regulatory barriers that need to be finalised
- the global economic crisis and the resultant reduction in oil prices reduced the commercial viability of some investments and negatively affected investor sentiment
- national debates have tended to focus on food-versus-fuel arguments and the potential to create biofuels using crop surpluses.

The then Department of Minerals and Energy's *National Biofuels Study* (2006) found that South Africa had significant potential to develop a commercially viable biofuels sector notwithstanding its water-poor status. The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the CEF are the main investors in the sector in South Africa. The IDC in particular is involved in all four of South Africa's current biofuel projects.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular. In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable-energy targets sustainably.

Government has committed to a 2% blend target for biofuels inclusion in the national fuel supply. In addition, several other developing countries have set blending targets of 10% for biofuels without any need for significant engine adjustment. Were South Africa to increase its blending target to 10%, some 125 000 direct jobs could be created, many of which would be based in rural areas, where the deepest pockets of poverty occur.

Electricity

South Africa is faced with a situation in which the demand for electricity continues to grow within a supply-constrained environment.

The Mass Electrification Programme, which started in the 1990s, and the ongoing rapid industrialisation of the country have put enormous strain on energy sources.

The electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

Reliable energy supply is also a critical factor in attracting foreign investment. Also vital and central to the country's developmental agenda is the electrification of households in rural and urban areas as part of improving the quality of life of people.

In 1994, only 51% of households had access to electricity. By 2010, this number had increased to 75%.

Integrated National Electrification Programme

The Department of Energy began funding the INEP in April 2001. Eskom implements the programme in its licensed areas of supply on the Department of Energy's behalf. Operating costs relating to this electrification programme are incurred by Eskom as the licensed distributor supplying electricity to its consumers.

The electrification programme has a positive socio-economic impact on the lives of South Africans. There have been improvements in the education, health and social circumstances of communities that have been electrified through the grid and off-grid technologies. By 2011, South Africa's energy penetration stood at over 75%, and with R3,2 billion allocated to the INEP, the department aimed to connect an additional 150 000 households, build 10 substations and contribute about 5 000 jobs. In 2010/11, the department created 5 811 jobs and connected 195 000 homes to the electricity grid, exceeding its target by 45 000 households.

Eskom

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Additional power stations and major power lines are being built to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa. Eskom will continue to focus on improving and strengthening its core business of electricity generation, transmission, trading and distribution.

Eskom buys electricity from and sells it to the countries of the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Future involvement in African markets outside South Africa (that is the SADC countries connected to the South African grid and the rest of Africa) is limited to those projects that have a direct impact on ensuring security of supply for South Africa.

Climate change

Eskom worked closely with government to ensure the success of COP17.

Clean electricity is a fundamental solution to the challenge of climate change. Eskom has been working with its partners to develop a global electricity utilities initiative that will cut across political and geographical boundaries. The initiative will highlight the significant contribution that progressive electricity utilities can make, and demonstrate how early action is already having a impact.

Eskom's response to climate change includes initiatives to reduce the carbon intensity of its existing and future plants, and making its energy mix less dependent on coal. The SADC region offers significant clean generation capacity and growth opportunities for Eskom and South Africa.

Renewable energy

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term Strategic Energy Plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Eskom signed two loan agreements totalling US$365 million with the African Development Bank (AFDB) in September 2011, which will go towards financing Eskom's 100-MW Sere wind farm in Vredendal, Western Cape. The loans consist of US$265 million from the AFDB's own resources and US$100 million from the Clean Technology Fund, a climate investment fund that promotes the transfer of low carbon technologies.

Other loans obtained to expand the programmes to develop renewable energy projects include €100 million from the *Agence Française de Développement*, and US$260 million (part of a US$3,75 billion loan) from the World Bank. Construction on the project began late-2011.

CSP systems use lenses or mirrors and tracking systems to focus a large area of sunlight into a small beam. The concentrated heat is then used as a heat source for a conventional power plant.

Eskom's CSP project has made significant progress since the awarding of the World Bank loan in April 2010. The required land is now owned by Eskom, water for construction and operations has been secured, and the planning around grid integration has progressed well.

Given the pace of technological developments in CSP and the time taken to finalise funding, Eskom and the World Bank decided that an independent technology assessment was required before concluding the plant specifications. The assessment, conducted by an independent German consultancy, was completed in December 2010. The consultant confirmed Eskom's internal findings that the central receiver (CR) was the preferred technology choice and suitable for utility scale application. Eskom finalised plant specifications such as:

- a 100-MW CR demonstration plant with molten salt as a heat transfer fluid
- capacity factor greater than 60%
- two-tank storage systems with molten salt, designed for optimised, levelised energy costs
- a dry-cooled or hybrid-cooled plant – designed to optimise water usage
- all auxiliary power sourced from the national grid and backup sourced from diesel generators
- a minimum plant lifespan of 25 years.

Eskom appointed an owner's engineer in the first half of 2011 for the development and execution of the project. The plant is expected to be commissioned in the first half of 2016.

If implemented, the proposed plant will be the largest molten salt-type CR project globally, which will represent a significant step in establishing solar power as a major future energy supply option in South Africa.

To confirm government's commitment regarding the use of renewable energy, the Department of Energy has launched two flagship initiatives:

- a small-scale hydro plant in Bethlehem, Free State
- a waste-to-electricity project at eThekwini, KwaZulu-Natal.

These have added 13 MW to the total supply capacity in the country.

Compact fluorescent lamp (CFL) exchange

Through Eskom's Efficient Lighting Campaign, South Africans saved 1 800 MW between 2004 and 2010 – enough to power a city the size of Durban.

Eskom's CFL roll-out encourages South Africans to switch from incandescent bulbs to energy-efficient CFLs – miniature versions of full-sized tubular fluorescents – in line with global trends. CFLs use up to 80% less electricity than traditional incandescent light bulbs, while providing the same amount of light.

Power Conservation Programme (PCP)

The PCP aims to create a South Africa that uses electricity much more efficiently and sustainably.

The key components of the programme include energy conservation schemes to reduce energy consumption by 10% and electricity growth management to oversee new electrical connections in line with available capacity supply.

In addition, the PCP aims to provide the pricing signal to ensure the uptake of other solutions such as DSM, particularly among the top 500 consumers in the country.

New-Build Programme

Eskom's New-Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. By mid-2011, more than 5 000 MW of new generation capacity and more than 3 000 km of new transmission lines had been added to the country's electricity grid.

As part of the programme, Eskom has spent R20,5 billion on recommissioning three power stations that have been out of service for over 20 years: Camden, Komati and Grootvlei, all in Mpumalanga. Together the stations can produce an estimated 3 800 MW, which equals that of a new power station. The cost of recommissioning the retired stations is estimated at almost R100 billion less than a new station, and the electricity will be available sooner. Camden was reopened in 2010, with work progressing on Komati and Grootvlei. Eskom aims to have all three operational by 2013.

Construction of two massive new coal-fired stations – Medupi and Kusile – is underway. The new Ingula pumped storage scheme will be commissioned in 2014.

The strengthening of the high-voltage power line network is gaining momentum. The acquisition of servitudes for new line routes has moved slowly and delayed the process, but these issues are being addressed.

Solar

By February 2012, government had installed 220 006 solar geysers countrywide.

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 and 6,5 kWh/m^2 in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m^2 for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m^2 for Europe.

This makes the local resource one of the highest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The country's solar-equipment industry is developing. Annual PV panel-assembly capacity totals 5 MW, and a number of companies in South Africa manufacture solar water-heaters.

Solar power is being used increasingly for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs.

Eskom's solar water heating programme has gained momentum, with 60 183 claims received for the solar water heating rebate, of which 41 690 were paid by the end of 2010.

> The roughly 43,5 million compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs) introduced between 2004 and 2010 as part of Eskom's Efficient Lighting Programme holds the world record for the highest number of CFLs rolled out in one country through a single campaign.

Solar-passive building design

Research has shown that low-cost housing could be made "energy smart" by using elementary "solar-passive building design" practice. This could result in fuel savings of as much as 65%, which could significantly benefit households' energy costs.

Energy-efficient homes may be constructed at the same direct cost (and lower life-cycle cost) as energy-wasteful houses. The challenge is to develop awareness and to ensure implementation of basic energy-efficiency principles. Government is considering the following building norms and standards: orientation for the purposes of passive solar design, lighting, and installation of solar water-heaters, insulation, ventilation, heating and air conditioning.

Solar-thermal power generation

The minimum direct normal radiation (DNR) to justify a combined solar-thermal power plant is 1 800 kWh/m^2 per year. According to the

Renewable-Energy Resource Database, the area exceeding the minimum required DNR in South Africa covers about 194 000 km². A 100-MW solar-thermal plant requires roughly 3 km² (1 800 kWh/m² per year).

If 1% (1 940 km²) of the identified area is available for solar-thermal power generation, South Africa has an installed potential of 64,6 GW, which is about 36 217 GWh per year. Back-up and energy-storage constraints are limiting the wider economic use of solar-electricity generation (solar thermal and PV).

Wind

Eskom's Klipheuwel wind-energy facility, just north of Cape Town, is the first large wind-turbine facility in sub-Saharan Africa. The pilot phase of the Klipheuwel Research and Demonstration Project ran from 2002 to 2005.

During that time, the Klipheuwel Pilot Wind Farm generated more than 12 GWh of electricity, reducing carbon-dioxide emissions by 11 000 t. The three wind turbines operated at an average availability of 90%. The project's research phase has been completed and the wind farm will be operated commercially for its anticipated 20-year lifespan as calculated from 2006.

The Darling Wind Farm in the Western Cape has four wind turbines, which can supply 5,2 MW. All the electricity produced will be sold to the City of Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine will produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

The project is referred to as the National Demonstration Project and will be used as an example for future public-private partnerships in the establishment of alternative electricity generation.

The R75-million project was the first "green-energy" initiative in the country to produce electricity from wind power commercially.

It was developed through collaboration between the Darling Independent Power Producer, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and the CEF. The Danish International Development Agency also funded part of the project.

The first commercial wind farm at the Coega IDZ, Port Elizabeth, in the Eastern Cape, will have a total power capacity of 57,5 MW, which is about 10% of the Nelson Mandela Bay electricity consumption, and can power about 80 000 homes with green energy.

Hydro

The Baseline Study on Hydropower in South Africa, an assessment conducted by the then Department of Minerals and Energy in 2002, indicated that specific areas in the country showed significant potential for developing all categories of hydropower in the short and medium term.

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for developing small, that is less than 10 MW, hydropower plants.

The advantages of these plants are that they can either be stand-alone or exist in a hybrid combination with other renewable-energy sources.

Advantages can be derived from the association with other uses of water (such as water supply, irrigation and flood control), which are critical to South Africa's future economic and socio-economic development.

Eskom has started the construction of the Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme (1 332 MW) near Van Reenen, KwaZulu-Natal. It is expected that the first unit will be operational in 2013.

Ocean energy

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not being harnessed is that no reliable technology for generating electricity from this resource exists.

Various companies are testing systems internationally to develop technically viable solutions. Once technical reliability has been proven, cost-effectiveness in relation to other solutions will have to be established.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

Sustainable development on the African continent

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydroelectric energy of the Inga rapids site in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). It aims to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola.

A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of the DRC, Angola, Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. The first project is Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources will constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP is the first formal power pool in Africa. The objectives of the SAPP are, among other things:

- coordinating and cooperating in planning and operating electricity power systems
- minimising costs, while maintaining reliability, autonomy and self-sufficiency
- increasing interconnectivity between SADC countries to increase the reliability of power supplies
- facilitating cross-border electricity trading
- fully recovering operations costs and equitably sharing benefits, including reductions in generating capacity and fuel costs, and improved use of hydroelectric energy.

Under the SAPP banner, the countries have pledged to support South Africa in areas of power generation, transmission, customer contributions and DSM.

The SAPP members include *Empresa National de Electricidade* in Angola, Botswana Power Cooperation, *Société Nationale d'Électricité* in the DRC and the Electricity Supply Commission of Malawi.

Eskom is involved in the SAPP, along with other SADC country utilities, trading energy bilaterally with both utilities and industry as well as mining customers in neighbouring countries.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The Department of Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions. The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa must proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Energy and the national environment

There is some contention regarding the polluting effects of the energy sector, particularly in the Mpumalanga Highveld, where most of Eskom's coal-powered stations and the largest Sasol plants are located.

While the electricity planning process includes technologies that are currently commercially available, Eskom has modelled a number of scenarios to assess future emission profiles and the potential contribution that near-commercial lower carbon-emitting technologies can make to an emission-reduction target.

The evaluation of these options to provide the required baseload capacity includes an assessment of the risks, challenges and opportunities to fast-track these options to a point where they can be considered viable. Examples include underground coal gasification, CSP and hydro imports.

Given the country's abundance of coal reserves and the need to balance emission reductions with the affordability of electricity, Eskom is looking for increasingly efficient ways of using coal. From a coal-technology perspective, there are a number of sources that continue to predict the future performance of clean coal technologies, in terms of emissions and costs.

Significant international research and demonstration is aimed at improving the efficiency of all these technologies. The technological advances to achieve these higher efficiencies are expected to mature gradually between 2009 and 2030. The next coal-fired power station, Kusile, will be carbon-capture ready. The engineering design will cater for this requirement.

Energy and climate change

The former Department of Minerals and Energy developed the Climate Change Strategy for the energy sector in 2009. The document focuses on GHG emissions and supports the department's mitigation activities. The purpose of the strategy is to assist the department in establishing an effective response to climate change, which takes into consideration the key drivers and challenges for the sector.

The strategy ensures that the Department of Energy contributes to mitigation efforts, and positions the department to address implications of international climate-change negotiations on the country's energy industry. The strategy maximises potential benefits and minimises risks where possible, considering technological opportunities in energy efficiency, renewable energy and carbon capture and storage. Possible mitigation measures for the energy industry as a whole are addressed, not compromising economic growth and development, and other environmental objectives.

Energy and the household environment

About 950 000 households countrywide use coal. This causes indoor air-pollution problems, which have a serious health impact.

It has been found that in some cases, especially regarding particulate matter, exposure can exceed World Health Organisation standards (180 mg/m^3) by factors of six to seven during winter, and two to three in summer. A national programme has been established to introduce low-smoke energy alternatives into the townships.

Fuel wood is used by millions of rural households as their primary energy source. Studies have shown that fuel-wood users are exposed to even higher levels of particulate emissions than coal users.

The Department of Energy participates in the National Housing Interdepartmental Task Team and has contributed towards the development of norms and standards for solar-passive and thermally efficient housing design.

The department is investigating the introduction of improved woodstoves and other alternatives, such as solar cookers and biogas, in an attempt to address these pollution problems.

The White Paper on the Promotion of Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development, 2002 commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

International coordination

The Department of Energy will be engaging its counterparts in the SADC Council of Energy Ministers on the strengthening of the SAPP, and proposals for the development of an IRP for the region, taking into account that the region's countries' energy needs are interlinked and intertwined, and that each can contribute meaningfully to energy needs and meeting energy-efficiency challenges.

The department participates in structures such as the:
- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- Unido
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership

In 2011, the department embarked on a number of international engagements in its quest to find solutions to South Africa's energy challenges. Apart from servicing its international obligations in the nuclear energy space, it has a number of other binational and multilateral agreements that it has to honour. In keeping with South Africa's membership of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade alliance, the country is expected to have a more pronounced role in the international arena.

Acknowledgements

Budget Review, 2008
Business Day
Department of Energy
Developmental Indicators, 2010
Energy Efficiency Strategy, First Review Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2009
Engineering News
Eskom Industrial Policy Action Plan
Sasol Facts, 2009
South Africa: The Good News

www.businessday.co.za
www.cef.org.za
www.ecdc.co.za
www.energy.gov.za
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.eskom.co.za
www.fin24.com
www.gov.za
www.hartrao.ac.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.news24.com
www.sabcnews.com
www.saneri.org.za
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.globaldialogue.info

Suggested reading

Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Energy Efficiency Made Simple. 2008. Bedfordview: Crown Publications.
Scoping Study on Water Use of Crops/Trees for Biofuels in South Africa: Report to the Water Research Commission. Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
Water Conservation through Energy Conservation. 2007. Gezina: WRC. Winkler, H. 2009.



Environment

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

South Africa has a wide range of climatic conditions and many variations in topography, such as a narrow coastal plain, a steep escarpment and a large plateau.

The country is rich in diverse species and contains almost 10% of the world's total known bird, fish and plant species, and over 6% of the world's mammal and reptile species.

The vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs is to create a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with the country's resources. It aims to:
- protect, conserve and enhance the environment, natural and heritage assets and resources
- plan, manage and prevent pollution and environmental degradation proactively to ensure a sustainable and healthy environment
- provide leadership on climate-change adaptation and mitigation
- contribute to sustainable development, livelihood, and green and inclusive economic growth by facilitating skills development and job creation
- contribute to a better Africa and a better world by advancing national environmental interests through a global sustainable development agenda.

Policy and legislation

In July 2011, the National Environmental Laws Amendment Bill, 2011 was approved. It proposes amendments to certain provisions under the National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998); the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Nemba), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004); and the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004). Amendments were identified while implementing the legislation and some originated from the process of the Department of Cooperative Governance identifying legislation that hampers service delivery.

Nemba, 2004 provides a regulatory framework to protect South Africa's valuable species, ecosystems and its biological wealth. It implements the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity (1997)* and multilateral agreements such as the United Nations (UN) Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which came into force in December 1993.

The 194 parties to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change agreed on a historic package of decisions known as the "Durban Platform" in December 2011 at the 17th Conference of the Parties (COP17).

Key decisions of COP17 included:
- a second commitment period of the Kyoto Protocol from 1 January 2013
- launching the Green Climate Fund
- establishing the Adaptation Committee, composed of 16 members, which will report to the COP on its efforts to improve the coordination of adaptation actions at a global scale
- setting up the Technology Mechanism, which will become fully operational in 2012
- supporting developing country action
- establishing a forum and work programme on unintended consequences of climate-change actions and policies
- reviewing the Kyoto Protocol's Clean Development Mechanism's procedures to allow carbon-capture and storage projects every five years, to ensure environmental integrity
- a significantly advanced framework for the reporting of emission reductions for both developed and developing countries was also agreed upon, taking into consideration the common but differentiated responsibilities of different countries.

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003), provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas that are representative of South Africa's biological diversity, its natural landscapes and seascapes, and their management.

Regulations in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004), provide for the proper administration of specific nature reserves, national parks and world heritage sites.

South Africa and Australia are the only countries to have promulgated legislation specifically related to the World Heritage Convention, which was adopted by the UN in 1972.

The country's World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), stipulates that all world heritage sites must have an integrated management plan in place to ensure cultural and environmental protection and their sustainable development.

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), came into effect in July 2009. The department had developed a draft National Waste Management System, which, among other things, responds to challenges in respect of specific categories of waste and describes the application of different instruments for each waste category.

The National Policy on the Thermal Treatment of Hazardous and General Waste was implemented during 2010/11.

The implementation of the asbestos regulations, promulgated in 2007/08 to prohibit the use, manufacture, import and export of asbestos and asbestos-containing material, is progressing well.

World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Johannesburg hosted the WSSD in September 2002. The agreements reached then are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

The biggest success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact, including the following:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water to be halved by 2015
- collapsed fish stocks to be restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact to be phased out by 2020
- energy services to be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

In July 2008, the Cabinet passed the NFSD. The NFSD discusses the various environmental and social risk areas facing South Africa and maps out five strategic priority areas, namely:

- enhancing systems for integrated planning and implementation
- sustaining the country's ecosystems and using resources sustainably
- investing in sustainable economic development and infrastructure
- creating sustainable human settlements
- responding appropriately to emerging human development, economic and environmental challenges.

Formal implementation of the action plan commenced in 2010.

> In May 2011, South Africa joined the world in celebrating the International Day for Biological Diversity (IDB). The United Nations General Assembly adopted 22 May as the IDB in 1992. The theme for IDB 2011 was *Forest Biodiversity*, with the pertinent slogan, *Earth's Living Treasure.*
>
> At the same time, the International Decade for Biodiversity was also launched. This follows the Convention on Biological Diversity's Conference of the Parties in Nagoya, Japan, where the important contribution of biodiversity to poverty alleviation and job creation was emphasised.

Biological diversity

South Africa became a signatory to the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the CBD in May 2011. South Africa is the third most biologically diverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil.

These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively contain more than two thirds of global biodiversity. Therefore South Africa attaches great importance to the Nagoya Protocol.

South Africa occupies only 2% of the world's surface area, but is home to nearly 10% of the world's plants (approximately 24 000 species), around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species.

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa ranks as the fifth-richest country in Africa and the 24th-richest in the world. Marine biological diversity is also high. Over 11 000 species are found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species, with more than 25% of these marine species (or 3 496 species) being endemic to South Africa. A high proportion are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots (areas with especially high concentrations of biodiversity, which are under serious threat) are found in South Africa: the Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the Fynbos Biome), Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia) and the Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, the eastern side of Swaziland and into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga. The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, and is generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*Acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*Euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*Acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*Combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*Acacia galpinii*), mopani (*Colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*Ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*Portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions. The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhinoceros, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetland Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third-largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km^2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*Acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants. The vegetation of this biome is mainly low shrubland and grass, with trees limited to water courses.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second-largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km^2 and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1,9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved. The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystems services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (*Rhus lancea*), wild currant (*Rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*Celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemicity as far as birds are concerned. Birds commonly found in the area include the black korhaan, blue crane and guineafowl.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *Asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairy land. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered from horizon to horizon with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter-rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*Aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*Pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of neighbouring biomes (Fynbos and Nama-Karoo).

The Succulent Karoo Biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the land surface of the globe. Fynbos is found mainly in the Western Cape.

Fynbos is the name given to a group of evergreen plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates diverse plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, over 6 000 of which are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, for which South Africa is renowned. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. The mountains are the habitat of the leopard, baboon, honey badger, caracal, rhebuck and several types of eagle and dassies.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*Podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*Olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*Xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second-smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity.

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species in the Thicket Biome are endemic to it.

The Thicket Biome is predominantly in the Eastern Cape.

The Thicket Biome in the Eastern Cape supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (*Geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*Chersina angulata*), tent tortoise (*Psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*Homopus areolatus*).

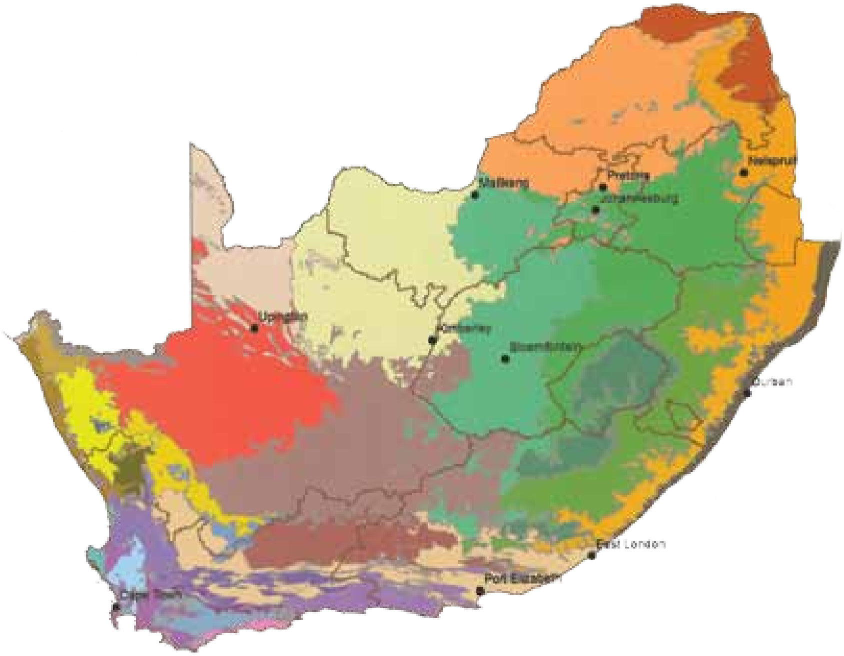
Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass,

> In May 2011, South Africa's Chelsea Flower Show entry, *Botanical Landscapes*, which highlighted the indigenous plants of the Western and Northern Cape, scooped the country's 31st gold medal at the prestigious event in London.
>
> The display showed off South Africa's fynbos, and in particular the Richtersveld sector featured some rare plants from the Karoo, unseen before at Chelsea. The Succulent Karoo Biome is the only arid biodiversity hotspot on Earth.

Bioregions of South Africa



- Northwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southwest Fynbos Bioregion
- Southern Fynbos Bioregion
- South Coast Fynbos Bioregion
- Western Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- Eastern Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion
- West Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- East Coast Renosterveld Bioregion
- Karoo Renosterveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Cape Shrublands Bioregion
- West Strandveld Bioregion
- West Strandveld Bioregion
- Richtersveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Hardeveld Bioregion
- Namaqualand Sandveld Bioregion
- Knersvlakte Bioregion
- Trans-Escarpment Succulent Karoo Bioregion
- Rainshadow Valley Karoo Bioregion
- Southern Namib Desert Bioregion
- Gariep Desert Bioregion
- Bushmanland Bioregion
- Upper Karoo Bioregion
- Lower Karoo Bioregion
- Drakensberg Grassland Bioregion
- Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion
- Mesic Highveld Grassveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Grassland Bioregion
- Central Bushveld Bioregion
- Mopane Bioregion
- Lowveld Bioregion
- Sub-Escarpment Savanna Bioregion
- Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Bioregion
- Kalahari Duineveld Bioregion
- Albany Thicket
- Indian Ocean Coastal Belt

Source: *Vision Endangered Wildlife Trust Seventeenth Annual* whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water. Common examples of such habitats are broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

Conserving biodiversity

Biodiversity plays a crucial role in sustainable development and poverty eradication.

As a biodiversity-rich country, South Africa is committed to the conservation and sustainable management of biological resources and is a signatory to the following biodiversity-related multilateral agreements:

- CBD
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites)
- UN Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD)
- Convention on Migratory Species.

South Africa's commitment as a signatory to these agreements is shown by its compliance with their many requirements and provisions. South Africa has developed a suite of biodiversity-related laws, policies and programmes, cutting across various government departments to address its priority policies and to comply with international agreements.

Important dates:
World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October

South Africa's fynbos export market exports 4 000 tons yearly, generating over R2 billion. Interest in South Africa's indigenous plants is growing, increasing employment in the Western Cape's rural areas. Fynbos SA (Fynsa), a private company set up by the Flower Valley Conservation Trust, was expected to sell about 70 000 bouquets to the United Kingdom's Marks & Spencer alone in 2011, up from 36 000 in 2010. This was the biggest order in Fynsa's history. Fynbos makes up 0,4% of the world's total flower sales.

The publication in 2006 of the *National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment* by the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems were threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers were threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three were in critical danger and 12% of marine biozones under serious threat.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) aims to establish a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

A scientifically-based systematic biodiversity assessment for the country was carried out in 2004. It set quantitative targets for the conservation of biodiversity in terrestrial, river, estuarine and marine ecosystems. The targets, based on best available science, need to inform the setting of realistic and measurable targets for the five-year action plan developed during the NBSAP process. The NBSAP identifies nine priority geographic areas, as well as priorities for freshwater, estuarine and marine ecosystems. Within these areas, important actions include limiting loss and degradation of natural habitat by integrating biodiversity considerations and municipal spatial plans and extending conservation and biodiversity management to privately- and communally-owned land. A national mining and biodiversity dialogue has been established between conservation organisations and the Chamber of Mines, which represents large mining houses. It aims to improve biodiversity practices within the industry and prevent loss of natural habitat in critical sites.

South African National Biodiversity Institute

Sanbi was formed in September 2004 through Nemba, 2004. This Act expanded the responsibility of Sanbi's forerunner, the National Botanical Institute (NBI) – which was flora-focused – to include responsibilities relating to the full spectrum of South Africa's biodiversity, while continuing to build upon the internationally respected programmes in conservation, research, education and visitor services that the NBI had developed over the past century.

Sanbi is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of South and southern Africa, and beyond. Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change.

Its Knowledge Management and Planning Branch strives to make biodiversity science more available and accessible through various mainstreaming projects and initiatives. Sanbi is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision-making.

Sanbi's biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, aim to ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions, such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo, are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way. As part of its mandate, Sanbi monitors and reports to the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs on the status of South Africa's biological diversity – that of listed threatened or protected species, listed ecosystems and listed invasive species.

Sanbi manages nine national botanical gardens (NBGs) (classified as "conservation gardens") in five of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation. The gardens collectively attract over a million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosh, Cape Town
- Pretoria
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit.

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria NBG, houses the largest collection of scientific plant specimens in southern Africa, with over one million specimens.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter-rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Sanbi is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. Sanbi is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

Sanbi operates environmental-education programmes within its NBGs and outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

In September 2011, Sanbi was chosen as the country's official body to facilitate access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol. Grants worth nearly US$50 million were approved in 2011.

Biodiversity research

Sanbi's biodiversity research comprises collaborative programmes set up to promote and catalyse knowledge about biodiversity. This is an essential part of the institute's aim to develop the knowledge base and information products that can inform decision-making. The broad scope of research includes the origins, composition, and functioning of biodiversity, its conservation and sustainable use, ecosystem services, and biodiversity responses to major drivers such as climate change. The research is organised into three divisions:

In May 2011, the South African National Biodiversity Institute joined the Consortium of Scientific Partners of the Convention on Biological Diversity as its first African member.

- Applied Biodiversity Research
- Biosystematics Research and Biodiversity Collections
- Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation.

Protected areas

The CBD, to which South Africa is a signatory, required that 10% of terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

By mid-2011, South Africa had 528 protected areas, of which 20 were marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the land area.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed mechanisms for the establishment and expansion of protected areas.

The conservation of biodiversity in the country's protected areas and national park system is one of the department's key focus areas. In 2010, the department hosted the fourth People and Parks Conference in KwaZulu-Natal. Among some of the deliverables of this conference was a national co-management framework launched to provide a harmonised uniform guideline for conservation authorities and successful restitution claimants.

Communities are encouraged to play their role in protecting the environment as shareholders and in co-management agreements in support of government's rural development objectives.

Protected areas provide vital climate-change mitigation and adaptation benefits.

The department works closely with land owners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

National parks

South Africa's national parks are among the key drawcards for tourism in South Africa. They also play a major role in conservation.

South African National Parks (SANParks) was established in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003. Its mandate is to conserve, protect, control and manage national parks and other defined protected areas and their biological diversity. It is the leading conservation agency in Africa.

SANParks is committed to contributing to economic growth and transformation by creating decent jobs and sustainable and quality livelihoods. National parks are integral to the country's job-creation agenda, with over 10 000 people employed by the national parks. Through the entity's infrastructure development programme and Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), the organisation ensures that national parks are important components of the economic stimulus through enterprise and social development, such as job creation.

Between 2007/08 and 2010/11, SANParks acquired 147 040 ha of land. Despite the global economic downturn, average occupancy grew by

The Enyokeni Greening (Tree Planting) Project was launched by the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Edna Molewa, in KwaNongoma, KwaZulu-Natal, in September 2011. With a budget of R3,5 million set aside by government, the project aims to mitigate the effects of climate change, while also creating much-needed jobs.

This included direct employment of 330 people for short-term infrastructure development, skills transfer and the creation of markets for related products and services. Some 34 000 trees were expected to be planted.

7,5% (from 56,2% to 58%). In an effort to fight the escalation in rhino poaching, particularly in the Kruger National Park, a joint operation, known as the National Wildlife Reaction Unit, has been established between SANParks, the Department of Environmental Affairs, the South African Police Service, the National Prosecuting Authority, provincial conservation authorities and provincial government structures.

South Africa has the following national parks:
- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs are expected to allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are the:
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

Biosphere reserves exist in partnership with a range of interested land owners, and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

The UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's (Unesco) Man and the Biosphere Programme addresses the impact of man on the environment by studying the social, ecological and economic implications of biodiversity loss. It then takes steps to minimise this through the sharing of knowledge, research and monitoring, education and training, and multilateral decision-making.

> The World Wide Fund for Nature's Biodiversity and Wine Initiative (BWI) aims to protect natural habitats and encourage sustainable farming practices. In 2010, the organisation launched a sustainability seal, which signifies that wine is produced using the greenest techniques available. Nearly 95% of South Africa's vineyards are located in the Cape Floral Kingdom. For every hectare under grape cultivation, a matching hectare of natural vegetation is set aside for conservation. One of the most important requirements for membership of the BWI is that a farm undergoes an official process to declare that water effluent leaving the cellar is untainted with chemicals.

Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This is important as it helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau, which boasts hundreds of rock-art sites.
- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony. The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station falls within its boundaries.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region. The historic settler-founded towns of Stellenbosch, Paarl and Franschhoek lie here.
- In the north is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers. San rock art abounds, as does the flora and fauna of the area.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.

The Western Cape Biosphere Reserves Bill was introduced in the provincial Parliament in March 2011. When the Bill is passed, South Africa will be the first country in the world to have adopted specific legislation in terms of which biosphere reserves are regulated. In March 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs submitted the Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve application to Unesco for designation as a biosphere reserve in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

The South Africa World Heritage Convention Committee is responsible for identifying possible world heritage sites in South Africa and co-ordinating the convention. The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), allows for cultural and natural sites in South Africa to be granted world heritage status. The convention obliges the South African Government to guarantee its implementation, ensure legal protection and develop management plans and institutional structures for periodic monitoring.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco, namely:

- Robben Island
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- the hominid sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai (known as the Cradle of Humankind)
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site)
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site
- Cape Floral Kingdom
- Vredefort Dome
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.

The Vredefort Dome is an ancient extraterrestrial impact site spanning the Free State and North West provinces. Formed two billion years ago, it is the world's most ancient meteorite impact site and the third-largest, measuring 140 km across.

The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo.

The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years.

Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago.

In April 2010, a new species of hominid, *Australopithecus sediba,* estimated to be two million years old, was discovered at the Cradle of Humankind.

Although other sites in south and east Africa have similar remains, this one has produced over 950 hominid fossil specimens.

The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or Iharu oms.

In September 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical memorandum of agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Section 24G of the Nema, 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site.

According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.

Habitat- and wildlife-management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary land owner in conservation. Land owners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

By 2011, about 115 000 wetlands, covering over 4 million ha comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area, had been mapped in South Africa.

They are part of the natural infrastructure for gathering, managing and delivering water for human use.

Many wetlands are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/ facilities.

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs and fens to midland marshes, swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of stream bank wetlands.

South Africa became a contracting party to the Ramsar Convention in 1975. The country's Ramsar sites include the following:

- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Blesbokspruit
- Barberspan
- Seekoeivlei
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Kosi Bay
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland

National Geographic has named South Africa's Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden one of the world's best picnic spots.

Kirstenbosch, which was established in 1913 to conserve and showcase the diverse flora of southern Africa, is widely celebrated as one of the great botanical gardens of the world. Picnicking is a favourite local pastime and the tranquillity and beauty of Kirstenbosch makes it one of the most scenic places to relax on the lawns and enjoy a truly South African spread.

- Wilderness lakes
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Langebaan
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Prince Edward Islands
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve.

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

The Directorate: Biodiversity Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme. The programme ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

Working for Wetlands

Working for Wetlands is a government initiative to preserve the country's wetlands. It was launched in 2001, and since then a number of wetlands have been rehabilitated. The damage to wetlands currently done can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng. The programme is implemented by Sanbi on behalf of the departments of environmental affairs; agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and water affairs. It forms part of government's EPWP, which seeks to draw unemployed people into the productive sector of the economy.

Government has pledged more than R75 million. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention to poverty-stricken areas being of major concern. South Africa is seen as a leader in wetlands rehabilitation.

Different wetland types supply different ecosystem services, including flood attenuation, provision of clean water and carbon storage.

Sometimes referred to as a marsh, swamp, bog or vlei, a wetland supports a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supplies food, grazing, building and craft material to people.

In 2011/12, the Working for Wetlands Programme rehabilitated 427 wetlands and created some 10 000 short-term work opportunities for people from vulnerable and marginalised communities.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) in Pretoria is the largest zoo in South Africa and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it annually.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa, and has over 7 000 individual animal specimens representing over 600 species.

The species are managed across four sites stretching into the provinces of Gauteng, Limpopo and North West. About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquaria and the African Zoo Association, the NZG participates in several endangered species-management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species. (See Chapter 19: *Science and technology*.)

The 85-ha zoo in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It is committed to playing an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes such as:

- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust is a major partner.

> Cape Town's Table Mountain National Park is home to the world's only jumping cockroach, which was named one of the top 10 species discoveries of the year by an international panel of experts in May 2011. *Saltoblattella montistabularis* is just 1 cm long, with powerful hind legs and bulging eyes.
>
> Table Mountain draws more than four million tourist visits every year, and the Silvermine area where the cockroach was found, is a 10-minute drive from central Cape Town.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the zoo's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and the zoo's own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, which is extinct in the wild, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhino, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre, situated near Pretoria, is best known for its highly successful captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species. The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation of coat patterns and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs. It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

In July 2011, the Addo Elephant National Park celebrated 80 years of conservation and tourism.

First proclaimed in July 1931 to save the last remaining elephants in the area, the park has, in the last decade, grown to 180 000 ha, making it the third-largest national park in the country. The conservation landmarks in the park are the:

- introduction of lions in 2003
- proclamation of a marine protected area around Bird Island in 2005
- amalgamation of the main game area and Colchester areas of the park in 2010.

The establishment of the Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust in 2005 and a profit-sharing agreement ensure that communities receive tangible benefits from the park.

In November 2011, Cape Town's Table Mountain was provisionally named a New 7 Wonder of Nature following a three-year global race to choose the world's seven most wonderful natural sites.

The Swiss-based New7Wonders Foundation announced the initial results of the competition in Zurich, Switzerland. Hundreds of millions of votes were cast worldwide via mobile and Internet platforms.

The seven provisional winners are: the Amazon in South America; Halong Bay in Vietnam; Iguazu Falls in Argentina; Jeju Island in South Korea; Komodo in Indonesia; Puerto Princesa Underground River in the Philippines; and Table Mountain.

Table Mountain forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, one of few conservation areas in the world that is entirely surrounded by a city.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Mpumalanga was initially established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins, and white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild-dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbill (in cooperation with the NZG in Pretoria), bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquariums

There are well-known aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish. It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks of 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display

The National Zoological Gardens' Manager of Research and Scientific Services, Professor Antoinette Kotze, received the prestigious 2011 Conservation Award of the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria in recognition of her outstanding and significant contributions to the conservation of African species.

Under her leadership, a five-year research project revealed not only that African cheetahs from various regions were distinct from one another, but the Asiatic cheetah found in Iran was a distinct subspecies from the African variety – a finding that has profound implications for global cheetah conservation management.

sharks and stingrays. The East London Aquarium turned 80 years in 2011, making it South Africa's oldest aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium, situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, over 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet 'n Wild World.

Sea World incorporates a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium (the largest dolphinarium in Africa).

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water-monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Conservation challenges and initiatives

South Africa faces many of the problems experienced by developing countries where rapid industrialisation, population growth and urbanisation threaten the quality of the environment. The Department of Environmental Affairs is reforming environmental law to introduce reform in biodiversity conservation, pollution, waste management and environmental planning.

Environmental impact management

South Africa's environmental impact assessment (EIA) regulations came into effect in August 2010, signalling the start of the official implementation of a new regime aimed at improving the efficiency and effectiveness of EIA.

The 2010 EIA regulations:

- seek to streamline the EIA process
- introduce an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introduce a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa was launched in April 2011. This initiative aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs in South Africa

Red data books (RDBs) are lists of threatened plants and animals specific to a certain region. They are a vital source of information in guiding conservation decisions. South Africa has produced five RDBs dealing with each of the following: birds, land mammals, fish (fresh water and estuarine only), reptiles and amphibians, and butterflies.

- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The Department of Environmental Affairs has put in place a new and improved EIA and management regime. In addition, the department is moving towards alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

There is a concerted effort by the department to move towards an integrated permitting system. The department is already fully integrating waste and EIA permitting processes.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The National EIAMS was launched in February 2010. At the 10 Years of EIA in South Africa Conference in 2008, it was agreed that the system giving effect to the objectives of Integrated Environmental Management, as indicated in Section 23 of Nema, 1998, was inadequate. It was further agreed that an EIAMS should be formulated for South Africa. A desired future was sketched and agreement reached that the strategy should be developed and implemented to map the road to achieving such a system.

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments in the next five years, where:

- the inefficiencies and ineffectiveness of the system will be corrected and optimised
- regulated EIA is used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within a strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs developers and the community are equally committed to making it work.

By June 2011, 11 subtheme reports had been compiled to provide input into the strategy and would be made available for public comments.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa aims to minimise the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. This requires that drivers and riders gain competence through appropriate training, off-road guides be qualified and registered and trails and tracks meet specified criteria. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes. The compilation of draft standards to facilitate the roll-out of this strategy was underway in 2011.

In terms of managing off-road activities in the coastal zones, the successful implementation of the 4x4 regulations that provide for the controlled use of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has shown that banning off-road vehicles has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again.

According to conservationists from Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife, the number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

Oceans cover three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of protecting it.

The Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008), came into operation in December 2009. This significant milestone represents the country's first legislative instrument towards a holistic and integrated approach to the conservation and management of the South African coastline.

The purpose of the Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 is to:

- provide a legal and administrative framework that will promote cooperative, coordinated and integrated coastal development
- preserve, protect and enhance the status of the coastal environment as a heritage that belongs to all

South Africa's third Butterfly Census Week took place from 23 April to 1 May 2011, as part of the Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment Project. It is hoped that this will become a regular biannual event to collect important information, which can be used to monitor the country's butterfly population. This will help to understand the impact of land use and climate change and monitor ecosystem health.

- ensure coastal resources are managed in the interest of the whole community
- ensure there is equitable access to the opportunities and benefits to be derived from the coast give effect to certain of South Africa's international legal obligations.

This Act declares the seashore, coastal waters (including estuaries) and South Africa's territorial seas to be coastal public property. It therefore also requires the State to act as the trustee of coastal public property.

There is recognition of the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department will focus its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritise developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

In 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs hosted its first National Coastal Storm Surge Workshop that brought together all interested parties to share knowledge and best practices in coping with natural disasters linked to the marine environment and enhance preparedness for disasters.

In February 2011, the Deputy Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Rejoice Mabudafhasi, launched the Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which will provide information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park.

The first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, it will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System.

In September 2011, the R11,5-million Working for the Coast: Umthamvuna to Umkomaas Project was launched, creating 112 jobs. The project was part of International Coastal Clean-Up Day (ICCD). It aims to create awareness about the importance of conserving oceans for sustainable development that contributes to economic growth and development, and for recreational purposes.

The theme for the 2011 ICCD was *Trash-Free Seas* and it was one of the country's build-up activities towards the 17th Conference of the Parties to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change and the seventh Session of the Conference of the Parties serving as the Meeting of the Parties to the Kyoto Protocol, held in Durban towards the end of 2011.

The Department of Environmental Affairs also reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters. The ultimate intention is to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Between 2011 and 2012, the department deployed a range of new equipment on and around the coast of South Africa, covering the coastline, shelf waters, the deeper continental slope environment, very deep offshore regions and coastal weather systems.

National Policy for Seals and Seabirds

The National Policy for Seals and Seabirds in South Africa and the National Plan of Action for Seabirds aim to reduce the incidental catch of seabirds during longline fishing.

The plan sets out the required mitigation measures to reduce the mortality of seabirds to below an interim target level of 0,05 birds/thousand hooks by South Africa's longline fisheries for hake, tuna, swordfish, Patagonian toothfish and sharks.

South Africa ratified the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP) in November 2003. It is a multilateral agreement that seeks to conserve albatrosses and petrels by coordinating international activity to mitigate known threats to albatross and petrel populations. South Africa played a key role in negotiating the ACAP, and is home to many important populations of these seabirds, including those on the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward Islands.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay MPA, Western Cape
- Bird Island MPA, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop MPA, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe MPA, Eastern Cape
- Goukamma MPA, Western Cape
- False Bay MPA, Western Cape
- Hluleka MPA, Eastern Cape

- Robberg MPA, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay MPA, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai MPA, Western Cape
- Table Mountain MPA, Western Cape
- Trafalgar MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma MPA, Western Cape
- iSimangaliso MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island MPA, Western Cape
- Pondoland MPA, Eastern Cape.

In September 2011, the Amathole MPA was announced. It is an important addition to South Africa's network of MPAs. It comprises three separate marine areas, namely the Gxulu, Gonubie and Kei areas. It will provide formal and long-term protection to the inshore marine habitat and biodiversity of the Eastern Cape. The coastline of these areas substantially coincides with terrestrial nature reserves managed by the Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, which will be the management agency for the MPA.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising the spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of the marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the Department of Environmental Affairs will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

> In March 2011, the Marion Island Research Base was officially handed over to the Department of Environmental Affairs. South Africa uses the base to carry out essential weather observations and various national and international scientific research programmes in the fields of oceanography, biology, geology, entomology, ornithology, botany and, from time to time, physics. Marion Island is regarded as one of the most important weather observation stations globally and used as a natural laboratory for a number of national and international research projects.

Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme (SCLP)

The SCLP seeks alternative livelihood options for communities along the South African coast to minimise pressure on marine resources.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers (FCOs) and 100 honorary FCOs, after the implementation of the Honorary FCO Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental-protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the *Lillian Ngoyi*, *Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge* and *Sarah Baartman.* They patrol up to the 200-nautical-mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ, as well as around the Prince Edward Islands. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) coastal states.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that it can monitor their movements. Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. South Africa, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique and Tanzania have signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU) that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

International cooperation

South Africa is a signatory to a range of multilateral agreements related to marine resources and protecting the marine environment. These include the London Convention on Dumping at Sea; the Marine Pollution Convention; the Antarctic Treaty; the Abidjan Convention for Cooperation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Regions and Related Protocols; and the Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the East African Region and Related Protocols.

The sustainable use of the oceans is governed by the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea. South Africa is also a member of several international organisations pursuing the sustainable management of the marine environment, such as the International Marine Organisation and the International Seabed Authority.

Waste management

The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed national waste legislation that adopts the waste-management hierarchy, which focuses on waste avoidance, reducing, reusing and recycling while the recovery of material, energy and disposal should be considered as the last option.

In November 2011, Cabinet approved the National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) for implementation. The NWMS has eight key goals, namely:

- promoting waste minimisation, re-use, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting for and financial management of waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the Waste Act, 2008.

An action plan that sets out how to meet the goals and targets is part of the strategy, and the actions include roles and responsibilities for different spheres of government, industry and civil society.

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste, including being a party to multilateral environment agreements on chemicals and waste.

In an effort to align fragmented legislation, the department established the National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination. In 2011, it was in the process of finalising the National Industrial Participation of the Stockholm Convention.

In February 2011, the National Domestic Waste Collection Standards came into effect. These standards, published under the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008, aim to provide a uniform framework within which domestic waste should be collected in South Africa.

The standards aim to guide municipalities on how to provide acceptable, affordable and sustainable waste-collection services.

The standards cover the levels of service, separation at source (between recyclable and non-recyclable material), collection vehicles, receptacles, collection of waste at communal collection points and the frequency of collection.

Non-recyclable material such as perishable food waste must be collected at least weekly and recyclable material such as paper, plastic and glass must be collected once every two weeks. Municipalities have a choice to provide different types of bins, taking into consideration the types of vehicles they use. However, bins must be rigid and durable to prevent spillage and leakage.

The standards seek to build on what has already been achieved while emphasising the need to separate recyclable and non-recyclable domestic waste and the protection of human health and the environment.

The department is helping municipalities develop integrated waste management plans. These will be incorporated into integrated development planning to ensure the provision of waste services is resourced properly. In 2011/12, the department trained 450 landfill site managers.

By August 2011, government's Food for Waste Programme had created more than 3 000 job opportunities for poor and vulnerable communities.

The programme is aimed at assisting municipalities to provide waste-collection services where municipalities are unable to provide such a service, while simultaneously creating job opportunities and fighting hunger and poverty, promoting a clean environment and encouraging recycling, waste reduction and reuse.

In 2011, the programme was rolled out in 30 municipalities countrywide.

The department supported municipalities to ensure that refuse-collection services were provided adequately to all citizens.

The Department of Environmental Affairs recognises that medical waste needs a joint programme of action involving the Department of Health and other sector stakeholders. Environmental management inspectors – the Green Scorpions – were expected to deal with non-compliance.

Government established a legal framework to manage radioactive waste as set out in the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), which came into effect in February 2000. The Radioactive Waste Management Policy and Strategy for South Africa was approved in 2005. Following the approval of the policy, the National Committee on Radioactive Waste Management was established in 2006. It oversees the implementation of the policy and strategy. The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008), was promulgated in January 2009.

Air-quality management and climate change

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa. The legislation governing air-quality management in South Africa is the AQA, 2004, which came into full effect in April 2010. In addition, the Department of Environmental Affairs published the 2007 National Framework for Air-Quality Management in South Africa. It is the implementation manual of the AQA, 2004 and came into effect in September 2007.

Smoke from domestic fires in residential settlements is a significant source of pollution, particularly in dense, low-income communities. This problem escalates in winter when more coal fires are lit for space heating.

In June 2011, the department launched the Basa Njengo Magogo Campaign (meaning "make fire like granny"). The campaign's objectives are to:

- make people aware of cleaner fire-making methods
- provide practical training for affected communities
- encourage communities to implement the methods in their own homes when making coal fires
- address the level of air pollution in communities that use coal fires for cooking and space heating
- make communities aware of the effects of these fuels' pollution on their health and well-being.

The South African Air-Quality Information System (Saaqis) contains the latest updated data of a location and can give the status of air quality or pollution according to the chosen day and time when checked on the website (*www.saaqis.org.za*).

A number of air-quality monitoring stations report to Saaqis. Most of them belong to Mpumalanga, Ethekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane.

In October 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs hosted the sixth Annual Air-Quality Governance Lekgotla in East London, in the Eastern Cape, under the theme *Local Authorities are Taking the Lead!* This theme was chosen to encourage air-quality management officials to build momentum around the ongoing implementation of the AQA, 2004. The Air Quality Lekgotla focused on projects implemented by local authorities that will lead to measureable improvements in air quality. Topics included air-quality management regulations, planning, atmospheric emission licensing and information management with the aim of strengthening coordination within the spheres of government and developing capacity where it is required.

The lekgotla was followed by the Multi-Stakeholder Workshop, co-hosted by the National Association for Clean Air (NACA). The workshop was followed by the NACA Annual Conference.

Government and all relevant sectors of society agreed to pursue a required-by-science scenario of the long-term mitigation scenarios (LTMS) study in a bid to curb greenhouse-gas (GHG) emissions.

Based on the South African LTMS, the different options for climate-change reductions have been

> In August 2011, the Department of Environmental Affairs received the Shining World Compassion Award from the Supreme Master Ching Hai International Association in recognition of its efforts to protect seals.
>
> South Africa harvested seals until the late 1980s, but stopped this practice in 1990. A policy decision was taken to only use seals for non-consumptive use and to protect seals against natural and anthropogenic threats.
>
> There has been a 75% increase in the number of breeding colonies in South Africa, from 23 in 1971 to 40 in 2009.

In June 2011, the South African National Parks (SANParks) received 1 000 DNA kits from the Faculty of Veterinary Sciences of the University of Pretoria (UP). The DNA Rhino Sample Kits Project is supported by private-sector companies and the UP's Faculty of Veterinary Science. The primary aim of the project is to support the investigation of poaching incidents through forensic DNA testing.

By mid-2011, there were 22 000 rhinos in South Africa. SANParks had lost 333 rhinos. By June 2011, 122 suspects had been arrested for rhino poaching.

assessed and it is acknowledged that energy efficiency is one of the most cost-effective mitigation options in South Africa. In line with this commitment to the global effort, South Africa announced that it would take nationally appropriate mitigation actions of a 34% deviation below business-as-usual emission growth trajectory by 2020, and 42% by 2025.

In October 2011, South Africa launched the National Climate Change Response Policy. The policy gives the country a clear roadmap for responding to the urgency of climate change as it pushes towards a green economy.

Urban environmental management

The Urban Environmental Management Programme (UEMP) is a partnership between 11 government institutions from all three spheres of government. The programme aims to alleviate poverty through improved service delivery within the environmental management of urban areas.

The programme began in April 2006 with a five-year budget of DKK220 million, and is a continuation of more than 10 years of environmental collaboration between South Africa and Denmark.

The South African partners are responsible for the implementation and progress of the programme. Each partner proposes activities in its normal business plan, which are then funded through the UEMP.

The UEMP focuses on the following:

- air quality
- environmental health
- sustainable planning
- sustainable energy management
- waste management.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme (UNEP), desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries as 24 million tons (Mt) of topsoil are lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of the total land area of South Africa is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries administers the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), in terms of which various measures are being implemented to prevent or contain soil erosion.

In January 1995, South Africa signed the UNCCD, which was ratified in September 1997. The main objectives of the convention include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The convention aims to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, South Africa and Brazil. The aim is to, among other things, foster scientific and technological cooperation.

The country has introduced legislation such as the Nemba, 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity and fight desertification and land degradation.

As part of the UN international campaign to tackle global environmental deterioration and in particular combat dryland degradation, which covers up to one quarter of the world's land surface, the UN has designated 17 June as the World Day to Combat Desertification (WDCD). The celebration of this day marks the anniversary of the adoption of the UNCCD.

In 2011, the focus was on forests in the world's dryland areas, giving credence to the theme *Forests Keep Drylands Working*. This theme was in line with 2011 being declared the International Year of the Forests by the UN.

In South Africa, WDCD was celebrated as part of June Environment Month, focusing on the theme *Save Tomorrow, Today*.

Recycling

The Department of Environmental Affairs has an MoU with The Glass Recycling Company (TGRC). Between July 2009 and June 2010, over 295 000 tons of glass were recycled. Volumes of glass recycled have grown in excess of 100% in the last four years. The TGRC strives to increase employment opportunities with regard to collection, recycling and re-use of glass containers.

Collect-a-Can has been collecting used beverage cans for almost 20 years. It is a recovery as opposed to a profit-driven company and has proven that it is self-sustainable by managing its operations and cost structures at optimum levels.

International cooperation

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The convention is a global commitment to take collective responsibility for climate change, and is a mandate for action to address the problem.

The convention was signed at the Rio Earth Summit in 1992 by heads of state and other senior representatives from 154 countries (and the European community), and came into effect on 21 March 1994. Since mid-1998, some 175 states have ratified or acceded to the convention.

The objective of the convention is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will not have an adverse effect on the climate.

The convention aims to control this level over a period of time to:

- allow ecosystems to adapt naturally to climate change
- ensure that food production is not threatened
- enable economic development to proceed sustainably.

All countries that have ratified the convention are required to:

- develop, update and publish national inventories of anthropogenic emissions by sources, and removal of GHG (the GHG excludes those listed in the Montreal Protocol) by sinks
- formulate, implement and update national and regional programmes containing measures to mitigate climate change
- promote and cooperate in developing and transferring technology that controls, reduces or prevents anthropogenic emissions of GHG
- promote sustainable management, conservation and enhancement of GHG sinks and reservoirs
- cooperate in preparing for the adaptation to the impact of climate change
- take climate-change considerations into account where feasible, in relevant social, economic and environmental policies and actions, to minimise the adverse effects of climate change on the economy, on public health and on the quality of the environment
- promote and cooperate in the timeous and transparent exchange of information, including scientific, technological, socio-economic and legal information and research
- promote and cooperate in education, training and public awareness
- report to the Conference of the Parties (COP).

In April 2011, the Minister of the National Planning Commission in The Presidency, Mr Trevor Manuel, was appointed to the transitional committee responsible for the design of the Green Climate Fund, which would be established under

> Over the next decade, a R5-billion environmentally friendly "city" is to be built next to Durban's King Shaka International Airport. Dube City, Africa's first urban green precinct, will consist of hotels as well as a business, retail, trade and entertainment hub, and will offset the high carbon footprint created by the airport. It is part of the Dube TradePort.
>
> The following will make Dube TradePort a green precinct:
>
> - harvested rainwater will be used in toilets and for irrigation and will reduce the amount of water used in buildings
> - cyclist facilities will be provided for building tenants and visitors
> - the use of volatile organic compounds and formaldehyde will be reduced
> - preferential parking will be allocated to fuel-efficient vehicles such as those that are part of a car pool and hybrid vehicles
> - the head office has been registered with the Green Building Council of South Africa
> - the entire green initiative aims to contribute to a productive working environment and reduce the likelihood of sick building syndrome
> - natural light will be used to its maximum.

> In October 2011, the Portfolio Committee on Water and Environmental Affairs held public hearings on the *National Climate Change Response Green Paper 2010*. The substantive insights offered at these hearings gave departmental officials an opportunity to incorporate substantial changes to the Green Paper and formulate an informed and improved White Paper.

South Africa's first green city development will be constructed in Pretoria alongside the N1 freeway, adjoining the Menlyn Park business and retail node. The project will be developed over the next eight to 10 years, at a cost of around R6 billion.

This development will be one of the world's 18 green cities that form part of the Clinton Foundation's Clinton Climate Initiative (CCI). The CCI works with governments and businesses across the globe and focuses largely on raising urban energy efficiency.

the UNFCCC as agreed at the 16th Conference of the Parties in Cancun in 2010.

The minister was one of 40 international representatives on the committee, which had its first meeting in Mexico City in April 2011.

The transitional committee members will be responsible for designing the Green Climate Fund – a new institution, which will manage long-term finance mobilised to enable developing countries to address climate change.

The Green Climate Fund was launched in the broad context of long-term financial support agreed at Cancun, where industrialised countries committed to a goal of mobilising $100 billion a year by 2020. These funds will be raised from a mix of public and private sources and directly linked mitigation actions, and be transparent on implementation.

The Green Climate Fund was one of a number of new institutions which Cancun agreed to launch to speed up international action. Others included a technology mechanism to spur the deployment of clean technologies, and an adaptation framework to boost international cooperation in assisting developing countries to protect themselves against the impacts of climate change.

In May 2011, a high-level meeting on climate change was held, which included ministers from Brazil, India, China and South Africa (BASIC), aimed at devising strategies ahead of the COP17 held in Durban.

It was the second BASIC ministerial meeting to take place since the COP16 in Cancun, Mexico, and also followed on similar talks held in New Delhi early in 2011.

In December 2011, South Africa hosted COP17, which gave Africa an opportunity to direct attention to the impact of climate change on the continent and the developing world. Up to 194 participants from different countries formed part of COP17.

COP 17 concluded with the Durban Package, aimed at rolling back GHG emissions and helping poorer countries cope with the impact of changing weather systems.

Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The CSD was created in 1992 to monitor and report on implementation of the Earth Summit agreements at local, national, regional and international levels. Its mandate was reaffirmed by the 2002 WSSD.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species

Cites, signed by 149 countries, including South Africa, controls and in some cases prohibits trade in threatened species. Cites was established in 1975 to prevent international trade from threatening species with extinction.

Montreal Protocol

According to the UNEP, global emissions need to be cut by between 48% and 72% between 2020 and 2050 to create a 50/50 chance of meeting the target of keeping global temperature increases below 2°C. The Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer (a protocol to the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer) is an international treaty designed to protect the ozone layer by phasing out the production of a number of substances believed to be responsible for ozone depletion. It is believed that if the international agreement is adhered to, the ozone layer will recover by 2050.

South Africa became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990. The country has phased out chlorofluorocarbons, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride – making it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, with the assistance of the then Department of Agriculture, embarked on a national project to establish methyl bromide (MBR) consumption trends, and a database of suitable, feasible and economically viable alternatives to MBR.

This formed the basis for an intensive research/evaluation project to phase out, in the short term, 20% of MBR usage, mainly in the agricultural sector. From January 2005, all developing countries were to have reduced their respective MBR consumption by 20%, according to the Montreal Protocol phase-out timetable, and completely phase out the use of MBR by 2015.

The department has also begun a programme to phase out the consumption of hydro-chlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), which will commence in January 2013. The Phase-Out Management Plan had been developed to define specific activities necessary to achieve the control measures envisaged in 2013 and 2015.

Both the HCFCs and MBR are to be declared, by the Minister, as national priority air pollutants in terms of Section 29(1) of the AQA, 2004.

Private-sector involvement

Numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. There are more than 400 organisations in the country, concentrating on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, as well as more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations.

Among these are:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Conservation Society of South Africa
- WWF-SA.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
BuaNews
Business Report
Department of Environmental Affairs
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011, published by National Treasury
Mail & Guardian
National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
South African National Biodiversity Institute
The Times

www.bcb.uuc.ac.za
www.bwi.co.za
www.capeaction.org.za
www.cbd.int
www.cites.org
www.collectacan.co.za
www.csir.co.za
www.dwaf.gov.za
www.ekapa.ioisa.org.za
www.environment.gov.za
www.fin24.com
www.gov.za
www.jhbzoo.org.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.nzg.ac.za
www.peaceparks.org
www.plantzafrica.com
www.sacanegrowers.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sahistory.org.sa
www.sanbi.org
www.skep.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.ucmp.berkeley.edu
www.wwf.org.za
http://eprints.ru.ac.za
http://en.wikipedia.org

Suggested reading

Astronomical Society of Southern Africa. *2011. 2012 Sky Guide Africa South: Astronomical Handbook for Southern Africa.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Bromilow, C. 2010. *Problem Plants and Alien Weeds of South Africa.* Pretoria: Briza.
Compion, S. 2010. *Insider's Guide: Top Wildlife Photography Spots in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Emmett, M. 2010. *Game Ranger in Your Backpack: All-In-One Interpretative Guide to the Lowveld.* Pretoria: Briza.
Environmental Compliance and Enforcement in South Africa: Legal Perspectives. 2009. Cape Town: Juta.
Environmental Management in South Africa. 2009. Cape Town: Juta.
The Geographical Variation of Southern African Birds. 2011. John Voelcker Bird Book Fund.
Newman, K. 2011. *Newman's Birds by Colour.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Picker, M and Griffiths, C. 2011. *Alien and Invasive Animals: A South African Perspective.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Schutze, H. 2010. *Field Guide to the Mammals of the Kruger National Park.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
South Africa. 2009. *National Environmental Management Act and Regulations 107 of 1998; Environment Conservation Act and Regulations 73 of 1989.* Edited by Juta's Statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta.
South African Environmental Law through the Cases. 2009. Durban LexisNexis.
Stoffberg, H, Hindes, C and Mulder, L (eds). 2012. *South African Landscape Architecture: a Compendium, and South African Landscape Architecture: A Reader.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Towards a Low Carbon City: Focus on Durban. 2011. Pretoria: Academy of Science of South Africa.
Whitehead, M. 2010. *Passes and Poorts: Getaway's Top 30 Scenic Mountain Routes in the Western Cape.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Finance

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

The South African economy has averaged about 3% growth a year since 2009. Against the background of the slowdown in the global economy, real gross domestic product (GDP) growth is expected to fall to about 2,7% in 2012.

In the Budget Speech in February 2012, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced that government expected a recovery to 3,6% and 4,2% growth in 2013 and 2014. The deficit on the current account of the balance of payments is expected to widen from 3,3% in 2011 to 4,4% GDP in 2014.

National Treasury aims to promote economic development, good governance, social progress and rising living standards through accountable, economic, efficient, equitable and sustainable management of South Africa's public finances.

The department endeavours to advance economic growth, Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE), progressive realisation of human rights and the elimination of poverty. It is responsible for preparing a sound and sustainable national budget and equitable division of resources among the three spheres of government. It strives to raise fiscal resources equitably and efficiently and manage government's financial assets and liabilities, promoting transparency and effective financial management.

The Constitution stipulates a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions.

It has also created an independent Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA) and an independent central bank, the South African Reserve Bank (SARB), and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Financial expenditure

National Treasury plays a pivotal role in managing government expenditure.

It determines financial-management norms and standards, and sets reporting policy that guides the AGSA's performance. It also assists Parliament, through the Standing Committee on Public Accounts, with its recommendations and the formulation of corrective actions. National Treasury closely monitors the performance of national departments and is obliged to report any deviations to the AGSA.

The department maintains transparent and fair bidding processes, as well as accounting, logistic and personnel systems. It sets and maintains standards and norms for treasury and logistics, acts as a banker for national departments and oversees logistical control of stocks and assets.

National Treasury draws its mandate from Chapter Two of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), based on Chapter 13 of the Constitution. It is mandated to:

- coordinate macroeconomic policy
- promote government's fiscal policy framework
- manage the budget preparation process
- coordinate intergovernmental financial relations
- facilitate the Division of Revenue Act, 2009 (Act 12 of 2009), which provides for equitable distribution of nationally raised revenue between national, provincial and local government
- monitor the implementation of provincial budgets
- create an enabling regulatory environment for the financial sector
- defend the integrity of the financial system
- ensure efficient and effective revenue collection
- oversee the programmes of development finance institutions (DFIs).

Fiscal policy framework

Government's fiscal policy seeks to support structural reform of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and equitable distribution of income.

Fiscal policy seeks to:

- present a fuller picture of government finances and the effects of policy decisions
- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements
- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

Owing to the changed economic outlook in 2008/09, the fiscal stance has become more expansionary. This enables government to con-

South Africa has improved its ranking and remains the highest-ranked African country in sub-Saharan Africa on the World Economic Forum's global competitiveness scale, released in September 2011.

The country moved up to number 50 on the list, and is also the second-highest ranked of the BRICS countries (Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa).

South Africa especially benefited from its economy – it ranked 25th in market size.

It also ranked fourth in financial market development, which was "particularly impressive" and showed "high confidence in South Africa's financial markets at a time when trust is returning only slowly in many other parts of the world," according to the *Global Competitiveness Report 2011 – 2012.*

tinue financing its priorities and support aggregate demand during the cyclical decline in revenue, supporting sustainable economic growth and social development.

Lower revenue and higher expenditure have resulted in an increase in the budget deficit, which will need to be financed. To ensure that a growing debt burden will not crowd out spending on developmental priorities, government will stabilise growth in interest costs through a careful and controlled reduction of the deficit.

The deficit will therefore be reduced to a sustainable level in a countercyclical manner.

Growth in spending in the current context will stimulate economic growth and maintain spending on public services at a time when businesses and households require fiscal support the most.

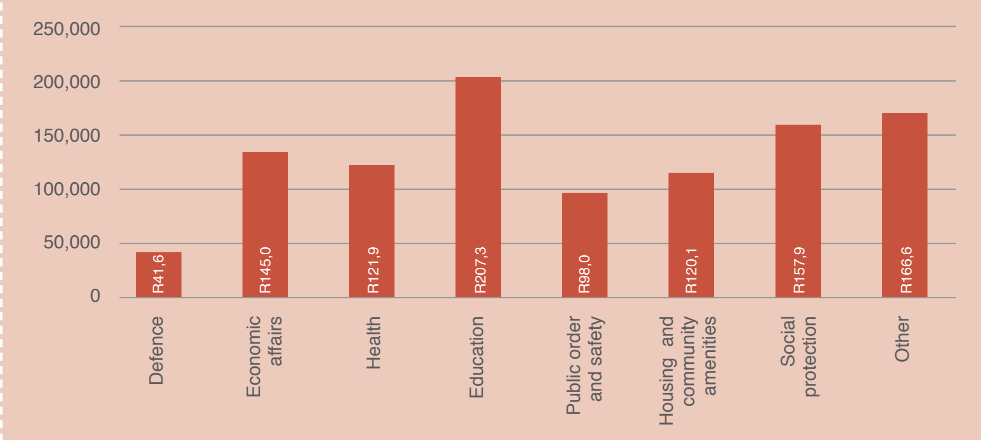
Economy and fiscal stance

Minister Gordhan presented the 2011/12 Budget in February 2011. It outlined several aspects of government's New Growth Path for South Africa:

- a concerted effort to reduce unemployment among young people
- support for labour-intensive industries through industrial policy interventions, skills development, public-employment programmes and a rural development strategy
- sustaining high levels of public and private investment and raising the savings level
- improving the performance and effectiveness of the State, especially the provision of quality education and training at all levels
- reforms to increase inclusion and participation in the labour market, alongside efforts to improve competition in product markets
- keeping inflation low, striving for a stable and competitive exchange rate and providing a buffer against global volatility
- raising productivity and competitiveness, opening up the economy to investment and trade opportunities that can boost exports.

The focus of the 2012/13 Budget, announced in February 2012, was on government's infrastructure development programme. It aims to grow the economy, create jobs and improve people's lives through massive investment in infrastructure. The State has chosen five major programmes for infrastructure development:

Government expenditure (R' billions)



Source: National Treasury, *People's Guide to the Budget, 2012*

- Geographically strategic projects such as:
  - The development and integration of rail, road and water infrastructure around the Waterberg and Steelpoort areas in Limpopo to unlock the enormous mineral belt of coal, platinum, palladium, chrome and other minerals. Rail transport in Mpumalanga will be expanded, connecting coalfields to power stations. Parts of the North West will also benefit from the greater focus on infrastructure.
  - Improving the movement of goods and economic integration through a Durban-Free State-Gauteng logistics and industrial corridor. Transnet has developed the Market Demand Strategy, which entails an investment over the next seven years of R300 billion in capital projects. There are various improvements to the Durban-Gauteng Rail Corridor and the phased development of a new 16-million ton a year manganese export channel through the Port of Ngqura in Nelson Mandela Bay.
  - The development of a major new South Eastern node that will improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape.
  - Expansion of water, roads, rail and electricity infrastructure in the North West. Ten priority roads will be upgraded.
  - Expansion of the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in Northern Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape, which will create large numbers of jobs and industrial activity in both provinces.
- Critical social infrastructure projects that will lay the basis for the National Health Insurance (NHI) system, such as the refurbishment of hospitals and nurses' homes.
- Building new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape. Some R300 million has been allocated for the preparatory work towards these facilities.
- South Africa's bid to host the Square Kilometre Array radio telescope in partnership with eight other African countries.
- The North-South Road and Rail Corridor, which South Africa champions and which is part of the African Union's New Partnership for Africa's Development Presidential Infrastructure Championing initiative.

Macroeconomic strategy

The South African economy has demonstrated resilience in this environment. While global developments are likely to hold back higher growth over the short term, the domestic outlook remains positive. GDP growth is expected to slow from 3,1% in 2011 to 2,7% in 2012. As the world economy strengthens, GDP growth will accelerate to 3,6% in 2013 and 4,2% in 2014, led by robust household consumption, and stronger public- and private-sector investment.

Government will focus on capital investment in infrastructure projects and reduce the cost of doing business through targeted interventions, including lowering port charges and broadband costs.

Strengths in the domestic economy will help to sustain growth. Household spending remains robust, private-sector investment is gradually rising and interest rates are low.

There are encouraging signs of employment growth in the formal sector, with a net increase of 365 000 jobs reported over 2011/12.

South Africa's banks are well-capitalised. High levels of corporate saving are expected to enable increased investment spending as global uncertainty eases and business confidence strengthens.

Fiscal and monetary policies remain supportive of growth. Government will continue to monitor and adjust policy to changes in the domestic and global environment, while stabilising public debt at sustainable levels.

To reduce unemployment and poverty on a mass scale, the economy needs more rapid and broad-based growth. This requires policy reforms and actions by business and labour to reduce the cost of doing business, cut red tape, raise productivity, diversify exports, tap new markets for trade and take advantage of opportunities presented by enhanced regional integration.

Over the medium term and beyond, large-scale public-sector infrastructure investments will expand the capacity of the economy to grow more rapidly. Government is also implementing an economic support package to boost productivity, competitiveness, and research and development across the agriculture, mining, manufacturing and technology sectors.

Since the onset of the global financial crisis in 2008, the State has played a more prominent role in the economy. Sustained spending growth through the 2009 recession supported demand and allowed the public sector to serve as a key source of employment. More rapid and sustainable growth and job creation are reliant on increased private-sector activity. Government will play a supportive role over the medium term by providing high-quality, efficient and affordable network infrastructure, and creating a more favourable environment for business expansion and investment.

Revenue trends and tax proposals

The 2012 tax proposals support a sustainable fiscal framework over the medium term, while facilitating economic growth and a more competitive economy. Reforms will improve the fairness of the tax system, ensuring that income from capital is taxed more appropriately.

Measures are proposed to encourage household savings. Financing options for the NHI as part of a strengthened public health system will be explored.

Meeting South Africa's development challenges requires sufficient revenue to fund key expenditure priorities, while ensuring that public debt and debt-service costs are contained, and avoiding overburdening taxpayers. Government is taking steps to improve the efficiency of public expenditure and root out corruption.

The revised estimated tax revenue for 2011/12 was R738,7 billion, R10,1 billion higher than the estimate at the time of the 2011 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement. This increase is mainly the result of higher corporate income-tax collections. The estimated gross tax revenue for the fiscal year 2012/13 is R826,4 billion, a nominal increase of 11,9%.

Audited results show that tax revenue for 2010/11 of R674,2 billion was R75,5 billion or 12,6% higher than actual tax revenue collected in 2009/10. Higher customs duties (36,1% higher than in 2009/10), value-added tax (VAT) (24,1%) and personal income tax (PIT) (10,6%) accounted for this increase.

The revised tax revenue estimate for 2011/12 of R738,7 billion is R64,6 billion or 9,6% higher than in 2010/11. This is the result of strong collections of customs duties (21,1%), corporate income tax (CIT) (14,4%) and PIT (10%).

The main tax proposals for 2012 include:

- personal income tax relief of R9,5 billion
- relief for micro and small businesses
- implementing the dividend withholding tax at 15%
- an increase in effective capital gains tax (CGT) rates
- reforms to the tax treatment of contributions to retirement savings
- further reforms of the tax treatment of medical-scheme contributions
- higher taxes on alcohol and tobacco products.

Spending on public services

Poverty alleviation is at the heart of government's agenda. The social assistance programme is South Africa's most direct means of combating poverty. In 2012/13, R104,9 billion is allocated to social assistance, rising to R122,0 billion in 2014/15. The number of grant recipients will rise from about 15,6 million in 2011/12 to 16,1 million in 2012/13 and is set to rise to 16,8 million in 2014/15.

The Department of Social Development receives an additional R1,4 billion over the next three years, mainly to increase access to Early Childhood Development from 500 000 to 580 000 and to roll out an in-house and community-based childcare and protection programme, Isibindi.

The Isibindi Project will benefit 858 000 children and adolescents, with a focus on rural communities, orphans and child-headed households. About 10 000 youth workers will be employed in this programme.

The health sector is allocated an additional R2,8 billion over the next three years. Of this:

- The NHI Grant will be introduced in 2012/13, totalling R1 billion over the next three years. The grant will fund pilot projects for NHI and the increase in primary health visits.
- R450 million has been provided for the upgrading of approximately 30 nursing colleges.
- A further R426 million is allocated for the revitalisation of hospital infrastructure.

An additional R968 million is made available to accommodate provision of antiretroviral (ARV)

In March 2011, South Africa's budgeting system was rated the most transparent in the world following the results of the International Budget Partnership's *Open Budget Survey 2010.*

The study evaluates whether central governments give the public access to budget information and opportunities to participate in the budget process. The survey involved 94 countries and takes place every two years.

treatment at the CD4 threshold of 350. This will increase the number of ARV recipients from 1,5 million in 2011 to about three million by 2014/15.

Government spends more on education than any other non-interest item in the country's budget.

The 2012 Budget supports the goal of improving the quality of education at all levels, and reducing the skills shortages in the economy.

Over the next three years:

- the National Student Financial Aid Scheme receives R17,1 billion for loans and bursaries to improve poor students' access to universities and colleges
- a further R850 million is allocated to improve university infrastructure, including student accommodation.

Government plans to raise university enrolments to 962 000 by 2014/15 from 886 000 in 2011/12.

Enrolments in Further Education and Training colleges are expected to increase to 247 000 in 2014/15 from 211 000 in 2011/12. Adult education and training enrolments are expected to increase to 300 000 in 2014/15 from 215 000 in 2011/12.

To improve Literacy and Numeracy, an additional R235 million is allocated to the Department of Basic Education to extend assessments to Grade Nine and to strengthen the assessments at grades three and six. Learner and teacher workbooks in Literacy and Numeracy will be provided to all Grade One to Nine learners from 2012.

Other spending plans over the next three years include:

- R9,5 billion for the Economic Competitiveness and Support Package, including R2,3 billion for dedicated special economic zones
- R6,2 billion for job creation
- R3 billion for equalisation of subsidies to no-fee schools and expansion of access to Grade R
- R1 billion for the NHI Pilot Project
- R4 billion for the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa for coaches, as the start of a programme to replace the current fleet
- R1 billion for signalling and depot infrastructure related to this new rail transport programme
- R4,7 billion for the electricity demand-side management grant: Eskom for the installation of solar water geysers
- R1,8 billion for municipal water infrastructure
- R3,9 billion for upgrading informal settlements.

Debt management

South Africa's countercyclical response to the global economic crisis generated a significant national government borrowing requirement, which peaked at 6,8% of GDP in 2009/10. However, sound economic and fiscal policies, deep and liquid domestic capital markets, and the availability of international funding enabled government to finance the 2010/11 budget deficit for less than originally projected.

As a result, debt-service costs for 2010/11 were R4,8 billion lower than expected. Lower debt-service costs create more space to fund investment in economic infrastructure, which creates jobs, and to increase spending on social priorities such as education and health. While the gap between expenditure and revenue is projected to narrow in line with the economic recovery, national government borrowing in 2011 remained substantial at 5,4% of GDP, declining to 4,2% of GDP in 2013/14. Debt-service costs are expected to increase gradually to 2,9% of GDP in 2013/14.

Treasury norms and standards

In terms of Section 216(1)(c) of the Constitution, National Treasury must prescribe measures to ensure both transparency and expenditure control in each sphere of government, by introducing uniform treasury norms and standards.

These aim at deregulating financial controls by granting spending agencies' accounting officers more autonomy in financial decision-making within the ambit of impending financial legislation.

Budget evaluation

National Treasury plays an important role in supporting the economic policy to which government has committed itself. It determines the macrolimit on expenditure, which is then matched with requests from departments, in line with the affordability and sustainability of services.

Based on this limit, all national departments are requested to submit budget proposals annually to National Treasury for the following financial year.

Budget Council

The Budget Council comprises the Minister of Finance and the nine provincial members of the executive councils responsible for finance.

The Budget Forum extends the Budget Council to include representatives of organised local government. These forums ensure cohesion between national policy priorities, the division of nationally raised revenues, and planning and budgeting in provincial and local spheres of government.

The forums also allow the leadership of the three spheres of government to evaluate government's execution of key national programmes and, where necessary, to agree on support initiatives that will ensure the attainment of national goals.

Early Warning System

The Early Warning System was established in 1997. Any likely under- or overexpenditure is brought to the attention of Cabinet, so that the relevant Minister can ensure that appropriate action is taken.

The system assists in monitoring provincial departments' expenditure trends monthly, by having provincial treasuries report to National Treasury in a prescribed format. The information derived from early warning reports is used for advising the Minister of Finance, the Budget Council and Cabinet.

Financial systems

National Treasury is responsible for the development, maintenance and support of financial management systems (Basic Accounting System or Bas, Persal, Logis and Vulindlela) that support:

- payment of government employees' salaries and service-providers
- financial reporting and management for government departments.

In 2005, Cabinet approved the development of the Integrated Financial Management System (IFMS). Two modules of the IFMS were put into use during 2010/11:

- the Asset Management Module was implemented at National Treasury and four Limpopo provincial departments
- the Human Resource Management Module was implemented in the Department of Public Service and Administration.

It was envisaged that the Procurement Management Module would be implemented during 2011/12 at National Treasury and the Department of Defence.

Other modules of the IFMS were envisaged to be completed by the end of 2011/12.

Supply Chain Management (SCM)

SCM is an integral part of financial management. The SCM Framework, issued in terms of Section 76 of the PFMA, 1999, replaced outdated procurement and provisioning systems in government.

The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 2000 (Act 5 of 2000), and its related regulations are being aligned with the aims and strategies of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003).

A phased approach is envisaged. The first phase will be alignment through the amendment of the current preferential procurement regulations as an interim measure.

The second phase will be the comprehensive review of primary procurement, namely the PPPFA, 1999. The current Act prescribes that tenders must be evaluated on a preference point system where 80 or 90 points are allocated for the price of the lowest acceptable tenderer, and a maximum of 10 or 20 points are allocated for ownership by historically disadvantaged individuals and for promoting specified Reconstruction and Development Programme goals. Cabinet has approved for promulgation, subject to legal refinement, the draft revised preferential procurement regulations, aligning the preferential procurement policy with the aims of the BBBEE Act, 2003.

Once promulgated, tenders will be evaluated in terms of the generic BEE Scorecard and where sectoral charters exist, evaluation will be done in terms of them. It is also proposed that local content be considered as an important element of the evaluation criteria.

During the Budget Speech in February 2012, Minister Gordhan announced that National Treasury would take the following steps to improve government's procurement capability:

- government will strengthen fragmentation in the system and strengthen the national procurement architecture
- National Treasury will appoint a chief procurement officer who will have overall responsibility for monitoring procurement across government
- it will review the competencies and capabilities required to perform the procurement function and there will be strict vetting of all the procurement officers to be appointed
- National Treasury plans to develop a national price reference system, to detect deviations from acceptable prices
- the tax clearance system will be strengthened to ensure that those who have defrauded the State cannot do business with the State

- steps will also be taken to improve the ability of departments to set bid specifications.

Legislation
Public Finance Management Act, 1999

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives. To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the PFMA, 1999 since 1 April 2000.

The Act changed the approach to the way in which public funds are managed by introducing a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.

Since its introduction, the PFMA, 1999 has contributed towards measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- the submission by departments of monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

While it is recognised that the PFMA, 1999 has contributed positively towards the enhancement of public-sector financial management, it has been acknowledged that there should be an increased emphasis on capacity-building to further improve the quality of financial management. The Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy has, in association with National Treasury, developed the Financial Management Training Strategy for the roll-out of training programmes to improve the skills of public-sector finance practitioners.

Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)

The Act applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.

The objective of the Act is to secure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities by establishing norms, standards and other requirements for:

- ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in their fiscal and financial affairs
- managing their revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, and handling their financial dealings
- budgetary and financial-planning processes and coordinating processes for borrowing by organs of state
- handling financial problems and other financial matters.

Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007)

The Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 came into effect on 1 August 2008.

The Act aims to:

- promote and advance the social and economic welfare of all South Africans by improving access to banking services
- promote the development of sustainable and responsible cooperative banks
- establish an appropriate regulatory framework for cooperative banks that protects members of cooperative banks.

The Act provides for the establishment of the Cooperative Banks Development Agency as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance.

Financial institutions
Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)

The FIC is a national agency that develops and provides financial intelligence for law-enforce-

A 2011 report by the World Bank, the International Finance Corporation and accounting firm PricewaterhouseCoopers ranked South Africa's tax system as number one among emerging economies.

The system was ranked for its efficiency and for easing the compliance burden on taxpayers. The report found that South Africa took the lead as a result of first-world initiatives taken by the Government, such as e-filing.

ment authorities, the intelligence services and the South African Revenue Service (Sars). The FIC was established by the FIC Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), which came into effect in February 2003. The FIC Act, 2001 is aimed at maintaining the integrity of South Africa's financial and economic system. The FIC reports directly to the Minister of Finance and to Parliament.

The FIC's mandate is to:

- monitor the compliance of designated businesses (accountable institutions) and supervisory bodies regarding their anti-money laundering and terror financing obligations
- receive and analyse transactional data from a range of businesses to identify the proceeds of crime, money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide financial intelligence reports to the law-enforcement authorities, intelligence agencies and Sars as a result of the analysis conducted
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide policy advice to the Minister of Finance
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required by the country in respect of anti-money laundering and combating financing of terrorism (AML/CFT).

The FIC Act, 2001 introduces a regulatory framework of measures that requires that certain categories of business take steps regarding client identification, record-keeping, reporting of information and internal compliance structures.

All businesses have to report various suspicious transactions to the FIC. The FIC also receives additional financial data from accountable and reporting institutions.

From October 2010, the FIC requires that all accountable and reporting institutions report on cash transactions exceeding R25 000.

In December 2010, amendments to the FIC Act, 2001 were promulgated, which required that all accountable and reporting institutions be registered with the FIC. Furthermore, the Act gave the FIC and supervisory bodies the authority to inspect and impose administrative penalties on non-compliant businesses. The Act also introduced an appeals process and appeals board.

South Africa is a member of the Financial Action Task Force, a body which sets international standards and policy on AML/CFT. It is also an affiliate of the 14-member Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, which aims to help countries to implement the global AML/CFT standards.

The FIC is a member of the Egmont Group, consisting of the financial intelligence units of 126 countries, which aims to facilitate international cooperation, and the sharing of information and expertise among its members.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is an independent, objective, impartial and unbiased constitutional advisory institution. It is a permanent expert commission with a constitutionally defined structure, a set of generic responsibilities and institutional processes.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government revenue sources, and provincial and municipal loans.

Consultation about the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another is also required.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC's clients are public-sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds. The PIC's role is to invest funds on behalf of these clients, based on investment mandates set by each client and approved by the Financial Services Board (FSB), with which it is registered as a financial services provider (FSP).

The PIC is wholly owned by the South African Government, with the Minister of Finance as the shareholder representative.

The PIC was established as a corporation on 1 April 2005 in accordance with the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

Corporatisation has enabled the PIC to structure its investment activities and operations in a manner comparable to that of private-sector investment managers.

Apart from pursuing FSB-compliant mandates, the PIC benchmarks its investment performance against market-driven indices, enabling clients and the shareholder to compare PIC's returns with those achieved in the marketplace.

South African Revenue Service

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), Sars is an administratively autonomous organ of state.

It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and taxpayer-centred service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection.

Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- advising the Minister of Finance on all matters concerning revenue and the exercise of any power or the performance of any function assigned to the Minister of Finance or any other functionary in the national executive in terms of the abovementioned legislation
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal importation and exportation of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement and storage or use of certain goods.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, the department must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function, and that are aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy. National Treasury and Sars cooperate in compiling tax policies.

Over the past few years, Sars has embarked on the successful Modernisation Programme, providing an electronic platform for taxpayers to interact with Sars across the major tax types, including PIT; Pay-As-You-Earn (PAYE); VAT; and customs. Individual taxpayers, employers, traders and VAT vendors can submit returns or declarations and pay Sars electronically.

The Modernisation Programme is based on:

- automating basic tax processes
- using the latest technology
- rethinking how better to use the Sars' pool of skills
- accessing third-party data and enhanced risk management.

The benefits for taxpayers include faster turnaround times for processing returns and the payment of refunds, and improved risk management. Sars is able to use third-party information obtained from other institutions to pre-populate many individuals' tax returns and verify information supplied by taxpayers. This has enabled Sars to adopt a much tougher stance against non-compliance.

Tax Administration Bill

The Tax Administration Bill, 2011 seeks to provide a single body of law that outlines common procedures, rights and remedies and to achieve a balance between the rights and obligations of Sars and taxpayers in a transparent relationship. Once it becomes law, the Bill will establish a solid legal framework for Sars to continue modernising its systems and redesigning its process.

Some examples of the changes that can be expected are:

- the phased introduction of a single registration process whereby a taxpayer registers once for many tax types
- the extension of third-party information for reporting purposes
- a framework to support the modernisation of Sars' accounting system.

To further enhance taxpayers' rights, the Bill also provides for the Minister of Finance to appoint a tax ombudsman for a term of three years. The ombudsman's mandate is to review and address any complaint by a taxpayer regarding a service matter or a procedural or administrative matter arising from the application of the provisions of a tax Act by Sars, provided all other avenues for resolving the complaint have been exhausted.

Tax system

South Africa has a residence-based tax system, which means residents are – subject to certain exclusions – taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are, however, taxed on their income from a South African source. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

Most of the State's income is derived from income tax (PIT and CIT), although nearly a third of total revenue from government taxes comes from indirect taxes, primarily VAT.

Income tax (IT)

IT is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the IT Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of total income less exemptions and allowable deductions according to the Act. The remuneration received by or accrued to a person is subject to tax and the employer deducts employees' tax in the form of PAYE.

A person who receives income other than remuneration, such as income from trade, profession or investments, which is not subject to employees' tax, is required, under certain circumstances, to register as a provisional taxpayer and must pay provisional tax.

The primary rebate has been increased to R11 440 a year for all individuals. The secondary rebate, which applies to individuals aged 65 years and over, is increased to R6 390 a year.

The third rebate, which applies to individuals aged 75 years and over, is increased to R2 130 a year. The threshold below which individuals are not liable for PIT is increased to R63 556 of taxable income a year for those below the age of 65, R99 056 a year for those aged 65 to 74, and R110 889 for age 75 and over.

1 March 2012 introduced the tax credit for contributions to medical schemes, at a rate of R230 a month for the first two beneficiaries and R154 each for additional beneficiaries. Taxpayers 65 years and older and people with disabilities will be included in the second phase of this reform, which will be implemented in 2014. These reforms will significantly improve the fairness of the PIT system.

Corporate income tax

Companies (other than gold-mining companies, small business corporations or micro businesses) pay tax on their taxable incomes at a flat rate. Companies, which are not "residents" of South Africa as defined in the IT Act, 1962, conducting trade within South Africa are taxed at a rate of 33% on income derived from a source within or deemed to be within South Africa.

The secondary tax on companies was terminated on 31 March 2012 and a withholding tax on dividends was implemented on 1 April 2012. This will align South Africa's tax treatment of dividends with that in most other countries. Pension funds will benefit from this transition as they will receive dividends tax free. The dividend tax was introduced at 15%.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle. Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise.

Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14%. Certain supplies are zero-rated or exempt from VAT.

The prices of goods and services must be quoted or displayed as inclusive, which means that VAT has to be included in prices on all products, price lists, advertisements and quotations.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents, such as tobacco and liquor, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported, for example specific farming and forestry equipment, and certain manufacturing activities.

With effect from October 2012, an ad valorem excise duty at a rate of 7% will apply to small aeroplanes and helicopters with a mass below 5 000 kg. A duty of 10% will apply to motorboats and sailboats longer than 10 m.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property.

With effect from 23 February 2011, property costing less than R600 000 attracts no duty. A 3% rate applies to properties costing between R600 000 and R1 million.

In respect of property with a value between R1 million and R1,5 million, the duty is R12 000 plus 5% of the value above R1 million.

In respect of property above R1,5 million, the duty is R37 000 plus a rate of 8% of the value exceeding R1,5 million.

Capital gains tax

The introduction of CGT in October 2001 was an important step in broadening the tax base.

To reduce the scope for tax arbitrage and broaden the tax base further, the CGT inclusion rate for individuals and special trusts was increased with effect from 1 March 2012 from 25% to 33,3% and for companies and other trusts from 50% to 66,6%. To mitigate the impact on middle-income earners, the various exclusion thresholds were increased.

Estate duty

An estate consists of all the property – including life-insurance policies and payments from pension funds – of the deceased.

Certain admissible deductions are made from the total value of the estate to determine the net value. Some important deductions are allowable against the value of the estate such as:

- the value of property in the estate that accrues to the surviving spouse of the deceased
- all debts due by the deceased
- a R3,5-million general deduction.

The estate duty rate is 20% of the dutiable amount of the estate.

Securities transfer tax (STT)

STT was introduced by the STT Act, 2007 (Act 25 of 2007), with effect from 1 July 2008 at a rate of 0,25% of the taxable amount.

It replaced stamp duty and uncertificated securities tax on marketable securities.

STT is levied on any transfer of a security (whether listed or unlisted) based on the taxable amount of the security. A "security" means any:

- share in a company
- member's interest in a close corporation
- right or entitlement to receive any distribution from a company or close corporation.

Skills-development levy

This is a compulsory levy scheme for the funding of education and training. Sars administers the collection of the levy. The rate, as from 1 August 2005, is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. A monthly contribution is collected from the employer, which consists of:

- a contribution made by the employee equal to 1% of the remuneration paid or payable by the employer to the employee during any month
- a contribution made by the employer equal to 1% of the remuneration paid or payable by the employer to that employee during any month.

Air-passenger departure tax

From 1 October 2011, the air-passenger departure tax on flights to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) member states and other international destinations increased from R80 and R150 per passenger respectively to R100 and R190 per passenger.

Rates on property

Municipalities levy rates based on the value of fixed property.

Customs duty

The policy on tariffs applicable to importation into South Africa is set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the Department of Trade and Industry. The duties levied on imported goods can be separated mainly into customs duties, which include additional customs duties (ad valorem) on certain luxury or non-essential items, and anti-dumping and countervailing measures. In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption and certain other levies are imposed on specific products.

Southern African Customs Union

South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland are signatories to the Sacu agreement. They apply similar customs and excise legislation and the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods.

The uniform application of tariffs and harmonisation of procedures simplify trade within the Sacu common customs area by enabling free movement of goods for customs purposes. However, all other national restrictive measures such as import and export control, sanitary and phytosanitary requirements and domestic taxes apply to goods moved between member states.

The 2002 Sacu Agreement is in force and provides a dispensation for calculating and effecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component of the Revenue Sharing Formula.

At its meeting held in South Africa in March 2011, the Sacu Summit of Heads of State and Government endorsed an ambitious Sacu regional trade facilitation programme that is focused on creating common information-technology platforms to allow interconnectivity; harmonising enforcement strategies to curb illicit trade; improving border efficiencies to facilitate seamless trade; developing partnerships with traders through the establishment of a formalised Customs-Trader Forum; developing similar customs legislation; and establishing one-stop border posts. South Africa and all Sacu countries are working towards implementing the programme.

South Africa is automating most of its border processes, starting with customs and immigration, to bring the country in line with the international standards of the World Customs Organisation and world-class immigration processes and practices. The intention is to have a seamless process for compliant travellers and traders while making it difficult for illegitimate travellers and traders by employing the best technology solutions.

International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between international investors' residence and source countries, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with over 60 countries.

African Tax Administration Forum (ATAF)

In November 2009, the ATAF was launched in Kampala, Uganda, to give African tax administrations a platform to articulate African tax priorities, develop and share best practices and build capacity in African tax policy and administration. Sars Commissioner, Mr Oupa Magashula, was unanimously elected as the first chairperson of the ATAF at the inaugural conference and re-elected at the General Assembly held in Mauritius in July 2011. South Africa will also host the Secretariat of the African tax body.

Organisational performance

In 2010/11, Sars collected R2 billion more than the targeted R672,2 billion, representing an increase over the previous financial year of R75,6 billion or 12,6%.

In 2010/11, government spent R891 billion of the budgeted R897 billion. The preliminary budget deficit was expected to be 5% of GDP.

The more than one million jobs lost during the recent recession limited the growth in revenue from PIT. While Sars' PIT revenue grew, it was 0,5% below the target.

VAT collection rose to R184,2 billion from R147 billion in 2010. Of the R674,2 billion collected, R226,3 billion came from individual taxpayers, while companies paid R133,4 billion.

The revenue collected from the fuel levy earned Sars R35 billion, which was 2,2% above target, and contributed 5,2% to the overall revenue collected. This increased from 4% in 2008/09 and 4,8% in 2009/10.

e-Filing

Sars introduced e-Filing (*www.sarsefiling.co.za*) as an electronic gateway for taxpayers to interact with Sars, as well as a facility to file electronically at Sars branches. The e-Filing gateway is a secure and free service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online. It removes the risks and inconvenience of submitting paper tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the Internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

The e-Filing service is equal to international standards, being comparable with services offered in the United States of America (USA), Australia, Singapore, Ireland, Chile and France.

By November 2011, Sars had received more than three million returns since the start of the tax season in July 2011. This represented an increase of 15% compared to the 2009/10 tax season. Ninety-eight per cent of the returns were submitted via e-Filing.

It took 10 weeks for one million tax returns to be submitted via e-Filing, compared to 14 weeks in the 2009/10 season.

Tax calendar

Sars has instituted three critical filing seasons in the tax year that runs from March to February. The first one is Tax Season for Employers, when employers file their annual PAYE reconciliations. This runs from April to May every year.

This is followed by Tax Season for Individuals, when individual taxpayers file their income tax returns. This runs from July to the end of November for non-provisional taxpayers who submit via e-Filing.

Employers then have an interim filing season when they file reconciliations for the first six months of the tax year, and this is in effect during September and October.

All three filing seasons are accompanied by innovative communication and marketing campaigns aimed at the relevant taxpayer segments, in line with Sars' segmentation approach. There has been a steady increase in taxpayer compliance as a result of the predictable filing seasons, combined with Sars' improved service offering and taxpayer education.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers to complete their tax returns correctly, honestly and on time.

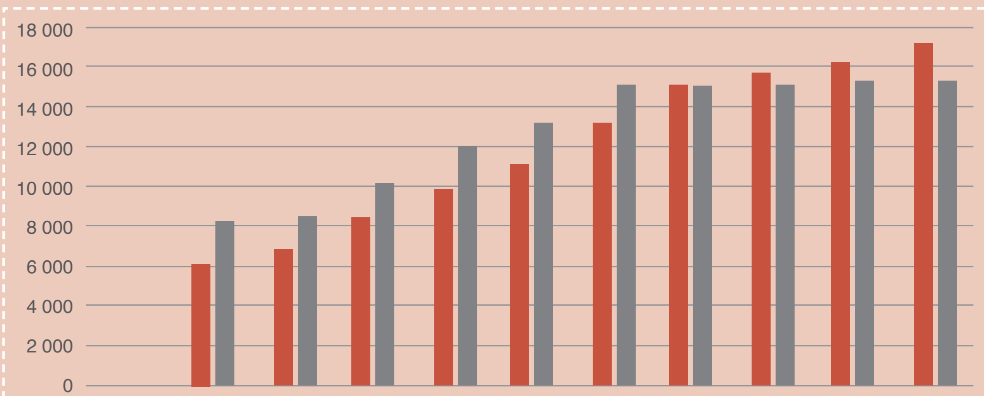
People who owe Sars tax are charged interest at a rate as published in the *Government Gazette.*

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB was established in terms of the National Gambling Act (NGA), 1996 (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the NGA, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004).

The vision of the board is to position South Africa as the pre-eminent jurisdiction with an effectively regulated industry. The NGB is com-

Trends in gross gambling revenue (R' millions)



	FY 01/02	FY 02/03	FY 03/04	FY 04/025	FY 05/06	FY 06/07	FY 07/08	FY 08/09	FY 09/10	FY 10/11
At current prices	6,227	6,954	8,240	9,918	11,400	13,520	15,618	15,921	16,268	17,140
At constant prices	8,108	8,429	10,148	12,022	13,365	14,956	15,618	14,866	14,603	14,814

Source: National Gambling Board

In May 2011, the Association for Savings and Investment South Africa announced that the size of the local unit trust industry was rapidly approaching the R1-trillion mark, with assets under management growing to R949 billion by the end of March 2011.

Statistics for the first quarter of 2011 showed that the industry's assets grew by R338 billion over the previous two years, from R611 billion at the end of March 2009.

mitted to effective regulation and supervision of the South African gambling industry by upholding internationally recognised standards of compliance.

Highlights of the NGB's achievements in 2011 included:

- Liaising with law-enforcement agencies to address illegal gambling activities and developing a working forum.
- Consulting with various gambling operators and strengthening stakeholder relations.
- Interacting with the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation to assess and contribute strategic input on how to use research and evolve a collaborative approach on the work of the National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) to further inform communication and public awareness programmes.
- Refining legislation to simplify the implementation of self-exclusion registers.
- Completing the compliance strategy that will inform an automated compliance system by 2014.
- Monitoring treatment, counselling, public education and awareness and research initiatives implemented by the NRGP. It is the only programme of its kind in the world that is jointly controlled by a public-private-sector partnership, which involves government regulators and the gambling industry.
- Hosting the eighth Gaming Regulators Africa Forum in February 2011, the sixth Biennial Gambling Conference in April 2011 and the annual International Association of Gaming Regulators Conference in October 2011.
- Conducting comprehensive national research into the size and growth/non-growth of the gambling industry to eventually establish an integrated information portal or dashboard that will provide empirical data.

The emergence of illegal Internet gambling raises challenges to the regulatory regime concerning when, how and what the framework of interactive gambling will be, and what the challenges are. The NGB embarked on various actions to inform and create awareness of illegal modes of gambling to the South African public. Regarding curbing illegal gambling, the provincial licensing authorities conducted 86 raids and over 350 illegal gambling machines were destroyed.

Statistics

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on primary statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue (GGR), gambling taxes and revenue, as well as return-to-punter/player. The results for 2010/11 showed an increase of GGR by 5,4% from R16 268 million to R17 140 million, whereas taxes/levies paid increased by 6% from R1 575 million to R1 670 million.

Gauteng is the biggest generator of GGR (41,3%) as well as taxes (39,3%). Apart from the seven operational casinos that generate income in Gauteng, the GGR in the province is also boosted by the presence of a high number of other gambling activities, such as racing and betting, the roll-out of limited pay-out machines, as well as bingo venues operating in Gauteng only.

Gambling Review Commission (GRC)

The GRC was established to review the evolution of the gambling industry since 1996; and to assess its social and economic impact, specifically looking at:

- the demography of gambling participants
- the incidence of problem gambling and gambling addiction
- youth gambling
- the efficiency and effectiveness of current strategies to mitigate the negative effects of gambling
- assessing the proliferation of gambling in South Africa
- considering licensed and unlicensed activities and technological developments
- assessing the viability of new gambling activities
- considering the extent to which regulatory bodies have met their legislative objectives, to benchmark with international jurisdictions and to make policy recommendations regarding the gambling industry on the basis of its assessment.

The NGB's response to the GRC's final findings allowed the board to look critically at the regulatory space within which it operates. The findings resulted in the restructuring of the organisation and reviewing its strategic objectives.

The *Gambling Review Report* affirmed the success of a well-regulated industry and raised some challenges concerning the concurrent legislation. Notwithstanding the challenge, the NGB works efficiently with the provincial gambling boards to ensure effective coordination and monitoring of gambling regulations.

The NGB is addressing the need to ensure national oversight and monitoring of all legalised gambling activities and the closure of illegal gambling sites and activities with the aid of law-enforcement agencies.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998 in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).

The board's main activities are, among other things, to:

- advise the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensure that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensure that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensure that the net proceeds of the National Lottery are as high as possible
- administer the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and hold it in trust
- advise the Minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of Section 26(3) of the Lotteries Act, 1997
- advise the Minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administer and invest the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery operator is Gidani, a 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

Since inception, the National Lottery has raised more than R12,3 billion through ticket sales. With interest, the amount available for distribution to good causes increased to R16 billion, of which R11 billion has been paid out in the following proportions: R2,3 billion to 938 organisations in the arts, culture and national heritage sector; R2,7 billion to 3 564 organisations in the sports and recreation sector; and R5,8 billion to 4 051 organisations in the charities sector. Many beneficiary organisations were funded for more than one project, bringing the total number of grants to over 15 000.

The Department of Trade and Industry has launched a review of the Lotteries Policy Framework.

Auditor-General of South Africa

The AGSA has a constitutional mandate. It strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter Nine institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is thus respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial state departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA. Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also boasts an impressive international auditing complement.

In November 2010, the organisation hosted the 20th International Congress of Supreme Audit Institutions (XX INCOSAI). Over 150 countries attended the congress, which resulted in the adoption of the first international standards for public-sector auditing.

The AGSA was presented with the Jörg Kandutsch Award by its peers, in recognition of its efforts to enhance public auditing. The organisation has benefited from the shared experiences and knowledge gained as a member of several working groups, subcommittees and regional working groups of the International Organisation of Supreme Audit Institutions (INTOSAI).

In addition, the AGSA contributed directly to the development of the International Standards of Supreme Audit Institutions, which were officially re-launched as a whole during XX INCOSAI.

The Auditor-General of South Africa, Mr Terence Nombembe, was appointed chairperson of INTOSAI.

The AGSA celebrated its centenary in 2011.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921 in terms of a special Act of Parliament, the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and in the period immediately following World War I. The SARB is governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989). In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties. Since its establishment, the SARB has always been privately owned. It has more than 600 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the Over-the-Counter Share-Trading Facility managed by the SARB.

After allowing for certain provisions, payment of company tax on profits, transfers to reserves and dividend payments of not more than 10c per share per year to shareholders, the surplus of the SARB's earnings is paid to government. Its operations are motivated not by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The Reserve Bank holds an ordinary general meeting of shareholders at its head office in Pretoria annually. This is the occasion where the Governor, as chairperson, delivers an annual address on the state of the economy and monetary policy, which is covered widely in the media.

The SARB has a board of 15 directors. Among them are the Governor and three deputy governors, who are appointed by the President, each for a five-year term. The President appoints four other directors for a period of three years. The remaining seven directors, of whom one represents agriculture, two industry, two commerce or finance, one mining and one labour, are elected by shareholders for a period of three years.

> The Discovery Invest Leadership Summit took place at the Sandton Convention Centre on 21 September 2011.
>
> The headline speaker was Al Gore, former United States Vice-President, Nobel Peace Prize winner and world-opinion leader on climate change.

The SARB has a staff of around 2 000. Management comprises the Governor, deputy governors and the heads of departments. It has branch offices in Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria North.

The SARB must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and select committees on finance from time to time.

The Reserve Bank has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB has used different monetary-policy frameworks over time, such as credit ceilings and credit controls in the 1970s, money-supply growth targets in the 1980s, money-supply growth guidelines in the early 1990s and an eclectic monetary policy with an informal inflation target from the mid-1990s.

In February 2000, an inflation target was specified for the first time, and the adoption of this target entrusted a single objective to the Reserve Bank: price stability. This target was set for the first achievement in 2002. The target is to keep the headline consumer price index (CPI) between 3% and 6% per year.

The framework was introduced because of certain perceived advantages, such as:

- making the objective of monetary policy clear, thereby improving planning in the private and public sectors
- forming part of a formalised coordinated effort to contain inflation and pursuit of the broader economic objective of sustainable high economic growth and employment creation
- helping to focus monetary policy and enhancing the accountability of the SARB to the public
- providing an anchor for expectations of future inflation, which should influence price and wage setting.

The Governor and the Minister of Finance consult on setting the inflation target. This approach implies that the Reserve Bank does not have goal independence (that is, the setting of the objective to be achieved), but has operational independence (such as the choice of instruments and the autonomy to adjust such instruments) in monetary-policy decisions aimed at achieving the target. The SARB publishes monetary-policy reviews, while regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions of monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

Data released by Statistics South Africa showed that the headline CPI for between February 2010 and March 2011 remained within the SARB's target range of between 3% and 6%. In the year to March 2011, it amounted to 4,1%.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy. Through its refinancing system, the Reserve Bank provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements.

"Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank that are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repo transactions. The refinancing system, based on repo transactions, was introduced in March 1998.

The repo rate is the price at which the SARB lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. It represents the most important indicator for short-term interest rates. The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and standing facilities to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the SARB to square off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

In terms of its monetary-policy implementation framework, the SARB has to compel banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the Reserve Bank.

The SARB, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), comprising the bank's governors and other senior officials. After each meeting, the MPC issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy changes, if necessary.

The SARB's repo rate influences the interest rates charged by banks, the general level of interest rates in the economy and therefore other economic aggregates such as money supply, bank-credit extension and, ultimately, the rate of inflation. The repo rate influences market rates in two ways: it directly influences the bank's marginal cost of funding and it reflects the bank's stance on monetary policy.

The SARB has to intervene regularly in the money market to create a shortage that would drain excess liquidity. In addition to the liquidity-management operations, the SARB uses other open-market operations (OMOs) to achieve its monetary-policy objectives.

The OMOs refer to the selling of SARB debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks, which by mid-2009 amounted to 2,5% of banks' liabilities.

Functions

The Reserve Bank performs a number of functions to achieve its objectives. Its current functions can be grouped into the following major areas of responsibility:

- Formulation and implementation of monetary policy (aimed at achieving the inflation target).
- Refinancing system and interest rates: The essence of the bank's monetary-policy implementation framework and the transmission of monetary policy is its influence on the level of interest rates through its refinancing system.
- OMOs: OMOs are conducted for two reasons: Firstly, to neutralise or smooth the influence of exogenous factors on the liquidity position in the money market. Secondly, to maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the bank. Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market.
- Service to government:
  - Gold and foreign-exchange reserves: The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Sub-

sequent to the conversion of the negative net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves have been growing.
  - Banker and adviser to government: The main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and National Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the bank and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the Exchequer.
- Account and tax and loan accounts.
  - Administration of exchange control: The bank is responsible for the administration of government's exchange-control policy.
  - Provision of economic and statistical services: The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.
- Bank supervision: The purpose is to achieve a sound and effective banking system in the interest of depositors of banks and the economy as a whole.
- The national payment system: The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.
- Banker to other banks: The bank acts as custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily with the bank.
- Banknotes and coin: The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the bank, mints all coin on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the bank, prints all banknotes on behalf of the SARB. Currency is distributed through the bank's seven branches to commercial banks. It is the responsibility of the branches to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new notes available to meet the demand, and to replace unfit notes. The branches are responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation in their respective regions.
- Lender of last resort: In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort" activities, the bank may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems.
- Monitoring financial stability: In view of the interrelationship between price and financial-system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.
- Provision of internal corporate support services and systems.

To ensure smooth operations and administration, the bank provides its own internal services, supported by information, communications and technology, and human resources.

The Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007), was promulgated in 2007. The Act seeks to enhance access to banking services and introduce more competition in the banking environment.

By October 2011, there were over 121 cooperative financial institutions with about 59 000 members and over R175 million in savings.

Monetary policy

Domestic consumer price inflation continued to moderate during 2010, within an environment of relatively subdued local demand and an appreciation in the external value of the Rand throughout the year.

CPI accordingly slowed from an annual average of 7,1% in 2009 to 4,3% in 2010. Subdued inflationary pressures allowed the MPC to adopt an easier monetary-policy stance in the course of 2010, thereby supporting the recovery in domestic economic activity.

The repo rate was subsequently reduced three times during 2010. Alongside the lowest level of the repo rate in more than 30 years, other money-market rates continued to hover at historically low levels during the fourth quarter of 2010 and the first months of 2011.

The MPC maintained the repo rate at 5,5% at its meetings held in September and November 2011, extending the period during which the policy rate had been kept unchanged for almost a full year. The most recent period when the repo rate was kept on hold for almost such a long duration was between June 2005 and April 2006, when the MPC viewed the threats to the inflation outlook to be balanced enough not to require an adjustment to the policy stance.

In recent months, the inflation trajectory has risen, compounded on the upside by the volatility in the exchange rate of the Rand in addition to high fuel prices and accelerating food-price inflation. At the same time, growth in the domestic economy has remained fragile and uneven, partly affected by turbulence in global financial markets due to the European sovereign debt crisis. While a temporary breach of the upper limit of the inflation target range was foreseen by the MPC, this was balanced by the slack in the economy, the contained pace of underlying inflation and the projected return of headline inflation to within the target range from late in 2012.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2010, 33 banking institutions – 12 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 13 registered branches and two mutual banks – were reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department of the Reserve Bank. There were also 41 international banks with authorised representative offices in South Africa. The banking industry is characterised by a high degree of concentration, with four banks – ABSA Bank Ltd, Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd, FirstRand Bank Ltd and Nedbank Ltd – dominating the sector.

Although South Africa did not itself experience a financial crisis, it did not escape the effects of the resultant global credit squeeze and recession. As a result, the banking sector, in common with other sectors, experienced a difficult operating environment in the latter part of 2008 and for most of 2009. Most indicators, however, suggest that a nascent recovery in the sector began to take hold in 2010, although conditions remained difficult.

Total banking-sector assets amounted to R3 122 billion at the end of December 2010, compared to R2 963 billion at the end of December 2009 (and R3 167 billion at the end of December 2008), representing year-on-year growth of 5,4%. Total assets of the four largest banks accounted for 84,1% of total banking-sector assets (December 2008: 84,7%). Gross loans and advances increased by 2,5% from R2 253 billion at the end of December 2009 to R2 309 billion at the end of December 2010 (after a 2,6% decrease between December 2008 and December 2009).

Home loans remained the largest component of gross loans and advances, representing about 34%, followed by instalment debtors at 10,2% and commercial mortgages at 9,9%. At the end of December 2010, banking-sector total equity and liabilities amounted to R3 123 billion. Total deposits, amounting to R2 181 billion, represented 75,2% of the banking sector's liabilities of R2 902 billion at the end of December 2010 (December 2009: 75%).

Growth in loans and advances in the banking sector contracted sharply at the onset of the financial crisis. In 2008, gross loans and advances expanded at an average month-on-month rate of 0,9%. In 2009, this fell to -0,2%. However, in 2010 (to the end of July), average month-on-month growth began to recover, averaging 0,2%.

Deposits from corporate customers (including financial institutions) constituted 50,3% of total banking-sector deposits at the end of December 2010, followed by households and government (including parastatals), which accounted for 15,6% and 9,8% respectively. The total capital-adequacy ratio of the banking sector improved during 2010, increasing from 14,1% at the end of December 2009 to 14,9% at the end of December 2010.

As of December 2011, only 19% of total deposits were retail deposits and 80% of all deposits had a maturity of less than six months. Of total liabilities (comprising total deposits and borrowed funds – loans, borroings and other liabilities) on average, just under 60% had contractual maturities of less than one month.

The banking sector remained profitable throughout 2009 and 2010. However, the seven largest banks' return on equity and return-on-assets ratios deteriorated during 2010 to 17,9% and 2,5% respectively at the end of December 2010 (December 2009: 19,2% and 2,7% respectively).

The ratio of liquid assets to total assets held by the banking sector increased during 2010, rising from 11,7% in December 2009 to 12,3% in December 2010.

Credit ratios remained persistently high throughout 2010. Impaired advances in respect of which a specific credit impairment had been raised, were at 5,79% of gross loans and advances at the end of December 2010. It amounted to R134 billion at the end of that month or 5,9% of gross loans and advances.

Impaired advances to gross loans and advances have remained above 5% since April

2009, and above 5,7% since August that year. However, credit losses, having risen during the crisis, have fallen to near pre-crisis levels. Credit losses averaged 0,11% of gross loans and advances in 2008, 0,13% in 2009 (peaking at 0,14% in September 2009) and 0,10% in 2010.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005), to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA, 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA, 2005, which became effective in June 2007, aims to regulate the granting of consumer credit by all credit-providers, including microlenders, banks and retailers.

It created the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal (NCT), which play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act.

Out of a population of 50,59 million, South Africa has just over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The NCT adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act.

The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist overindebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service-providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions

Cooperative Banks for Development Agency

The Cooperative Banks for Development Agency was established in 2009 in terms of the Cooperative Banks Act, 2007. Its objectives are to provide for the registration of deposit-taking financial service cooperatives, savings and credit cooperatives, community banks and village banks, and their regulation and supervision. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of cooperative bank personnel.

The agency is responsible for, among other things:

- supervising and registering deposit-taking financial services cooperatives as cooperative banks
- capacitating, promoting and informing communities and groups about cooperative banking
- registering and regulating representative bodies and support organisations
- establishing the Deposit Insurance Fund for Cooperative Banks
- liquidity/solvency management through loans and grants
- formalising approaches to developing cooperative financial institutions.

Access to financial services is a precondition for economic development. As 37% of South Africans have no access to regulated financial services, National Treasury is committed to a range of initiatives to increase access.

Financial cooperatives are owned and controlled by members. The agency provides training and support to ensure that the members' savings and assets are properly managed, and not exposed to undue risk.

In line with government's responsibility for regulating banking and developments in the cooperative banking sector, the department developed appropriate legislation to supervise and support the sector.

South African banking group Nedbank has opened the first partially wind-powered bank branch on the continent.

The small informal settlement of Du Noon, just off Table Bay in the Western Cape, was considered windy enough to install a Kestel e300i 1kW small wind turbine, which produces up to 7,8 kWh – enough to power the branch's air conditioning, security systems and all computers.

It also produces energy for storage, which is fed to the branch during a power cut. The wind-generated energy is converted to three-phase electricity and then stored in an uninterruptable power supply.

Banking operations will continue even if the supply from power utility Eskom fails, and the only signs will be a dimming of the lights and temporary cessation of the air conditioner.

The branch derives as much as 35% of its energy requirements from the turbine, and it is expected that eventually it will be completely reliant on this clean, renewable energy source.

Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997), stipulates that the main role of this DFI is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

The DBSA's annual financial results for the year ended 31 March 2011 showed an enhanced contribution to development (loan and equity disbursements plus developmental initiatives) amounting to R8,9 billion. This was achieved despite the financial year being dominated again by economic and market conditions, characterised by lower short-term interest rates and increased long-term interest rates on investments.

During 2010/11, the DBSA spent R518,9 million (2009/10: R550,2 million) on developmental initiatives, representing 60,8% (2010: 66,9%) of its sustainable earnings.

The DBSA is an implementing agent of the Siyenza Manje Project, an initiative to build capacity and support programmes within local government by hiring experts and young professionals in areas where there are skills shortages.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a DFI within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002). The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry. Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, cooperatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
  - service delivery
  - resource management
- sustainability.

(See also Chapter 3: *Agriculture, forestry and fisheries*.)

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans. A key recent achievement was the diversification of investors to fund the growing loan book.

In 2010/11, the bank launched the domestic medium-term note and secured additional loan capital of R1,1 billion, raised in bank bonds that are subscribed to by investors in the private sector.

Financial Services Board

The FSB is a regulatory institution established in terms of the FSB Act, 1990 (Act 97 of 1990), to oversee the non-banking financial services industry in the public interest.

Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CIS are investment structures whereby individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated under the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

The South African CIS industry has recovered well after the global financial crisis. Total assets under management at the end of March 2011 increased to R962 billion, compared to R817 billion in March 2010, indicating growth of 18%.

CIS shares are generally considered a medium- to long-term investment and past performance is not necessarily a guide to the future.

Financial advisers and intermediaries

The purpose of the FAIS Act, 2002 is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to

> In July 2011, South Africa's Standard Bank Group was named Africa's top bank in *The Banker* magazine's 2011 rankings of the world's top banks by their Tier 1 capital.
>
> It also rose from 106th to 94th place in the list of 1 000 top banks in the world. Standard Bank had increased its Tier 1 capital to US$12,06 billion, an increase of 26,15% from the previous year and almost twice as much as the second-ranked bank.

certain clients in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS Division, is responsible for the regulation of the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services to clients by FSPs in respect of a wide range of financial products.

The provisions of the FAIS Act, 2002 became effective on 30 September 2004. In terms of this Act, before conducting any transaction, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB. Information on authorised FSPs can be obtained from the FSB website.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act, 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers in terms of the Act to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another further four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on Financial Services Providers

The Minister of Finance appoints the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function it is to investigate and report or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act, 2002.

The advisory committee consists of a chairperson and other members, including a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes established by Section Three of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), and persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act, appointed by the Minister after consultation with the board.

The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of financial services providers

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of five categories of FSPs. Category I consists of financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion. Category II FSPs offer discretionary intermediary services in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking. Category IIA FSPs are hedge-fund managers. Category III FSPs are investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers). Category IV FSPs represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies) on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

The total number of approved FSPs at 31 March 2011 was:

- Category I: 11 322
- Category II: 551
- Category IIA: 117
- Category III: 23
- Category IV: 38.

Insurance companies

Insurance is divided into long- and short-term insurance. Insurance is an agreement between a policy holder and the insurance company. Under a short-term insurance policy, the insured is entitled to be compensated by the insurer for the loss of or damage to assets caused by the event against which they are insured.

The aim of short-term insurance is to put the insured in the same position they occupied immediately before the loss, depending on the terms and conditions of the policy contract. Examples of short-term insurance include motor-vehicle, household, theft and fire insurance.

By 31 March 2011, there were 108 short-term insurers in South Africa.

In 2011, National Treasury released a policy document entitled, *The South African Micro Insurance Regulatory Framework,* addressing issues such as promoting better access to affordable insurance products that meet relevant risks; better matching of insurance products to the needs of low-income consumers and strengthening consumer protection.

The framework also intends to provide opportunities for informal practitioners in the micro insurance field to enhance their credentials by becoming regulated entities within the sector.

Another objective of this policy is to outline ways in which consumer protection will be enhanced through business conduct regulation, improved enforcement regulations and consumer education interventions aimed at understanding insurance and its associated risks and benefits. It is envisaged that micro-insurance legislation will be tabled in Parliament in 2013.

Long-term insurance includes life and assistance policies that pay a benefit to dependants on the death of the insured person/s, endowment (savings) policies payable at a predetermined date, disability policies, pensions and retirement policies, or even a combination of these.

By 31 March 2011, there were 87 long-term insurers in South Africa.

In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998), and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short- and long-term insurance ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policyholders.

Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is an FSB committee responsible for combating market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa. The three forms of market abuse prohibited in South Africa are insider trading, price manipulation and publication of false or misleading statements.The members of the directorate are representative of the legal and accounting professions, financial markets, the banking industry, the fund managers' industry, the SARB and investors.

All three forms of market abuse are criminal contraventions. In addition, an offender may be referred to the FSB Enforcement Committee, which can impose unlimited penalties. In the case of insider trading contravention, such penalties are distributed to persons who were prejudiced by the offending transactions.

Retirement funds

At 31 March 2011, there were 10 032 registered retirement funds supervised by the FSB. Of these, 3 160 funds were active, while the remainder comprised funds that are dormant, in orphan status (i.e. without boards of management), under curatorship, or being deregistered or liquidated.

The latest available statistics for the year ended 31 December 2009 are from the Government Employees Pension Fund, Transnet and Telkom funds, bargaining council funds not registered with the FSB and 75% of registered funds that submitted financial statements. The last-mentioned constitute about 94% of the assets of funds registered with the FSB.

Total membership of retirement funds in South Africa at 31 December 2009 was 11 679 959. Of this, 9 132 816 were active members and 2 547 143 pensioners, deferred pensioners and dependants.

Total contributions received by retirement funds in South Africa increased by 10,3% from R101,8 billion in 2008 to R112,3 billion in 2009. Total benefits paid by retirement funds in South Africa, which include pensions, lump sums on retirement, death and resignations, decreased by 4,2%, from R142,3 billion in 2008 to R136,2 billion in 2009.

Enforcement

In November 2008, the FSB Enforcement Committee was established by an amendment to the Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act, 2001 (Act 28 of 2001), replacing the Capital Markets Enforcement Committee. The committee is an administrative tribunal that has jurisdiction to impose penalties, compensation orders and cost orders against persons who contravene any FSB law. Its predecessor only had jurisdiction over market-abuse contraventions.

Since November 2008, the committee has adjudicated on a wide spectrum of contraventions of FSB legislation, and imposed substantial penalties. If a respondent defaults on the payment of a penalty, the High Court Registrar may issue a warrant of execution as if the committee determination was a High-Court order. Respondents have a right of appeal to the High Court of South Africa against a determination made by the committee.

Financial markets

Global capital markets were characterised by high levels of capital inflows into emerging markets, the sovereign debt crisis in peripheral Europe, and the Dubai crisis, in the first half of 2010. Attractive returns in emerging debt markets coupled with higher growth prospects impelled investors around the globe to seek higher-yielding emerging market assets, particularly in the second half of the year.

The South African capital market had its fair share of capital inflows with a substantial amount finding its way to the local currency government bond market.

Government bonds

Retail bonds

Retail bonds can be purchased from National Treasury, the South African Post Office and Pick n Pay stores countrywide. Since the introduction of RSA fixed-rate retail savings bonds in May 2004 and inflation-linked retail bonds in April 2007, the cumulative amount reached R11,9 billion on 31 March 2011.

Government first issued these bonds to encourage South African citizens to save. These bonds are easily accessible through various distribution channels across the country. The number of investors has increased over the past six years.

Due to general familiarity with fixed deposits as made available by the commercial banks, investors in the RSA retail bonds are more inclined to invest in a predictable product such as fixed-rate investment. There has been increased investment in inflation-linked bonds, mainly due to the decline in stereotype associated with fixed-rate investments.

Domestic capital market bonds

The strength of South Africa's macroeconomic indicators and higher global demand for emerging market debt has led to rising international interest in South African government bonds. Non-residents' purchases of domestic bonds more than doubled from a net R27 billion in 2009 to a net R56 billion in December 2010. In the first nine months of 2010, non-residents purchased a net of R73 billion worth of domestic bonds, with a historic high of R81 billion in September 2010. With investor sentiment changing, there was a sell-off, resulting in cumulative net purchases declining to R52 billion in March 2011. The sell-off has led to some weakness in government bond yields, which are moderate compared to the previous high level.

Among the most traded bonds in the market are the R157 (13%: 2015) and the R186 (10,5%: 2026).

The daily yields on the R157 government bond averaged 7,697% in 2011, after closing 2010 at the average of 7,736%, from a daily average of 8,181% in 2009.

The R186 government bond averaged 8,691% in 2011, after closing 2010 at the average of 8,612% as opposed to 8,698% in 2009.

The average spread between the R157 and the R186 widened to just below 100 basis points from 2010's average of about 88 basis points.

The break-even inflation rate – calculated as the differential between fixed-interest bond yields and the real yields of inflation-linked government bonds within the three-year maturity range – was at 5,82% in April 2010 and narrowed to 5,65% in April 2011. The long-term break-even inflation rate narrowed from 6,63% in April 2010 to 6,5% in April 2011, owing to stronger real yields being driven down by the demand for inflation-linked bonds.

Primary market

Government funding in the domestic primary market is done through long-term market loans, which comprise fixed-income bonds, inflation-linked bonds, floating-rate notes and retail bonds. Fixed-income bond issuances constitute most of the total bond issuance, and were issued at a weighted average nominal yield of 8,3%, while inflation-linked bonds were issued at a weighted average real yield of 2,9% in the previous year.

Four new domestic bonds were issued in 2010 – the two new fixed-income bonds, R213

Exchange rates of the Rand (percentage change)

	30/09/10 – 31/12/10	31/12/10 – 31/03/11	31/03/11 – 30/06/11	30/06/11 – 31/08/11
Weighted average	5,4	-5,0	-1,5	-4,0
Euro	7,3	-8,2	-2,0	-3,1
US Dollar	5,1	-2,4	0,0	-3,5
Chinese Yuan	3,6	-3,0	-1,3	-4,7
British Pound	7,8	-6,2	0,8	-5,1
Japanese Yen	2,8	-0,7	-2,8	-8,0

* Against a basket of 15 currencies

Source: South African Reserve Bank, *Quarterly Bulletin*, September 2011.

(7%: 2031) and R214 (6,5%: 2041), and two new inflation-linked bonds, R211 (2,5%: 2017) and R212 (2,75%: 2022). All were well received by market participants and their volume has increased sufficiently to contribute to the improved market turnover.

International bonds

For the first time ever, South Africa priced a US$750 million 30-year global bond in the international capital markets on 1 March 2011. The bond was priced at a yield of 6,292%, a coupon (interest) of 6,25% and a spread of 180 basis points above the 30-year US Treasury's benchmark bonds. The coupon (interest) of 6,25% compares favourably to the coupon of the 10-year global Dollar coupon issued in 2010 at 5,5%, with an increase of only 75 basis points.

South Africa's bond spreads traded below those of many of its peers towards the end on 2010. On 15 November 2010, the RSA global bond maturing in 2020 reached a spread of 95 basis points over the underlying US Treasury bond, and has since widened to 130 basis points, while the new 2041 narrowed to 158 basis points at end of April 2011.

Higher sovereign debt issuance in world markets and non-resident purchases of domestic bonds reduced demand for rand-denominated debt issued in Europe (EuroRand bonds) and in Japan (Uridashi bonds); with negative net issuances of R10,5 billion and R7 billion respectively in 2010.

Secondary market

The local bond market continued to benefit from prudent macroeconomic policies, which saw the country through the global financial crisis in 2008. The turnover on the domestic bond market reached a record high of R19,2 trillion in 2008 before declining significantly to R13,4 trillion in 2009. In 2010, turnover increased to R17 trillion with support from non-residents.

Non-residents contributed about 36% to total turnover in March 2011, while local investors added the remaining 64%. The bond market capitalisation on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE) Ltd amounted to R1,3 trillion in March 2011, with government contributing the largest share of 59% to the total market capitalisation, followed by corporates at 19%. Plain vanilla bonds accounted for 71% of the total listing on the exchange in terms of instrument composition, while inflation-linked and floating rate contributed 14% and 10% respectively.

In October 2011, government relaxed foreign exchange-control rules for individuals, making it easier for citizens to invest up to R5 million abroad a year, comprising an annual R4-million foreign investment allowance plus a R1-million single discretionary allowance.

National Treasury also allows companies to top up capital in their offshore businesses, and has relaxed rules for corporations that want to invest outside their current business lines.

Limits for individuals on alimony, wedding and travel allowances were done away with.

Exchange rates

Subsequent to a decline of 5% in the first quarter of 2011, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by a further 1,5% from the end of March 2011 to the end of June 2011.

The Rand depreciated most notably against the Euro and the Japanese Yen, partly as a result of the rescue packages granted to certain European countries to avoid sovereign debt restructuring and to assist Japan in recovering from the natural disaster experienced earlier in 2011.

However, the exchange value of the Rand was cushioned by strong demand for high-yielding assets, elevated commodity prices, and a sizeable inward foreign direct investment (FDI) transaction in which a non-resident party acquired the majority equity stake in a domestic retail and wholesale group.

Elevated commodity prices and a weaker US dollar partly supported the external value of the Rand in April 2011. Following this, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased in May 2011 before increasing in June, when it was affected by the depreciation of the Euro and the British Pound. During July and August 2011, the nominal effective exchange value of the Rand decreased by 4% as the Rand depreciated against all major currencies.

The real effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by 0,7% in the year to June 2011 but increased by 1,3% on a month-to-month basis in the same month.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange decreased from US$23,3 billion in the first quarter of 2011 to US$22,6 billion in the second quarter. This decrease could largely be attributed to a decline in the value of non-resident swap transactions, which decreased from US$11,1 billion per day to US$9,5 billion per day over the period.

As a result, domestic banks' share (i.e. authorised dealers in foreign exchange) in the turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange gained some ground.

Exchange controls

Exchange-control regulations are administered by the SARB on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers with limited authority in foreign exchange, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department (FSD) of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents of the FSD, but act on behalf of their customers.

Since 1994, South Africa has considerably reformed its exchange-control policies. The approach has been directed at the gradual liberalisation and relaxation of exchange controls, with the intention of replacing them with a strategy aligned to the broader macroprudential approach as part of the long-term exchange-control reform strategy.

There have been gradual exchange-control reforms concerning individuals, corporates and institutional investors. The liberalisation has been focused on progressively increasing the individual foreign capital allowance, increasing institutional investors' foreign exposure and allowing South African firms to raise capital and expand their operations offshore from a domestic base.

Since the drive to liberalise exchange controls in South Africa, in 2010 the Minister of Finance granted the following exchange control dispensations:

Emigrants' blocked assets

A system of exchange control allowances for the export of blocked assets when persons emigrate has been in place in South Africa for a number of decades. In the past, emigrants qualified for a foreign capital allowance of R4 million and R8 million in respect of emigrating individuals and families respectively. Holders of blocked assets wishing to exit more than R4 million/R8 million had to seek approval from the FSD and approval was subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of the excess amount being requested. The R4 million/R8 million limits would be inclusive of the amounts already exited.

In 2010, permission was granted to release all emigrants' blocked assets without the application of the exit levy.

Private individuals residing in South Africa

In 2010, the R4-million offshore capital investment allowance limit for individuals, which was a lifetime limit, was increased to an annual limit of R4 million, subject to compliance with tax legislation. In addition, the single discretionary allowance was increased from R750 000 to R1 million per calendar year, per resident over the age of 18 years, without the requirement that a tax clearance certificate be obtained, which may be apportioned for the purpose of:

- maintenance transfers to the father, mother, brother or sister of the applicant against the production of documentary evidence
- gifts and loans to non-resident individuals or to resident individuals who are overseas temporarily
- donations to missionaries, against production of a letter from an official or recognised religious body confirming that the beneficiary is a missionary
- travel allowance
- study allowance.

Institutional investors

Exchange-control limits on foreign investment by institutional investors such as insurers, pension funds, CIS and investment managers have been liberalised gradually since 1996. Foreign diversification of investment portfolios, consistent with prudential limits, has largely been achieved.

In 2008, the Minister of Finance announced the removal of exchange controls on South African institutional investors and the implementation of prudential regulation of foreign exposures. The controls on foreign-currency transactions that had previously defined the exchange-control regime were replaced by a system of reporting and monitoring of foreign exposures, as part of a broader framework for risk-based financial regulation and supervision.

Retirement funds, long-term insurers, CIS management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad, for example:

- retirement funds and the underwritten policy business of long-term insurers may invest up to 30% of total retail assets; investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes, CIS management companies and investment-linked businesses of long-term insurers are restricted to 35% of total retail assets under management
- institutional investors are allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency denominated portfolio assets in Africa through foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the JSE Ltd
- foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges
- institutional investors are required to report quarterly on the allocation of assets according to the major asset classes and provide information from institutions in excess of the foreign-asset limit on proposed portfolio adjustments to bring foreign asset levels back in line.

South African institutional investors may invest in rand-denominated instruments issued abroad as well as instruments issued by South African corporates in the offshore market, on condition that the institutional investor remains within its applicable foreign-portfolio investment allowance.

Research was underway in 2011 to complete the move from control-based to principle-based prudential regulation of foreign exposure for institutional investors and to finalise the definition of foreign assets that capture the underlying risk.

South African corporates

Mandated parastatals, as defined in Schedule 2 of the PFMA, 1999, private companies, public companies and listed companies wishing to make bona fide new outward FDIs into companies, branches and offices outside the Common Monetary Area (CMA), comprising South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland and Lesotho, where the total cost of such new investments does not exceed R500 million per company per calendar year, may do so without prior approval of the FSD. Where the total cost of such investments exceeds R500 million per investment, such transactions require prior approval from the FSD. However, no investment limit applies to corporates investing offshore.

The exchange-control requirement that a shareholding of at least 25% is obtained was replaced with the requirement that at least 10% of the foreign target entity's voting rights must be acquired. In addition, the prohibition of the South African Development Community loop structures has been abolished, while the policy regarding loop structures into the CMA remains extant.

Authorised dealers may also extend foreign currency-denominated facilities to South African corporates for financing approved FDI. To further enable South African companies, trusts, partnerships and banks to manage their foreign exposure, they were, with effect from February 2008, permitted to participate without restriction in the Rand Futures Market on the JSE Ltd. This dispensation was also extended to investment in inward listed (foreign) instruments on the JSE Ltd.

Corporates that had existing approved subsidiaries abroad were allowed to expand such activities without prior approval, subject to certain conditions. Dividends declared by the offshore subsidiaries of South African corporates may be retained offshore and used for any purpose, without recourse to South Africa.

The modernisation of the current exchange-control framework is inspired by the realisation that the existing exchange-control regime is outdated and that it may lead to a negative perception of the South African economy globally, which could impede on the country's ability to attract FDIs.

In this regard, National Treasury released a discussion document entitled *A Review Framework for Cross Border Direct Investment into South Africa*, with a view of developing a policy framework that would ensure consideration is given to public interest in inbound FDI into the country's strategic sectors in a more transparent manner.

In February 2011, the Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE) Ltd announced that it was getting a new trading system that would make equity market transactions 400 times faster. The migration was planned for the first half of 2012.

The JSE would move its equity market trading activity – the buying and selling of company shares – onto a system called Millennium Exchange. The new system will operate from Johannesburg, instead of London where it was based.

Gateway to Africa

In support of government's broader strategy to make South Africa the gateway into Africa, exchange-control reforms to complement tax proposals for attracting international headquarter companies that wish to invest in the rest of Africa using South Africa as a base were announced in the 2010 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement.

The main criterion to comply with for the International Headquarter company (IHQ) to be approved for registration with the SARB, in line with the tax proposal, is that South African shareholders will have no more than a 20% shareholding in the headquarter company. The company will therefore remain a majority foreign-owned company and be treated as a foreign company for the purposes of exchange-control other than reporting. The shares and/or debt of the IHQ may not be listed on the JSE Ltd nor may the shares in the IHQ be directly or indirectly held by a shareholder with shares or debt listed on the JSE Ltd.

The transactions of South African firms with the IHQ company will be treated in the same way as any other transaction with a foreign entity. Since the IHQ company is foreign-owned with at least 80% of the assets consisting of foreign shares and foreign loans, the approach is to allow the company to play a major role in capital deployment in South Africa and the rest of Africa. The IHQ company is allowed to borrow freely from abroad and on-lend to foreign locations (mostly Africa) through South Africa.

In October 2011, the stock exchanges of the BRICS emerging market bloc – Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa – announced an initiative to cross-list benchmark equity index derivatives on each other's boards, in an effort to expose investors to opportunities in the world's leading developing markets.

The initiative was announced at the 51st annual general meeting of the World Federation of Exchanges in Johannesburg.

The initiative brings together the Bolsa de Valores, Mercadorias & Futuros de São Paulo from Brazil, Moscow Interbank Currency Exchange from Russia, Hong Kong Exchanges and Clearing Limited as the initial China representative, and South Africa's JSE Limited.

The National Stock Exchange of India and the BSE Limited (formerly known as Bombay Stock Exchange) have signed letters of support and will join the alliance after finalising outstanding requirements.

These seven exchanges represent a combined listed market capitalisation of US$9,02 trillion, equity market trading value per month of $422 billion and 9 481 companies listed. They also accounted for over 18% of all exchange-listed derivative contracts traded by volume worldwide, in June 2011.

Appropriately mandated private equity funds meeting certain criteria are also allowed to obtain upfront approval from FSD for investments into Africa.

Active currency management

With effect from 15 April 2010, authorised dealers may provide active currency management facilities to their South African resident and non-resident clients (excluding transactions by private individuals trading on online platforms).

Authorised dealers may grant forward cover to their South African resident clients with an underlying foreign-exchange exposure, without the necessity to view suitable documentary evidence at the time of entering into the contract, provided that the duration of the exposure is less than six months.

Local financial assistance to affected persons and non-residents

To improve access to domestic credit in financing FDI in South Africa or for domestic working capital requirements, since October 2009 foreign investors have been allowed to borrow domestically, without restriction, to finance FDIs. Affected persons and non-residents who will use the funds for financial transactions and/or to acquire residential property in South Africa will be restricted to the 1:1 ratio that applies to these transactions. Local financial assistance made available to emigrants remains subject to the 1:1 ratio.

Customer foreign currency (CFC) accounts and foreign bank accounts

Effective from October 2009, South African entities (legal persons) operating CFC accounts are permitted to retain funds in their CFC accounts without the obligation to convert the funds into rand, with the current repatriation requirement remaining extant. South African companies are permitted to open and operate foreign bank accounts, without prior approval of Excon, for the accrual of funds in respect of transactions permissible in terms of the exchange-control rulings or a specific exchange-control authority.

JSE Limited

As South Africa's only full-service securities exchange, the JSE Ltd connects buyers and sellers in different markets such as equities, which include a primary and secondary board; equity derivatives; agricultural derivatives; and interest-rate instruments. The JSE Ltd is one of the top 20 exchanges in the world in terms of market capitalisation.

The JSE Ltd is the market of choice for local and international investors looking to gain exposure to the leading capital markets in South Africa and the broader African continent. The JSE Ltd also provides companies with the opportunity to raise capital in a highly regulated environment through its markets: the Main Board and AltX, the Alternative Exchange. A respected brand associated with high market integrity, the JSE Ltd is regarded as a mature, efficient, secure market with world-class regulation, trading, clearing, settlement assurance and risk management.

The exchange has been part of that process, playing an instrumental role in creating the internationally prominent King II Code on Corporate Governance. The JSE Ltd's listing requirements demand that all companies adhere to key concepts of King II and all companies are required to report on their level of compliance with the code in their annual financial statements. Furthermore, the JSE Ltd has harmonised its listing requirements, disclosure and continuing obligations with those of the London Stock Exchange and offers superb investor protection.

The JSE Ltd renders a diversified range of products and services. It provides investors with the opportunity to trade a multitude of financial instruments, and at the heart of its diversified product offerings are single stock futures (SSFs). This area has grown substantially to become one of the five largest in the world.

SSFs are ideal for conservative investors seeking to hedge their share portfolios, or for sophisticated speculators seeking geared exposure to anticipated share price movements. This market also offers investors derivatives on indices, Kruger rands, dividend futures as well as can-do options, which give investors the advantage of listed derivatives with the flexibility of over-the-counter contracts.

The JSE Ltd's Agricultural Products Market reflects the commitment to providing versatility in the product offering.

It is a transparent electronic market used vigorously in the price-risk management of commodities through futures. This market continues to grow due to a greater understanding of its function and the development of a broader base of marketing strategies based on the derivative products. It is the first market in the world for trading both the cash spot bond (secondary trading) as well as the interest-rate derivative products on one trading platform.

The JSE Ltd provides total price transparency through its world-class information systems. The trading activity on the markets generates a wide range of data that assist market participants with make-or-break investment decisions.

The JSE Ltd has both domestic and global reach in terms of the provision of all its information, through data-providers, investment banks, other financial industry stakeholders and directly through the exchange.

JSE Ltd experienced a fair year in challenging conditions in 2010, driven by strong performances from the cash equity market, information product sales and commodity derivatives. Group revenues climbed by 9% to R1 255 million, up from R1 156 million in 2009, in a year of focus on operational projects and responding to changes in the global exchange industry.

JSE Ltd's operating costs before net finance income rose by 8% to R879 million, from R810 million in 2009, resulting in a net profit after tax of R378 million. Much of the cost increase can be attributed to costs related to JSE Ltd's large IT projects, which required increased staff numbers.

JSE Ltd had no borrowings in 2010, and R1 046 million in cash reserves, up from R921 million in 2009.

Revenue from the issuer services division rose to R86 million, mainly owing to the inclusion of 12 months of revenue from the interest rate market. In June 2009, JSE Ltd acquired the Bond Exchange South Africa (BESA). The JSE's issuer services division generates revenue from all listings, including companies, bonds and other instruments. The number of new company listings on the JSE rose from 10 to 14 in 2010, including one on AltX and one on the Africa Board.

Equities trading revenue again grew strongly, up 5% year-on-year, from R310 million in 2009 to R325 million in 2010, owing to growing trading volumes. The number of daily equity trades increased 13% year-on-year. A new equities billing model aimed at incentivising increased trade was implemented in March 2010.

In the equity derivatives market, the number of futures contracts traded rose in terms of value and number, but revenue fell slightly owing to a changed product mix. Trade in international derivatives grew particularly strongly. The team continues to bring new products to the market. To encourage a move to a central order book and to stimulate greater activity on the equity derivatives market, the JSE Ltd introduced the maker-taker billing model in July 2010.

Trade in currency derivatives for 2010 was slightly down from 2009 levels. In 2010, the JSE added contracts on the Swiss Franc and Chinese Yuan.

The commodities derivatives market performed well in 2010, with a 12% rise in commodity derivative contracts to 2,1 million. This is largely owing to a rise in volumes traded in its oldest product set – agricultural product derivatives – but also aided by the expansion of trade into new hard commodities products thanks to a licensing agreement with the CME Group.

Increased revenue from the interest rate market results from the inclusion of 12 months of revenue against six months the previous year, when it was acquired from the BESA. Revenue fell 10% to R35 million. Bond market volumes in 2010 were driven partly by foreigners entering the South African bond market, with net purchases valued at R58,6 billion. Interest rate derivatives volumes continued to grow off a low base. The JSE continues to discuss the model and ways forward with all market participants.

The Information Products Sales division's focus on previously untapped markets paid off. This is one of the reasons why revenue grew 7% to R117 million in 2010, from R109 million in 2009.

Strate Limited

Since its inception over 10 years ago, Strate Ltd is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

Strate Ltd's core purpose is to mitigate risk, bring efficiencies to the South African financial markets and improve its profile as an investment destination. Strate Ltd is aligned to international best practices and strives to ensure operational excellence and provide enhancements for the good of the southern African financial markets.

Strate Ltd handles the settlement of a number of securities, including equities and bonds for the JSE Ltd, as well as a range of derivative products such as warrants, exchange traded funds, retail notes and tracker funds. It has added the settlement of money-market securities to its portfolio of services.

Acknowledgements

Business Day
Budget 2012, People's Guide, published by National Treasury
Budget Review, 2012 published by National Treasury
Development Bank of Southern Africa
Development Indicators, 2010
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Financial Services Board, *Annual Report 2011*
National Gambling Board
National Treasury
Quarterly Bulletin, *September 2011*, published by the South African Reserve Bank
South African Reserve Bank
South African Revenue Service

www.dti.gov.za
www.ffc.co.za
www.fin24.com
www.fsb.co.za
www.gov.za
www.jse.co.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.news24.co.za
www.nlb.org.za
www.pic.gov.za
www.responsiblegambling.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samint.co.za
www.sars.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Botha, M *et al*. 2009. *South African Financial Planning Handbook, 2009*. Durban: LexisNexis.
Engels, R (ed). 2009. *Financial Adviser's Handbook, 2009.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Fourie, M, Opperman, L, Scott and Kumar, K. 2011. *Municipal Finance and Accounting.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
A Glossary of Financial Planning Law. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
Green, P. 2010. *Trevor Manuel.* Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman.
Hugo, WMJ and Badenhorst-Weiss, JA. 2011. *Purchasing and Supply Management.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors (South Africa). 2011. *Manual of Information 2011 Guidelines for Registered Auditors*. Johannesburg.
Mahadea, D and Van Zyl, J (eds). 2012. *Entrepreneurship and Small Business Management.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Parliament, the Budget and Poverty in South Africa: A Shift in Power. 2009. Pretoria: Idasa.
Pauw, JC *et al*. 2009. *Managing Public Money: Systems From the South.* Sandton: Heinemann.
South Africa. 2008. *SAICA Legislation Handbook, 2008/2009,* South African Institute of Chartered Accountants. Durban: LexisNexis.
South Africa. 2009. *Public Finance Management Act, 1 of 1999 & Regulations.* Cape Town: Juta Law.
The South African Financial Planning Handbook 2010. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
Van Zyl, C *et al* (eds). 2009. *Understanding South African Financial Markets*. 3rd ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik.



Government system

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

The Government of South Africa is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The outcomes approach, which started in 2010, is embedded in and a direct result of the electoral mandate. Five priority areas have been identified: decent work and sustainable livelihoods, education, health, rural development, food security and land reform and the fight against crime and corruption. These have been translated into the following 12 outcomes to create a better life for all:

- better quality basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contribution to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

President Jacob Zuma signed performance agreements with all ministers, based on the outcomes and targets. After consultation at all government levels, service-delivery agreements describing the outputs, activities and inputs required to achieve the 12 outcomes were signed in November 2010.

The service-delivery agreements have resulted in a higher level of understanding of the challenges faced by the different departments.

The service-delivery agreements and plans for realising them are available on the Government and Presidency websites.

The outcomes are reviewed by Cabinet and are open to public scrutiny, as part of government's commitment to the people of South Africa to be transparent and accountable for service delivery.

The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

As Chapter One of the Constitution stipulates, South Africa is a sovereign and democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter Two of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Since the establishment of Parliament in 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The website *www.parliament.gov.za* encourages comment and feedback from the public.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the speaker, assisted by the deputy speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government. Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance. NCOP Online (*www.parliament.gov.za/ncop*) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

The Presidency, June 2012

President	Jacob Zuma
Deputy President	Kgalema Motlanthe

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the council rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments. There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The President

The head of state is the President and he/she leads the Cabinet. The President is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The Presidency

There are two ministers in The Presidency: Mr Trevor Manuel, who is responsible for the National Planning Commission (NPC), and Mr Collins Chabane, responsible for Performance Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration in The Presidency.

The NPC is responsible for strategic planning for the country to ensure one national plan to which all spheres of government must adhere. The 26 commission members were inaugurated on 11 May 2010.

In June 2011, Minister Manuel released the NPC's *Diagnostic Document* and *Draft Vision Statement for 2030*, as a basis of national dialogue among all South Africans.

The public engagement process ended in September 2011. The diagnostic report recognised the progress made in the transition from an apartheid state to a democratic one. Despite these successes, the report concluded that more meaningful and rapid progress was needed to reduce poverty and achieve equality, and identified nine challenges:

- too few South Africans are employed
- the quality of education for most black people remains poor
- poorly located, inadequate and badly maintained infrastructure
- spatial challenges continue to marginalise the poor
- South Africa's growth path is highly resource-intensive and hence unsustainable
- the ailing public health system confronts a massive disease burden
- the performance of the Public Service is uneven
- corruption undermines state legitimacy and service delivery
- South Africa remains a divided society.

The first two challenges are seen as the main obstacles to reducing poverty and equality, and should be addressed accordingly.

As part of the public dialogue about the *Vision Statement 2030*, the NPC Jam was launched in August 2011. This live, 72-hour online discussion took place from 28 September to 1 October 2011 and addressed both the Vision Statement 2030 and resolving the nine challenges.

NPC commissioners, joined by academics, public servants and celebrities, took part in the discussion along with members of the public. Almost 10 000 South Africans registered, more than 10 300 log-ins were recorded and there were over 8 700 individual posts. The result was the biggest online dialogue ever held in Africa.

Following public discussion, the amended and finalised *National Development Plan: Vision for 2030* was released in November 2011. It focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- creating jobs
- expanding infrastructure
- sustainable use of resources
- transforming urban and rural spaces
- improving education and training
- providing quality healthcare
- building a capable state
- fighting corruption
- transforming society
- uniting the nation.

The proposed development plan, subject to public comment, seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030.

Achievements of the Department of Performance Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration included the following:

- developing a position paper to guide government in implementing the outcomes approach
- developing an implementation guide to translate the *Green Paper on National Strategic Planning* into action
- signing performance agreements between the President and ministers
- finalising delivery agreements on achieving the outcomes between key stakeholders
- establishing the terms of outcomes-implementation forums, which are largely cluster and ministerial meetings with provincial MECs to monitor progress and submit quarterly reports to Cabinet.
- developing a management performance assessment tool to enable objective performance assessments of departments and municipalities by involving departments and bodies across the sphere of government to deliver input
- improving frontline service delivery, where the public interfaces with government.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the Leader of Government Business in the National Assembly.

Deputy ministers

The President appoints deputy ministers from among the members of the National Assembly.

Traditional leadership

Traditional leadership institutions play a critical role in South Africa's constitutional democracy and are at the core of South Africa's success as a nation in achieving the country's developmental objectives, particularly in so far as they apply to the Rural Development Strategy.

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as in June 2012

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Dr Pieter Mulder
Arts and Culture	Paul Mashatile	Dr Joe Phaahla
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Dina Pule	Stella Ndabeni
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Richard Baloyi	Yunus Carrim
Correctional Services	Sibusiso Ndebele	Adv Ngoako Ramatlhodi
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Thabang Makwetla
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Prof. Hlengiwe Mkhize
Energy	Dipuo Peters	Barbara Thompson
Finance	Pravin Gordhan	Nhlanhla Nene
Health	Dr Aaron Motsoaledi	Dr Gwen Ramokgopa
Higher Education and Training	Dr Blade Nzimande	Mduduzi Manana
Home Affairs	Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Tokyo Sexwale	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Marius Fransman Ebrahim Ebrahim
Justice and Constitutional Development	Jeff Radebe	Andries Nel
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	-
Mineral Resources	Susan Shabangu	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Nathi Mthethwa	Makhotso Sotyu
Public Enterprises	Malusi Gigaba	Gratitude Magwanishe
Public Service and Administration	Dr Lindiwe Sisulu	Ayanda Dlodlo
Public Works	Thembelani Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Solomon Tsenoli
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Bathabile Dlamini	Maria Ntuli
Sport and Recreation	Fikile Mbalula	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Dr Siyabonga Cwele	-
The Presidency National Planning Commission	Trevor Manuel	-
The Presidency Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, as well as Administration	Collins Chabane	Obed Bapela
Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Tokozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Dr Rob Davies	Elizabeth Thabethe Thandi Tobias-Pokolo
Transport	Benedict Martins	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Environmental Affairs	Edna Molewa	Rejoice Mabudafhasi
Women, Children and People with Disabilities	Lulu Xingwana	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

Government remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership and appreciates the role it plays in society.

The Department of Traditional Affairs was established in April 2010 to underline the critical focus on traditional leadership. This signifies the importance that is placed on the role and place of traditional leaders in the lives of people, especially in rural areas.

The strategic role of the department is to assist the institution of traditional leadership to transform itself into a strategic partner of government in the development of communities.

The department has committed itself to contributing towards the achievement of the objectives of Outcome 9 in a number of ways, namely:

- Facilitating communication leading to the release of land to municipalities for housing, burial and other developmental purposes through a consultative process with traditional leaders and the national, provincial and local houses of traditional leaders.
- Strengthening collaboration between councils and traditional leaders at local level for development and service-delivery purposes.
- Coordinating a project on the assessment of the state of governance within the area of traditional affairs. By October 2011, six provincial assessments had been conducted and the process to analyse data from provinces and develop a province-specific and a composite national report had begun.

The department is working on a range of policies which, among other things, include unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa, and the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards.

Numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

Legislation

The Department of Traditional Affairs, with its expanded mandate, is amending legislation to create an enabling legislative and regulatory environment for dealing effectively, efficiently, holistically and in a sustainably manner with traditional affairs.

The National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process.

The amendment of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.

Institutions

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy (40% of members must be elected) and gender representivity (one third of members must be women).

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

The department is finalising guidelines on the operations of the National House of Traditional Leaders. The guidelines will constitute the first internal document that deals specifically with issues of operation and tools-of-trade for members of the national house. In the past, these were dealt with through departmental policies primarily meant for govenrment officials.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as in February 2012

Eastern Cape	
Noxolo Kiviet	Premier
Mlibo Qoboshiane	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Zoleka Capa	Rural Development and Agrarian Reform
Mandla Makupula	Education and Training
Mcebisi Jonas	Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Sicelo Gqobana	Health
Phumulo Masualle	Finance and Provincial Planning
Thandiswa Marawu	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Helen August-Sauls	Human Settlements, Safety and Liaison
Xoliswa Tom	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture
Pemmy Majodina	Social Development and Children
Free State	
Sekgobelo Elias Magashule	Premier
Tate Pule Makgoe	Education
Olly Mlamleli	Cooperative Governance, Traditional Leadership and Human Settlements
Mosebenzi Zwane	Agriculture
Fezi Ngubentombi	Health
Seiso Mohai	Finance
Butana Komphela	Police, Roads and Transport
Sisi Elisa Mabe	Public Works and Rural Development
Sefora Sisi Ntombela	Social Development
Dan Kgothule	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Mamiki Qabathe	Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
Gauteng	
Nomvula Paula Mokonyane	Premier
Nandi Mayathula-Khoza	Agriculture and Rural Development
Barbara Creecy	Education
Mandla Nkomfe	Finance
Ntombi Mekgwe	Health and Social Development
Humphrey Mmemezi	Local Government and Housing
Nonhlanhla Faith Mazibuko	Community Safety
Lebogang Maile	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Qedani Dorothy Mahlangu	Economic Development and Planning
Bheki Simon Nkosi	Infrastructure Development
Ismail Vadi	Roads and Public Transport
KwaZulu-Natal	
Dr Zweli Mkhize	Premier
Dr Banginkosi Meshack Radebe	Agriculture, Environmental Affairs and Rural Development
Senzo Edward Mchunu	Education
Mike Mabuyakhulu	Economic Development and Tourism
Catharina Magdalena Cronje	Finance
Sibongiseni Maxwell Dlomo	Health
Nomusa Dube	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Weziwe Gcotyelwa Thusi	Social Development
Ravi Pillay	Human Settlements and Public Works
Thembinkosi Willies Mchunu	Transport and Community Safety and Liaison
Ntombikayise Sibhidla-Saphetta	Arts, Culture, Sport and Recreation

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as in February 2012

Limpopo	
Cassel Charles Mathale	Premier
Namane Dickson Masemola	Education
David Masondo	Finance
Dikeledi Magadzi	Health and Social Development
Soviet Lekganyane	Local Government and Housing
Pitsi Paul Moloto	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Dipuo Letsatsi-Duba	Agriculture
Dr Happy Joyce Mashamba	Sport, Arts and Culture
Pinky Kekana	Roads and Public Transport
George Muthundinne Phadagi	Safety, Security and Liaison
Thabitha Mohlala	Public Works
Mpumalanga	
David Mabuza	Premier
Candith Mashego-Dlamini	Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Administration
Norman Mokoena	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Reginah Mhaule	Education
Dikeledi Mahlangu	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Siphosezwe Masango	Human Settlements
Clifford Mkansi	Health and Social Development
Yvonne Pinky Phosa	Finance
Sibongile Manana	Culture, Sport and Recreation
Vusi Shongwe	Community Safety, Security and Liaison
Madala Masuku	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Northern Cape	
Hazel Jenkins	Premier
Norman Shushu	Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
Grizelda Cjiekella	Education
John Block	Finance, Economic Affairs and Tourism
Mxolisi Simon Sokatsha	Health
Kenneth Mosimanegape Mmoiemang	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
Patrick Mabilo	Transport, Safety and Liaison
Alvin Botes	Social Services and Population Development
Pauline Williams	Sport, Arts and Culture
Sylvia Lucas	Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation
Dawid Rooi	Roads and Public Works
North West	
Thandi Modise	Premier
Partick Hlomane	Sport, Arts and Culture
Boitumelo Tshwene	Agriculture and Rural Development
Tebogo Modise	Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism
Paul Sebego	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Raymond Elisha	Education
Magome Masike	Health
Moruakgomo Louisa Mabe	Finance
Mahlakeng Mahlakeng	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Mosetsanagape Mokomela-Mothibi	Social Development, and Women, Children and People with Disabilities
Desbo Sefanyetso Mohono	Human Settlements, Safety and Liaison

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as in February 2012

Western Cape	
Helen Zille	Premier
Gerrit van Rensburg	Agriculture
Dan Plato	Community Safety
Donald Grant	Education
Anton Bredell	Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
Alan Winde	Finance, Economic Development and Tourism
Theuns Botha	Health
Bonginkosi Madikizela	Human Settlements
Robin Carlisle	Transport and Public Works
Albert Fritz	Social Development
Ivan Meyer	Cultural Affairs and Sport

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of Section 22(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader and headmen and -women), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 requires that the commission to investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Department of Cooperative Governance

The Department of Cooperative Governance oversees the implementation of, among other Acts, the following:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005)
- Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004)
- Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998)
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998)*.

Its mission is to facilitate cooperative governance and support all spheres of government, by:

- developing appropriate policies and legislation to promote integration in government's development programmes and service delivery
- providing strategic interventions, support and partnerships to facilitate policy implementation in the provinces and local government
- creating enabling mechanisms for communities to participate in governance.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet. Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

However, a provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

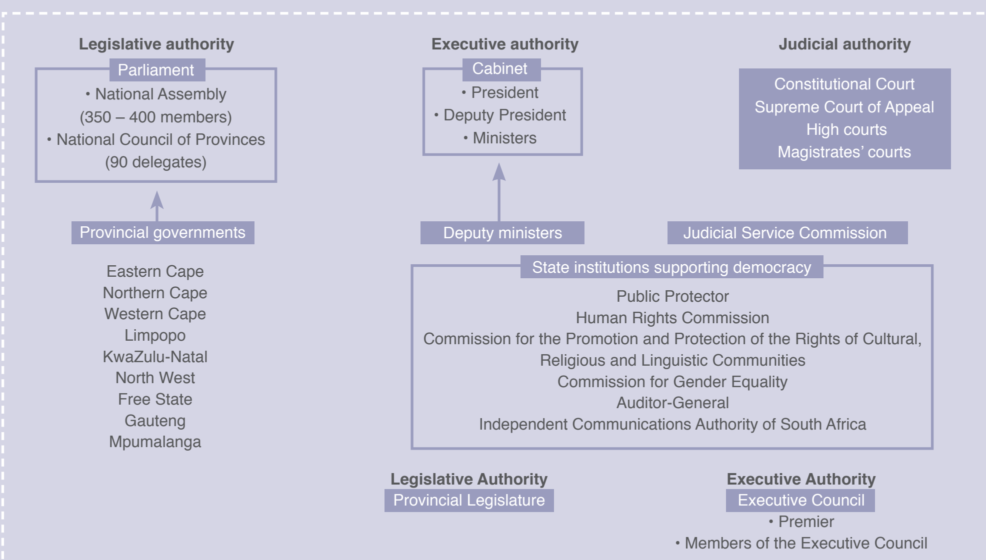
Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation and activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, therefore strengthening co-operative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementing the New Growth Path (NGP) in all spheres of government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Structure and functions of the South African Government



Local government

There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), which formally recognise organised local-government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The Department of Cooperative Governance aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning (IDP), local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government.

The department is also responsible for coordinatingand supporting policy development, implementing the LGSA, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipality.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems and single employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, and the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils.

District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning.

The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Legislation and policy

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 establishes a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.

The Act also establishes a system for municipalities to report on their performance, and provides residents with an opportunity to compare this performance with that of municipalities.

It also regulates public-private partnerships. The Act allows municipalities significant powers to corporatise their services, to establish utilities for service delivery, or enter into partnerships with other service-providers. The Act provides for the adoption of a credit-control policy for municipalities that will provide for the termination of services in the event of non-payment. Municipalities have the power to pass by-laws to implement the policy.

The MFMA, 2003 is aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and equitable valuation methods of properties, and for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies.

The Local Government: Municipality Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009), was introduced in September 2009 and aims to extend the validity of a valuation roll and supplementary valuation rolls from four to six years.

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011), is aimed at professionalising local government for improved service delivery and performance management, while also instilling a people-centred local government mindset in municipalities.

A key objective of the Act is to progressively align the systems of municipal administration and human-resource management (HRM) with those of the Public Service in national and provincial government.

The aim of the Act, among other things, is to:

- professionalise local government by ensuring that the administrative apparatus of municipalities is staffed by appropriately qualified and competent persons to improve service delivery
- require employment contracts and performance agreements of municipal managers and managers directly accountable to municipal managers be consistent with the uniform systems and procedures set nationally
- extend the Minister's regulatory power to make regulations relating to macro-benefits such as medical aid and pension benefits after consultation with the ministers of health and finance.

The following bills and amendments to legislation were introduced in Parliament in 2011/12:

- the Municipal Property Rates Amendment Bill, 2011, which provides for a more equitable and transparent system of rating different property categories with strengthened regulatory provisions that protect against excessive rating in the interest of a stable macro economy; and protection of the vulnerable through fairer treatment of those who cannot afford to pay rates
- the Monitoring, Support and Intervention Bill, 2011, which provides for the supervision of provinces and municipalities, including monitoring and intervening in a municipality when obligations are not fulfilled.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy (LGTAS)

In 2009, an assessment of the state of local government found that problems in municipalities included poor governance and accountability, weak financial management and a high vacancy rate in critical senior management posts in many instances.

The findings further indicated an inability in some municipalities to deliver on the core set of critical municipal services. The findings pointed to a need to do things differently and respond directly to the findings of those assessments.

In reaction, the LGTAS was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery.

The twin aims of the LGTAS are to:

- restore the confidence of the majority of South Africans in municipalities as the primary delivery organ of the developmental state at local level.
- rebuild and improve the basic requirements for a functional, responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient developmental local government.

National Treasury releases local government's revenue and expenditure quarterly during the financial year. The statement covers revenue and expenditure as well as conditional grant spending for the relevant period, and can be found on National Treasury's website.

This information, referred to as the In-Year Management, Monitoring and Reporting System for Local Government, enables national and provincial government to exercise oversight over municipalities, and identify possible problems in implementing municipal budgets and conditional

The South African Local Government Association (Salga) formed part of the first global gathering of sister-city and town-twinning organisations, held in September 2011, in Cairo, Egypt.

Many of the attending international delegates acknowledged that local government in South Africa was the most established on the continent and that Salga was the most established local government association in Africa.

Attendees reviewed the different models for city-to-city and community-to-community relationships, and funding practices; and discussed best strategies for keeping these relationships relevant in today's global economy.

grants. The information is also of interest to policy-makers, researchers, sector specialists and academics with an interest in local government. Also important is the fact that the information will empower communities to hold their municipal councils accountable.

The fact that all municipalities now consistently produce quarterly in-year financial reports is a significant achievement for local government. This is a massive improvement from the 2007/08 financial year, when less than 50 municipalities produced quarterly financial reports regularly. This improvement facilitates transparency and better in-year management of budgets.

According to the fourth-quarter reports for 2010/11, municipalities' cash-flow situations had improved compared to the previous quarters of the same financial year. This was largely due to significant underexpenditure on operating and capital budgets.

A differentiated approach to managing service delivery through interventions in municipal financing, planning and support underlies several of the sub-output areas. In this regard, a policy framework to bring intergovernmental coherence to the approach is being developed. This will include the concept of segmentation of municipalities, a revised IDP framework to bring critical focus to priority service-delivery areas, a simplified revenue plan for poorer-performing or more vulnerable entities, and further studies on the governance options for viable and non-viable municipalities. Approximately 70 smaller local municipalities were targeted by the end of 2011.

Operation Clean Audit 2014

A key programme of the LGTAS is Operation Clean Audit 2014. Its main purpose is to address challenges faced by municipalities and provinces in managing audits, especially audit findings and queries from the Auditor-General (AG). The campaign seeks to achieve clean audits in municipalities and provincial government departments by 2014.

While there is still some distance to go towards achieving sound financial management in municipalities, there was an improvement in 2011 compared to previous years.

In 2004/05, 61 municipalities received financially unqualified audits. This figure increased to 94 in 2007/08, 117 in 2008/09 and 127 in 2009/10. While only two municipalities received clean audits in 2004/05, there were four in 2008/09 and seven in 2009/10.

While national and provincial government provide support, the primary responsibility to achieve clean audits remains that of municipalities. Therefore, the municipal political leadership must set the right tone and foster the right culture. For this reason, the Councillor Induction Training Programme was established. It is aimed at equipping new councillors with a good understanding of their responsibilities, including good financial management.

Provincial coordinating committees (PCCs) have been established with key drivers being the provincial departments responsible for local government and provincial treasuries. In some provinces, the Premier's Office participates in these structures.

The PCCs meet at least quarterly and municipalities report on progress made in implementing their audit remedial action plans in response to issues raised by the AG. Specific initiatives to support municipalities in improving audit outcomes include:

- providing guidance on the establishment and functioning of municipal public accounts committees (MPACs)
- providing MPACs with training, in partnership with the South African Local Government Association (Salga), the Association of Public Accounts Committees and National Treasury
- the department, in partnership with National Treasury, embarking on a process to determine the reasons for the failure of some municipalities to establish internal audit units and audit committees, and provide recommendations on appropriate intervention measures
- National Treasury deploying financial experts who serve as MFMA, 2003 advisers to provincial treasuries and some municipalities

- the Department of Cooperative Governance establishing an inspectorate to fight fraud and corruption.

Community Work Programme (CWP)

The CWP contributes to developing public assets in poor communities and provides income security and work experience for participants, enhances dignity and promotes social and economic inclusion. The programme was transferred from the Department of Public Works to the Department of Cooperative Governance in 2009/10.

The CWP aims to provide an employment safety net by providing a minimum level of regular work opportunities to participants, with a predictable number of days of work provided a month. In 2011, the programme provided two days of work a week, eight days a month and 100 days a year per participant at a wage rate of R60 per day. An amount of R647,899 million was spent on implementing the programme in 2011/12.

Within the context of the NGP, in 2011/12, the department aimed to promote and support private-sector driven catalytic business ventures and programmes that can support job creation on a large scale.

It also recognised that the small, medium and micro-enterprise sector, emerging farmers and cooperatives play a critical role in job creation. By September 2011, 70 844 work opportunities were created under the CWP.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development, which allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life for all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to Nodal Economic Development Planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor pogrammes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised for the sake of achieving economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing municipal infrastructure grant projects. The grant is aimed at eradicating municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The MIG allocation for 2010/11 was R9,7 million, which is expected to increase to R15,3 billion in 2013/14. The targets for 2010/11 were:

- basic water: 1,4 million households
- basic sanitation: 808 070 households
- roads: 1,1 million households
- community lighting: 540 186 households.

The targets for the 2013/14 financial year are:

- basic water: two million households
- basic sanitation: 1,2 million households
- roads: 1,7 million households
- community lighting: 768 150 households.

By the end of 2011, the department was in the final stages of setting up the Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency (Misa) to accelerate municipal infrastructure delivery. Particular attention will be paid to weaker municipalities. Misa aims to:

- support comprehensive infrastructure planning at municipal level
- support municipal infrastructure development, maintenance, operations and service provision in low-capacity municipalities through the procurement of relevant service-providers, and by ensuring performance as contracted
- support the management of operations and ensure a proper maintenance programme for municipal infrastructure

On 27 April 2011, Freedom Day, at a ceremony at the Presidential Guest House in Pretoria, President Jacob Zuma bestowed national orders, the country's highest civilian honour, on 33 South Africans and four foreigners for outstanding achievements and contributions to freedom and development in South Africa. It was the first time the awards ceremony was held in conjunction with the country's Freedom Day celebrations.

- coordinate a focused technical support programme with existing support partners
- monitor the quality of infrastructure provided
- develop and coordinate the implementation of an appropriate sector-wide capacity-development initiative and assist municipalities to develop a capacity-development plan to strengthen their institutions over the long term.

Capacity-building

A capacity-building plan for local government was developed regarding issues surrounding the Outcome 12 achievements.

Government aims to revive and strengthen the Local Government Training Academy (Logola) so that new councillors are equipped to discharge their responsibilities effectively.

Logola is responsible for, among other things, developing the curriculum for the Municipal Leadership Development Programme, with its main aim being to develop a curriculum that will lead to the enhancement of a politically mature senior leadership within the local government sphere.

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is a constitutional institution established by the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998.

The board's main function is to determine municipal boundaries in accordance with the Act and other related legislation, and to advise on demarcation matters.

In addition, the board is tasked with delimiting wards into metropolitan and local municipalities.

South African Local Government Association

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs in terms of the Organised Local Government Act, 1997.

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs Forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre (NDMC) with functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster-risk.

South Africa has also made significant progress in respect of the implementation of the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint, which aims to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

Through the NDMC, the Department of Cooperative Governance registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority for a national certificate in disaster-risk management. The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

Early in 2011, exceptionally heavy rainfall led to severe flooding in South Africa, causing damage worth millions of rands, displacing thousands and leaving over 100 people dead. An interministerial committee (IMC) was formed to coordinate government's response. It was also tasked with the responsibility of ensuring that all three spheres of government provided assistance and support to the affected communities in a coordinated manner. The NDMC monitored the situation and provided regular reports to the IMC and other institutions. The National Joint Operations Centre was activated to coordinate the response by the Security Cluster.

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) activated the 24-hour operations room to facilitate the speedy flow of information regarding flooding to keep government and the public informed.

Cooperative governance

The importance of cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations in South Africa is reflected in Chapter Three of the Constitution, which determines a number of principles.

A number of intergovernmental structures promote and facilitate cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations between the respective spheres of government.

These include:

- the PCC, comprising the President, the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs and the nine premiers
- ministerial clusters, director-general clusters, and the Forum of South African Directors-General, all which promote programme integration at national and provincial level
- ministerial forums between responsible line-function ministers at national level and their respective counterparts at provincial-government level, which normally meet quarterly and are supported by technical committees
- a number of intergovernmental forums that facilitate cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations.

Oversight, monitoring and early-warning systems play a critical role in helping to make cooperative governance work more effectively.

The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 improves integration among all spheres of government in both policy development and implementation.

Government and communication

The vision of GCIS is government communication that empowers and encourages citizens to participate in democracy and improve the lives of all.

GCIS aims to lead the strategic communication of government by submitting the National Communication Strategy to Cabinet and ensuring coherence of messages, and open and extended channels of communication between government and the people, towards a shared vision.

The Chief Executive Officer of GCIS is government's official spokesperson and chairs the GCIS Executive Committee, a strategising body that integrates, coordinates and rationalises the work of GCIS and government communication structures in government.

GCIS has three branches: Communication and Content Management, Corporate Services, and Government and Stakeholder Engagement.

Two agencies were established under the executive authority of GCIS, namely Brand South Africa (previously the International Marketing Council [IMC]) and the Media Development and Diversity Agency.

Some of the chief directorates include the following:

- The Communication Service Agency provides core communication services to the GCIS and other government departments, both in-house and through outsourcing.
- Content and Writing provides language services on products that require translation and editing. It produces the *South Africa Yearbook*, *Pocket Guide to South Africa, Public Sector Magazine* and *Vuk'uzenzele* and maintains the Government Services, Government Information and GCIS webites. The chief directorate also comprises the Government news agency, BuaNews.
- Media Engagement drives interaction and communication between government and the media.
- Policy and Research conducts research to assess how government should meet public communication needs and monitors media coverage of government programmes.
- Provincial and Local Liaison provides development communication and extends government's information infrastructure through partnerships with provincial and local government. It coordinates government's Thusong Service Centre (TSC) Programme. By February 2012, there were 171 such centres. They aim to bring government services closer to the people.
- The Strategic Planning and Project Management Office implements project management, and coordinates and implements strategic planning and performance monitoring.

In October 2011, a 13-part television series promoting Brand South Africa's *Play Your Part* Campaign, started broadcasting.

The show travelled the length and breadth of the country, asking ordinary South Africans how they are playing their part in their communities, and in the process uncovered a range of inspirational stories.

This follows on Brand South Africa's vision of creating awareness of the opportunities each South African has to make a difference in the country.

The GCIS is central to developing communication strategies and programmes for government's transversal campaigns.

It also assists departments with specific campaigns and events, as well as in developing departmental communication structures.

Brand South Africa

In 2011, the IMC changed its name to Brand South Africa to shift the focus to its core mandate, which is to strengthen, promote and market the South African brand's image to international audiences.

Brand South Africa has a vision for the country to be globally competitive, a Top-20 nation brand (Anholt) and Top-30 nation (World Economic Forum Global Competitive Index) by 2020.

South Africa: Inspiring New Ways, the new slogan for championing the country locally and internationally, was approved by the Cabinet in March 2012, following extensive development and consultation by Brand South Africa.

Brand South Africa's government partners include the departments of trade and industry; environmental affairs; tourism; international relations and cooperation; home affairs; and GCIS.

Other partners include South Africa Tourism.

Targeted advertising campaigns, through broadcast, print and online media, and other traditional marketing techniques are used to raise awareness of all that South Africa offers international investors and tourists.

Programmes and activities organised by Brand South Africa include the following:

- Brand Strategy Development and Management develops frameworks for Brand South Africa's positioning and messaging, and drives the alignment of all stakeholders regarding nation branding and nation-branding messaging. It does this by developing a brand identity and language manual; conducting training and engagement sessions; distributing brand toolkits; maintaining the Brand South Africa portal; and hosting the Brand Summit, Brand South Africa Awards and the Living the Brand and Active Citizens' initiatives.
- Reputation Management manages the reputation of Brand South Africa to build positive awareness, and project the country as an attractive investment, trade and tourism destination. The unit conducts structured engagements, such as facilitating media-awareness tours, holding quarterly media breakfasts with senior editors of key publications and biannual engagements with foreign correspondents, and running regular opinion pieces on key issues.
- Brand Knowledge and Performance (Research) develops and maintains an integrated research and knowledge-management strategy across global and domestic platforms to inform planning, programmes and content development. The subprogramme also researches and tracks Brand South Africa's key performance indicators.
- Stakeholder and Partner Alignment Management ensures consistency and alignment in relation to how South Africa is projected locally and internationally, by ensuring coherence and consistency in the delivery of content and messages, and identifying and activating stakeholder platforms through which the council can reach its audiences and achieve outcomes. This is achieved by the annual Brand Summit with marketers and communicators, to help them understand brand positioning, direction and the management of joint projects.
- Mass Media Advertising increases awareness of branding activities and mobilises South Africans and the global audience as ambassadors of the South African brand by reaching out to them through relevant media platforms and social media. Its initiatives include developing the Brand South Africa blog, establishing a presence for *SouthAfrica.info* on Facebook and producing South African promotional and informative videos.

Elections

The Constitution of South Africa places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

Local government elections were held in May 2011. The highest-ever voter turnout in local elec-

Government is committed to clean governance to ensure public money is well spent. It has taken firm steps towards the establishment of anti-corruption instruments such as the government-wide anti-corruption units, the Multi-Agency Working Group and the Anti-Corruption Hotline. By February 2012, 1 499 officials had been charged with misconduct for corrupt activities – 685 provincially and 814 nationally. Thorough investigation of alleged incidents of corruption had resulted in the recovery of R110 million from perpetrators by various departments.

tions since 2000 was recorded. The turnout was 57,54% of the estimated over 22,7 million eligible voters in the country. The number of councillors appointed from these elections increased by 12,3% and 8,5% from the 2000 and 2006 elections respectively.

Public Service

By the end of October 2011, the Public Service had nearly 1,3 million people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). National government employed 391 922 people and the nine provincial governments 891 430 people.

The Department of Public Service and Administration is mandated to foster good governance and sound administration in the Public Service.

In 2010, the Government identified strategic priorities, which have been translated into 12 outcomes believed to improve service delivery and steer the country in the right direction both socially and economically. The Minister for Public Service and Administration was given the responsibility to coordinate the implementation, monitoring and reporting of Outcome 12: An efficient, effective and development-oriented public service and empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

In translating Outcome 12 into the department's outputs and activities, 10 key priorities and their related objectives have been identified, which are the department's focus over the medium term:

- service-delivery quality and access
- effective systems, structures and processes
- leveraging information and communications technology (ICT) as a strategic resource (enabler)
- effective employment entry into public service and human-resource development (HRD) cadre development
- efficient HRM practices, norms and standards
- healthy, safe working environments for all public servants
- appropriate governance structures and decision-making
- citizen engagement and public participation
- addressing corruption effectively
- contributing towards improved public service and administration in Africa and the international arena.

Conditions of service

Occupation specific dispensations (OSDs) are tailor-made remuneration dispensations for categories of occupation in the Public Service. The introduction of OSDs aims to improve government's ability to attract and retain skilled employees.

Agreements have been reached on OSDs for nurses, educators and legally qualified employees, while OSDs for social workers, health professionals and correctional officials have been developed. A remuneration policy framework for the Single Public Service was prepared.

Policy on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement (Pilir)

The Pilir was implemented in 2006 to improve the management of incapacity leave and ill-health retirement benefits.

Medical assistance

The Government Employees Medical Schemes (Gems) is an important institution within the Ministry for Public Service and Administration portfolio.

By March 2012, Gems had more than 600 000 principal members and 1,6 million beneficiaries.

Gems is one of the top-performing public-service entities. The scheme has reconsidered its operational infrastructure and identified an efficient and cost-effective administration and clearing-house design that will permit the inclusion of additional service-provider contracts, leverage economies of scale, promote competition and further black economic empowerment (BEE), while also enabling smaller providers to render services to Gems.

Single Public Service

Ensuring that services are citizen-informed, and re-engineering the service-delivery model of government and its constituent departments remain a key challenge and consequent focus of the Department of Public Service and Administration.

A related challenge is the requirement to streamline administrative and need processes to deliver simpler, more effective services to citizens, business and other stakeholders. This is central to the strategic objective of customer-service improvement.

For the past few years, the Department of Public Service and Administration has been tasked with developing a blueprint for a Single Public Service.

The department will start implementing the Process Map to Parliament that includes the review of the draft Public Administration Management Bill as part of a process to implement the Single Public Service.

Consultative workshops within government were held to finalise the draft revised legislation. Further consultations were made in the National Economic Development and Labour Council.

Batho Pele ("People First")

Batho Pele remains government's leading campaign to achieve the desired crucial transformation of the hearts and minds of public servants. This is a public-service culture reorientation programme aimed at aligning the behaviour and attitudes of public servants with the practice of the Batho Pele ethos.

The principles of Batho Pele are:

- consultation – citizens should be consulted about the level and quality of the public services they receive and, where possible, be given a choice about the services that are offered
- service standards – citizens should be told what level and quality of public services they will receive so that they are aware of what to expect
- access – all citizens should have equal access to the services to which they are entitled
- courtesy – citizens should be treated with courtesy and consideration
- information – citizens should be given full, accurate information about the public services they are entitled to receive
- openness and transparency – citizens should be told how national and provincial departments are run, how much they cost and who is in charge
- redress – if the promised standard of service is not delivered, citizens should be offered an apology, a full explanation and a speedy and effective remedy; and when complaints are made, citizens should receive a sympathetic, positive response
- value for money – public services should be provided economically and efficiently to give citizens the best possible value for money
- encouraging innovation and rewarding excellence – innovation can be new ways of providing better service, cutting costs, improving conditions, streamlining and generally making changes in line with the spirit of Batho Pele; it is also about rewarding the staff who "go the extra mile"
- customer impact – impact means looking at the benefits or customers, both internal and external; it is how the principles link together to show how overall service delivery and customer satisfaction have improved; and about making sure that customers are aware of and exercising their rights in terms of the Batho Pele principles
- leadership and strategic direction – good leadership is one of the most critical ingredients for successful organisations.

Community development workers (CDWs)

There are approximately 3 100 CDWs employed in the Public Service, working in over 2 000 municipal wards across South Africa. CDWs are the only public servants in South Africa who are required to work in the municipal wards where they live and whose work-related activities straddle the three spheres of government.

One of their aims is to identify children without access to the Early Childhood Development Programme and make them part of it. The department also developed the *Know Your CDW* Campaign in 2011/12.

The CDW Programme played a critical role in making positive development impacts by:

- assisting in the elimination of government service-delivery deadlocks, including bureaucratic bottlenecks in a range of government departments, especially the departments of home affairs and social development
- advocating an organised voice of and for the poor by supporting community-based organisations
- strengthening government-community networks through dissemination of information

- assisting in bridging the gap between the First and the Second Economy as an important part of advancing the South African developmental state.

However, government is aware of specific challenges facing the programme that may hamper the acceleration of service delivery.

A review of the Public Service regulations on the institutionalisation of service-delivery mechanisms, and a framework for community development and public participation is underway.

The Code of Conduct for CDWs will also be reviewed to address conflict between the Public Service and political activities. The department plans to ensure that the CDWs are linked to existing community structures such as school-governing bodies, community policing forums, ratepayers' associations, traditional institutions, citizen assemblies and religious bodies.

African affairs

The Department of Public Service and Administration continues to provide coordination for the implementation of the Continental Capacity Development Programme.

South Africa is engaged in several post-conflict interventions in several countries, namely:

- the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC): developing and implementing the Anti-Corruption Framework, the Public Service Census and capacity-building programmes
- Burundi: rebuilding and strengthening its Public Service for it to run effectively and implementing capacity-building programmes
- Rwanda: capacity-building programmes and leadership development
- South Sudan: capacity-building in HR and enhancing legislative and policy review
- For the first time, government included the participation of traditional leaders as one of the sectors in the Africa Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) process.

The APRM ensures the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated subregional and continental economic integration. This is done by sharing experiences and reinforcing best practices, including identifying deficiencies and assessing capacity-building needs.

Through the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, South Africa was asked to assist in developing a framework for civil society's participation in the review of government programmes.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution. The PSC is tasked and empowered to, among other things, investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service. This mandate entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof, of government programmes.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation and administration, and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles
- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make, and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complied constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
- either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
  - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
  - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
  - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advise national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

The *My Public Service, My Future* Campaign was launched in August 2011. It seeks to accelerate employer-employee contact and information-sharing; reflect on citizen's expectations and rights against the services that public servants are delivering; and foster a new belief set for the Public Service.

Centre for Public-Service Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of, among other things, rural development, and accelerated service delivery at local government level.

The ninth annual Public Sector Innovation Awards Ceremony was held in November 2011.

State Information Technology Agency (Sita)

Sita consolidates and coordinates the State's information technology (IT) resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and improve interoperability.

Sita is committed to government's IT Strategy, which seeks to leverage economies of scale, enhance the interoperability of government systems, ensure system security, eliminate duplication and advance BEE. The strategic priorities are:

- improving financial sustainability
- optimising infrastructure
- extending the service footprint
- modernising public-service operations
- reducing operational costs
- achieving operational excellence
- developing and retaining personnel.

Highlights in service delivery in 2011 included:

- The commencement of a telemedicine project at the departments of health and social development in Limpopo. The project entails the upgrading of infrastructure to ensure suitability for the use of telemedicine equipment and facilities, ensuring that citizens in rural communities receive adequate health consultations for effective healthcare.
- The National Network Upgrade Programme for the South African Police Service (SAPS) made some progress. The ICT teams ensured high service-delivery levels.
- Sita successfully hosted the IEC's Call Centre during the 2011 local government elections.
- The development of a Master Systems Plan for the Mpumalanga Department of Social Development was well underway and Phase One of the project was nearing completion.
- The Poverty Index System piloted in Johannesburg, in collaboration with the departments of housing, social development and health, provided a composite view of indigent citizens. It enabled the city to track human development in its constituencies and support the objectives of the Government's war against poverty.
- Sita provided TSC connectivity.
- The Sita Library Information Management System was implemented to replace legacy systems at provincial and public libraries nationally.

Government Information Technology Officers' (Gito) Council

The Gito Council advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery. Its membership consists of chief information officers from national departments and premiers' offices. The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement guidelines and e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

Palama (Sesotho for "ascend") prepares, incubates and advances the cause of effective, efficient and developmental public service.

Palama's mission and programmes are rooted in the Public-Service priorities. The President declared 2011 as the Year of Job Creation, and subsequently Palama's focus in 2011 was on creating and contributing towards creating jobs.

Palama also collaborated with the National Youth Development Agency on an initiative called Breaking Barriers to Entry, which sources new-generation public servants from a database of unemployed graduates.

Public Service Induction is another programme that Palama rolled out in 2011.

There is induction for non-senior management and Wamkelekile, which is induction for senior management members. Palama converted Wamkelekile to make it available on an e-learning platform for senior managers who cannot attend the classroom phase.

Both programmes are meant to instil and sustain the values and attributes of a public-service cadre. Among other activities, 90 gender mainstreaming training sessions were conducted, with 1 866 officials being trained; and 20 new Palama courses were assessed for gender sensitivity and inclusivity.

In September 2011, Palama held the Public Sector Trainers' Forum for HRD practitioners.

This served as a platform to share experiences and innovative ways to best deliver training in the Public Service.

Department of Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates. This goes beyond merely issuing documents and encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

The Government Printing Works (GPW), a division of the Department of Home Affairs, provides printing, stationery and related services to all government departments, provincial governments and municipalities. It also publishes, markets and distributes government publications. Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the SAPS, and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

Over the past few years, government had faced the challenge of transforming the GPW to position it as a security printer of choice for government and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region.

Government decided to position the organisation as a key player in the smart-card and passport industry.

A new passport-production system was implemented at the GPW high-security printing facility in Pretoria. In addition, a new South African passport was also introduced with unique South African quality features and improved security features.

Civic services

The Branch: Civic Services is mainly responsible for the National Population Registration and civic services. National population registration entails recording personal particulars with a view to issuing IDs; identification by means of fingerprints and photographs; and dealing with matters pertaining to the status of persons, such as births, marriages and deaths.

Civic services entail issuing passports, registering foreign births, determining citizenship and issuing certificates of naturalisation or resumption of South African citizenship.

Learning Academy

The Branch: Learning Academy deals with issues of learning and development, research, knowledge and information management.

The academy has three main sections, namely:

- Learning Programme Delivery
- Research and Information Management
- Quality and Stakeholder Management.

It forms part of the support for the department's core business of offering immigration and civic services for South Africa.

The academy has registered the National Certificate of Home Affairs Services with the South African Qualifications Authority. This qualification has three specialisations, namely: Refugee Affairs, Immigrations and Civic Services. The department is accredited by the Public Sector Education and Training Authority as a site for learning, allowing the Learning Academy to enrol learners for the registered home affairs qualification.

The academy also offers generic learning and development such as customer services, management development programmes and training in uniform processes and procedures of the services offered in the department.

Managing research in the Department of Home Affairs entails coordinating research projects that external scholars and researchers want to conduct on the department. The Research Management Unit also identifies research areas within the department that can assist in better delivery of home-affairs services.

Citizenship matters

South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof. South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- the registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

In October 2010, the National Assembly adopted the South African Citizenship Amendment and Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bills.

The Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010), seeks to streamline the procedures related to the following:

- who, other than parents, should register the birth of a child, including the next-of-kin or a legal guardian
- the registration of orphans and abandoned children
- simplifying the process for the change of surnames of children and adults
- paternity, including steps to be followed when a mother registers a child under one father and later changes to another
- registration of birth after 30 days
- the registration of adopted children to ensure alignment to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010), amends provisions of the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 that deals with citizenship by birth, naturalisation and the loss of citizenship in terms of the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010, among other things, ensures that:

- a child born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- a child born of non-South African parents but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent
- a child born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while he or she is a minor, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- a child with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship in accordance with international law and practice.

Population Register

The Population Register, hosted by the Department of Home Affairs, stores and provides citizenry-identification information, including unique identification numbers, birth dates and marriage status. In essence, this system forms the core of citizenry-information systems within the department.

Immigration

The National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence in and departure from South Africa. This entails:

- processing applications for visas, temporary residence permits and immigration permits
- maintaining a travellers' and foreigners' control system
- tracing and removing foreigners who are considered undesirable or who are in South Africa illegally.

The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998), gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters.

In recent years, the department has sought to control illegal immigration through various measures:

- The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), provides for a stricter immigration policy, implementation of administrative fines and other measures. The Act was later amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills.

- The department works closely with the South African Revenue Service and SAPS to ensure effective border control.

A computerised visa system was instituted to curb the forgery of South African visas and has been extended to all South African missions abroad.

The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004), into law on 12 October 2004.

The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment.

The final immigration regulations furthermore aim to establish a new system of immigration control to ensure that:

- temporary and permanent residence permits are issued as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour, foreign investment is facilitated, the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the SADC are facilitated
- tourism is promoted
- the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories. In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Government Gazette* after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 13 of 2011), provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations
- the designation of ports of entry
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing
- the transmission of passenger name record information
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence
- revising penal provisions.

The Directorate: Refugee Affairs manages refugee services in South Africa. It established the Asylum Seekers Unit and Country of Origin Information Unit. The units advise refugee-reception offices on policy-related matters and on the background information of an applicant's country of origin. After being recognised, refugees are issued with refugee IDs, which give them access to basic services in South Africa, including basic healthcare, education and employment.

The South African Government, through the Department of Home Affairs, issues UN travel documents to refugees. Since May 2005, refugees have been issued with a refugee smart ID, which contains security features that are not forgeable.

This directorate seeks to professionalise the functioning of the refugee regime in preparation for mass influxes in the future. The department also seeks to assist those who wish to return to their countries of origin after changes in the circumstances that led to their forced migration, by engaging in campaigns of voluntary repatriation

> The Department of Home Affairs/South African Banking Risk Identification Centre's (Sabric) Online Fingerprint Verification System was launched in November 2011.
>
> Sabric and the department entered into a cooperation agreement in 2007 to jointly address bank-related identity fraud. In terms of the initiative, the department will allow banks access to the Home Affairs National Identification System to enable the biometric identification of current and prospective clients. This will assist banks in curbing identity-related fraud and corruption.

In the Department of Home Affairs' 2010/2011 campaign to ensure that all babies receive birth certificates, and those who are 16 years and older receive identity documents (IDs), the following progress was made:

- 499 957 babies were registered within 30 days of their birth
- 456 675 babies were registered between 30 days and one year
- 130 284 babies were registered after one year but before 15 years of age
- 190 091 were registered after the age of 16.

The department surpassed the target of 70% of children being registered within the first year of birth, and reduced the number of children registered after they turned 16.

Over a million children aged 16 and older received IDs for the first time, 257 000 more than in 2009/10.

In support of the campaign, 189 hospitals and health facilities around the country have been linked to the department's database to ensure babies can be registered online before they leave hospital or within 30 days of delivery. Home Affairs officials collect and process documents from 141 hospitals daily.

jointly with the UN High Commissioner for Refugees.

The Refugee Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 12 of 2011), contains certain amendments to eliminate abuse of the asylum system and redefines the criteria for refugees seeking asylum in a clear and transparent manner.

In place of the Refugee Status Determination Officer who determines whether a person qualifies as a refugee or not, the Act proposes that committees decide on the status of applications. Committee members will have specific expertise required to adjudicate such matters, for example, in national affairs, international relations, politics and current affairs.

An application for asylum can have one of three possible outcomes: acceptance, rejection as manifestly unfounded, or rejection as unfounded. South Africa adheres to internationally accepted reasons for granting asylum status.

The Act also provides for the registration of a child born of an asylum seeker, provided the birth certificate is submitted at any Refugee Reception Office to have the child included as a dependent of the asylum seeker or refuge.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry. The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

Control of travellers

The travel documents of persons entering or departing from South Africa are examined by immigration officers at recognised ports of entry, to determine whether such persons comply with the requirements.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and who are therefore guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, persons who are in South Africa illegally are either prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The Department of Home Affairs is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting persons suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting in Pretoria.

Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act, 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitors' permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relatives' permits
- work permits with the following categories:
  - quota work permits
  - general work permits
  - intra-company transfer work permits
  - exceptional skills work permits
  - corporate work permits
  - retired person permits
  - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements may therefore proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such persons can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may likewise obtain visitors' permits at a port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for the period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their countries of origin/residence. In countries where there are no representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them.

The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, to the nearest regional/district office of the Department of Home Affairs where the applicant is employed. Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest district/regional office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

Removal of undesirable persons

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the Director-General of the Department of Home Affairs.

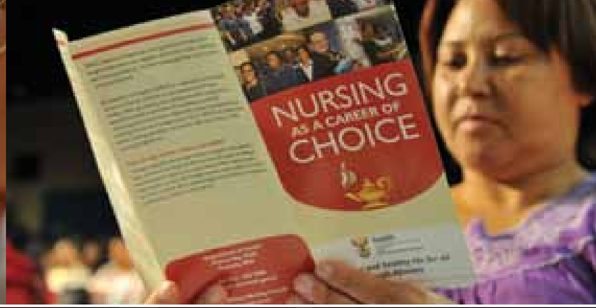
Acknowledgements

BuaNews
BuaBriefs
Budget Vote 2011
Department of Home Affairs
Department of Public Service and Administration
Department of Public Service and Administration, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Green Paper: National Strategic Planning
Government Communication and Information System
Office of the Public Service Commission
State of the Nation Address 2011

www.cpsi.co.za
www.dpsa.gov.za
www.dplg.gov.za
www.gcis.gov.za
www.guardian.co.uk
www.imc.org.za
www.info.gov.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.reuters.com
www.salga.net
www.southafrica.info
www.thedplg.gov.za

Suggested reading

Asmal, K and Hadland, A. 2011. *Kader Asmal: Political Memoirs.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Baker, DP and Jordaan, E. 2010. *South Africa and Contemporary Counterinsurgency: Roots, Practices, Prospects.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Beinart, W and Dawson, MC (eds). 2010. *Popular Politics and Resistance Movements in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Booysen, S. 2011. *The African National Congress and the Regeneration of Political Power: People, Party, Policy.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Butler, A (ed). 2010. *Paying for Politics: Party Funding and Political Change in South Africa and the Global South.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Gerhart, GM (ed). 2011. *From Protest to Challenge: A Documentary History of African Politics in South Africa, 1882 – 1990*. Volumes 1 – 6. Johannesburg: Jacana.
Government and Politics in South Africa. 2011. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Jeffery, A. 2010. *Chasing the Rainbow: South Africa's Move from Mandela to Zuma.* Johannesburg: South African Institute for Race Relations.
Liebenberg, S. 2010. *Socio-Economic Rights: Adjudication Under a Transformative Constitution.* Claremont: Juta.
Mathebe, L. 2011. *Mandela & Mbeki: The Hero and The Outsider.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Misra-Dexter, N and February, J (eds). 2010. *Testing Democracy: Which Way is South Africa Going?* Cape Town: Idasa.
Plaatjies, D (ed). 2011. *Future Inheritance: Building Capacity Within the South African State.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
The Road to Democracy in South Africa. 2010. 4 Volumes. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Suttner, R. 2011. *Kwazuma: Understanding the Era of Jacob Zuma*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Venter, A and Landsberg, C. 2011. *Government and Politics in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.



Health

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2011/12

With the ultimate objective of a long and healthy life for all South Africans, government is focusing on preventative measures, promoting a healthy lifestyle and improving the healthcare delivery system by concentrating on public healthcare being accessible, equitable and sustainable.

South Africa faces a burden of disease (BoD), consisting of HIV, AIDS and tuberculosis (TB); high maternal and child mortality; non-communicable diseases; and violence and injuries.

Strategies and interventions to deal with this are intertwined with the Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement (NSDA) and enhanced efforts towards accelerating progress in achieving the millennium development goals (MDGs).

It is therefore critical to address social determinants of ill health such as poverty, lack of potable water and proper sanitation, as well as child neglect. Some of these are the responsibilities of other government departments and require cooperation across government departments and clusters.

Demographic profile

For 2011, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) estimated the mid-year population at 50,59 million. Approximately 52% (approximately 26,07 million) of the population was female. Nearly one third (31,3%) of the population was aged younger than 15 years and approximately 7,7% (3,9 million) was 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years, approximately 23% (3,66 million) lived in KwaZulu-Natal and 19,4% (3,07 million) lived in Gauteng.

Life expectancy at birth for 2011 was estimated at 54,9 years for males and 59,1 years for females and the infant mortality rate for 2011 was estimated at 38 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate was about 10,6%.

Most developing countries face a transition in the epidemiological profile from a context with high fertility rates and high mortality from preventable causes to one in which a combination of lower fertility rates and changing lifestyles has led to aging populations and epidemics of tobacco use, obesity, cardiovascular disease, cancers, diabetes and other chronic ailments. South Africa is also in the midst of this transition, however the country also has a significant burden from communicable diseases, mainly HIV, AIDS and TB.

Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement

The NSDA reflects the commitment of key sectoral and intersectoral partners linked to the delivery of identified outputs as they relate to a particular sector of government. Government has agreed on 12 key indicators for its Programme of Action for the period 2010 to 2014. Each outcome area is linked to a number of outputs that inform the priority implementation activities that will have to be undertaken over the given time frame to achieve the outcomes associated with a particular output.

For the health sector, the priority is improving the health status of the entire population and contributing to government's vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this vision, government has identified four strategic outputs which the health sector must achieve. These are:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality
- combating HIV and AIDS and decreasing the BoD from TB
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

The NSDA aims to achieve the following:

- life expectancy must increase from 54,9 years for males and 59,1 years for females (Stats SA 2011) to 58 years for males and 60 years for females by 2014
- South Africa's maternal mortality ratio (MMR) must decrease to 100 or less per 100 000 live births by 2014 (the *MDG Country Report* estimates South Africa's MMR at 625 per 100 000)
- the child mortality rate must decrease to 20 or less deaths per 1 000 live births by 2014
- the TB cure rate must improve from 64% in 2007 to 85% by 2014
- 80% of eligible people living with HIV and AIDS must access antiretroviral (ARV) treatment
- new HIV infections must be reduced by 50% by 2014.

Health Sector 10-Point Plan

The health sector's 10-Point Plan for 2009 to 2014 is serving as an important overarching and macro-framework for overhauling the health system to enhance its capacity to improve health outcomes and to harness focused interventions towards the MDGs.

The 10-Point Plan focuses on:

- providing strategic leadership and creating a social compact for better health outcomes
- implementing National Health Insurance (NHI)
- improving the quality of health services
- overhauling the healthcare system
- improving human resource (HR) planning, development and management
- revitalising infrastructure
- accelerating implementation of the HIV and AIDS, TB and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) National Strategic Plan (NSP) 2012 – 2016 and reducing mortality due to TB and associated diseases
- mass mobilisation for better health for the population
- reviewing the drug policy
- strengthening research and development.

Health expenditure

The bulk of health-sector funding comes from National Treasury. The Department of Health's budget grew by 15,3% from R21,7 billion in 2010/11 to R25,7 billion in 2011/12. Policy areas that received additional funding included:

- the HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant
- the Hospital Revitalisation Conditional Grant
- the Mass Measles Immunisation Campaign
- stabilising personnel expenditure
- improving the conditions of service for employees in the department, including the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) and South African Medical Research Council (MRC).

Total expenditure on the comprehensive HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant will amount to R26,9 billion over the 2011 to 2014 period, based on the number of people on treatment increasing from 1,2 million in 2011 to 2,6 million by 2013/14.

At national level, an additional amount of R442 million was allocated for 2011/12, R692 million for 2012/13 and R2,28 billion for 2013/14. This will be used to improve quality, strengthen public healthcare teams, upgrade and maintain nursing colleges, improve maternal and child health, and for universal coverage of HIV and AIDS.

> From 17 August 2011, the use of artificial trans fats, which have been linked to an increased risk of heart disease, is limited to a maximum of 2% in all foods.
>
> Apart from heart disease, trans fats have also been linked to diabetes, certain types of cancer and obesity.

Additional funding was allocated at provincial level for preparatory work for the NHI, which amounts to R16,1 billion over a three-year period. This will be mainly for registrar posts, specialist posts at district level, family health teams and helping hospitals comply with norms and standards.

Legislation

The National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa. It highlights the rights and responsibilities of healthcare-providers and users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery from health facility up to national level. It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments.

The Act provides for the right to:

- emergency medical treatment
- have full knowledge of one's condition
- exercise one's informed consent
- participate in decisions regarding one's health
- be informed when one participates in research
- confidentiality and access to health records
- complain about poor service
- be treated with respect (health workers).

The Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.

The Council for Medical Schemes (CMS) Levies Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000), provides a legal framework for the council to charge medical schemes certain fees.

The Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), provides for the registration of medicines and other medical products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy. The Act also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.

The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), provides a legal framework for mental health in South Africa, and in particular, the admission and discharge of mental health patients by mental health institutions with the emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.

The Choice of Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996), provides for a legal framework for termination of pregnancies based on choice under certain circumstances.

The Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998), provides a legal framework for sterilisations, also for persons with mental health challenges.

The MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.

The Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 63 of 2008), provides for the control of tobacco products, prohibition of smoking in public places and advertisements of tobacco products as well as the tobacco industry's sponsorship of events.

The NHLS Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000), provides for a statutory body that renders laboratory services to the public health sector.

The Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974), as amended, provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular, medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.

The Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974), as amended provides for the regulation of the pharmacy profession, including community service by pharmacists.

The Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.

The Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), as amended, regulates health practitioners like chiropractors, homeopaths and others, and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.

The Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979), regulates dental technicians and establishes a council to regulate the profession.

The Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), regulates hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.

The Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), as amended, regulates foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants, in particular setting quality and safety standards for the sale, manufacture and importation thereof.

The Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), provides for medical examinations of persons suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.

The National Policy for Health Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000), determines a national health policy to guide the legislative and operational programmes of the health portfolio.

The Academic Health Centres Act, 1993 (Act 86 of 1993), provides for the establishment, management and operation of academic health centres.

The Human Tissue Act, 1983 (Act 65 of 1983), administers matters pertaining to human tissue.

In 2011, Cabinet approved the National Health Amendment Bill for Office of Health-Standards Compliance, which will accredit health facilities.

National Health Insurance

The *Green Paper on NHI* was released in August 2011 for comment. The cornerstone of the proposed NHI system is universal coverage. NHI is a financing system that will ensure the provision of essential healthcare to all citizens of South Africa (and legal long-term residents), regardless of their employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

This is seen as a 14-year project, with the first five years being a process of building and preparation.

The NHI will offer all South Africans and legal residents access to a defined package of comprehensive health services. The State is committed to offering as wide a range of services as possible. Although the NHI service package will not include everything, it will offer care at all levels, from primary healthcare (PHC) to specialised secondary care, and highly specialised tertiary and quaternary levels of care.

Examples of what the NHI package will exclude are:

- cosmetic surgery that is not necessary or medically indicated but done as a matter of choice
- expensive dental procedures performed for aesthetic purposes and eye-care devices such as fashionable spectacle frames
- medicines not included in the National Essential Drug List, except in circumstances where the complementary list has been approved by the Minister of Health
- diagnostic procedures outside the approved guidelines and protocols as advised by expert groups.

The benefits provided will cover preventive, promotive, curative and rehabilitative health services. The emphasis will be on preventing disease and promoting health.

Improving child health

Several areas of progress have been identified, especially in terms of reducing the effect of childhood illnesses.

Improving immunisation coverage ranks high among renowned strategies for improving child health. Immunisation campaigns have been markedly successful in preventable diseases, including polio and measles.

Carefully planned and systemic interventions, based on the NSDA objectives, have been adopted for child health. These interventions are targeting various phases, namely pre-pregnancy; pregnancy; birth; newborn/postnatal and childhood (including integrated management of childhood); and adolescent illness.

Interventions are based on a three-tiered health-promotion and disease-prevention strategy i.e. preventing unintended pregnancies (primary prevention); preventing complications (secondary prevention); and preventing death or disability from complications (tertiary prevention).

Postnatal and newborn interventions include:

- early and exclusive breastfeeding
- warmth provision
- infection control
- provision of Vitamin A to the mother when indicated.

Community-based interventions include:

- increasing home visits by community workers to within 10 days of delivery for normal birth-weight babies and an additional three in the subsequent three weeks for lower birth-weight babies
- improving referral channels between community health workers and midwives
- expanding the Perinatal Problem Identification Programme to include more facilities.

In August 2011, the Minister of Health, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, announced that government would no longer distribute free infant formula at health facilities, in an effort to promote exclusive breastfeeding.

The department adopted World Health Organisation (WHO) recommendations for promoting exclusive breastfeeding as part of its strategy to reduce child mortality. It is recommended even for HIV-positive mothers. Breast milk substitutes would only be recommended by health practitioners to mothers who, for medical reasons, could not physically breastfeed.

The target for school health services is to be proactive and use disease-prevention strategies at school through screenings for common problems. This will ensure the continuum of care and integration of services for the child's development from neonate to adolescent. The programme aims to increase the proportion of schools which are visited by a school nurse; conduct health screenings of learners in Grade One for eyes, ears and teeth; and prevent heart disease by providing prophylactic treatment for the prevention of rheumatic heart disease.

> Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital in Soweto, Gauteng, is the largest hospital in the world, occupying just over 70 ha, with about 3 200 beds and 6 760 staff members. In March 2011, it was announced that the hospital would get two new multi-detector CT scanners as part of a broader R157-million programme to improve equipment.

Women's health

Women tend to have a higher BoD than men and therefore need more services. The package of interventions for women's health includes:

- family planning and contraceptive services
- care following sexual assault
- treatment of STIs
- a focus on diseases specific to women such as cervical cancer.

Sexual and reproductive health interventions include contraceptive information services, safe termination of pregnancy and reproductive health education and services.

Sexual assault is an area needing strengthening due to weak intersectoral collaboration between the provincial departments of health, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the South African Police Service and the justice system. In 2011, the Department of Health audited how services are geared towards providing quality and comprehensive care for sexual-assault patients.

Key interventions in adolescent health include increasing coverage for the youth and adolescent-friendly health services in all PHC facilities. Between 40% and 50% of health facilities are implementing this intervention. This figure will be increased to 70%. The draft Youth Health Strategy was finalised in 2011 and distributed to provinces and districts to guide health services' response to young people's health needs.

Reports from health facilities indicate that 42% of new mothers and babies were reviewed within six days after delivery and discharged from health facilities. This figure is set to improve with the campaign to take healthcare to communities through the revitalisation of PHC.

To enhance these gains, the department is embarking on a Safe Motherhood Strategy to comprehensively deal with maternal morbidity and mortality. The interventions are multipronged (individual and community-based approaches) as well as multilayered, being delivered via various platforms (such as at home, primary level and secondary level).

There will be community level interventions that will focus on advocacy and social marketing regarding nutritional advice, iron and folate supplements and clinical interventions, including blood-pressure screening, screening and treatment of syphilis and urinary tract infections, and fast-tracking pregnant women starting antiretroviral treatment (ART).

Combating HIV, AIDS and TB

The NSP on HIV, AIDS and TB for 2011 to 2016 was launched on World AIDS Day, 1 December 2012.

It consists of five goals and four strategic objectives. The five goals are:

- reduce new HIV infections by at least 50% using combination prevention approaches
- initiate at least 80% of eligible patients on ART with 70% alive and on treatment five years after initiation
- reduce the number of new TB infections as well as deaths from TB by 50%
- ensure an enabling and accessible legal framework that protects and promotes human rights to support implementation of the NSP
- reduce self-reported stigma related to HIV and TB by at least 50%.

> In April 2010, the country embarked on a massive HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign seeking to test and screen 15 million people for HIV and other chronic diseases by June 2011. The campaign was a big success, with millions of people responding to the call to know their HIV status.
>
> By February 2012, more than 17 million people had been tested for HIV and more that eight million had been screened for tuberculosis. This reflected a sixfold increase in the number of people tested for HIV over the previous year. Of those tested, two million people were found to be HIV-positive and were referred for further care.

> In September 2011, the United Kingdom's Department for International Development committed another £17 million (R198 million) to South Africa's Maternal and Child Healthcare Programme.The funds will be used to strengthen maternal and child-health service delivery through the following outputs:
>
> - enabling districts to oversee improvement of reproductive, maternal and child health (RMCH) services
> - strengthening delivery of school health, municipal ward-based primary healthcare, and obstetric and neonatal emergency services
> - improving demand and accountability for RMCH services
> - removing barriers to uptake and access RMCH services.

The four strategic objectives are the following:

- address social and structural barriers to HIV, STI and TB prevention, care and impact
- prevent new HIV, STI and TB infections
- sustain health and wellness
- increase the protection of human rights and improve access to justice.

Prevention remains the cornerstone of efforts to combat HIV and AIDS in South Africa. Leadership in this critical area has ensured that South Africa is getting global recognition for the massive efforts and interventions designed to combat HIV, AIDS and TB at national, provincial and local level.

The department's Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) Programme is yielding results with sustained declines observed in transmission rates while programme coverage is increasing. There is a high uptake of treatment for PMTCT – 98% of HIV-infected mothers tested were put on treatment.

The proportion of children whose mothers are HIV-positive, and who were infected, decreased from 8% in 2008 to 3,5% in 2010.

Modelling studies conducted in South Africa suggest that large-scale provision of medical male circumcision to achieve 80% coverage could significantly reduce HIV incidence by 25% to 35%. Health policy requires that medical male circumcision be provided as part of male sexual and reproductive health, and in combination with the provision and consistent use of condoms and the promotion of sexual partner reduction.

By June 2011, more than 50 000 men had undergone medical male circumcision nationally. The Department of Health supported this service as part of a comprehensive package of prevention. Also, the numbers of male and female condoms being distributed nationally increased.

The second phase of clinical trials of an Italian-developed HIV vaccine, to be conducted by researchers in South Africa as part of a wider cooperation project between Italy and South Africa, was launched in Garankuwa, north of Pretoria, in April 2011.

Funded by the Italian Government, the study will be conducted by researchers and staff at the Medunsa Clinical Research Unit of the University of Limpopo's Medunsa Campus in Garankuwa.

The department has had a promising uptake in access to treatment. By September 2011, 1,6 million people were receiving ART.

Government has increased capacity to care for people living with HIV and requiring ARV treatment. By February 2012, more than 1 750 nurses had been trained in Nurse Initiated and Managed ART, making it possible for professional nurses to put people on treatment.

In a further boost for the treatment programme, the South African National AIDS Council (Sanac) endorsed the National Health Council (NHC) policy to initiate treatment for all those who test positive and have a CD4 count of 350 or less.

Reporting of TB management, specifically treatment outcomes, has enjoyed considerable attention. By mid-2011, the TB cure rate for the year had been achieved. Treatment completion rates and default rates were on track, while 17 facilities were made available for diagnosing and initiating treatment for drug-resistant TB patients.

TB control and management is improving, with more than eight million people screened during the HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign and the national TB cure rate reaching the 70% mark for the first time, although work still needs to be done to achieve the 85% recommended by the WHO.

In June 2011, the department announced a three-pronged strategy to deal with TB.

The first part of the strategy lies in the acquisition of GeneXpert technology, a revolution in the diagnosis of TB that takes only two hours to identify and confirm the disease, as opposed to a week. Under previous methods, up to 28% of patients could be misdiagnosed, whereas GeneXpert technology is 98% accurate.

The second strategy is that of active case finding. Every TB patient has the capacity to infect 15 others in his or her lifetime. Teams consisting of five members each visit the friends and families of TB patients in the department's database. They then screen everyone who has had contact with the TB patients and proceed with treatment if necessary, thereby containing the disease to a large extent. Between February and June 2011, 41 000 families were visited and 112 000 people screened.

The third strategy involves nine specifically designed multi-drug-resistant hospitals, using technology from the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one in each province. The special design reduces the chances of healthcare workers, especially nurses, from being infected by TB patients.

Combating communicable and non-communicable diseases

Work on reducing the impact of chronic conditions (non-communicable diseases) resulted in the hosting of the Diabetes Leadership Forum Africa 2010 in South Africa in September 2010. By mid-2011, an implementation plan for the Diabetes Declaration was being finalised. A chronic disease-management register was implemented in the first half of the year.

Intersectoral work on alcohol and violence is the focus of partnerships at community level. The *Phuza Wise* Campaign and the strengthening of PHC teams are aimed at addressing the national scourge.

Other initiatives aimed at reducing the effect of non-communicable diseases included the United Nations Summit on Non-Communicable Diseases, held in September 2011 in New York.

The burden of respiratory and diarrhoeal diseases is a cause for concern. It may be related to HIV and AIDS, however, there is still a component that is not linked to HIV and has to be addressed in this context. To respond adequately to disease outbreaks, the department will need to strengthen its response to disease-outbreak and surveillance systems.

Over a million people die of malaria annually in Africa, mostly children under the age of five. Most cases of malaria in South Africa are caused by *plasmodium falciparum*. It is potentially the most dangerous type of malaria, and can prove rapidly fatal.

Government's efforts to combat malaria incidence have been largely successful. Available data demonstrate a downward trend.

Distribution of public health facilities in South Africa, 2009

Health facilities	Number of facilities (2009)	Population per health facility
Clinics	1 967	12 718
Community healthcare centres	332	148 553
District hospitals	264	186 817
National central hospitals	9	5 479 966
Provincial tertiary hospitals	14	3 522 835
Regional hospitals	53	930 560
Specialised psychiatric hospitals	25	1 972 788
Specialised tuberculosis hospitals	41	1 202 919
Total	**4 333**	**13 457 156**

Source: Department of Health

Improving quality of care

The 10-Point Plan for Health reflects the importance of improving the quality of care in the department's institutions as one of the priorities. This is further reflected in the NSDA, where quality is one of the key suboutputs of improved health-system effectiveness.

Six priority areas have been identified for immediate improvement:

- staff attitudes and the values underpinning them
- reducing the long waiting times or delays in receiving care
- ensuring all facilities are spotlessly clean and tidy
- protecting the clinical as well as physical safety of patients and staff
- taking the measures needed to avoid transmission of infections and cross-infections
- ensuring that basic medicines and supplies are available when patients are seen.

These form part of a wider set of core standards for quality healthcare that would need to be complied with across all health services.

A set of national core standards has been developed, approved and published for application in the national health system. They will be used as the basis for strengthening the quality of health services provided locally, provincially and nationally.

A standardised assessment process is being progressively rolled out across the country to enable public establishments to identify and address critical gaps and benchmark themselves against similar establishments, prior to an external inspection to certify compliance.

To ensure compliance across the system, an independent body will be established to develop mechanisms to enforce these standards, and to objectively measure and report on whether all health establishments in both the public and private sector meet the prescribed set of standards.

In November 2011, Cabinet approved the National Health Amendment Bill for Office of Health Standards Compliance, which will accredit health facilities. In preparation, the department put in place quality norms and standards, which cover the availability of medicines and supplies, cleanliness, patient safety, infection prevention and control, positive attitudes and waiting time in all health facilities.

By August 2011, the department had audited over 1 600 public health facilities against these standards. Quality-improvement projects to address the gaps identified by these audits were expected to be developed as part of the service-delivery improvement programme, which is the largest and most ambitious of its kind ever to be implemented in South Africa. A series of case studies on this programme will also be produced.

Re-engineering primary healthcare

The re-engineered PHC system is one of the Department of Health's four central interventions of the NHI.

A task team, comprising the three ministerial mortality committees, deans of the faculties of

Health Sciences and other experts who advised the Minister on the development of district clinical specialist teams, was convened in 2011. Their recommendations were adopted by the NHC and are being implemented.

The district specialist task teams each consist of an:
- anaesthetist
- family physician
- PHC nurse
- obstetrician
- advanced midwife
- paediatrician
- advanced paediatric nurse.

Every district has a team responsible for supportive supervision and clinical governance within its defined geographic area. These task teams need to strengthen existing services and ensure equitable access to appropriate care for all mothers, babies and children.

This is achieved by enhancing the clinical competence of healthcare workers, promoting improved health facilities and facilitating referral pathways to specialist services.

The teams focus on the facilitation, integration and coordination of staff, services, programmes and packages of care with the aim of improving health outcomes and the quality of care for mothers, babies and children.

Improving the functionality and management of the health system

The Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) conducted a diagnostic assessment of the competencies of hospital chief executive officers and district managers to assist in designing interventions at facility level intended to support improvements in health outcomes envisaged by the NSDA.

Regulations providing clear designations of different categories of hospitals and guiding the recruitment of appropriately skilled and competent hospital management were developed. This contributes towards management accountability, and effective and efficient healthcare delivery.

Improving human resources planning, development and management

By 2011, South Africa was producing about 1 200 doctors a year, which was insuffient to service the nation's healthcare needs. The Department of Health initiated the HR Strategy for Health, which addresses the problem on several platforms.

The deans of South Africa's eight medical schools were tasked to find an innovative way of increasing the intake of medical students, with one of the eight medical schools heeding the call and enrolling 40 extra students in 2011. The other medical schools were expected to follow suit in 2012.

In addition, plans to establish a ninth medical school in Limpopo were announced. The department also announced the addition of new infrastructure at four tertiary hospitals and medical schools in Limpopo. The department is aiming for a threefold increase in the number of medical students produced annually.

In April 2011, the department hosted the National Nursing Summit 2011, which focused on addressing HR concerns in the nursing sector. The department identified 122 nursing colleges nationwide that would be improved, of which 72 were expected to be refurbished and improved by the end of 2011/12. The project will run over three years at a total cost of R1,24 billion, of which R220 million was earmarked for the 2011/12 financial year, and R510 million each in subsequent years.

Talks were held with retired nurses, which led to the creation of a database, so that these retired nurses can register to return to work on a temporary basis.

Government also encouraged the media to draw attention to the annual International Nurses Day in May, to increase public awareness of the profession.

Improving the working conditions of health workers

The health sector has continuously implemented efforts to improve healthcare workers' conditions of service. The Occupation Specific Dispensation (OSD) was introduced as an integrated career-development framework comprising remuneration, career progression and patching, and performance management of the professional or clinical workforce, based on roles and functions. The main focus of the system so far has been on remuneration.

However, the performance-management aspects of the OSD will be refined and expanded as the roll-out of the OSD intensifies. OSD implementation started with the roll-out to nurses in 2007 and incorporation of additional health professional categories such as dentists, medical practitioners and medical specialists, pharmacists, pharmacist assistants and emergency medical services personnel. Implementing the OSD policy achieved mixed results, necessitating a review in 2011.

Improving health infrastructure

Over 2 100 individual infrastructure-related projects exist in health facilities in South Africa – ranging from maintenance and minor repairs through to renovation and major construction works. As a result, 138 clinics and 38 community health centres were constructed nationally (an increase of 4% in the total number of PHC facilities in South Africa). An infrastructure-support model has been implemented, a component of which includes the appointment of engineers in each province to provide consistent technical expertise for managing active projects in the health sector.

Eighteen major revitalisation projects have been initiated nationwide in hospitals in urgent need of infrastructure development. Five of these are identified as flagship projects, supported through public-private partnerships. The balance will be supported by a more streamlined hospital-revitalisation programme, which incorporates a much improved provincial resource planning and allocation model, enabling a reduction in unspent funding on infrastructure projects countrywide. In addition, the assistance of infrastructure-development resource persons and built-environment specialists from the DBSA and CSIR has been secured to strengthen implementation, monitoring and evaluation in all provinces.

It is anticipated that the pace of implementation will accelerate because of these interventions. In addition, measures for better financial management and planning will ensure a decline in the amounts of roll-overs and unspent funds for infrastructure development in the country.

Review of the drug policy

The health sector is experiencing various challenges with the supply of drugs and pharmaceuticals. Sporadic drug stock-outs have occurred in health facilities, resulting from multiple factors, both internal and external to the health sector. These include financial constraints resulting in delays in the payment of suppliers, drug-supply management problems, suppliers' incapacity to deliver according to demand, suppliers' inability to adhere to lead times and tender prices being higher than international prices.

A task team appointed to investigate these challenges completed its work and presented a set of recommendations to the NHC on the reform of medicine-procurement systems in the public sector. These included strategies to:

- improve drug procurement and payment systems to ensure reliable and uninterrupted supply
- ensure more cost-effective procurement of drugs through the centralisation of the authority of procurement
- address system failures resulting in medicine shortages.

The outcome of the task team's work has helped reduce tender prices of ART to the value of R4,2 billion over two years. This has resulted in savings of R4,7 billion, which will enable the health sector to place more people on ART. Access to ART will be expanded by half a million people each financial year. A central procurement authority will be established to improve the efficiency of systems, including the procurement of vaccines, TB medicines, ART and reproductive health products.

Strengthening research and development

The Department of Health has forged partnerships aimed at strengthening research and development with other government departments such as science and technology; entities such as the MRC, the Human Sciences Research Council and the Health Systems Trust; and academic institutions.

The Department of Science and Technology has established centres of competence in malaria, TB, HIV and AIDS, cancer and diabetes in conjunction with the Department of Health.

The National Health Research Committee (NHRC) and National Health Research Ethics

The Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis (TB) and Malaria approved US$302 million (about R2,06 billion) for South Africa, over a period of five years starting in 2011, for the prevention, treatment and care of HIV, AIDS and TB.

Of the $302 million, US$196 million is for AIDS medication, US$33 million for medical male circumcision, US$10 million for strengthening health systems and community response programmes to HIV and AIDS, and TB, and US$8 million for direct support of TB programmes.

US$128-million – 65% of which is for antiretroviral therapy – was approved for 2011 and 2012.

Committee have been established in terms of the National Health Act, 2003. The NHRC's duties are to:

- determine the health research to be carried out by public health authorities
- ensure that health-research agendas and research resources focus on priority health problems
- develop, and advise the Minister on the application and implementation of an integrated national strategy for health research
- coordinate the research activities of public health authorities.

Research bodies that have been established in terms of the statutes will scale up their efforts to build research capacity in the country. The research agenda will be designed to respond in accordance with the priorities.

South Africa needs to develop a model for the translation of evidence generated through empirical research into national health policy. In an interactive manner, research must review health-policy implementation. To this end, a health and policy technical unit has been budgeted for in the 2011 to 2013 period to develop and institutionalise this capacity within the department.

Levels of healthcare

National

According to the National Health Act, 2003, the Department of Health must ensure the implementation of national health policy as far as it relates to the national department and issue guidelines for the implementation of national health policy.

The department must:

- liaise with national health departments in other countries and with international agencies
- issue and promote adherence to norms and standards on health matters
- promote adherence to norms and standards for the training of HR for health
- identify national health goals and priorities, and monitor the progress of their implementation
- coordinate health and medical services during national disasters
- participate in intersectoral and interdepartmental collaboration
- promote health and healthy lifestyles
- promote community participation in the planning, provision and evaluation of health services
- conduct and facilitate health systems research in the planning, evaluation and management of health services
- facilitate the provision of indoor and outdoor environmental pollution-control services
- facilitate and promote the provision of health services for the management, prevention and control of communicable and non-communicable diseases
- coordinate health services rendered by the national department with the health services rendered by provinces and provide such additional health services as may be necessary to establish a comprehensive national health system.

Provincial

The National Health Act, 2003 specifies that the Member of the Executive Council responsible for health in a province must ensure the implementation of national health policy, norms and standards.

The provincial department must, in accordance with national health policy and the relevant provincial health policy:

- provide specialised hospital services
- plan and manage the provincial health information system
- participate in interprovincial and intersectoral coordination and collaboration
- coordinate the funding and financial management of district health councils
- provide technical and logistical support to district health councils
- plan, coordinate and monitor health services and evaluate the rendering of health services
- coordinate health and medical services during provincial disasters
- conduct or facilitate research into health and health services
- plan, manage and develop HR for rendering health services
- plan the development of public and private hospitals, and other health establishments agencies

The South African National Council on Alcoholism and Drug Dependence's (Sanca) national body was established in 1956, with its major concern being the prevention, treatment and aftercare of alcoholism and drug dependence.

Today, there are 32 Sanca societies in most of the larger centres around the country – at least one in each of the nine provinces.

The Primary Healthcare (PHC) Sector Policy Support Programme was jointly developed by the European Union and the South African (EU-SA) Department of Health. It has a total financial commitment of approximately R1,2 billion.

The agreement was signed in February 2011 by the Finance Minister, on behalf of the Department of Health, and the EU Commissioner, and is aligned to Output 4: Strengthening of health systems, in particular, the re-engineering of the PHC system.

The programme was launched at the EU-SA Presidential Summit, held in September 2011 in the Kruger National Park.

- control and manage the cost and financing of public health establishments and public health agencies
- facilitate and promote the provision of port health services, comprehensive primary health services and community hospital services
- provide and coordinate emergency medical services and forensic pathology, forensic clinical medicines and related services, including the provision of medico-legal mortuaries and medico-legal services
- control the quality of all health services and facilities
- provide health services contemplated by specific provincial health service programmes
- provide and maintain equipment, vehicles and healthcare facilities in the public sector
- consult with communities regarding health matters
- provide occupational health services
- promote health and healthy lifestyles
- promote community participation in the planning, provision and evaluation of health services
- provide environmental pollution control services
- ensure health systems research
- provide services for the management, prevention and control of communicable and non-communicable diseases.

Municipalities

Every metropolitan and district municipality must ensure that appropriate municipal health services are effectively and equitably provided in their respective areas.

Statutory bodies

Statutory bodies for health professionals include the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSA), the South African Dental Technicians' Council, the South African Nursing Council (SANC), the South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC) and the Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA).

Regulations in the private health sector are effected through the CMS. The Medicines Control Council is charged with ensuring the safety, quality and effectiveness of medicines.

Health professionals

Physicians

There are more than 36 000 medical practitioners registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector.

In selected communities, medical students, supervised by medical practitioners, provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the Continuing Professional Development (CPD) system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Oral health professionals

By November 2010, there were 946 oral hygienists and 464 dental therapists registered with the HPCSA. Dentists are subject to the CPD and community-service systems. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public-health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists.

The SAPC develops, maintains and controls standards of education and practice of persons required to be registered in terms of the Pharmacy Act, 1974.

The council is responsible for promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care, and for upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice in both the public and the private sectors. The council also advises the Minister or any other person on any matter relating to pharmacy.

Nurses

The SANC sets minimum standards for the education and training of nurses in South Africa. It accredits schools that meet the required standards and only grants professional registration to nurses who undergo nursing education and training at an accredited nursing school.

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community-service programme, whereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives.

The key roles of the nursing council are to protect and promote public interests, and ensure the delivery of quality healthcare by prescribing minimum requirements for the education and training of nurses and midwives, approving training schools, and registering or enrolling those who qualify in one or more of the basic or post-basic categories.

Between 2002 and 2011, the number of registered nurses increased by 37%, from 172 869 to 238 196.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS is the single largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with 349 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research, appropriate to the needs of the broader population, into among other things, HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines.

Its specialised divisions comprise:

- the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- the National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- the National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance
- the South African Vaccine Producers, which is the only South African manufacturer of antivenom for the treatment of snake, scorpion and spider bites.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa

The AHPCSA is a statutory health body established in terms of legislation to regulate all allied health professions, which include ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic, homeopathy, naturopathy, osteopathy, phytotherapy, therapeutic aromatherapy, therapeutic-massage therapy, therapeutic reflexology and unani-tibb.

Medical Research Council

The MRC was established in accordance with the MRC Act, 1991, and is the largest health research body in South Africa. The aims of the MRC are to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of South Africans.

Health research is the core business of the MRC and must be validated and of high quality if it is to impact on the health of South Africans.

The MRC's peer review and audit systems ensure that high standards are met. MRC research, development and technology transfer encompass all spheres of knowledge-generation – from basic to applied research.

The council's researchers have made significant contributions to the key priorities of the Department of Health's 10-point plan, through operational and applied research projects, by supporting and evaluating programmes, or on an advisory level by serving on policy and technical teams. Examples include work on the NHI, quality and standards, the prevention of mother-to-child

HIV transmission, TB, HIV prevention and surveillance systems, and research that translated into the introduction of the rotavirus and pneumococcal vaccine in 2011.

The council conducts and funds national health research, and supports research capacity development. The council's HIV and AIDS, and TB units are conducting clinical research on an HIV vaccine, microbiocides, ARVs, and TB treatment and diagnostics. Researchers are evaluating interventions for the prevention of injury and violence, and on reducing non-communicable diseases. In 2011, the council launched a national collaborative research programme in cardiovascular and metabolic diseases. The council is also part of the Global Alliance for Chronic Diseases.

In 2012, the council will host the ICT4Health Secretariat, which comprises informatics, telemedicine and e-health. The secretariat will support the Ministerial Advisory Committee for Health Technology and the department in finalising the national telemedicine and overarching e-health policies and strategic plans, and coordinate the drafting of the health strategy and policy.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels continue to play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme (PDPHCP), including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. The PDPHCP has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service-providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Medical schemes

In September 2011, there were about 110 medical schemes with around 8 068 505 beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of about R84,9 billion.

The private medical-aid scheme industry is regulated by the CMS, in terms of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998. The council is funded mainly through levies on the industry in terms of the CMS Levies Act, 2000.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered. Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants. If families are unable to bear the cost in terms of the standard means test, patients are classified as hospital patients. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with medical-aid cover, charging a tariff designed to recover the full cost of treatment. This private rate is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals. The Medical Schemes Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 55 of 2001), improves the regulatory capacity of the Registrar for Medical Schemes and regulates reinsurance. The Act:

- provides improved protection for members by addressing the problem area of medical insurance, revisiting the provision on waiting periods, and specifically protecting patients against discrimination on grounds of age
- promotes efficient administration and good governance of medical schemes by insisting on the independence of individuals in certain key positions
- introduced mechanisms to address problematic practices in the marketing of medical schemes and brokerage of services.

Minimum benefits are also prescribed.

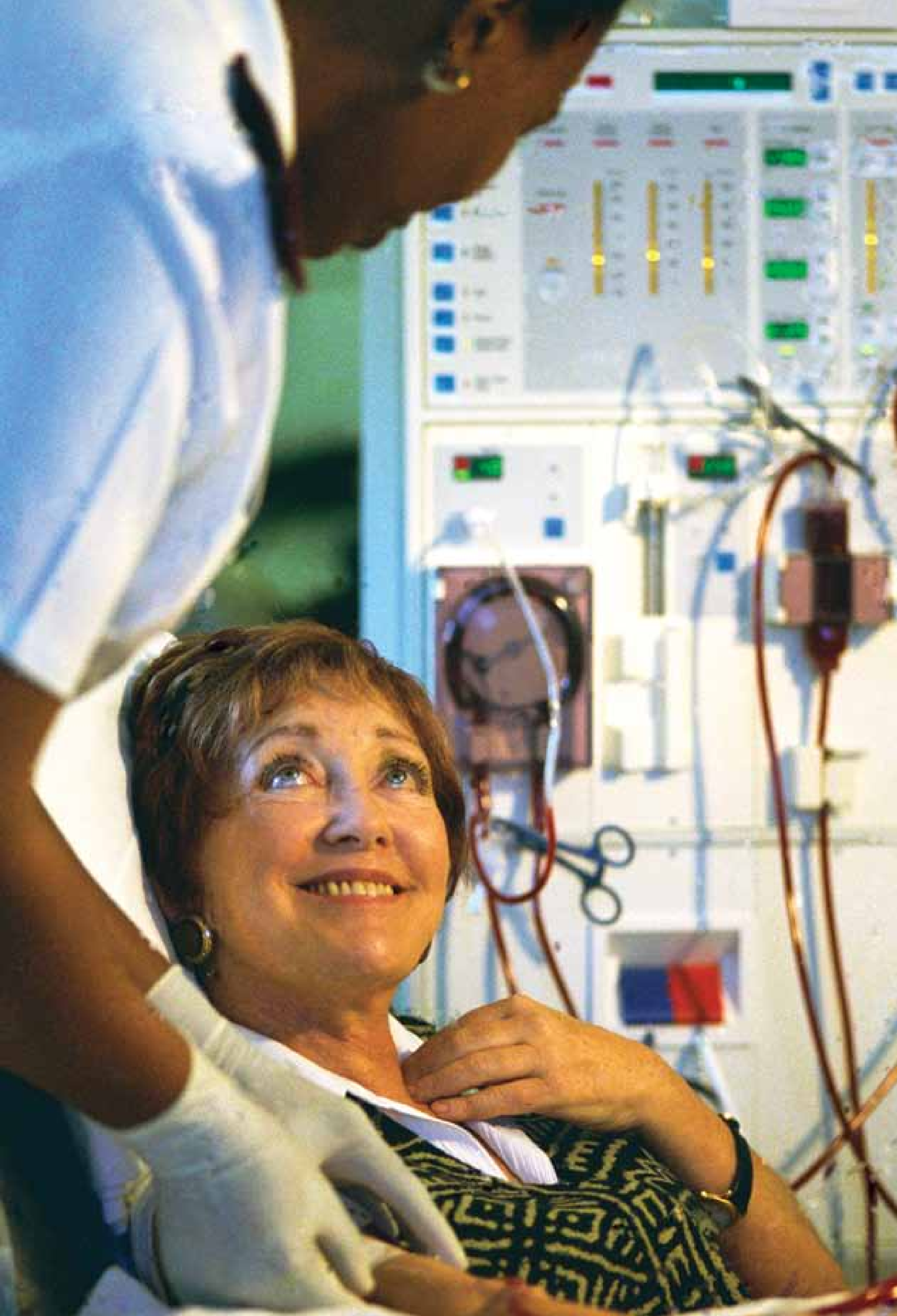
Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Department of Health Budget Vote, 2011
Millennium Development Goals Country Report 2010
National Health Laboratory Service
Public Sector Manager, October 2011
South African Nursing Council
South African Medical Research Council, *Annual Report 2010/11*
South African Pharmacy Council
Sapa

www.ahpcsa.co.za
www.gostudy.mobi
www.gov.za
www.hasa.co.za
www.health24.com
www.lovelife.org.za
www.nhls.ac.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.medicalschemes.com
www.mrc.co.za
www.soulcity.org.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.thetimes.co.za

Suggested reading

Barnards, M. 2011. *Defining Moments*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
Bourne, D. 2010. *Collective Works of David Bourne, Demographer and Health Advocate.* (Cape Town): School of Public Health and Family Medicine.
Chirambo, K and Steyn, J. 2009. *AIDS and Local Government in South Africa: Examining the Impact of an Epidemic on Ward Councillors.* Pretoria: Idasa.
Coulson, N *et al.* 2010. *Developing Capacity for Health.* Johannesburg: Heinemann.
Dickinson, D. 2010. *Changing the Course of AIDS: Peer Education in South Africa and its Lessons for the Global Crisis.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Geffen, N. 2010. *Debunking Delusions: The Inside Story of the Treatment Action Campaign.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Hutton, B (ed). 2011. *Recovery RSA.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Kalichman, SC. 2009. *Denying AIDS: Conspiracy Theories, Pseudoscience and Human Tragedy.* New York: Copernicus Books.
Larsen J. 2010. *Kwabaka: A Search for Excellence in Caring: The Story of a Mission Hospital Community in Zululand, 1930 – 2006.* Pietermaritzburg Cluster.
Okorafor, OA. 2010. *Primary Healthcare Spending: Striving for Equity Under Fiscal Federalism.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Palitza, K, Ridgard, N, Struthers, H and Harber, A (eds). 2010. *What is Left Unsaid: Reporting the South African HIV Epidemic, Selected Journalism, Research and Analysis, 2003 – 2010*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
The Principles and Practice of Nursing and Health Care. 2010. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Tomaselli, K and Chasi, C (eds). 2011. *Development and Public Health Communication.* Cape Town: Pearson.
Uys, L and Middleton, L (eds). 2010. *Mental Health Nursing: A South African Perspective.* Cape Town: Juta.
Van Dyk, A. 2011. *HIV and AIDS: Education, Care and Counselling.* 5th edition. Cape Town: Pearson.





Human settlements

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

Government has set itself the target of making a positive impact on the quality of life of 500 000 households by 2014, by upgrading informal settlements. The upgrade will provide households with security of tenure and access to essential services in sites that are close to economic and other social amenities.

To meet its objectives of sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life, the Department of Human Settlements has identified the following areas of priority:

- accelerated delivery of housing opportunities
- access to basic services
- more efficient land use
- an improved property market.

Between 1994 and June 2011, government built over three million homes for South Africans, giving shelter to over 13 million people.

Government's Rural Housing Project (RHP) remains a key intervention, and new initiatives are in the pipeline to accelerate the development of high-quality rural human settlements.

In February 2010, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced a new grant to support on-site water and sanitation infrastructure as part of the RHP. An initial R1,2 billion over three years has been made available for this purpose.

The Department of Human Settlements' budget for 2011/12 increased by 38% to R22,5 billion from 2010/11 and is expected to grow to R26,6 billion in 2013/14.

Sustainable human settlements

By June 2011, the formalisation of 206 informal settlements had been completed. The number of informal settlements was reduced from 2 700 in 2009 to 2 450 in 2011.

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP) for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground [BNG]) that aims, among other things, to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

The BNG incorporates principles such as:

- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level and being applied consistently throughout the township
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types,ranging from single-stand units to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP provides for programmes that promote the development of the entire residential property market, including the development of low-cost housing, medium-density accommodation and rental housing; stronger partnerships with the private sector; social infrastructure; and amenities.

The plan also aims to change spatial settlement patterns by building spatially economical and socially integrated human settlements.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement-upgrading pilot projects in each province. These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects. The goal of upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is aligned to the United Nation's (UN) millennium development goals (MDGs) to improve the lives of 100 million slum dwellers worldwide.

The CHP focuses on:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the First-Economy residential property boom and the Second-Economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

As part of the CHP, government provides a 40-m^2 house with two bedrooms; a separate bathroom

In February 2012, President Jacob Zuma announced in the State of the Nation Address that from April 2012, people earning between R3 500 and R15 000 would be able to obtain a subsidy of up to R83 000 from provinces, to enable them to obtain housing finance from an accredited bank

At the Human Settlements Vision 2030 Youth Summit, held in July 2011, the indication was that the total eradication of the housing backlog would mean that 12,5 million people will be provided with homes by 2030. The summit gave the youth the opportunity to learn about the process towards home ownership, and how to access government grants, housing loan finance and bonds mortgages.

with a toilet, shower and hand basin; a combined living area and kitchen with wash basin; and a ready-board electrical installation where electricity supply is available in the township, to qualifying households earning less than R3 500 a month.

The department developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of government. These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines. The department has also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

Phase One of the Housing Demand Database has been completed, resulting in an integrated national database.

Progress made during 2011 included:

- Development on the N2 Gateway Project in the Western Cape being at different stages in each of the project areas. Considerable progress was made in providing bulk infrastructure, constructing houses, installing service connections to individual units and the handover of 7 887 houses by the end of 2011.
- The Zanemvula Housing Project that entails the upgrading of informal and formal settlements in the Soweto-on-Sea and Veeplaas areas, as well as greenfields housing developments in the areas of Chatty and Joe Slovo West in the Eastern Cape.
- 4 300 sites and 800 units in Duncan Village in the Eastern Cape.
- The initiation of the Lerato Park Housing Project in the Northern Cape.
- 5 500 units in the Khutsong Resettlement Project in Gauteng.
- Infrastructure and housing in the Klarinet Housing Project in Mpumalanga.
- The Emnambithi Urban Renewal Project in KwaZulu-Natal.
- 6 776 units in Grassland in the Free State.
- 341 units of the Morgan's Village III Affordable Housing Project in Mitchell's Plain, Cape Town.
- The Informal Settlement Upgrade Programme in Nelson Mandela, Joe Slovo, Phola Park and Chris Hani informal settlements and Ngangelizwe in the Eastern Cape. Phase One of this project will focus on the provision of interim services and planning for 6 600 units.
- Agreement to unblock eight housing development projects valued at over R85,7 million was reached between the North West Provincial Government and the Mahikeng Local Municipality for the construction of 2 481 housing units, including the building of 200 rental housing units.
- In total, 26 328 housing units have been completed, benefiting some 118 476 individuals in the Mabaso RHP, in KwaZulu-Natal.
- A housing project in Qolweni, Gaatjie, Bossiesgif and Pinetree in the southern Cape created denser settlement for people in the area. The high-density units are the first of their kind in the southern Cape. Higher-density settlements fulfil one of the department's strategic objectives of maximum use of resources and are important in creating integrated and sustainable settlements. The project will be developed in four phases, with Phase One (265 units) already completed. On completion it will consist of 1 420 units.
- Several mixed housing projects such as Lehae, Olieventhoutbosch, Lufhereng, Cosmos City, Chief Mogale and Chief Albert Luthuli, to relocate people from informal settlements, are being built in Gauteng.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

In 2010, the concept and strategy of Human Settlements Vision 2030 was introduced. To suc-

Government plans to build 220 000 housing units annually between 2011 and 2014. By the start of the 2011/12 financial year, more than 8 000 human-settlement projects were already underway across the country.

The Housing Development Agency is fully operational, with the sole mandate to acquire land on behalf of government for human settlement. The target is to acquire 6 025 ha of land by 2014. This will provide for 500 000 housing units. The National Upgrading Support Programme has also been established and is expected to help municipalities with upgrading projects. In addition, the Department of Human Settlements has reached an agreement with the country's major banks to form a joint working team to explore aspects of housing finance.

ceed, Human Settlements Vision 2030 must be for and by the youth. The strategy concerns future rural settlements, urban centres, towns and cities. It also contributes to economic growth and job creation.

In June 2011, the Minister of Human Settlements, Mr Tokyo Sexwale, launched Youth Month's Youth Build Programme by handing over 76 houses that were constructed by youth volunteers during May 2011, in Molemole, Limpopo.

The Molemole initiative is part of Human Settlements Vision 2030, which says that "A child born in 2010 would be 20 years old in 2030 and deserving a place to live in an apartment, a flat, a house in the urban areas or in the countryside."

The key elements of Human Settlements Vision 2030 are:

- eradicating the housing backlog of more than 2,1 million units, housing about 12,5 million people
- laying out the department's budget to create more employment opportunities and contribute to increased economic growth and development through the roll-out of bulk infrastructure such as sanitation and water
- creating integrated community settlements encompassing facilities and amenities such as schools, hospitals, places of worship, sporting facilities and commercial and industrial areas within reasonable distances from residential areas
- using densification and inner-city high-rise strategies to harness economies-of-scale and thus house more people per square metre
- encouraging and facilitating the People's Housing Process (PHP), where residents can construct their own houses, making them less dependent on government
- eradicating ghettos, including backyard dwellers
- soliciting greater buy-in by the corporate sector as a partner of government, labour and community stakeholders in campaigns such as the Each-One-Settle-One Campaign launched in 2011.

Legislation, policy and initiatives

The Department of Human Settlements has several legislative proposals in the pipeline to accelerate the achievement of ideal human settlements for the people, and strengthen the legal environment. These include:

- amendments to the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), to align it to the ethos and principles that underpin the creation of sustainable human settlements
- the Land Use Management Bill.

In February 2011, the National Assembly passed the Sectional Titles Schemes Management Bill and the Community Schemes Ombud Service Bill, which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities.

These bills will contribute to good governance and improved administration of sectional titles and community schemes. They will also minimise the negative actions of some corporate bodies.

The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Bill provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.

The Community Schemes Ombud Service Bill will establish an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes. An increasing number of community schemes are being developed, where there is governance by the community involved, shared financial responsibility and common land and facilities. The Bill is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.

Housing Act, 1997

The Housing Act, 1997 provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing-development process, and for this purpose lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defines the functions of national, provincial and

> The Department of Human Settlements hosted the Vision 2030 Indaba at the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University in Port Elizabeth in October 2011.
>
> Meeting under the theme *Defining a New Path for Sustainable Settlements and Social Justice*, the indaba brought together about 300 delegates from academia and the public, private and non-governmental sectors.
>
> The indaba aimed to refine and strengthen the Human Settlements Vision 2030 and develop a blueprint on how to deal with the many human-settlement challenges facing the country.
>
> At the end of the indaba, the Minister of Human Settlements, Mr Tokyo Sexwale, handed over more than 800 houses to beneficiaries in Chetty.

The *First National Bank Property Barometer,* released in March 2011, showed property in more affordable metro areas, particularly former black townships, performed best in price growth in 2010.

The Major Metro Former Black Township House Price Index, with an average house price of R258 334, showed a 20% increase in the average value of homes traded in the fourth quarter of 2010.

The Affordable Area Index, which included areas from all former race classifications and with an average price of R375 219, grew by 11%.

The Middle Income Areas Index with an average house price of R730 064 grew by 9,1%. The High Income Areas Index showed that the average price of R1 105 750 grew by 8,8%.

The Top End Areas Index, with an average price of R1 908 986, was the weakest performer with growth of 7,7%.

local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.

Section Two of the Housing Act, 1997 compels all three spheres of government to, among other things, give priority to the needs of the poor in respect of housing development.

Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)

The Rental Housing Act, 1999 defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure proper functioning of the rental housing market.

It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals; defines the functions, powers and duties of such tribunals; and lays down general principles governing conflict resolution in the rental housing sector. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose lays down general requirements relating to leases. It repeals the Rent Control Act, 1976 (Act 80 of 1976), and provides for matters connected therewith.

Among other things, the Act prescribes that:

- Leases may be oral or in writing. Tenants can demand a written lease.
- The landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant.
- The landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in.
- The balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrate's court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act.

Cabinet approved the Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), to, among other things, amend the Rental Housing Act, 1999 to further provide for rulings by rental housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals. The amendment also substitutes certain definitions; extends the application of Chapter Four to all provinces; requires that the members of the executive council and local authorities establish rental housing tribunals and rental housing information offices respectively; and extends the power of the rental housing tribunals to rescind any of its rulings.

Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households that inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased demand for affordable and well-located rental accommodation. The Department of Human Settlements has developed a project pipeline with a mix of public-private sector rental stock, including the:

By August 2011, the Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme had exceeded its target by providing services in 52 383 sites against a target of 27 054 sites.

- Umlazi Community Rental Unit Programme in KwaZulu-Natal
- Brooklyn Social Housing Programme in Cape Town
- Amalinda Institutional Housing Subsidy in Buffalo City
- Cavendish Inner-City Private-Sector Rental in Johannesburg
- Zola Township Small-Scale Private Rental Stock for backyard dwellers in Gauteng.

All of these are aimed at creating 80 000 rental opportunities by 2014.

Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008)

The Social Housing Act, 2008 aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. It furthermore gives statutory recognition to social housing institutions and provides for matters connected therewith.

Over the years, the social housing sector has grown significantly, and has been the beneficiary of significant funding from government. It is, however, characterised by a patchwork of policies, findings and institutions that neither supports the growth of the sector nor allows for proper regulation and monitoring of funding and policy. For these reasons, the Department of Human Settlements has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act, 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA, all framed by the approved Social Housing Policy.

The Act also provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. In providing for specific functions and responsibilities for the three spheres of government, the Act requires that national government, among other things, create the kind of legislative, regulatory, financial and policy frameworks that will enable the sector to grow further.

Provincial governments are given responsibilities to, among other things, approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme and, for this purpose, approve any projects in respect thereof.

> In September 2011, the Department of Human Settlements introduced Mortgage Default Insurance. This ensures that home owners have shelter if they default on their repayments. It also assures financiers and bond lenders of returns in such a situation.
>
> This is an example of a product tailor-made to take care of the housing finance needs of low- to middle-income households that may be overlooked by banks.

Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones.

The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA, the body that in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), is, among other things, responsible for accrediting social housing institutions, administering and disbursing capital and institutional grants, and monitoring compliance with norms and standards through regular inspections.

It has powers to intervene in the affairs of social housing institutions, resolve maladministration issues and take remedial steps where necessary.

In April 2011, the SHRA launched the *Social Housing Accreditation Register* and issued accreditation certificates to 18 social housing institutions.

The issuing of certificates and the unveiling of the accreditation register is part of the SHRA's mandate to regulate social housing institutions and manage the investment programme for social housing.

Between 2008 and 2011, government spent more than half a billion rand on social housing and remained on course to achieve the target of 25 000 units set in the 2011 to 2013 period.

In 2010/11, R377,2 million was allocated to the SHRA.

Inclusionary Housing Policy

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme replaces the National Hostel Redevelopment Programme and the proposed Affordable Rental Housing Programme.

There are approximately 2 000 public hostels that need to be addressed by government. There are also 200 000 residential units owned by provinces and municipalities. The programme, therefore, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income individuals. The programme targets low-income individuals and households earning between R800 and R3 500 a month, who are unable to enter the formal private rental and social housing market.

The CRU Programme covers:

- public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- "grey" hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

Capacity-building

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The Department of Human Settlements continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for housing capacity-building, and guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans have been developed.

The Department of Human Settlements has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

Emergency housing

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, the subsidy is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the Department of Human Settlements' areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor. This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

The amount allocated to grants for the poor in 20010/11 totalled R15 billion, rising to R17,9 billion in 2013/14.

About a fifth of South African households live in state-subsidised homes, according to Statistics South Africa's *General Household Survey* (GHS), released in May 2011.

At the time of the survey, 18,9% of South African households lived in state-subsidised dwellings.

According to the report, 13% of respondents had at least one household member on a waiting list for a Reconstruction and Development Programme house. In 2010, as in preceding years, female-headed households (11,1%) were more likely to receive a housing subsidy than male-headed households (8,8%).

The proportion of people living in informal dwellings appears unchanged between 2002 and 2010, at 13%.

The GHS was conducted in July, August and September 2010 in face-to-face interviews with 25 635 households.

Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land; servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial, recreational, schools and clinics; as well as residential stands for low-, middle- and high-income groups. The land-use and income-group mix is based on local planning and needs assessments.

The IRDP can be undertaken in several phases or in one single phase. The first phase could provide serviced stands, whereas the second phase provides for housing construction for qualifying low-income beneficiaries and the sale of stands to persons who, for various reasons, don't qualify for subsidies; and/or the disposal of other stands such as those for commercial uses.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project. The latter option is only available to beneficiaries who access housing credit.

> More single women are buying homes in South Africa, with the number rising significantly over the last four years. According to mortgage company ooba, the ratio of women to men in single-person home-loan applications increased from 36,53% in January 2007 to 46,94% in 2011. Single-person applications made up 49,65% of applications, compared to joint applications.

> An amount of R305 million was set aside to build more than 5 000 houses across Mpumalanga in 2011/12. The project was part of the provincial Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, which includes the People's Housing Process.

This programme was enhanced by aligning the quantum of the grant available under the programme with the actual current delivery cost of a house of 40 m^2 on a serviced stand. The subsidy amount is R84 000. The amount comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

The revised subsidy amount is expected to improve beneficiary access to mortgage finance and is available on a first-come first-served basis.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options, on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy.

Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy will receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms and visible door bells for the deaf.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents.

Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

In 2011, a new housing-subsidy programme for farm residents was approved. The programme attempts to address the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context. In most instances, the programme will be applied where the farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in the town impracticable.

Farm residents will play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions with regard to the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, and the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme (FLISP)

Government introduced the FLISP to assist first-time home buyers who earn between R3 501 and R7 000 per month to obtain a home loan. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by the State. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

People's Housing Process

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves the building of their homes. The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guiding the beneficiaries in building their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is given by the State and the authorities. Unlike the project-linked subsidy, where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

The PHP is a useful tool for community involvement. Savings resulting from beneficiary participation in the building of their own homes and the material used may result in homes that are bigger and of better quality than contractor-built houses.

Stakeholder management

The private sector is a vital partner that must be engaged if the world's cities are to be achieved sustainably.

A further challenge is to increase operations through new partnerships to address the daunting challenges of rapid urbanisation.

The Department of Human Settlements has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa. The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery (SCRHD) and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The SCRHD was signed in September 2005 during the Housing Indaba in Cape Town. The contract was signed by the then Department of Housing, provincial housing departments, national housing institutions and private stakeholders that form part of the supply value chain in the delivery of housing.

The SCRHD aims to be a structuring device for steering interdependent activities into a new bargaining context so that all of the activities in the wider sector co-produce desirable outcomes such as:

- more sustainable human settlements
- social equality, economically efficient and effective settlements
- environmentally sensitive built environments with reduced carbon footprints.

The areas of focus broadly take account of the department's mandate. These focus areas are:
- social cohesion
- planning and development
- financing human settlements
- neighbourhood design: building communities (through spatial and physical articulation).

Women in housing
As a result of initiatives such as the Women's Build and the Women in Housing Indaba, women's participation in the construction industry is projected to significantly increase to reach the 50% target for female-owned projects in housing construction by 2014, including disabled women and youth.

National Women Build is a Letsema housing construction project, which was launched in 2005 in Gauteng. Since then, the project has been hosted by different provinces where houses have been built for vulnerable and marginalised women to commemorate one of the largest demonstrations in the country's history, when thousands of women marched to the Union Buildings in Pretoria in 1956 to protest against the pass laws.

National Women Build seeks to promote the spirit of volunteerism as well as public-private partnership.

The organisation now known as Khuthaza has been operating as Women for Housing since 1995. Khuthaza, meaning "encourage" in Zulu, is a non-profit company supporting the development of women in the housing and construction sectors.

Khuthaza encourages the entrance of women into the built environment sectors and the development of thriving careers and businesses. It supports government initiatives relating to housing and infrastructure delivery, the maintenance and growth of the construction industry and Broad-Based BEE.

In August 2011, Minister Sexwale handed over a house to a 102-year-old woman in Brandfort, in the Free State.

The handover was part of 55 houses built by women as part of the commemoration of the 1956 Women's March.

The Drommedaris Brooklyn Social Housing Project was launched in March 2011. This R75-million Social Housing Project in Cape Town was designed to take advantage of the city's proposed Bus Rapid Transit routes.

The project is part of the Department of Human Settlements' social housing initiative, which aims to provide accommodation for people who do not qualify for government-subsidised houses and also cannot access mortgage loans from banks.

It is an example of the department's Social Housing Strategy to deracialise and transform the inner cities, revitalise strategic nodes of development and address economic, social and spatial dysfunctionalities.

Youth Build
The Youth Build SA programme integrates academic achievement, work experience, social action, leadership development and personal transformation in a single project. It was piloted in Ivory Park, Midrand, in Gauteng and will be rolled out to other parts of the country.

Its components include:
- education and skills development
- leadership and service
- counselling and support services
- exit opportunities.

The five-year project will see:
- 1 000 young people trained in various related skills
- 10 small businesses created
- 10 scholarships awarded.

The estimated cost of the project is R31 million.

Celebrating Youth Month in June 2011, the Department of Human Settlements called on the South African youth to join the department in accelerating the delivery of sustainable human settlements. The Minister of Human Settlements launched Youth Month activities in Modimolle in Limpopo. Youth volunteers constructed 76 houses in four weeks in the province.

National Housing Awards
The Govan Mbeki Housing Awards is an annual event celebrated during the first week of October. Its purpose is to encourage and motivate all stakeholders in the housing industry to harness human and other resources in accelerating housing delivery.

The awards seek to honour outstanding performance by role players in the housing value chain, including developers, building contractors, the banking sector, community-based organisations, the mining sector, building-material suppliers and professional associations.

A housing project next to the Happy Valley township in Cape Town is expected to provide about 1 460 dwellings. The development will include construction of bulk services at a cost of R204 million. Construction of services started in June 2011 and the project is expected to be completed by March 2013.

Housing institutions

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans. They also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the Department of Human Settlements.

The institutions are the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC), National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC), National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), Social Housing Foundation (SHF), Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF), the Housing Development Agency (HDA), Servcon Housing Solutions, the SHRA and Thubelisha Homes.

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998, as amended), to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and to regulate the home-building industry.

The council is providing training and capacity-building to promote satisfactory levels of technical standards in the home-building environment.

The NHBRC achieved a number of operating targets during 2010/11:

- registering 3 650 home-builders against the target of 3 000
- enrolling 31 458 homes against a set target of 37 000
- commencing a review of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 to address misalignments with other legislative prescripts, such as the PFMA, 1999 and the Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008).

In July 2011, the NHBRC launched the Legacy Project, which aims to provide homes to the elderly, child-headed families and the disabled.

In September 2011, the Department of Human Settlements handed over houses to some beneficiaries who were registered on provincial and city housing lists. Four areas allocated by government were set aside to build eight double-storey 60-m^2 homes.

The Legacy Project's achievements formed part of the 12th International Housing and Home Warranty Conference.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHFC was established in 1996 as a development finance institution to search for new ways to mobilise finance for housing from sources outside the State.

The corporation provides wholesale finance and acts as a fund and risk manager. The organisation has been incorporated as a company with share capital in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973, as amended).

The institution is mandated to make housing finance accessible and affordable for low- to middle-income households.

The NHFC disburses development finance through wholesale, commercial and retail businesses units. The retail business, which was introduced in 2009/10, was scaled down due to funding constraints.

The NHFC experienced tough trading conditions during 2010/11 as the building and construction sector struggled to recover following the economic downturn. Lower volumes of finance applications were received compared to previous years.

The core business of the NHFC is expected to be refocused in future to facilitate increased and sustained lending contributions by the private sector.

Social Housing Foundation

SHF, a Section 21 company, was established in 1996. It aims to develop a sustainable social housing sector by providing policy support, social-housing research, technical support, coordination support, as well as monitoring and evaluation services to various public and private stakeholders.

A plan has been developed to guide the closure of the SHF over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework. During 2010/11, the SHF continued with the implementation of the closure plan.

The institution managed the disbursement of the Restructuring Capital Grant through the Interim Social Housing Programme (ISHP), while the SHRA was being established.

With the operationalisation of the SHRA in 2010/11, functions and staff attached to the functions, as well as the assets of the ISHP, were transferred to the SHRA.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The RHLF was established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973. It acts as a wholesale provider of development finance to retail financial intermediaries for the disbursement of housing credit to low-income rural households, thereby supporting government's effort to expedite housing delivery.

The number of new loans disbursed by the institution to retail intermediaries increased from 33 112 in 2009/10 to 41 297 by the end of March 2011.

The value of loan disbursements increased from R161 million in 2009/10 to R224 million in 2010/11, reflecting the effective application of the additional capital injection of R49,5 million by the Department of Human Settlements.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha was established as a Presidential Lead Project in 1995, in partnership with the Open Society Institute, as a Section 21 company in terms of the Companies Act, 1973.

The institution's strategic focus is on financing building contractors in the housing industry, specifically subsidised, affordable housing and related community infrastructures, differentiating between established and emerging contractors.

Finance is provided directly to established contractors while a separate, specialised intermediary channel is used for the provision of finance to emerging contractors, resulting in the normalisation of risks associated with this market segment by the traditional financial institutions. In this regard, the intermediaries assist the emerging contractors with a range of construction-support services.

During 2010/11, Nurcha continued disbursing finance to contractors for the development of sustainable human settlements through three programmes, namely the:

- Subsidy Housing Programme
- Affordable Housing Programme
- Community Facilities and Infrastructure Programme.

Trading conditions were worse than anticipated as the recovery of the building and construction industry lags behind the recovery of the economy in general, following the economic downturn.

Nurcha, in partnership with Future Growth Asset Management, won the 2010 Africa Investor Investment Awards in the Social Infrastructure Deal of the Year Category in acknowledgement of the role they played in the development of rural areas.

Housing Development Agency

The HDA was established in terms of the HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), in April 2009. Its purpose is to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state- and privately owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements.

The agency is required to facilitate the acquisition of land in a way that supplements the capacities of government across all spheres.

The HDA provides project-management expertise in human-settlement projects and facilitates the development of projects through accelerated and innovative project packaging.

The lack of funding for the acquisition of land impedes the agency's ability to fast-track the development of human settlements with the provision of land. However, the HDA managed to identify 33 000 ha of state-owned land suitable for human-settlement development in 2010/11. In 2011, applications were submitted to the custodian departments to effect the release of the land for development.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI) and Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational.

NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available and accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be best located.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The HDA's sole mandate is to acquire land on behalf of government for human settlement. The target is to acquire 6 025 ha by 2014. This is expected to provide for 500 000 housing units.

Servcon Housing Solutions

Servcon Housing Solutions was established in 1995 as a result of the Record of Understanding entered into between the then Department of Housing, representing government, and the Banking Council, representing participating banks.

It was established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 and mandated to provide exclusive management services effective from April 1998, with respect to a documented ring-fenced portfolio of 33 310 properties comprising properties in possession and non-performing loans worth R1,277 billion from April 1998 to March 2006.

In 2006, the shareholders represented by the Banking Council and the then Department of Housing parted in terms of the sale of shares and claims agreement.

During 2010/11, Servcon Housing Solutions continued with the implementation of a closure plan, as approved by the executive authority.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The Social Housing Act, 2008 provides for the establishment of the SHRA. The Act provides for the disbursement of three types of institutional investment grants, namely:

- project acquisition and feasibility grants
- pre-accreditation grants
- general capacity-building grants.

The main objective of the SHRA is to regulate and support the social housing sector to accelerate the delivery of social housing stock through the investment programme.

The SHRA began operations in 2010/11 and focuses on the building of necessary operational capacity, systems, policies and controls to deliver on its mandate.

The Interim Social Housing Programme, previously administered by the SHF in the absence of the SHRA, was transferred to the SHRA during 2010/11.

Thubelisha Homes

Thubelisha Homes, a Section 21 company, was established in June 1998 as a special-purpose financial vehicle to create housing stock for clients of Servcon Housing Solutions. As a result of the agreement between government and the banks to subsidise the transfer of properties to all of the remaining Servcon clients, the relocation programme has been effectively discontinued. Accordingly, Thubelisha's mandate has been reviewed in line with the objectives of the department's comprehensive housing plan. Thubelisha has been repositioned to provide provinces and municipalities with technical assistance to unblock stalled housing projects and prepare fast-tracked housing projects to respond to emergency housing circumstances.

International relations

There has been visible participation in African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development (AMCHUD). South Africa was the AMCHUD Secretariat for the last six years, handing over to Kenya at AMCHUD IV in Kenya in April 2012.

In April 2011, the department participated at the UN Habitat Governing Council held in Kenya. Rapid urbanisation remains a major challenge in developing countries. More than 70% of the world population will live in cities by 2050.

The department has a memorandum of understanding with the Netherlands on housing cooperation.

Acknowledgements

A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector, published by the German Technical Cooperation
BuaNews
Department of Human Settlements, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Servcon
Thubelisha Homes
Rural Housing Loan Fund
Sowetan Live
The National Housing Code
The Sowetan
The Star
Pretoria News

http://allafrica.com
http://housingnc.ncape.gov.za
www.dhs.gov.za
www.eumunicipaloutreach.org.za
www.gov.za
www.info.gov.za
www.pmg.org.za
www.propertyscene.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.servconhousing.co.za
www.thehda.co.za

Suggested reading

Bank, LJ. 2011. *Home Spaces, Street Styles: Contesting Power and Identity in a South African City.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Berrisford, S (ed). 2008. *In Search of Land and Housing in the New South Africa: The Case of Ethembalethu.* (e-book). Washington, DC: World Bank.
Bieber, J. 2010. *Soweto*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
Murray, MJ. 2011. *City of Extremes: The Spatial Politics of Johannesburg.* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Pieterse, E (ed). 2010. *Counter Currents: Experiments in Sustainability in the Cape Town Region.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Schenck, R, Louw, H and Nel, H. 2010. *Introduction to Participatory Community Practice.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Smith, CP. 2009. *Eviction and Rental Claims: A Practical Guide.* Durban: LexisNexis.
Tshitereke, C. 2009. *There Shall Be Houses, Security and Comfort.* Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.



International relations

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's mandate is to formulate, coordinate, implement and manage South Africa's foreign-policy objectives by:

- monitoring developments in the international environment
- communicating government's policy positions
- developing and advising government on policy options
- creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving predetermined objectives
- promoting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity
- assisting South African citizens abroad
- assisting partner departments in managing complex international dynamics.

The principles underpinning the department's foreign policy are the country's commitment to:

- prioritising Africa in world affairs
- economic development through regional and international cooperation
- the promotion of human rights
- the promotion of democracy
- justice and international law in the conduct of relations between nations
- international peace and internationally agreed-upon mechanisms for the resolution of conflict.

White Paper on South Africa's Foreign Policy

In 2011, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation released the *White Paper on Building a Better World: The Diplomacy of Ubuntu*. South Africa is a multifaceted, multicultural and multiracial country that embraces the concept of Ubuntu to define who the people are and how they relate to others. The philosophy of Ubuntu means "humanity" and is reflected in the idea that South Africans affirm their humanity when they affirm the humanity of others.

It has played a major role in forging a South African national consciousness and in the process of its democratic transformation and nation-building.

Since 1994, the international community has looked to South Africa to play a leading role in championing the values of human rights, democracy, reconciliation and the eradication of poverty and underdevelopment.

South Africa has risen to the challenge and plays a meaningful role in the region, on the continent and the world.

South Africa's unique approach to global issues has found expression in the concept of Ubuntu. These concepts inform the country's particular approach to diplomacy.

This philosophy translates into an approach to international relations that respects all nations, peoples and cultures. It recognises that it is in South Africa's national interest to promote and support the positive development of others.

South Africa therefore accords central importance to:

- its immediate African neighbourhood and continent
- working with countries of the South to address shared challenges of underdevelopment
- promoting global equity and social justice
- working with countries of the North to develop a true and effective partnership for a better world
- doing its part to strengthen the multilateral system, including its transformation, to reflect the diversity of nations and ensure its centrality in global governance.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa has always regarded Africa as the centrepiece of its foreign policy, and is mobilising a significant amount of resources towards the socio-economic awakening of the continent, peace-making and peace-building, and post-conflict reconstruction and development.

African Union (AU)

South Africa's commitment to the advancement of the African Agenda remains. In this regard, the development and strengthening of the AU as a continental body and its structures, as well as adherence to a rules-based system of work, is of great importance to the country. South Africa places high value on the AU's mandate and work. In this regard, South Africa continues to support the AU at multiple levels, key among which is South Africa's annual assessed contribution as one of the five largest member-state contributors to the AU. In addition, South Africa continues to host and support the Pan-African Parliament (PAP), the South African Chapter of the AU Economic, Social and Cultural Council and the Pan-African Women's Organisation. South Africa played an instrumental role in establishing the AU and its organs, namely the:

- Assembly
- Executive Council

- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee (PRC)
- Peace and Security Council (AUPSC)
- PAP
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and Peoples' Rights
- African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights.

The financial institutions, namely the African Monetary Fund, African Central Bank and African Court of Justice, still have to be put into operation.

The 53-member AU was officially launched in Durban in July 2002, following its inaugural summit. It replaced the Organisation of African Unity, which was established in May 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

The AU's objectives include:

- achieving greater unity and solidarity between African countries and the peoples of Africa
- defending the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its member states
- accelerating the political and socio-economic integration of the continent
- encouraging international cooperation
- promoting peace, security and stability on the continent
- promoting democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance
- promoting and protecting people's rights
- establishing the necessary conditions to enable the continent to play its rightful role in the global economy and international negotiations
- promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, and integrating African economies
- promoting cooperation in all fields of human activity to raise living standards
- promoting research in all fields
- eradicating preventable diseases and promoting good health on the continent.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent. This includes:

- establishing the PSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflict, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction and development in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- adopting a common defence policy that, among other things, talks to the establishment of an African Standby Force, comprising the five AU regional brigades (Central, Northern, Western, Eastern and Southern regions)
- establishing the Human and Peoples' Rights Court
- implementing the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality
- implementing the Protocol on the Court of Justice.

The eight existing regional economic communities (RECs), which include the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the Economic Community of West African States, have begun to determine time lines to achieve free-trade agreements and customs unions.

Promoting peace, security and stability on the continent

The AU is responsible for the peaceful resolution of conflict among member states, through such appropriate means as may be decided upon by the AU Assembly.

The PSC Protocol came into force in December 2003, operationalising the 15-member AUPSC, which was inaugurated in May 2004, in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

As a collective security and early warning arrangement, the PSC allows for a timely and effective response to conflict and crises in Africa.

In terms of PSC statutes, all African countries should establish their own early warning centres.

The AUPSC Protocol provided for the creation of the African Standby Force, to be operationalised over 10 years.

The second extraordinary session of the AU Assembly, held in Libya in February 2004, adopted the Common African Defence and Security Policy.

South Africa has been active in efforts to bring about peace and stability on the continent. The country has engaged in peacekeeping operations and peace-building measures in support of the African Agenda, and has played an important mediation and/or facilitation role in countries such as Burundi, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Sudan, Ethiopia-Eritrea, Côte d'Ivoire, Madagascar and Zimbabwe.

South Africa has also helped some countries on the continent to set up institutions, such as the Independent Electoral Commission, while participating in election-observation missions, establishing functional civil services and using South Africa's experience in post-conflict and reconstruction and development programmes.

South Africa was re-elected to the AUPSC for a period of two years effective from April 2010.

In January 2011, the 16th AU Summit opened in Addis Ababa, as African leaders gathered to discuss peace, security and stability on the continent.

The summit's theme was *Towards Greater Unity and Integration through Shared Values*. Issues under discussion included the political crisis in Côte d'Ivoire, the social unrest in Tunisia and Egypt, post-referendum reconstruction in Sudan and the situation in Somalia.

Development, climate change and achieving the millennium development goals (MDGs) were also priorities of the summit.

Socio-economic development and integration of the continent

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, and integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the PRC.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosts the Nepad Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand.

In June 2011, during the AU Summit in Malabo, Equatorial Guinea, President Jacob Zuma addressed the meeting on mobilising resources to finance Nepad initiatives. Since Nepad's adoption by the 2001 Heads of State Summit in Lusaka, Zambia, it has contributed to Africa, not only progressing towards the right direction but also focusing on key economic fundamentals that will help generate a better economic growth path. Economically, Africa is the third-fastest growing region in the world.

Africa is now proclaimed as the world's most profitable region, according to leading economists. Also, the UN Economic Commission for Africa/Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) publication, *African Economic Outlook*, finds that the continent is on the recovery. Economic growth rates for the continent for 2012 are predicted between 5,5% and 5,8%.

Nepad remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa-China Partnership, the Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), the Tokyo International Conference on African Development, the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP) and the OECD.

The primary objectives of Nepad is:

- eradicating poverty
- halting the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process
- promoting regional integration through, among other things, advancing infrastructure, informa-

Highlights on the international scene in 2011 included:

- election by acclamation to the United Nations (UN) Security Council
- admission to the most powerful bloc of emerging markets: Brazil, Russia, India and China
- leadership of the infrastructure development initiative within the framework of the New Partnership for Africa's Development
- assumption of the chairpersonship of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Organ on Politics, Defence and Security
- hosting the SADC-East African Economic Community-Common Economic Community of East and Southern Africa
- hosting the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties and Seventh Session of the Conference of the Parties serving as the meeting of the parties to the Kyoto Protocol Summit in Durban
- hosting the India, Brazil, South Africa Summit.

tion and communications technology (ICT), agricultural, health and scientific projects
- enhancing the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the MDGs.

The underlying principles of Nepad are:
- Accountability: Nepad recognises the importance of good political, economic and corporate governance in creating the conditions for development, with African governments embracing greater accountability to their constituents. Nepad also seeks to base Africa's partnership with the North on mutual accountability.
- Ownership: Nepad is a long-term vision that is African-led and -owned. Ownership should be promoted through broad and deep participation by all sectors of society, and by tapping into indigenous knowledge/expertise to define needs and solutions.
- Partnership: While Nepad is a partnership between and among Africans, it seeks to accelerate sustainable development in Africa through partnerships with the South, and to redefine a new partnership with the developed North that changes the unequal relationship with Africa.

Resources for Nepad are mobilised by way of increasing savings and capital inflows via debt relief, increased targeted official development assistance (ODA) and private capital investment, as well as through better management of public revenue and expenditure.

Through Nepad, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology (S&T), infrastructure and education have brought improvement in the quality of life for millions of Africans.

The 14th session of the AU decided to integrate Nepad into the AU and established the Nepad Planning and Coordinating Agency (NPCA) as a technical body of the AU. This is an important step towards accelerating Nepad's implementation. The NPCA will focus on the implementation of regional integration programmes and projects.

In November and December 2011, the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change was held in Durban. The Department of International Relations and Cooperation hosted the event on behalf of the country, with the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, as president of the summit.

The AU/Nepad African Action Plan for 2010 to 2015 is a masterplan for concrete projects that will serve as a catalyst for the development of the continent.

One of the outflows of Nepad was the introduction of the APRM, accepted by member states of the AU as an African self-monitoring mechanism in 2003.

The peer review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

In January 2011, President Zuma addressed the 14th Summit of the Committee of Participating Heads of State and Government of the APRM on the occasion of the presentation of South Africa's *Second APRM Report*.

By April 2011, 30 African countries had acceded to the APRM and 14 had been peer-reviewed.

Structures

Heads of State and Government Orientation Committee (HSGOC)

The Nepad HSGOC reports biannually to the summit of the AU. The chairperson of the AU Commission (AUC) is an ex-officio member of the Implementation Committee, and the AUC is expected to participate in steering committee meetings.

The HSGOC comprises 20 states (four per AU geographic region), including the five initiating states: South Africa, Nigeria, Algeria, Senegal and Egypt.

The HSGOC is the essence and spirit of Nepad with the lead function of high-level coordination of the Nepad priority sectors.

Steering Committee

The Steering Committee comprises representatives of the 20 HSGOC members. It is an intermediary body between the HSGOC and the NPCA.

The chairperson of the AUC exercises supervisory authority over the NPCA, while giving the new agency adequate and necessary flexibilities to carry out its mandate, thereby maintaining the corporate brand identity of the Nepad programme within the AU.

Secretariat

The AUC deals with policy and serves as the Secretariat of the AU.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC has been in existence since 1980. It was formed as a loose alliance of nine majority-ruled states in southern Africa known as the Southern African Development Coordination Conference. The main aim was to coordinate development projects to lessen economic dependence on the then apartheid South Africa. The founding member states were: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

As a community of nations, the SADC has had to work together in confronting various challenges of a political and socio-economic nature.

In August 2011, President Zuma was elected as chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Troika. He took over from former Zambian President, Mr Rupiah Banda, when the regional leaders met in Angola.

The launch of the Free Trade Area (FTA) Agreement in 2008 laid the foundation for regional economic integration. The FTA Agreement is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations within southern Africa through trade. These broaden SADC efforts continue to be supplemented and complemented by developments within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) membership and the elevation of regional integration efforts through the tripartite economic arrangement comprising the SADC, the East African Community and the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa.

In terms of Sacu, the overall objective is the pursuance of enhanced intra-Sacu trade through improved infrastructure and increased industrialisation. The year 2010 marked Sacu's centenary, which was highlighted by the inaugural Sacu Summit in Namibia. South Africa ascended to the chairship of Sacu at the second Sacu Summit held in Pretoria in July 2010 and hosted the third summit in March 2011. Sacu members have developed a work programme on priority areas that is being implemented.

Relations with southern Africa

Angola

Relations between the people of South Africa and Angola were cemented during the anti-colonial and anti-apartheid struggles, which saw South Africa and Angola's liberation movements, the African National Congress (ANC) and the Movement for the Liberation of Angola, forging an alliance leading to the independence of their respective countries. These relations were transformed into state-to-state relations following the dawn of peace, democracy and justice in South Africa in 1994. Many South Africans regard Angola as their second home.

South Africa committed itself to assisting Angola with its post-conflict reconstruction projects and programmes. The first session of the Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) was held in Pretoria in February 2003. Subsequently, significant progress has been made in identifying, negotiating and finalising numerous agreements.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana signed the Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation (JPCC) Agreement in 2003. The JPCC provides a legal and institutional framework for further cooperation in identified strategic areas.

Democratic Republic of Congo

Over the past few years, the DRC has evolved as one of South Africa's growing and leading trading partners in the region. The two countries cooperate on several projects, including security-sector reform, capacity- and institution-building and infrastructure development.

South Africa is involved in the reconstruction of the DRC, helping to rebuild its public service. The country also re-affirmed its continued support to the Congolese Government to build durable state institutions that inspire confidence in the people. South Africa will continue supporting efforts aimed at the consolidation of democracy in that country.

In June 2011, President Zuma led a high-level delegation from South Africa to meet a delegation from the DRC in Lubumbashi to review the progress made in implementing agreements signed between the two countries.

The seventh session of the DRC Binational Commission (BNC) was held in June 2011. During the BNC, the two delegations reviewed the implementation of the commitments and recommendations made during the sixth session of the BNC. These commitments and recommendations concern cooperation projects in the following areas: politics and governance; defence and security; economy, finance and infrastructure; and social and humanitarian affairs.

In September 2011, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, Dr Lindiwe Sisulu, announced Operation Mistral in the DRC. A total of 1 236 South African National Defence Force (SANDF) members were deployed in this operation. The SANDF contingent was in support of the UN Organisation Stabilisation Mission in the DRC.

In November 2011, President Zuma and his counterpart, President Joseph Kabila, presided over the signing of the Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Grand Inga Project, a hydropower project with an estimated capacity of 40 000 MW. It is expected it will change Africa's energy sector. The MoU also paves the way for agreements between the two countries' electricity utility companies.

Lesotho

The economies of South Africa and Lesotho are interdependent, with Lesotho providing a strategic resource to South Africa in the form of labour and skills. South Africa is Lesotho's only neighbour.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP) was started in 1986 as a joint venture to supply water to South Africa, especially the rapidly growing urban population of Gauteng, and to meet Lesotho's electricity needs. The project delivers about 780 million m^3 of water to South Africa per year. It is regarded as Africa's largest transfer project as well as the largest ongoing binational construction project.

In August 2011, the then Minister of Communications, Mr Roy Padayachie, signed a statement of cooperation with his Lesotho counterpart, the Minister of Communications, Science and Technology, Mr Mothejoa Metsing, in Pretoria.

The statement served as a vehicle to explore discussions and potential partnerships on mutually beneficial programmes for the two countries. This culminated in the signing of an MoU between the two ministries.

Some of the areas of potential cooperation include digital migration, cybersecurity, home-and-away roaming, postal services and broadband.

In August 2011, South Africa signed the agreement for the implementation of Phase Two of the LHWP in Maseru, Lesotho. This phase will consist of a water-delivery system to augment the delivery of water to South Africa and a hydropower generation system. The water-delivery system comprises Polihali Reservoir on the Senqu River, a water conveyance tunnel connecting the Polihali and Katse reservoirs, access roads to the project sites, camps, power-transmission lines and administration centres, including social and environmental projects and programmes.

Phase Two will also include a pump-storage scheme, associated transmission lines and auxiliary power unit works.

Malawi

In 1967, South Africa established its first formal diplomatic relations with an independent African country, namely Malawi. Relations with Malawi have been conducted at the level of high commission.

Mozambique

South Africa and Mozambique share good historic and neighbourly relations that have over the years been solidified through the South Africa-Mozambique Heads of State Economic Bilateral Commission, the JPCC, promoting the SADC and AU policies and the effective implementation of Nepad programmes.

In June 2011, South Africa and Mozambique signed an MoU that was expected to see the two countries work together on issues of piracy and transborder crime.

The partnership and cooperation include joint training, the sharing of information and intelligence, joint patrols and ongoing support in military developments.

In August 2011, South Africa hosted the third session of the South Africa-Mozambique Joint Permanent Commission on Defence and Security (JPCDS). The South Africa-Mozambique JPC is tasked with implementing joint operations such as border, navy and air patrols. The JPCDS will also consider issues of training and military health between the two countries.

The JPCDS held its third session in November 2011 in Pretoria.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy close cooperation in a number of areas, which is further enhanced by high-level engagements such as the Heads of State Economic Bilateral Meeting. The meetings focus on joint economic cooperation projects such as spatial development initiatives, tourism, energy matters and matters related to Sacu and SADC.

The annual meetings of the JPCDS between the two countries aim to identify, discuss and promote bilateral and regional cooperation in the security area.

South Africa is one of Namibia's most important economic partners. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Namibia accounts for two thirds of Namibia's total foreign trade.

Swaziland

The Kingdom of Swaziland and South Africa share common cultural links that date back to pre-colonial times.

The South African Government has urged all the relevant parties in Swaziland to begin a political dialogue with a view to speedily and peacefully resolve the challenges it faces.

Tanzania

In May 2011, the Minister of Home Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, held bilateral discussions with her Tanzanian counterpart, Minister Shamsi Vuai Nahodha.

In July 2011, Tanzania's President Jakaya Kikwete paid a state visit to South Africa. During the visit, relations between South Africa and Tanzania received a boost following the signing of an agreement to establish a BNC and the Agreement on Cooperation in the fields of Arts and Culture.

Other agreements and MoUs that were signed included the:
- Cooperation Agreement in Agriculture
- Agreement on Mutual Assistance between Customs Administration
- Bilateral Air Services Agreement
- MoU on Transport-Related Matters.

In September 2011, the South African Government deployed the SANDF to a rescue and humanitarian mission following a ferry accident along the island of Zanzibar off the coast of Tanzania.

Zambia

Zambia is South Africa's biggest trading partner in Africa, with a total trade volume of US$2 billion.

The countries have signed MoUs to enhance their ties in sectors such as agriculture, health, mining and energy.

In September 2011, the South African Government congratulated Zambian President Elect, Mr Michael Sata, after he was announced winner of the presidential elections.

Government reaffirmed its desire to further enhance its strong historical relations with Zambia and to continue working with the Government and people of Zambia for the mutual benefit of the two countries.

Zimbabwe

In April 2011, South Africa supported the decision by the SADC Organ Troika (made up of Mozambique, South Africa and Zambia) on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation, which resolved that:
- violence, intimidation, hate speech, harassment and other forms of action that contradict the letter and spirit of the Global Political Agreement (GPA) must end
- all stakeholders to the GPA should implement all its provisions and create a conducive environment for peace, security and free political activity
- the inclusive Government in Zimbabwe should complete all the necessary steps for holding elections, including the finalisation of the constitutional amendments and the referendum
- the SADC should assist in the formulation of guidelines aimed at assisting the holding of elections that will be peaceful, free and fair
- the troika undertook to appoint a team of officials to join the Facilitation Team and work with the Joint Monitoring and Implementation Committee to ensure monitoring, evaluation and implementation of the GPA.

Uganda

Since 1994, the two countries have cooperated in peace-building efforts on the African continent, particularly in the Great Lakes Region.

In January 2011, at the invitation of President Zuma, President Yoweri Kaguta Museveni paid a two-day state visit to South Africa. His visit followed President Zuma's first state visit to Uganda in March 2010.

The two heads of state witnessed the signing of MoUs and cooperation agreements in the fields of public works and infrastructure, agriculture, forestry and fisheries, social development and trade and industry. These MoUs and agreements will further enhance the consolidation and expansion of bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Uganda.

In February 2011, President Zuma congratulated President Museveni on his re-election.

South Africa recognised that the Ugandan presidential and parliamentary elections of 18 February 2011 were held in accordance with the AU Declaration on the Principles Governing Democratic Elections in Africa.

South Africa is committed to working with the Government of Uganda for the mutual benefit of the two countries.

In August 2011, President Museveni and President Zuma held wide-ranging consultations on issues of mutual concern related to the African continent.

Kenya

South Africa and Kenya re-established official relations in 1992 after a break of 29 years. The South African mission, originally started in November 1991, was accorded diplomatic privileges and immunities in May 1992. Relations were upgraded to full diplomatic status in April 1994.

In 2003, the two governments signed the Declaration of Intent on Cooperation and further expanded it in October 2007 for the establishment of a JCC.

In accordance with the JCC agreement, a mid-term review is to be done annually at senior officials' level prior to the JCC, which is to be held biennially and is to be presided over by foreign ministers.

In November 2010, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe paid an official visit to Kenya. This led to senior officials from South Africa and Kenya participating in the Senior Officials' Meeting (SOM) in March 2011. The SOM took place within the framework of official instruments signed between South Africa and Kenya.

The purpose of the SOM was to discuss the outcomes arising from the Deputy President's official visit to Kenya and for officials to plan for the inauguration of the JCC, later in 2011.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa.

South Africa plans to create the South African Development Agency, which intends to drive a development-partnership programme to build innovative, proactive and sustainable partnerships to advance African development.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with countries in the Indian Ocean islands remain strong.

Bilateral relations have been strengthened since 1994, especially in trade and investment, culture, sport and recreation. There has also been progress in finalising the General Cooperation Agreement (GCA) as well as agreements in such areas as education, scientific and technical cooperation, shipping and maritime activities, environment and tourism as well as social development.

In September 2011, the Troika of the Politics, Defence and Security Organ of the SADC met in Madagascar on a fact-finding mission in a bid to revive the peace process there. The troika engaged the Malagasy stakeholders to accept the Road Map as amended by the SADC Extraordinary Summit held in Sandton, South Africa, in June 2011.

The Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Marius Fransman, led the talks as South Africa took over the chair of the troika in September 2011.

The SADC suspended Madagascar in 2009 after a military coup there.

Comoros

South Africa and the Comoros have had official relations since 1993.

South Africa, as the AU-mandated coordinator of the Countries of the Region on the Comoros, is facilitating and closely monitoring the transition process.

In May 2011, President Zuma congratulated Dr Ikililou Dhoinine on assuming the Presidency of the Comoros. He also commended its people for steps taken in implementing a democratic transformation.

Development cooperation

South Africa is not a donor country, but development cooperation with countries in Africa is integral to the country's foreign policy.

Assistance is wide-ranging and includes educational visits by agriculturists, establishing viable training centres, conserving the environment and rendering medical assistance and technology-exchange programmes.

Technical and financial assistance aimed at capacity-building, especially in SADC countries, is a major instrument for promoting regional economic development, peace, stability and democracy.

Relations with central Africa

Gabon

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Gabon were established in 1992. A legal framework was created through the signing of a co-operation agreement, and further agreements have since been signed.

Gabon served as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 to 2012.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa were established in May 1994.

In September 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe attended the inauguration ceremony of President Elect, Mr Manuel Pinto Da Costa, of the Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe. South Africa and São Tomé share the same values, especially a dedication to constitutional democracy and good governance.

Deputy President Motlanthe took advantage of the occasion to renew the bilateral relations and solidarity between the two countries.

The President Elect recommitted his government to the implementation of the GCA signed between the two countries in April 2005. This agreement will contribute towards closer links between the two countries in the expansion of trade and investment.

Congo

South Africa formalised diplomatic relations with Congo in 1993 and the two countries enjoy sound bilateral relations.

South Africa has economic cooperation, maritime transport, and arts and culture agreements with Congo, which will build on important work already underway in areas such as health and defence.

South Africa is also keen to participate in the development of the agricultural sector in Congo.

Equatorial Guinea

Diplomatic relations between Equatorial Guinea and South Africa were established in May 1993.

The Deputy Minister of Police, Ms Makhotso Sotyu, led a police delegation on an official visit to Equatorial Guinea in March 2011. She met with the country's Minister of National Security, Mr Nicolas Obama Nchama. The purpose of the visit was based on a framework of collaboration and cooperation between South Africa and Equatorial Guinea, and intended to discuss issues concerning police matters based on South Africa's international event-hosting expertise.

In October 2011, President Teodoro Obiang Mbasogo paid a state visit to South Africa.

Cameroon

Diplomatic relations between the republics of South Africa and Cameroon date back to April 1994. During 2006, South Africa and Cameroon signed a GCA, a trade agreement and an MoU on economic cooperation. These agreements set the framework for strengthening relations and business activity between the two countries.

South Africa and Cameroon are both signatories to the Yamoussoukro Declaration (YD). There are direct flights from Johannesburg to Douala and Yaounde with South African Airways and via Nairobi with Kenya Airways.

Since the signing into law of the Yamoussoukro Decision by Africa's heads of state in July 2000, South Africa has implemented effective policy measures. In July 2006, Cabinet approved the Airlift Strategy, which set out to achieve an increase in air-traffic frequencies ahead of demand. These frequencies are the basis of the

> The second Southern African Development Community-Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa-East African Community Tripartite Heads of State and Government Summit was held at the end of June 2011.
>
> The summit officially launched the Tripartite Free Trade Agreement (FTA) negotiations. The three pillars of the FTA are market integration, infrastructure development and industrial development.
>
> The summit also resolved to address the challenges associated with facilitating the movement of businesspeople across regional economic communities, together with infrastructure development.

various air-service agreements South Africa has in place with other African countries.

The Bilateral Air Service Agreement between South Africa and Cameroon embraces the market-liberalisation principles/key elements of the YD to enhance connectivity and stimulate trade and tourism between the two countries. This agreement is the first of its kind to be signed between South Africa and Cameroon.

Central African Republic (CAR)

South Africa has enjoyed full diplomatic relations with the CAR since August 1993.

Members of the SANDF are deployed there for peacekeeping purposes.

Chad

The South African embassy in Chad became fully functional in 2007. South Africa continues to support efforts to stabilise the situation in Chad.

Rwanda

Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and Rwanda in May 1995. Cooperation focuses on the post-conflict reconstruction of Rwanda and has extended to the coordination of Nepad on the continent.

Burundi

In August 2011, President Zuma, at the invitation of President Pierre Nkurunziza, paid a state visit to Burundi. The two leaders reviewed progress in key areas of bilateral relations and exchanged views on issues affecting Africa, especially political developments in the eastern region and global multilateral matters.

The two heads of state observed the signing of cooperation agreements between South Africa and Burundi, including the:

- Agreement on Defence Cooperation
- Agreement on Education Cooperation
- Agreement on Bilateral Cooperation in the Agriculture and Livestock Sectors
- MoU regarding Economic Cooperation
- Agreement on Bilateral Cooperation in the Fields of Sport and Recreation.

Burundi and South Africa enjoy close relations. South Africa assisted the Government of Burundi with various development projects such as the hosting of the permanent Commission Electoral National Independence (CENI) shortly before the 2010 election in Burundi.

In collaboration with the UN Development Programme, South Africa invited CENI to attend further workshops within the context of the 2011 local municipal elections and observe the election processes in this country.

The first meeting of the Burundi-South Africa JCC will be held in 2012 in South Africa.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

Algeria

South Africa and Algeria have maintained a strategic relationship since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2001. In May 2010, the BNC achieved progress in the areas of defence, S&T, energy and mining, arts and culture, youth sports and health. The two countries continued cooperation over the long-standing international dispute of the Western Sahara, including collective support for the AU and UN multilateral efforts to find an equitable, peaceful and lasting solution to the conflict between the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic and the Kingdom of Morocco.

Within the framework of the South Africa-Algeria Inter-Governmental Bilateral Agreement on Cooperation in the Fields of S&T signed in 2008, a programme of cooperation (PoC) has been agreed to. The PoC aims to strengthen relations between South Africa and Algeria to pave the way for long-term scientific cooperation.

Western Sahara

South Africa supports the ongoing struggle for self-determination by the people of the Western Sahara.

In October 2011, President Zuma urged the international community to support the country's quest for freedom, human rights and dignity.

Egypt

In October 2010, President Zuma visited Egypt, the first such visit by a South African head of state since the dawn of democracy in 1994. He was accompanied by more than 100 businesspeople as the two countries sought to expand trade, cultural and political relations.

In February 2011, the South African Government welcomed President Hosni Mubarak's decision to resign as President of Egypt. This development created conditions for a transitional process, which paved the way for a democratic dispensation in Egypt.

South Africa is ready to support the Transitional Government in Egypt as it prepares to steer the country towards a new course of freedom and democracy. South Africa urged the new Egyptian Government to maintain a peaceful coexistence with its neighbours and continue playing a positive and constructive role in the Middle East, with a view to realising the establishment of an independent Palestinian State coexisting side by side with the State of Israel.

Tunisia

Political relations between South Africa and Tunisia remain strong.

The two countries cooperate in the fields of health, social development, defence, S&T, culture and sport.

Libya

In September 2011, President Zuma attended the high-level meeting on Libya hosted by the UN Secretary General. Earlier in 2011, the UN responded to the call for assistance from the Libyan people in their time of need.

South Africa supported that call with the belief that the UN had an obligation to bring about by peaceful means, and in accordance with the principles of justice and international law, peace and stability and the protection of civilians.

South Africa supports international post-conflict efforts at reconstruction, reconciliation and rebuilding to help the Libyan people move forward from this conflict.

During the new phase of Libya's transition, the AU and South Africa remain committed to helping the Libyan people in their quest for peace and the reconstruction of their country.

When the AU High-Level Ad Hoc Committee on Libya met in Pretoria on 14 September 2011, it recognised the National Transitional Council (NTC) as the representatives of the Libyan people. It resolved to work with the NTC and all other Libyan stakeholders towards the goal of the early establishment of an all-inclusive national unity government.

Morocco

Although interaction between the Kingdom of Morocco and South Africa remains strained as a result of South Africa's principled position on the issue of the occupation of the Western Sahara, efforts are afoot to normalise these relations.

The conflict around Africa's last colony remains an International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster priority. South Africa bases its policy objectives on the following principles in support of stabilisation efforts in the Western Sahara:

- promotion of the right to self-determination of the Saharawi people as enshrined in the UN Charter
- support for the principle of decolonisation and the sanctity of colonial borders
- respect for international humanitarian law and the promotion of universal human rights
- support for international legality and multilateralism in the resolution of conflict
- opposition to the exploitation of natural resources of the occupied territory
- support for sustainable humanitarian and development assistance to the Saharawi people
- promotion of the integration and security and stability of the Maghreb region.

Mauritania

In February 2011, President Zuma paid a working visit to Mauritania in his capacity as a member of the AU High-Level Panel for the Resolution of the Crisis in Côte d'Ivoire.

The High-Level Panel was established by the PSC of the AU at the Assembly of Heads of State and Government held in Addis Ababa in January 2011.

In March 2011, President Zuma paid a second working visit to continue the discussions for the resolution of the crisis in Côte d' Ivoire.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa established full diplomatic relations with Côte d'Ivoire in May 1992. South Africa continues to promote the restoration of peace and stability in that country.

In January 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe met with the Prime Minister of Côte d'Ivoire, Mr Guillaume Soro in Pretoria.

The country is poised for normalisation with the inauguration of President Alassane Ouattara. In 2011, South Africa availed itself to work with the Government of Côte d'Ivoire as it worked towards national unity and reconciliation.

Sudan and South Africa

South Africa helped to build South Sudan. The agreement was brokered by the AU High-Level Implementation Panel on Sudan, led by former President Thabo Mbeki.

In June 2011, the AU special envoy to Sudan, led by former President Mbeki, signed an agreement in the last round of negotiations to define the relations between the North and South.

In July 2011, South Africa also maintained and managed a consistent balance at the onset of the separation of South Sudan from the North as an indication of the country's continued commitment to enhancing relations with the Government of Sudan and new relations with the Government of South Sudan.

South Sudan gained independence in July 2011, following a referendum to break away from the North.

In September 2011, South Africa signed an agreement establishing diplomatic relations with South Sudan. The agreement is expected to lay the basis for the conclusion of other agreements, particularly economic and trade-related frameworks, aimed at promoting two-way trade and investment between South Africa and South Sudan.

Liberia

South Africa and Liberia established formal diplomatic relations in January 1997. The Liberian Government established an embassy in Pretoria in October 1997.

In October 2011, President Zuma congratulated the President of Liberia, Madam Ellen Johnson Sirleaf, on being awarded the Nobel Peace Prize.

Nigeria

Nigeria is considered one of South Africa's most important partners on the African continent in pursuing the vision of African renewal.

Nigeria had a non-permanent seat on the UNSC for the period 2011 to 2012.

At the end of May 2011, President Zuma attended the inauguration of Nigerian President Elect, Mr Goodluck Jonathan.

Ghana

Diplomatic relations were established between Ghana and South Africa in 1994.

South Africa and Ghana have agreements in the areas of mining, defence, taxation, investment and aviation.

In August 2011, President Zuma hosted the President of Ghana, Mr John Atta Mills, who undertook a state visit to South Africa. The two heads of state observed the signing of the following MoUs and agreements between South Africa and Ghana:

- MoU on Cooperation in the Field of ICT
- MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation
- MoU on Cooperation in the Field of Tourism
- MoU regarding Cooperation in the Fields of Oil and Gas
- Agreement regarding the Waiver of Visa Requirements for Holders of Diplomatic and Official or Service Passports
- Agreement on Defence Training and Technical Cooperation.

The third meeting of the South Africa-Ghana JPCC will take place in 2012.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso established non-resident diplomatic relations in May 1995. In 2006, South Africa established a diplomatic mission in Burkina Faso.

Benin

Diplomatic relations were established between Benin and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Benin maintain good bilateral relations. The two countries signed a GCA in October 2003. They have, among other things, identified agriculture, arts and culture, and justice as areas of cooperation.

At the end of November 2011, President Boni Yayi paid a state visit to South Africa. The ministers of international relations and cooperation of the two countries signed an MoU regarding economic cooperation, a bilateral air services agreement and exchanged the terms of reference of the Committee of Defence.

Republic of Togo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. South Africa and Togo maintain good bilateral relations.

The South African ambassador to Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Togo.

Cape Verde

South Africa and Cape Verde established diplomatic relations in 1994. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is also accredited as South Africa's non-resident ambassador to Cape Verde, while the Cape Verdean ambassador to Angola is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

The Gambia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and The Gambia were established in August 1998. While South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited to The Gambia as non-resident ambassador, the Gambian ambassador to the AU in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa as that country's non-resident ambassador. South Africa maintains an honorary consul office in The Gambia to look after South African interests.

Guinea

Diplomatic relations were established with the Republic of Guinea in 1995. South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Conakry in November 2005.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Guinea-Bissau in February 2008.

South Africa is also a member of the Country-Specific Configuration on Guinea-Bissau with the UN Peace-Building Commission. As part of this group, South Africa strives to mobilise the international community to contribute to the rebuilding of that country, in both political and economic terms.

In August 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe paid an official visit to Guinea-Bissau. The visit provided a platform for the two countries to reaffirm their commitment to implementing a bilateral programme of cooperation agreed to under the Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC) initiated in August 2008.

Mali

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mali were established in 1994. The latter established an embassy in Pretoria in December 1995. A South African embassy was established in Bamako in November 2002, and the first South African ambassador to Mali was appointed in November 2003.

In June 2011, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, paid an official visit to Mali. The two countries signed a social development agreement in October 2009. They are finalising a health agreement as well as an MoU on youth development. The visit was underscored by the importance of increasing bilateral trade.

Senegal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Senegal are based mainly on the Senegalese Government's strong support for the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad, and its strong commitment to promoting democracy and good governance.

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Senegal were established in May 1994 and the two countries' representative offices were upgraded to embassy level.

There are various cooperation agreements between the two countries.

Sierra Leone

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in August 1998. The South African embassy in Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, is accredited to Sierra Leone on a non-residential basis. The Sierra Leonean ambassador in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa on a non-residential basis.

The Government of Sierra Leone opened a high commission in South Africa in 2010.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established between Niger and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Niger maintain good bilateral relations.

South Africa is represented in Niger on a non-residential basis by its ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire.

Somalia

In March 2012, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane announced that South Africa and the Transitional Federal Government of Somalia had concluded an agreement on the establishment of diplomatic relations. South Africa's high commissioner to Kenya will be accredited to Somalia until a mission is opened in Mogadishu.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

December 2011 marked 14 years since the official establishment of diplomatic relations between South Africa and China. China is South Africa's largest trading partner.

Mutual relations between the two nations have been elevated to a strategic partnership. China and South Africa have signed multiple bilateral economic cooperation agreements on investment, trade, technology and taxation. Bilateral trade has surged from US$1,6 billion to US$25,7 billion.

At the end of May 2011, Deputy Minister Sotyu and her Chinese counterpart, the Vice Minister of Public Security, Mr Zhang Xinfeng, reinforced cooperation on security matters between the two countries.

In July 2011, the Chinese Vice Minister of Culture, Ms Zhao Shaohua, announced that China was opening a Chinese cultural centre in South Africa as an exchange platform for cultural development with South Africa. China also pledged 300 000 Chinese Yuan to develop cultural activities in South Africa.

In September 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe paid an official visit to Beijing. He held official talks with the Chinese leadership on how to strengthen and consolidate political and economic relations between South Africa and China. The visit was held within the context of the implementation of the Declaration on the Establishment of a Comprehensive Strategic Partnership signed during President Zuma's state visit to China in August 2010.

During the visit, China and South Africa signed, among other things, an MoU on geology and mineral resources cooperation and an agreement on the development of financial cooperation.

With regard to the agreement signed by the China Development Bank and Development Bank of Southern Africa, the two banks will provide financial support for bilateral cooperation in infrastructure construction, transport, water-resource use, housing, health and education.

Central and East Asia

Japan

In 2011, Japan and South Africa celebrated 101 years of official relations.

China became South Africa's top export destination at the end of 2010. China's customs statistics show that trade between China and South Africa totalled US$25,6 billion in 2010. Imports from South Africa reached US$14,8 billion during the same period.

Japan is South Africa's third-largest trading partner and Japanese companies, for example Toyota and the Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation invested R28 billion in South Africa in 2010 alone.

The two countries cooperate in various fields such as training and skills development. In 2011, there were 103 Japanese companies in South Africa, employing about 200 000 South Africans.

In March 2011, a South African rescue team left for Japan to join an international relief effort after a tsunami devastated the north-eastern part of the country. Rescue South Africa (RSA) put together a team for a mission to Japan under the auspices of the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.

RSA's disaster-response team comprised 50 South Africans, including paramedics, dog handlers and sniffer dogs.

In June 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane arrived in Japan for the MDG's follow-up meeting and to co-chair the South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum, which took place in Tokyo.

A ministerial bilateral meeting took place between Minister Nkoana-Mashabane and her Japanese counterpart, Mr Takeaki Matsumoto, during which the Technical Cooperation Agreement was signed. An agreement was also reached on the text of a draft cooperation agreement between the customs administrations of the two countries.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane also paid a courtesy call on Prime Minister Naoto Kan and met key business leaders through the Keidanren, the most important business organisation in Japan.

Republic of Korea (RoK)

Relations between South Africa and the RoK continue to be enhanced through regular interaction under the auspices of the Policy Consultative Forum (PCF).

In June 2011, Deputy Minister Fransman co-hosted the PCF with First Vice-Minister of Foreign

Affairs and Trade of the Republic of South Korea, Mr Park Suk-hwan.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

Relations between South Africa and the DPRK are cordial. In 2011, the two countries celebrated nine years of diplomatic relations.

Central Asia

There is no South African representation in Uzbekistan, but the South African ambassador to Ankara, Turkey, is accredited to Tashkent on a non-resident basis.

There is no South African representation in Tajikistan, but the South African ambassador to Ankara, Turkey, is accredited to Dushanbe on a non-resident basis.

The Turkish Prime Minister, Mr Recep Tayyip Erdoğan, visited South Africa in 2011 to boost bilateral relations and discuss the steps to be taken for an FTA.

South Africa regards Turkey as a strategic partner and significant momentum has been added to this growing relationship as was demonstrated by the establishment of the senior officials' political consultations co-hosted in South Africa and in Turkey in March 2009 and March 2010 respectively.

These relations were further reinvigorated by the visit to South Africa by Turkey's Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Ahmet Davutoğlu, in August 2011.

There is no South African representation in Turkmenistan, but the South African ambassador to Ankara, Turkey, is accredited to Ashkabad on a non-resident basis.

There is no South African representation in Kyrgystan, but the South African ambassador to Ankara, Turkey, is accredited to Bishkek on a non-resident basis.

South Africa has an embassy in Kazakhstan. In November 2011, Deputy Minister Fransman hosted a high-level delegation from Kazakhstan during a five-day working visit, aimed at promoting bilateral trade and economic cooperation.

South Asia

Key countries in the region are India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh and Afghanistan, all of which with whom South Africa has cordial and growing relations.

In line with strengthening South Africa's bilateral political and economic ties with Sri Lanka, a full high commission with a resident high commissioner was established in January 2008.

In South Asia, South Africa views Pakistan as an important role player in the international arena and appreciates the country as a bilateral partner. South Africa remains concerned about domestic insurgency in Pakistan and has called for parties to engage in meaningful dialogue to resolve their differences.

The South African Government appreciates the growing bilateral relations with Sri Lanka. South Africa promotes the need for a peaceful and sustainable political solution, which will be best achieved through broad consultation and dialogue among all the people of Sri Lanka.

The opening of a South African high commission in Colombo was based on growing bilateral trade links, historic links with the Tamil community in South Africa and a desire to contribute to the peaceful resolution of conflict in Sri Lanka, as well as the importance of the island state in multilateral affairs and within the South Asian region.

South Africa's trade relations with India have flourished since the establishment of full diplomatic relations in 1993. Trade statistics with India continue to reflect the potential that exists for expanding the commercial relationship.

At the end of May 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe led a South African delegation to the second Africa-India Forum Summit, which was held at the AU's headquarters in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The summit aimed to enhance partnership and a shared vision between Africa and India. It is a follow-up to the first summit that took place in New Delhi, in April 2008, during which the New Delhi Declaration and Framework for Cooperation were adopted.

At the same time, the Deputy President paid a courtesy call on the UN Secretary General, Mr Ban Kin Moon.

Internationally, South Africa and India share several common interests, including the reform of the UN and Bretton Woods systems, cooperation in the IBSA (India-Brazil-South Africa partnership) Dialogue Forum, the Group of 20 Developing Nations (G20) and climate change.

South-East Asia

Strengthening South-South relations remains an important pillar of the South African Govern-

The National Research Foundation submitted the documents supporting the African bid to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Radio Telescope in September 2011. The documents were South Africa's response to the Request for Information issued by the international SKA Siting Group in June 2011.

This followed the initial submission of expressions of interest in 2003 and of reports in 2005, which led to South Africa and Australia being shortlisted as both being suitable for the SKA. The African SKA site bid was led by South Africa's Department of Science and Technology and includes Namibia, Botswana, Mozambique, Madagascar, Zambia, Mauritius, Kenya and Ghana.

In May 2012, the SKA bid was awarded to both South Africa and Australia.

ment's foreign-policy objectives, especially Asia where South Africa has resident missions in six South-East Asian countries, namely Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam and the Philippines. These countries as well as Myanmar (Burma) and Timor Leste also maintain resident missions in South Africa.

Bilateral trade relations with this region have been growing over the past 16 years. Total trade between South Africa and South-East Asia amounted to R52,3 billion in 2010, with Thailand being the biggest trading partner in the region.

The regional grouping, the Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean), has emerged as one of the most important groupings within the Asia-Pacific region. South Africa maintains resident missions in six of the 10 member states of Asean, namely Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam and the Philippines.

There has been an exchange of state visits between South Africa and countries of the region since the normalisation of relations post-1994. There are many long-term trade and investment opportunities for South African companies in the region.

South Africa and Vietnam have agreed to strengthen their relations and cooperation, especially in politics, economy, S&T, culture and education.

In May 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe and visiting counterpart, Vice-President Nguyễn Thi Doan, agreed to seek measures to increase cooperation in all fields to potentially expand trade and investment between the two countries. They also committed to increasing the volumes of trade to reach a target of US$1 billion over the next few years. The South Africa-Vietnam Partnership Forum developed the details of achieving this goal in 2011, by creating awareness among South African and Vietnamese business communities regarding investment opportunities in both countries. Opportunities exist in areas such as tourism, agriculture and clothing and textile production.

Indonesia, with its population of almost 250 million, offers interesting market opportunities.

Singapore has important investments in the Coega Project in the Eastern Cape, and in a ship-building project at Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal.

The ruling party in South Africa has long-standing solidarity links with the present Government of Timor Leste and is eager to assist that country in its reconstruction.

South Africa deals with Myanmar mostly through multilateral organisations.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

South Africa and Australia established diplomatic relations in 1947 and enjoy close political and economic ties. A South Africa-Australian Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC) officially came into being in 1997. The JMC was created to provide a framework through which to strengthen the bilateral, and particularly the commercial, relationship, between South Africa and Australia.

South Africa and Australia have a history of productive cooperation across a range of issues, including fisheries protection, law enforcement, defence relations and customs cooperation.

The countries enjoy wide-ranging multilateral relations. Both – together with New Zealand, Argentina, Chile and Uruguay – are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote southern-hemisphere views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation. They enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Indian Ocean fisheries, and also interact regularly within the context of the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and the Cairns Group.

South Africa and Australia also work closely on Commonwealth issues, particularly those affecting Africa.

In September 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe paid a working visit to New Zealand.

He and Prime Minister John Key held discussions on bilateral and multilateral issues and he met the leader of New Zealand's Labour Party, Philip Bruce Goff.

Deputy President Motlanthe attended the opening ceremony of the Rugby World Cup on

9 September 2011, before proceeding to Wellington where he visited the Springbok team to give them moral support ahead of their opening World Cup game against Wales.

The South African Government has strengthened relations with the Pacific Islands region, opening a resident high commission in Suva, Fiji, in 2006.

The high commissioner in Canberra, Australia, has been accredited to the Cook Islands, Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of Marshall Islands, the Republic of Vanuatu and the Independent State of Samoa.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Gulf States has deepened significantly since the mid-1990s. Not only is the Gulf the source of more than half of South Africa's crude oil requirement, but it has also become a major market for South African products, a source of investment and home to a sizeable South African expatriate community.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

In November 2011, President Zuma paid a state visit to the UAE. It is South Africa's 18th-largest export market, a prominent investor in South Africa and home to a sizeable South African expatriate community, especially health professionals.

South African companies have made a major contribution to the development of the UAE economy and over 200 of them have representative offices in the UAE. The potential for greater interaction between the two countries is enhanced through the 56 weekly flights between South Africa and the UAE.

South Africa and the UAE have signed five bilateral agreements, provideing the framework for cooperation. By November 2011, 10 draft agreements were being negotiated in the areas of defence, taxation, industrial development, promotion of investments, legal matters, social development, transport and a joint commission on bilateral issues.

Iran

South Africa and Iran have enjoyed positive bilateral engagements since the re-establishment of diplomatic relations in May 1994.

In 1995, South Africa and Iran established a JBC to allow for a high-level review of existing bilateral relations and to consider ways in which these could be expanded.

In March 2011, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, hosted the Iranian Deputy Foreign Minister for African Affairs, Dr Hadi Soleimanpour, during his visit to South Africa.

The JBC, chaired by South Africa's Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and Iran's Minister of Economic Affairs and Finance, meets alternatively in South Africa and Iran biannually. The JBC is regarded as one of South Africa's most successful and longest-running bilateral mechanisms. South Africa hosted the 11th session of the JBC in 2011.

In May 2011, Deputy Minister Ebrahim met Dr Mohammad Javad Larijani, Head of the Supreme Council for Human Rights in Iran.

Several South African companies are involved in major projects in Iran.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised during a visit by former President Nelson Mandela in November 1994. Two missions were established in the country during March 1995: an embassy with a chargé d'affaires in the capital Riyadh and a consulate-general in the commercial capital of Jeddah. The consulate-general is also responsible for looking after the needs of South African pilgrims performing Hajj and Umrah duties in the holy cities of Makkah al Mukarramah and Medina al Munawarra.

Saudi Arabia is a fellow G20 member and remains South Africa's largest supplier of crude oil.

Qatar

The Emir of Qatar, Sheikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani, paid a state visit to South Africa in May 2002, which led to South Africa opening an embassy in Doha, the capital of Qatar, in September 2002. Qatar opened its embassy in Pretoria in January 2003.

Deputy Minister Ebrahim led a South African delegation at the third round of bilateral consultations between South Africa and Qatar in October 2011. The Qatar delegation was led by the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs of Qatar, Mr Saif Al-Buainain.

Particular focus was placed on cooperation in the fields of arts and culture, defence and security, energy, higher education, public works, social development and trade and investment.

Kuwait

South Africa and Kuwait concluded diplomatic relations in 1995. Kuwait opened an embassy in Pretoria in 1996 and South Africa reciprocated in 1998. Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the JSE Stock Exchange.

Oman

The Premier of Mpumalanga, Mr David Mabuza, paid an official visit to Oman in September 2011. The main purpose was to establish economic and trade relations between Mpumalanga and Oman.

In November 2011, President Zuma visited Oman. The aim of the visit was to identify investment opportunities and sign trade and economic agreements, including the Supplementary Protocol Amending the Agreement on the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income.

Iraq

Iraq established its diplomatic relations with South Africa in August 1998. By June 2011, South Africa's exports to Iraq totalled R2,2 million.

Jordan

The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan was the first Arab country to establish full diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1993. In December 1994, South Africa established a resident mission in Amman.

In April 1996, the late King Hussein led a delegation attending an UN Conference on Trade and Development in South Africa. This attendance was upgraded to the level of a state visit. During October 1999, former President Nelson Mandela briefly visited Amman, which did much to enhance the bilateral relationship.

Lebanon

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with Lebanon and there is a large ethnic Lebanese community in South Africa. The South African ambassador in Syria is accredited to Lebanon on a non-residential basis.

Syria

An official Syrian delegation led by Vice-President Abdel-Halim Khaddam visited South Africa in May 1994. Full diplomatic relations were established in June 1994.

In 1998, Syria opened an embassy in Pretoria. South Africa's ambassador to Egypt is accredited on a non-residential basis to Syria, as there is no South African mission in Damascus.

In October 2011, South Africa abstained on the vote in the UNSC because of its concern about the deteriorating political and humanitarian situation in Syria.

South Africa condemned the loss of life in Syria, called for maximum restraint from all the parties in the conflict and demanded an immediate end to all violence in Syria.

On the humanitarian front, South Africa called on the Syrian authorities to facilitate access by humanitarian agencies, including the UN, in accordance with relevant international human rights and humanitarian law.

South Africa urged the Syrian authorities to initiate an open, transparent and all-inclusive political process with its people, to address their grievances and to guarantee their fundamental political rights and freedom, including their rights to freedom of assembly and speech.

Arab-Israel peace process

South Africa supports just, equitable and comprehensive peace between Israel and the Arab world, which must involve an end to the illegal occupation by Israel of Arab land, namely in Palestine, Syria and Lebanon, which has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region over the last six decades.

South Africa believes that peace and security for the Israelis and the Palestinians cannot be achieved without the fulfilment of the inalienable right of the Palestinian people to self-determination within their own sovereign state.

South Africa has continued to appeal to all key role players in the peace process to avoid actions that could add to an already volatile situation. The country has been consistent in calling for the immediate implementation of international peace proposals, such as the Road Map for Peace and the Arab League Peace Initiative of 2002, without preconditions, to achieve comprehensive and lasting peace between Israel and all its Arab neighbours.

South Africa is supportive of all international efforts to help the people of Palestine and Israel in their endeavours to find lasting peace. In this regard, South Africa has supported resolutions in the UNSC and General Assembly calling for parties to take certain steps to advance the peace process and for an end to all Israeli settlement activity in the occupied Palestinian Territory, including East Jerusalem.

South Africa has voiced its concern with respect to the continued blockade of Gaza and has repeatedly called for an end to the blockade to alleviate the suffering of ordinary people in the territory. South Africa has also called on all political parties in Palestine to work towards the re-establishment of unity.

Deputy President Motlanthe, accompanied by Deputy Minister Ebrahim, paid an official visit to Syria in October 2010. The Arab-Israeli Peace Process was among the issues discussed.

In support of infrastructure development by the Palestinian authorities, South Africa and its IBSA partners Brazil and India funded the construction of a sports facility in Ramallah, which was expected to be completed in 2011.

Relations with the Americas

United States of America (USA)

Relations between South Africa and the USA were normalised after South Africa's first democratic elections in April 1994.

Since then, several state visits have taken place between the two countries. Following former President Mbeki's working visit to the USA in 2001, it was agreed that the work of the former South Africa-US BNC would continue, and that the new structure would be known as the South Africa-US Bilateral Cooperation Forum (BCF).

The last BCF took place in May 2010. The BCF gives the two countries a platform to review projects that have been undertaken and to assess and remove the challenges to implementation.

In December 2010, as part of the BCF, the Department of Transport was invited to follow up and finalise issues related to cooperation with the Department of Transportation in the USA. As a result of these negotiations, the Memorandum of Cooperation was developed through correspondence and finalised in May 2011.

In March 2011, Deputy President Motlanthe visited the USA with the aim of boosting relations between South Africa and its second-biggest trade partner. South Africa and the USA enjoy close ties, marked by an increase in regular high-level interactions.

In June 2011, the First Lady of the USA, Mrs Michelle Obama, visited South Africa. During her stay she, among other things, delivered a keynote speech to the Young African Women Leaders Forum, and visited Former President Mandela and Robben Island.

In September 2011, President Zuma concluded a working visit to the USA, where he led the South African delegation to the 66th Session of the UN General Assembly (UNGA) in New York, and also promoted economic and educational ties with the USA. He visited the New York Stock Exchange, and ended his stay with a stop-over in Houston, Texas, where he met with the business community to promote trade and investment, as well as education.

The President also addressed the Greater Houston Partnership.

Canada

The South Africa-Canada partnership is an important vehicle for promoting South Africa's national priorities and establishing strategic cooperation platforms. Canada has supported South Africa's re-entry into a broad range of multilateral organisations. The two countries consult regularly on important multilateral issues.

Relations between South Africa and Canada are conducted largely within the framework of the Annual Consultations (AC). This is the primary forum in which issues of mutual interest and concern receive specific focus. The last AC were held in Ottawa, Canada, in November 2010.

The growth in regular high-level visits in both directions serves to cement and expand the mutually beneficial interaction in all spheres.

Canada's ODA to South Africa under the Country Development Programming Framework (CDPF) has three main programme themes, namely strengthening South Africa's service-delivery mechanism; regional cooperation; and mainstreaming (gender, HIV/AIDS and the environment). For the period 2008 to 2013, Canadian ODA to South Africa amounts to R250 million.

The CDPF, which was due to end in late 2008, was extended to 2011.

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, both on bilateral and multilateral levels, on the African continent; ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to foreign direct investment.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

By September 2011, negotiations were underway between South Africa and Mexico on the 2010 to 2012 Work Plan, which includes collaboration on strategies and policies to eradicate poverty and inequality.

In September 2011, a South African delegation attended the XXIV World Road Congress in Mexico City.

South Africa was expected to enter into a road-construction exchange programme deal with Mexico following a meeting between the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, and Mexico's Minister of Communications and Transport, Mr Dionisio Pérez-Jácome Friscione, in Mexico City.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean (Caricom). The majority of the inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent. South Africa's endeavour, in conjunction with the AU and Caricom, to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda.

Cuba is an important trading partner for South African exporters.

In May 2011, Minister Dlamini Zuma held exploratory discussions with her Cuban counterpart on civic and immigration issues in Havana, Cuba.

This visit followed President Zuma's state visit to Cuba in December 2010, during which Minister Dlamini Zuma signed, with her Cuban counterpart, a bilateral visa waiver agreement for holders of diplomatic and official passports between the two countries. It enables these holders to travel to the respective countries for 90 days without visas, which ensures that representatives of their respective governments can conduct their business speedily and efficiently.

Deputy Minister Ebrahim co-chaired the successful ninth South Africa-Cuba Joint Consultative Mechanism Meeting in August 2011 with his counterpart, Mr Marcelino Medina Gonzalez, the First Deputy Minister for Foreign Affairs in Havana. The aims of these official talks included consolidating political bilateral and multilateral relations and further increasing cooperation between the two countries.

Latin America

The Caribbean and Latin America regions are important anchors of the country's South-South cooperation.

Bilateral relations with Latin America will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and strengthening cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels. These groupings include trilateral arrangements such as the IBSA initiative, which is a value-driven proposal in the South.

Bilateral relations with Latin America are used to enhance economic, scientific, technical and business opportunities through bilateral mechanisms. The key areas of cooperation are aligned to the principles of government.

There is significant potential for cooperation with the Mercosur (Southern Common Market) trading bloc, which consists of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay and Venezuela as full members (Venezuela still to be ratified by Paraguay), and a steadily increasing number of associate members in the Latin American region.

Brazil remains a significant player in the multilateral context, particularly regarding the interests of the South. With its like-minded approach to a number of significant issues affecting the developing world, it remains a strategic partner for South Africa.

Brazil and South Africa agree on the issue of the reform of the UNSC and the Bretton Woods institutions. They cooperate in multilateral forums in line with trilateral relations through IBSA and the G20.

Brazil is South Africa's largest trading partner in South America.

In July 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane met with her Brazilian counterpart, Minister Antonio Patriota.

Discussions touched on the draft MoU of 2011 on cooperation aimed at supporting Brazil's organisation of major global sporting events, such as the FIFA World Cup™ in 2014 and the Olympic Games in 2016.

In view of South Africa's scheduled hosting of the African Diaspora Summit in 2012, talks also covered both the technical and political aspects of the planned summit, including the African Diaspora Ministerial Meeting in September 2011 in New York, USA.

A range of technical and commercial agreements are either in place or being negotiated with several countries in the Latin American region.

In November 2011, the fourth bilateral seminar in support of the South Africa-Argentine BNC took place in Buenos Aires. It was opened by the Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, and Argentina's Minister of Foreign Relations, International Trade and Worship, Mr Héctor Timerman.

Relations with Europe

European Union

South Africa's exports to the EU are growing and their composition is becoming more diverse. South Africa is gradually moving from mainly commodity-based products to a more diversified export profile that includes manufactured products.

The fifth South Africa-EU Summit will be held in Brussels in 2012. The fourth South Africa-EU Summit took place in September 2011 at the Kruger National Park, Mpumalanga. The summit reviewed the rapid expansion of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and the EU, manifested by a strengthened strategic partnership and growing cooperation in a number of areas. In its assessment of the implementation of the joint action plan, the summit welcomed positive developments such as the:

- effective implementation and increased ownership of the EU's development assistance programme for South Africa and the excellent relationship between the European Investment Bank (EIB) and its South African partners
- launch in September 2011 of the Primary Healthcare Programme, worth €126 million, aimed at increasing life expectancy, reducing maternal and child mortality and supporting the fight against HIV, AIDS and tuberculosis
- successful cooperation in the areas of S&T and innovation, and supporting seminars on minerals, mining and climate-change research, as well as on the environment and sustainable development, including green growth, climate action and biodiversity
- consistent progress in space cooperation, also involving the South African National Space Agency and the European Space Agency, especially the advanced preparations for the extension to South Africa of the European Geographic Navigation Overlay System, which will significantly enhance global navigation satellite system services in South Africa.

The summit also deliberated several strategic matters, including infrastructure development, development cooperation, global issues, the G20, climate change and Rio+20, regional issues, EU-SADC economic partnership agreements, group negotiations, Africa-EU radio astronomy cooperation, political and security issues, Sudan and South Sudan, Zimbabwe, the Middle East and North Africa.

The South Africa-EU Strategic Partnership has an ongoing discussion on issues of mutual interest, such as effective multilateralism, debt relief, a fair global trading system and work towards peace, security and greater prosperity in the world.

Focused on poverty alleviation, the EU is South Africa's largest development partner. The EU (including its member states and the EIB) annually commits over R6 billion in grants and loans to economic and social development, as well as governance programmes in South Africa.

African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) States-European Union relations

South Africa assumed full membership of the ACP group of countries in 1996. It became a qualified member of the Lomé Convention in 1997 and of its successor, the Cotonou Partnership Agreement (CPA), signed in Cotonou in June 2000.

The CPA is a framework for cooperation between the 78 countries of the ACP group and the EU. The EU members that acceded in May 2004 adopted the agreement as part of the EU's legislative infrastructure.

Qualified membership means that South Africa is excluded from the trade regime provided in the agreement and from the provisions on ODA. South Africa can, however, tender for projects in all ACP countries and participate fully in all political instruments of the agreement. South Africa's economic relations with the EU are governed by the Trade and Development Cooperation Agreement.

The CPA differs significantly from its predecessor in that its duration will be 20 years, with a revision clause every five years and a financial protocol for each five-year period. The agreement underscores the importance of regional economic cooperation.

The most far-reaching changes are to be introduced in the area of trade, through regional economic partnership agreements, where non-reciprocal preferences will be gradually abolished and regional integration processes encouraged. One of the key aspects of South Africa's membership of the ACP is its active participation in the three ACP-EU joint political organs, namely the Council of Ministers, the Joint Parliamentary Assembly and the Committee of Ambassadors.

South Africa participates in dialogue on important issues such as peace-building, conflict resolution, respect for human rights, democratic principles and the rule of law. South Africa regularly participates in ACP summits, council of ministers' meetings, trade ministers' meetings and the ACP Forum on S&T.

The interest and commitment shown by the EU regarding the African continent and its development is encouraging. Within that context, the European Commission (EC) and the Nepad Secretariat are closely cooperating through established structures and regular dialogue and information-sharing. They have also agreed to increase coherence between EU member states and the EC in support of Nepad projects, the AU and its institutions, and the RECs.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries (Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg) remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major providers of tourism.

South Africa enjoys close political relations with the Netherlands and Belgium, and engages in substantial and fruitful cooperation partnerships with these countries, contributing significantly to South Africa's national priorities.

The focus on establishing trilateral cooperation to promote peace and security with special emphasis on initiatives in support of capacity-building in the Great Lakes Region continued with the Belgian Government, which takes a keen interest in South and southern Africa, and the Great Lakes Region, particularly the DRC.

There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium as well as the Netherlands on the issues and complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

High-level visits between South Africa and Belgium take place regularly.

Cooperation with Flanders is very strong. A substantial portion of the Flemish ODA budget is devoted to South Africa and the programme is in line with South Africa's new priorities, including the Human Resource Development Strategy, especially in the areas of skills development and the development of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral ministerial meetings are held frequently.

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

German-speaking countries

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Germany cover various issues, including investment and trade, S&T, defence, culture, the environment, tourism, sport, development cooperation and energy.

Some 600 German companies have set up operations in South Africa and employ a total workforce of over 90 000.

In November 2011, Minister Dlamini Zuma paid an official visit to Berlin, Germany, where she held discussions with her German counterpart, State Secretary at the Federal Ministry of the Interior, Dr Ole Schröder, to exchange views on the German model of dealing with immigration, refugees, asylum seekers and civic management.

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland have continued growing since 1994. As a result of democratic changes in South Africa, Switzerland decided to grant South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

In March 2011, Deputy Minister Ebrahim co-chaired the South Africa-Switzerland third Annual High-Level Consultations with his Swiss counterpart, State Secretary Peter Maurer.

The visit covered, among other things, the promotion of the African Agenda as a cornerstone of South Africa's foreign policy, strengthening the UNSC, deepening the reform of the UN, and promoting South Africa's foreign-policy objectives on reform of the global governance system.

Trade between South Africa and Switzerland has grown over the years. Total trade increased by approximately R16 billion from R11 billion in 2005 to over R27 billion in 2009, representing an increase of over 150%.

Bilateral relations with the Republic of Austria are sound. Besides engaging the Austrian Government at national level in support of development programmes, increased economic involvement and support for the African Agenda, provincial partnerships with key Austrian provinces have also resulted in increased business ties and commitments to support training programmes for South African students. Closer cooperation in the field of renewable energies is expected to intensify in future.

In September and October 2011, Premier Helen Zille led a delegation of Western Cape provincial government officials and business representatives on an official visit to Germany and Austria.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic countries (Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden). Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa. This was reinforced through the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark was a very strong supporter of the anti-apartheid struggle and a major force in sanctions and disinvestment. In addition, Denmark has always had a very active development cooperation programme with South Africa, which was transformed into official assistance as from 1995. In the 2009 to 2013 programme, over R7 billion is being disbursed to projects ranging from water, energy, education, governance, the South African Police Service, and the fight against HIV and AIDS. Denmark remains a strong supporter of Nepad and African development.

In March 2011, South Africa hosted the second South Africa-Danish consultations in Pretoria.

President Zuma paid a state visit to Norway in August and September 2011, with the aim of strengthening North-South dialogue.

South Africa is committed to deepening political, economic and trade relations with Norway. Existing strong bilateral relations with Norway are based on historical ties from the liberation movements during the struggle for democracy in South Africa and a common outlook on global issues.

Norway's development cooperation contribution to South Africa from 2005 to 2009 was over R25 million. Norway is one of the few countries to reach the official UN target for ODA, which is 0,7% of gross national income.

United Kingdom (UK) and Ireland

In July 2011, President Zuma received the British Prime Minister, Mr David Cameron, on a working visit, which took place within the context of deepening, strengthening and broadening further the strong relations between the two countries. The visit to South Africa followed a successful state visit by President Zuma to the UK in 2010; the subsequent South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum; and the eventual adoption of the strategy of cooperation between the two countries.

The central aim of Prime Minister Cameron's visit to South Africa was to explore commercial opportunities and to see how best to support the Africa Free Trade Initiative. The visit also focused on a mutually beneficial strategy that will ensure that South Africa and the UK work together at national, regional and international levels in various fields, key among which are sustainable development; peace and security; good governance; and other socio-economic issues.

In June 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane led a South African delegation to the ninth South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum.

The forum was an important milestone in relations between the two countries, as its main focus was on implementing the ideals expressed in the Joint Declaration as adopted at the end of President Zuma's state visit to the UK in 2010.

The meeting culminated in the adoption of the Joint Strategy Framework that will serve as a blueprint for enhancing relations between South Africa and the UK.

Mediterranean Europe

South Africa and the countries of Mediterranean Europe maintain excellent relations through several institutionalised mechanisms, such as the South Africa-France Political Dialogue, South Africa-Spain AC; and various commissions on trade and industry, health, education, arts and culture, S&T and sport.

These countries are among South Africa's top trading partners and remain large investors in the South African economy, providing capital inflow and thousands of jobs.

South Africa and France enjoy excellent political relations characterised by regular high-level dialogue, diverse bilateral cooperation programmes and growing bilateral trade. South Africa acknowledges France's strong influence on the continent, especially in Francophone Africa, and seeks to cooperate with France wherever possible in promoting the African Agenda.

France is the largest donor to and trading partner with Africa, a major investor on the continent and a traditional champion of Africa and the developing world on issues such as debt relief, sustainable development and mitigating the negative effects of globalisation.

In February 2011, President Zuma led a high-level government and business delegation to Paris on a state visit aimed at deepening political and economic relations between South Africa and France. His visit was at the invitation of French President Nicolas Sarkozy. The two presidents signed an agreement on the New Partnership Framework Document for 2011 to 2013. According to the agreement, the French Development Agency will make about R10 billion available over three years for the development of infrastructure, agriculture, mining and beneficiation, manufacturing, the green economy and tourism.

In November 2011, the French Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Alain Juppé, visited South Africa to further promote North-South cooperation.

Italy and South Africa have agreed to deepen the level of exchanges on a number of issues critical to development on the African continent, especially regarding peace and stability in the Horn of Africa and post-conflict reconstruction in the DRC and the Great Lakes Region.

In June and July 2011, the Premier of Limpopo, Mr Cassel Mathale, led a provincial government delegation on a visit to Italy. The purpose of the mission was to attract foreign investors to the province through the establishment of trade and economic relations with that country.

Economic relations between South Africa and Spain have grown rapidly, with total trade between the two countries amounting to R19 billion, having doubled over the past few years.

In February 2011, at the seventh annual bilateral consultations between the two countries, Deputy Minister Fransman and the Spanish Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, Mr Juan Antonio Yáñez-Barñuevo, discussed political cooperation, development and the strengthening of trade and investment. The promotion of the African Agenda and reform of international institutions also featured on the agenda.

In October 2011, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe visited Sweden, where he participated in the Binational Commission (BNC) and other consultations, which saw South Africa and Sweden strengthening political and economic relations.

Following the BNC, the Deputy President proceeded to Denmark for further consultations and high-level meetings with the Prime Minister of Denmark, Ms Helle Thorning-Schmidt. They discussed ways of strengthening the existing political and economic relations between South Africa and Denmark.

South Africa and Greece have strong cultural ties through the Hellenic community in South Africa, which has played a positive and constructive role in the reconstruction and development of this country. The Hellenic community in South Africa is estimated at 60 000 people.

Greece is the oldest and largest market for South Africa in the Balkan Region. While Greece is not a major donor country, it has contributed to education and health programmes in South Africa.

In June 2011, Deputy Minister Ebrahim paid a working visit to Cyprus at the invitation of Ambassador Nicholas Emiliou, where climate change and support for South Africa's five national priorities formed part of discussions.

A MoU on Bilateral Political Consultations was signed, while Deputy Minister Ebrahim also paid a courtesy call on President Demitris Christofias and the President of the Cypriot Parliament, Mr Yiannakis Omirou.

Central Europe

South Africa enjoys excellent relations with all the countries of Central Europe.

The accession of seven Central European countries to the EU not only influenced South Africa's political and economic relations with these countries, but has affected South Africa's strategic and multifaceted relations with the EU. The new EU member countries have opened greater scope for mutually beneficial cooperation. Since most of the countries in Central Europe play an important role in the field of S&T, emphasis on developing more programmes of cooperation in this area and skills development projects will continue receiving priority attention.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests. The region is well endowed with strategic commodities/minerals that are of vital importance to South Africa's economic livelihood. Cooperation in gas and oil and the peaceful use of nuclear energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

In May 2011, South Africa hosted a United Nations (UN) peacekeeping course for prospective leaders of UN peacekeeping missions. The project was co-sponsored by the Government of the Netherlands, which contributed around €300 000 towards the course.

Cooperation with Eastern European countries, given their advancements in the field of S&T, is likely to contribute effectively to South Africa and Africa's development priorities.

South Africa continues to use structured bilateral mechanisms and other high-level engagement to strengthen political and economic relations with Eastern European countries. Thus, relations with these countries, if properly nurtured, will contribute to the achievement of South Africa's strategic objectives and the African Agenda at large.

In 2011, Serbia and South Africa reviewed their bilateral relations; strengthened their political, economic and cultural relations; and identified priority areas for cooperation when Deputy Minister Ebrahim visited the country in July.

The following outstanding priority agreements were finalised:

- Protocol on Political Consultations between the Foreign Ministries
- Waiver of Visa Requirements of Diplomatic and Official Passports
- Agreement on Avoidance of Double Taxation
- an MoU on Law-Enforcement Cooperation.

In September 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane visited Bulgaria. She met with her counterpart, Mr Nickolay Mladenov, to discuss, among other things, cooperation in the EU and the reform of global institutions of governance such as the UNSC and the Bretton Woods institutions.

Russian Federation

In 2011, South Africa and Russia further strengthened bilateral political and economic relations. Delegations from the two countries met for the 10th session of the South Africa-Russian Federation Joint Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (Itec) in Pretoria in September 2011.

The Russian Federation is the most important strategic partner in Eastern Europe. The Russian Federation's membership of the G8 and the UNSC offers South Africa an influential strategic partner in global governance. South Africa's relations with Russia have been significantly consolidated over the past few years through continued high-level political dialogue. Bilateral relations also expanded strongly under the umbrella of the Itec, a mechanism which is likely to enhance mutually beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries. The sessions serve as a strong platform for enhancing trade and investment cooperation between Russia and South Africa.

Republic of Belarus

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Republic of Belarus were established in March 1993.

Deputy Minister Ebrahim hosted his Belarusian counterpart, Mr Sergei Aleinik, in Cape Town in October 2011.

During the bilateral meeting, the two deputy ministers reviewed the status of bilateral political, economic and trade relations between South Africa and that country.

During his working visit to South Africa, Deputy Minister Aleinik also participated in the second session of South Africa-Belarus Itec in October 2011 in Pretoria. The SA-Belarus Itec Agreement was signed in August 2006 and the first session of the Itec was held in Minsk, Belarus, in July 2007.

Turkey

Deputy President Motlanthe hosted Turkish Prime Minister, Mr Recep Tayio Erdoğan, on his official visit to South Africa in October 2011. The visit followed Deputy President Motlanthe's official visit to Turkey in May 2010 and the official visit of the Minister of Foreign Affairs of Turkey, Dr Ahmet Davutoğlu, to South Africa in August 2011.

The two leaders reviewed the state of bilateral political and economic relations between the two countries, including the status and implementation of agreements and programmes of cooperation.

Multilateral diplomacy

Within the multilateral system, South Africa continues to work for global political and socio-economic stability and security. The country promotes development, security, human rights and international law through its participation in international forums, such as the UN and its various agencies.

South Africa aims to enhance developmental objectives of the developing world, including global order, by:

- participating in the global economic reform processes through continued engagement with the international and regional economic and financial institutions

> In January 2012, the South African Government welcomed the United Nations Security Council's (UNSC) unanimous adoption on 12 January 2012 of Resolution 2033, which urges for enhanced cooperation between the UNSC and subregional organisations, particularly the African Union, in peace and security matters. South Africa held the Presidency of the UNSC for the month of January 2012.

- supporting the momentum within the G20 through active participation in summit processes, while:
  - seeking to ensure that the G20 continues to coordinate an integrated and coherent global response to the financial and economic crisis
  - playing a role in maintaining future financial stability
  - providing leadership in the reform of the regulation and supervision of the global architecture, including the Bretton Woods institutions
  - promoting national and developing country positions in the implementation of G20 initiatives, especially the African Agenda
  - using existing negotiating groupings and alliances to pursue the objectives of developing countries
  - working with like-minded countries in forging a collective vision for the transformation of global governance
  - playing a supportive role in the WTO towards the conclusion of the Doha Development Round of negotiations and striving towards common objectives with like-minded partners
  - continuing active engagement within global governance institutions on political, economic and security matters, including the reform of the multilateral system for it to be more responsive to the developmental needs of developing countries.

United Nations General Assembly

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global development agenda and address underdevelopment and the eradication of poverty globally. Through participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

United Nations reform

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation continues engaging in ongoing debates and negotiations to advance reform.

Guidelines and criteria for a consistent and coordinated approach to identifying and fielding South African candidates for positions in international organisations to be filled, and support of candidates of other countries in elections were developed in the Policy on the Nomination and Election of Candidates to International Organisations and adopted by Cabinet in 2010. Through this coordinated approach, South Africa's candidatures for membership of identified strategic intergovernmental bodies of the multilateral system will be promoted.

United Nations Security Council

Following the AU endorsement of South Africa as Africa's candidate for membership of the UNSC from 2011 to 2012, UNGA endorsed the candidature. South Africa's membership of the UNSC was guided by its commitment to strengthening the multilateral system and its support for a broader multilateral approach to questions of international peace and security. As a member of the UNSC, South Africa discharged its responsibility, alongside the other members of the council, in a manner that contributed meaningfully to peace, security and development.

For the first time, the configuration of the UNSC in 2011/12 reflected the membership of a potentially reformed council.

South Africa is continuing its efforts to promote and enhance the UNSC's cooperation with regional organisations, particularly the PSC of the AU. Closer cooperation between these two bodies is contributing to enhancing the convergence of perspectives and approaches in dealing with and responding to peace and security challenges in Africa.

In 2011, South Africa, in line with its foreign-policy priorities, chaired the 1540 Committee, which imposes binding obligations on all states to establish domestic controls to prevent the proliferation of nuclear, chemical and biological weapons, and their means of delivery to non-state actors. In addition, South Africa also chaired the Working Group on Conflict Prevention in Africa and served as vice-chair of the Côte d'Ivoire and Liberia sanctions committees.

North-South cooperation

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation serves as the focal point for North-South dialogue, engaging key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the OECD and the World Intellectual Property Organisation. To achieve this objective, South Africa ensures that the development agenda remains part of the focus of key economic forums, particularly the annual G8 Summit and World Economic Forum meetings.

In May 2011, President Zuma was one of 10 African leaders who attended the G8 Deauville Summit in France.

South-South cooperation

Through the negotiation of various agreements in the area of strengthening South-South and North-South cooperation, respect for international law will continue and form an important basis for strengthening relationships through the work of the joint commissions. The same remains true for the area of strengthening political and economic relations.

South Africa pays dedicated attention to partnerships between other key South countries and Africa, such as the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum.

Government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the NAASP. These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better world and Africa.

Group of 20

The G20 plays an active role in international efforts to seek global responses to the effects of the global economic and financial crises. South Africa is the only African country participating in the G20 and will continue using its membership to raise issues of concern to Africa with other G20 members.

At recent G20 summits, South Africa stressed the need for developed countries to meet their commitments of increased aid to developing countries, and to ensure a stronger voice and representation for developing countries in the International Monetary Fund and World Bank.

South Africa will continue promoting a development agenda in its engagements within the G20 and engage with other G20 countries to pursue the implementation of G20 decisions that are aimed at limiting the impact of the crisis on developed and developing countries and preventing the occurrence of similar crises in future.

In November 2011, President Zuma and the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, attended the sixth annual G20 Summit held in Cannes, France.

Relations between Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS)

In April 2011, President Zuma led a South African delegation to the third BRICS Leaders Meeting held in the Hainan Province of the People's Republic of China. The theme of the summit was *Broad Vision, Shared Prosperity.*

South Africa attended the meeting as the newest member of BRICS, with objectives to:

- consolidate South Africa's BRICS membership and commit to its processes and related mechanisms
- identify and leverage opportunities for South Africa's development agenda
- enhance the African Agenda and sustainable development
- promote broad cooperation in the multilateral arena
- work for cooperation with other emerging market economies.

At the end of the summit, a joint declaration was signed, which captures the central essence of what this evolving formation is committed to and seeks to achieve it.

The BRICS Action Plan was also adopted. Among other things, it identified the need to enhance existing cooperation programmes on security issues, central banks and agriculture expertise and establish a network of research centres, cooperatives, supreme courts and development banks.

The action plan also identifies new cooperation areas such as:

- health
- research on economic and trade issues
- culture
- sports
- green economy
- scientific, technological and innovation cooperation in the BRICS format
- establishing a working group in the pharmaceutical industry.

New Asian-African Strategic Partnership

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the NAASP in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Asia-Africa (Bandung) Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP represents a commitment to help build closer economic and development cooperation between Africa and Asia.

Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC)

The IOR-ARC is a multilateral organisation comprising countries that share a shoreline along the Indian Ocean, namely Australia, Bangladesh, India, Indonesia, Iran, Kenya, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mauritius, Mozambique, Oman, Singapore, South Africa, Sri Lanka, Tanzania, Thailand, the UAE and Yemen. It was launched in March 1997 in Mauritius to focus mainly on trade-related issues. The IOR-ARC plays an important role as a building block for the promotion of South-South cooperation and for complementing African-Asian regional integration.

South Africa has given its full weight to the economic and strategic significance of the IOR, and to the importance of regional cooperation in fulfilling the region's substantial economic potential.

In November 2011, Deputy Minister Ebrahim attended the 11th IOR-ARC Council of Ministers Meeting in India.

India, Brazil and South Africa

In March 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane attended the seventh IBSA Trilateral Commission meeting in New Delhi.

IBSA partners continue to ensure that the UN remains central to addressing global peace and security issues. IBSA took the sustainable development agenda forward through South Africa's hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties (COP17) and Brazil hosting the Rio+20 Summit. In this regard, in preparing for COP17, South Africa closely consulted with its IBSA partners, also in the context of the BASIC (Brazil, South Africa, India and China) group.

President Zuma hosted the fifth IBSA Dialogue Forum in October 2011, preceded by an IBSA

Ministerial Meeting. The objectives of the summit were to promote South-South cooperation as well as trade and investment opportunities among the three countries.

The realisation of a trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies; they share common views on various global issues; and are substantial emerging economies within their subregions.

Apart from promoting South-South dialogue, IBSA also fosters interregional cooperation.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on three levels, namely: heads of state and government, government-to-government and people-to-people cooperation.

South Africa's trade with its IBSA partners has increased significantly since the forum's inception. South Africa's trade statistics for the period 2007 to 2010 showed an increase in overall trade from R36,92 billion in 2007 to R58,133 billion in 2010.

Commonwealth

Commonwealth Heads of Government

The 2011 Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM) met in Perth, Australia, in October. CHOGM is a biennial summit meeting of the heads of government from all Commonwealth nations and is a main decision-making forum. The meeting is hosted by different member states, and chaired by that nation's respective prime minister or president, who becomes the Commonwealth Chairperson-in-Office.

Under the theme *Building Global Resilience, Building National Resilience*, CHOGM 2011 provided a platform for Commonwealth leaders to discuss world issues on trade and investment opportunities, reinforcing strong people-to-people links and promoting shared values relevant to building a strong and secure future for all.

The Commonwealth of Nations, an association of former colonies of the UK, is defined as "a voluntary association of independent sovereign states consulting and cooperating in the common interests of their people and in the promotion of international understanding and world peace".

Its membership is diverse, spanning the six continents, encompassing all major faiths, and including both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific. The Commonwealth represents one third of the world's population and more than a quarter of the world's countries.

The Commonwealth countries share a commitment to democracy, freedom, peace, the rule of law and opportunity for all.

As a founding member of the Commonwealth, South Africa was expelled in 1961 owing to apartheid policies, but rejoined the organisation in 1994, shortly after the country's first democratic elections.

In November 1999, South Africa hosted the CHOGM in Durban and assumed the chair for the next two years.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM, with its 114 member states, is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.

In May 2011, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane attended the 50th Commemorative Session of the NAM Ministerial Conference in Bali, Indonesia. This gave South Africa the opportunity to address the issue of relevance and raise some strategic questions about where South Africa finds itself in the development trajectory of international relations. The Minister touched on the need for international organisations, such as the NAM, to adapt to the new global political and economic landscapes and be responsive to opportunities of the 21st century.

The NAM brought a new appreciation to the important principle of the sovereignty of states. Minister Nkoana-Mashabane reiterated the call for the composition of the UN leadership and institution of global governance to be reshaped to give more power to emerging nations.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Department of International Relations and Cooperation
Department of International Relations and Cooperation, *Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014*

www.dfa.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.swazihighcom.co.za
www.thepresidency.gov.za
www.tshwane.gov.za

Suggested reading

Abegunrin, O. 2009. *Africa in Global Politics in the Twenty-First Century: A Pan-African Perspective*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
Akokpari, J (eds). 2008. *The African Union and its Institutions*. Johannesburg: Fanele.
Gruzd, S (ed). 2010. *Grappling with Governance: Perspectives on the African Peer Review Mechanism*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
Hofmeyr, I and Williams, M (eds). *South Africa and India: Shaping the Global South*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Kagwanja, P and Kondlo, K (eds). 2009. *State of the Nation: South Africa 2008*. Pretoria: HSRC Press.
Research and Information System for Developing Countries. 2008. Trinity of the South: Potential of India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Partnership. New Delhi Academic Foundation.
Thomas, A. 2008. *U.S. Foreign Policy Towards Apartheid South Africa, 1948 – 1994: Conflict and Interests*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
Two Countries One Dream: The Challenges of Democratic Consolidation in Kenya and South Africa. 2009. Rosebank: KMM Review Pub.



Justice and correctional services

SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 2011/12

The mandate of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is to ensure a robust legal and institutional framework that enhances the rule of law, including the prosecution of offenders and settlement of all disputes by legal means. In particular, the department leads government programmes to afford all citizens equal benefit and protection of the law and the realisation of the Bill of Rights. The department also exercises executive oversight in the provision of public defence for citizens from a poor background.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development comprises six core branches:

- Court Services
- Master of the High Court
- Chief State Law Adviser
- State Litigation
- Legislative Development
- Justice College.

The department's responsibilities include:

- coordinating the work of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster
- ensuring the provision of integrated court services through the establishment and maintenance of court facilities
- constitutional development
- drafting constitutional amendments and other legislation pertaining to the mandate of the department
- conducting research to support legislative development
- providing legal advisory services to government departments
- providing litigation services to protect the organs of state
- administering deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund
- promoting cost-effective and quality court services
- managing case flow
- appointing magistrates and judges following recommendations from the Magistrates' Commission and the Judicial Services Commission (JSC)
- adjudicating criminal, civil and family law-related disputes.

The department is administratively accountable for ensuring the independence of and support to its entities, namely the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) and Legal Aid South Africa; and constitutional institutions such as the South African Human Rights' Commission (SAHRC), the Public Protector, the Special Investigating Unit (SIU), including the administration of the Represented Political Parties' Fund and the President's Fund.

Legislation

The department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts. The Legislation Branch is responsible for conducting legal research and drafting legislation to promote a justice system that is simple, fair, inexpensive and responsive to the needs of South Africa's diverse communities. The branch consists of three main components, namely the research activities of the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC), the Secretariat for the Rules Board for Courts of Law, and Legislative Development.

Legislative Development researches, develops and promotes appropriate legislation affecting the department's line functions.

Acts passed in 2011 included the Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 5 of 2011), which will enhance the effectiveness and integration of the country's Criminal Justice System (CJS) with a revised medical parole policy, new management system for remand detainees and overall enhancement of the parole system.

The following Bills were before Parliament during 2010/11 for consideration and are at different stages in the parliamentary process:

- The Traditional Courts Bill is intended to regulate anew the role and functions of traditional leaders in the administration of justice in accordance with constitutional imperatives.
- The Protection of Personal Information Bill aims to introduce certain minimum conditions for the lawful processing of personal information by public and private bodies. An independent information-protection regulator will be established in terms of the Bill to ensure compliance with its provisions.
- The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Bill aims to offer protection to the most vulnerable in society against highly organised crime syndicates which traffic persons.
- The Protection from Harassment Bill is intended to prohibit harassing conduct by providing a complainant with the right to approach a court for an order in terms of which the harassing conduct must be stopped.
- The Criminal Procedure Amendment Bill aims to amend the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), so as to substitute and align the provisions of the Act relating to the use of

force in effecting arrest of a suspect with a judgment of the Constitutional Court.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of state at all levels of government.

In terms of Section 165 of the Constitution, the judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of state and persons to whom it applies.

Chapter Eight of the Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)
- high courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

In line with this, Parliament has also established special income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, small claims courts, "military courts" and equality courts.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the SCA and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts uphold and enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all state organs and all persons.

The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and develop common law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

In September 2011, Justice Mogoeng Mogoeng was appointed Chief Justice.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA, and 23 other judges of appeal. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court. Justice Lex Mpati is the President of the SCA.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area.

These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty.

Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 high courts:

- Eastern Cape High Court, Grahamstown
- Eastern Cape High Court, Port Elizabeth
- Eastern Cape High Court, Mthatha
- Eastern Cape High Court, Bhisho
- Free State High Court, Bloemfontein
- North Gauteng High Court, Pretoria
- South Gauteng High Court, Johannesburg
- KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Pietermaritzburg
- KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Durban
- Limpopo High Court, Thohoyandou
- Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley
- North West High Court, Mahikeng
- Western Cape High Court, Cape Town.

Specialist high courts

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively
- Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws
- Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal
- Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes
- Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically conduct hearings at remote areas outside the seat of the High Court designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned. This is with a view to enhancing access to justice.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates.

Regional courts hear most serious matters, including murder and rape but excluding treason. The penal jurisdiction of regional courts was increased and, similarly to the high courts, regional courts may pass life sentences.

The regional courts, by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008), adjudicate civil disputes. The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, with effect from August 2010, established a court for each regional division for the purposes of adjudicating over civil disputes. In addition, the Minister appointed within each regional division the places (64 in total) of holding court for adjudicating civil disputes. The divorce courts were subsumed under the regional-court divisions. The divorce court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 (Act 9 of 1929), were repealed from 15 October 2010. The regional courts therefore started adjudicating divorce matters from 15 October 2010. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

The Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 will, in the medium to long term, reduce the workload in the high courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time is within the jurisdiction of regional courts. This means that attorneys have the opportunity to represent their clients in matters where they ordinarily brief counsel, thus reducing the cost of litigation and increasing access to justice.

Magistrates' courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts.

The country is divided into 384 magisterial districts (18 subdistricts), 384 main magistrates' offices (18 detached courts), 79 branch courts and 235 periodical courts. The magisterial districts are still informed by the pre-1994 demarcations of the defunct self-governing states and the Republic of South Africa territory. Processes are underway to align the magisterial districts in accordance with the constitutional dispensation.

This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

It has also facilitated the separation of functions pertaining to the judiciary, prosecution and administration; enhanced and developed the skills and training of judicial officers; optimised the use of limited resources equitably; and addressed imbalances in the former homeland regions.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993), all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

Other courts

Small claims courts

Small claims courts have been established in terms of the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984), to adjudicate small civil claims. They are created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims. The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R12 000.

By March 2012, there were 240 small claims courts countrywide. The department, in partnership with representatives of the legal fraternity and the Swiss Agency for Development and Cooperation, finalised manuals for commissioners of small claims courts and for court officials, to be followed by training programmes in conjunction with the Justice College.

In 2010/11, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development appointed 229 commissioners and 217 advisory board members to assist small claims courts.

Matters within small claims courts are presided over by commissioners who are usually practising advocates or attorneys, a legal academic or other competent person. The service is voluntary as commissioners are paid no fees.

Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. The commissioner's decision is final and there is no appeal to a higher court; only a review process is allowed.

The department has developed a national programme for re-engineering small claims courts, which aims to strengthen and roll out such courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

The department continues to strengthen the capacity of small claims courts. The improvement of the functioning of the small claims courts is a key priority area. Small claims courts constitute an inexpensive tool that was created to settle minor civil disputes in an informal manner.

Equality courts

The establishment of equality courts seeks to achieve the expeditious and informal processing of cases, which facilitates participation by the parties to the proceedings. The courts also seek to ensure access to justice to all persons in relevant judicial and other dispute-resolution forums.

The right to equality is protected by law in the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act (Equality Act), 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two Acts work in synergy. The Equality Act, 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness about equality.

After the Minister designated the remaining magisterial districts as equality courts in 2009, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development held a series of consultations in various provinces. Mpumalanga, North West, Northern Cape, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal were covered by 2011. The remaining provinces were expected to follow.

The department is engaged in the Access to Justice and Promotion of Constitutional Rights Programme. This programme was developed under the framework of the joint *European Union/ South Africa (EU/SA) Country Strategy Paper* and National Indicative Plan, which set out South Africa's development strategy between 2007 and 2013 and identifies the areas to be funded by the EU.

The aim of the programme is to contribute to the promotion, protection and realisation of rights established in the Constitution through the following three key performance areas:

- improving access to justice
- raising awareness of rights
- strengthening participatory democracy.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) in traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of sections 12 and 20 and the Third Schedule of the repealed Black Administration Act (BAA), 1927 (Act 38 of 1927).

The BAA, 1927 was repealed by the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

Community courts

South Africa has established community courts on a pilot basis to provide speedy resolution of certain types of community offences. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

These courts seek to assist the country's court case backlog. Community courts are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses.

The business community and other civil-society formations have contributed significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four are fully operational and were formally launched in Hatfield, Gauteng; and Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchell's Plain and Cape Town in the Western Cape.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point) and KwaMashu in KwaZulu-Natal; Mthatha, Eastern Cape; Bloemfontein and Phuthaditjhaba in the Free State; Thohoyandou, Limpopo; Kimberley, Northern Cape; and Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia) in Gauteng.

Lessons from the pilot sites will assist in finalising the policy and legislative framework that will institutionalise community courts as a permanent feature of the judicial system.

Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office. A tax court facility was opened in Megawatt Park, Sunninghill, Gauteng, in 2005.

Pilot sites for family courts

A family court structure and extended family advocate services are priority areas for the department. The establishment of family courts in South Africa was motivated by three broad aims, namely:
- providing integrated and specialised services to the family as the fundamental unit in society
- facilitating access to justice for all in family disputes
- improving the quality and effectiveness of service delivery to citizens who have family-law disputes.

With the implementation of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 in August 2010, regional courts in South Africa also have jurisdiction to hear family-law cases, including divorce matters.

The department is developing a policy to prioritise family-law services, which include domestic violence, maintenance, divorce and children's court matters, in all courts.

Criminal jurisdiction

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000.

A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

Any person charged with any offence committed within any district or regional division may be tried either by the court of that district or by the court of that regional division.

Where it is uncertain in which of several jurisdictions an offence has been committed, it may be tried in any of those jurisdictions.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences.

Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions (DPP) decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

Prosecutions are usually summarily disposed of in magistrates' courts, and judgment and sentence passed.

The following sentences may, where provided for by law, be passed upon a convicted person:

- imprisonment
- periodical imprisonment
- declaration as a habitual criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- committal to an institution established by law
- a fine with or without imprisonment as an alternative, correctional supervision or a suspended sentence
- declaration as a dangerous criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- a warning or caution
- discharge.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment.

Where a court convicts a person of any offence other than one for which any law prescribes a minimum punishment, the court may, at its discretion, postpone the passing of sentence for a period not exceeding five years, and release the convicted person on one or more conditions; or pass sentence, but suspend it on certain conditions.

If the conditions of suspension or postponement are violated, the offender may be arrested and made to serve the sentence. This is done provided that the court may grant an order further suspending the operation of the sentence if offenders prove that circumstances beyond their control, or that any other good and sufficient reason prevented them from complying with the conditions of suspension.

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such violence.

In ensuring that the legal framework and the rights of victims are realised and operationalised to ensure effective service delivery, the Act prescribes in Section 62 the establishment of the Intersectoral Committee for the Management of Sexual Offence Matters, a monitoring framework overseen by the most senior government officials. This structure aims to eradicate the fragmented nature of service delivery by ensuring that the directors-general (DGs) of the relevant departments meet regularly to ensure coordination as the DGs' Intersectoral Committee on the Management of Sexual Offences.

The functions of this committee are to develop the Draft National Policy Framework.

An operational intersectoral committee was established to support the work of the Intersectoral Committee of DGs at operational level.

These departments ensure that there are specialised services to support the victims of crime during court processes. These include intermediary services, court-preparation services, forensic services, victim-friendly rooms and counselling, and are aimed at eliminating secondary traumatisation of victims.

The department has developed the *National Register for Sexual Offenders*, which was deployed in 195 courts.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), is to facilitate the securing of maintenance moneys from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

The Integrated Case Management System (ICMS) that was piloted in 2010 in two provinces, was expected to be rolled out to all the courts during 2011/12. The purpose of the process is to alleviate the issues of collating statistics on different templates and to introduce case-flow and diary management of cases. The ICMS process will capture detailed information, which will help in collating and analysing statistics accurately, and also assist with case-flow management.

Guidelines for maintenance officials, as well as for the judiciary, have been developed and distributed to all courts for proper and common implementation of the Maintenance Act, 1998. Training has been and will be provided to all officials coming into the system for proper compliance with the obligations of the Maintenance Act, 1998.

TransUnion helps maintenance investigators to trace the whereabouts of beneficiaries and defaulters. The system has been decentralised and improved to also detect fraudulent usage.

Every investigator coming into the system is trained.

The Maintenance Turnaround Strategy has been developed to improve the services of maintenance by introducing new systems for the next five years.

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT)

The EFT allows people to access maintenance payments through their bank accounts. This has reduced the need for maintenance beneficiaries to spend excessive time in queues at courts. In some instances, this has reduced their public transport costs and, in cases where the beneficiaries are employed, they do not have to spend unnecessary time away from work every month. In 2011, more than 185 000 beneficiaries were paid monthly by EFTs.

EFTs have been implemented in four of the six Guardian's Funds of the Master, namely in Bloemfontein, Kimberley, Grahamstown and Cape Town. Payments made in this way are available immediately to the beneficiary, as there is no need for a clearance period at the bank.

Domestic violence

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is committed to supporting and promoting the rights of victims of domestic violence, especially women, children and the elderly, through the courts and criminal-justice processes. It also ensures that victims of such crimes are assisted through the Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP), led by the Department of Social Development, which aims to improve their circumstances and quality of life.

Perpetrators of domestic violence should also be brought to court so that victims can be and feel more safe and secure.

During 2009/10, the department finalised a review of the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998), in courts; and submitted the findings to the JCPS Development Committee, the VEP Task Team and the Portfolio Committee on Women, Children and People with Disabilities, which gave a mandate to the department to develop the JCPS Domestic Violence Strategy to link with the broader VEP.

The draft document was expected to be finalised in 2011/12. To achieve this, the JCPS Cluster mandated the department to chair a task team to draft the strategy.

Further services on domestic-violence matters

Various government departments have put measures in place to facilitate the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998. For instance, resources have been made available for the following:

- developing policies and programmes
- outreach and education
- training
- the hiring of personnel
- establishing family court centres
- the *16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children* Campaign.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development launched and circulated guidelines in conjunction with and to support the judiciary in 2008, drafted by the Lower Court Management Committee. Recommended updates were discussed with the judiciary in 2010/11.

The Ndabezitha Project with the NPA trains traditional leaders and clerks of the court in domestic-violence matters in rural areas.

This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, which were expected to be concluded during 2010/11.

The department engaged in research methodology called the *10-Year Review of Implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998* aimed at taking stock of all initiatives and projects in courts and the CJS to address the reduction and prevention of domestic violence.

Electronic forms and systems were developed and approved to be piloted at two magistrates' courts, after which they would be rolled out to all magistrates' courts' service points to improve the handling of domestic-violence cases.

Civil jurisdiction

Except when otherwise provided by law, the area of civil jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is the district, subdistrict or area for which the court was established.

The civil jurisdictional limits of magistrates' courts were increased for both liquid and illiquid claims to R100 000.

Unless all the parties in a case consent to higher jurisdiction, the jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is limited to cases in which the claim value does not exceed R100 000 where the action arises out of a liquid document or credit agreement, or R50 000 in all other cases.

Traditional courts may hear and determine civil claims arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before them by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

Transforming the judiciary

The transformation of the judiciary remains one of government's key priorities. Through the efforts of the JSC, by mid-2011, of the 226 permanent judges, 40,3% (91) were white; 40,7% (92) were African; 9,3% (21) were coloured; and 9,7% (22) were Indian. Overall, 26,3% were female.

Significant strides have been made in respect of the magistracy. Through the efforts of the Magistrates' Commission, during the same period, of the 1 694 magistrates, 42,8% were white; 40,8% African; 7,6% coloured; and 8,8% Indian. Overall, 37,6% were female.

Legislation enacted to advance the transformation of the judiciary and enhance access to justice include the:

- Renaming of the High Courts Act, 2008 (Act 30 of 2008), which removed the pre-1994 names used during apartheid
- Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008, which seeks to extend civil jurisdiction to regional courts
- JSC Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 20 of 2008), which establishes internal systems for judicial accountability
- Child Justice Act (CJA), 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), which establishes a CJS for children who are in conflict with the law.

Some of the key principles introduced by the Act are the Code of Judicial Conduct and the requirement for financial disclosure by judicial officers. The disclosure of financial interest will ensure judicial officers' impartiality and eliminate corruption within the judiciary.

The code will serve as prevailing ethical standards for judicial officers and will, among other things, set the standard of behaviour for judicial officers, including the requirement to perform judicial functions diligently, impartially and expeditiously.

These far-reaching amendments are consistent with global trends to enhance the independence of the judiciary and increase public confidence in the judicial system.

The department redrafted the Constitution Amendment Bill and Supreme Courts Bill to accommodate the views of the judiciary, which emanated from the Judges' Conference held in July 2009.

These Bills, which seek to consolidate the outstanding aspects relating to the transformation of the judicial system, provide, among other things, for the:

- Constitutional Court to be the apex court in South Africa
- Chief Justice as the head of the judiciary to be assigned the responsibility to develop and monitor the implementation and observance of norms and standards for the effective functioning of all the courts
- rationalising the high courts to ensure that there is equitable distribution of superior courts through the country
- enhancing the capacity of the Office of the Chief Justice to be commensurate with the added responsibilities of that office.

The Bills were submitted for processing during 2010/11.

A significant feature of the transformation of the judicial system, which will be addressed in a later Bill, relates to court administration.

A policy framework was drafted to pursue ways of enhancing institutional independence in line with the separation of powers and the independence of the judiciary, which are the pillars of South Africa's constitutional democracy.

The transformation of the judiciary is closely linked to the transformation of the legal profession and scholarship.

The department continues to work in partnership with law schools in transforming the curriculum of the basic law degree to bring it in line with modern best practices. In addition to encouraging law schools to widen access to students from previously disadvantaged communities, these institutions will further be encouraged to forge linkages with leading law firms, prominent practitioners and relevant international organisations, which will:

- ensure the relevance of the training they offer to the practical demands of the profession
- expose students, especially those from previously disadvantaged communities, to the profession to facilitate professional training prospects
- engage the legal profession in the evolution of a new legal system that expresses the constitutional and cultural aspirations of the new dispensation.

The department assists law graduates through its internship programme, which also provides research training, to give much-needed assistance to state legal officers, prosecutors, public defenders, the judiciary and the magistracy.

Transformation of the legal profession includes making judicial services accessible to the poor, the uneducated and the vulnerable. This entails establishing a physical presence in rural areas and townships, offering affordable fees and providing speedy and empathetic services. It also entails facilitating access to all aspects and levels of the profession by aspirant lawyers, especially those from previously marginalised backgrounds.

The provision of alternative dispute-resolution mechanisms is another key aspect of transforming justice services, making justice more accessible and more affordable.

Integrated Case-Flow Management (CFM)

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is developing an enhanced version of the CFM Framework for implementation by all stakeholders.

In the process, participants from other partner organisations will make meaningful contributions on the issues and blockages affecting the proper implementation of CFM in the court environment.

Efforts to eradicate such blockages will be proposed by adopting workable solutions. These include:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain CFM at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and CFM buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of CFM forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of CFM governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment
- maintaining the CFM concept (guidelines, plans, governance, reporting and systems).

Systems that support CFM in the courts include the ICMS. This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations.

The following offices have started experiencing the benefits of the ICMS:

- ICMS Civil is deployed in all lower courts and 13 high courts
- ICMS Criminal is deployed in all lower courts
- ICMS Small Claims is used in all small claims courts and designated lower courts
- ICMS Masters has been introduced in all 14 Masters' offices and all 402 service points.

New programmes and systems enhancing the Criminal Justice System

Audio-Visual Remand System

The roll-out of the Audio-Visual Remand System allows for remand court proceedings to be conducted via video linkage, eliminating the unnecessary transportation of remand detainees to and from court and its associated risks. By September 2011, 47 courts and 22 correctional centres had been equipped with the system; and of the 47 courts, 17 were operational. Of the 22 correctional centres, 10 were operational.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS Cluster departments have introduced various interventions to deal with reducing case backlogs. The Case Backlog Reduction Project intervention was implemented in 2006.

Backlog cases are viewed as all those cases that have been on a district court roll for longer than six months, nine months on the regional court roll and 12 months on the High Court roll.

The Case Backlog Reduction Project assists those regional and district court centres in identified priority areas countrywide that require focused attention.

The project's aim is to ensure that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded and that matters are finalised more speedily.

Initially, the reduction of the regional court backlogs was the main focus area. After an investigation into the performance of the district courts, several high-priority district backlog courts were established in 2010.

By September 2011, there were 56 regional backlog courts and 22 district courts. There was a marked decrease in the number of outstanding cases from 218 660 to 197 391 (9,7%) between March and June 2011. Between June and July 2011, it decreased by a further 4 905 cases from 197 391 to 192 487.

The project assists with the appointment of additional magistrates, clerks, prosecutors, interpreters and legal-aid lawyers on contract to augment court capacity at the identified priority centres.

From November 2006 until the end of March 2011, the project assisted with the removal of 36 974 cases from the court rolls of the identified priority centres, comprising 24 532 cases finalised through verdicts, 11 096 cases withdrawn and 1 346 cases transferred to other or higher courts.

Court performance

The subbranch Court Performance of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring processes and systems
- introducing CFM that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management
- developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework
- evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts
- facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance.

As a service-delivery improvement programme, the CFM Project seeks to put in place institutional arrangements for integrated CFM in the court system. Given the broad and large sector of the justice system, this will be done incrementally over the years. The project supports the institutional arrangements by:

- establishing judicial leadership regarding CFM to achieve holistic CFM judicial leadership
- re-engineering CFM support structures in the courts to respond adequately to the CFM regime.

The Court Performance Programme focuses on:

- increasing capacity at regions and courts to effect service delivery
- increasing and improving skills and competencies
- continuing efforts to reduce case backlogs
- reviewing outdated court procedures/processes and the regulatory framework
- facilitating organisational efficiency
- facilitating efforts to secure skills required to operate the new systems and processes.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated CFM with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the Re Aga Boswa (meaning "We are renewing") and Court Capacitation projects
- facilitating the implementation of multilingualism in courts and developing indigenous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions, rendering case-management business intelligence support to information-system management (ISM) in the development of information technology (IT) tools and systems, and supporting initiatives for the effective management of court records.

The directorate assists in court capacitation initiatives, namely:

- the United Nations (UN) Office on Drugs and Crime Court Integrity Project
- upgrading five pilot courts, namely Pretoria, Thembisa, Nelspruit, Mkobola and Kimberley with notice boards, flat-screen television sets and DVD players
- providing integrity training to 120 departmental, 15 NPA and 15 judicial officers
- conducting audits on the management of court records
- facilitating activities on the Court Capacitation National Centre for State Courts Project in consultation with all other stakeholders such as chief directors and regional heads
- engaging human resources (HR) and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority and securing learnership programmes for court interpreters (R4 million)
- engaging in legislation development and finalising the legislative and operational framework for implementing and institutionalising the lay assessor system.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report to him on the outcomes of these.

The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section Two of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 regarding:

- serious maladministration concerning the affairs of any state institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any state institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property, and any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on state property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause to or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category of the public.

The unit can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it uncovers during an investigation and can therefore, for example, obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts where the proper procedures were not followed
- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

A critical factor contributing towards the success of the SIU has been the development of an integrated forensic service to state institutions that requires an intervention to address allegations of corruption, maladministration and fraud, which include:

- forensic audit and investigation
- remedial legal actions encompassing civil, criminal and disciplinary action
- recommendation and facilitation of systemic recommendations.

The SIU's output-driven approach to investigations is supported by an effective national presence and excellent relations with other law agencies such as the National Prosecution Service (NPS), the core prosecuting division of the NPA, and other attached divisions, such as the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) in the case of fraud and other related matters, and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

By December 2011, the SIU had almost 1 000 individual investigations underway. Of these, nearly 600 were related to procurement, while 360 conflicts of interests on contracts valued at R3,5 billion were also under investigation.

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

South African society post-1994 has been marked by profound political changes and the establishment of progressive legislation, policies and programmes that have served to lay the basis for a new society. Key milestones along the way have been the adoption of the Constitution in 1996 that outlined the formation of the NPA and Section 179 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, which created a single NPA.

Also vital within the CJS was the formation of the Office of the National Directorate of Public Prosecutions (NDPP), established in 1998.

The Office of the NDPP consists of deputy NDPPs, and special DPPs who head the specialised units – the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (Soca), the SCCU, Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU) and Office for Witness Protection (OWP).

These units were established through presidential proclamations relevant to their specific focus areas such as sexual offences, special commercial crimes and priority crimes litigation. The AFU was also created to ensure that the powers in the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), to seize criminal assets are used effectively to remove the profits of crime.

Legislation governing the prosecuting authority is the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998). The Constitution, read with this Act, provides the prosecuting authority with the power to institute criminal proceedings on behalf of the State and to carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting criminal proceedings.

The NPA Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 56 of 2008), and the South African Police Service (SAPS) Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 57 of 2008), provided for the dissolution of the Directorate: Special Operations (DSO). The DSO and SAPS Organised Crime Unit became a single agency, known as the Directorate: Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI), within the SAPS. The Acts are expected to strengthen the investigative capacity of the police in relation to organised and serious crime.

While the core work of the NPA will remain prosecutions and being "the people's lawyer", the

NPA Strategy seeks to ensure that the organisation becomes more proactive so as to:
- contribute to economic growth
- contribute to freedom from crime
- contribute to social development
- promote a culture of civic morality
- reduce crime
- ensure public confidence in the CJS.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy DPPs. They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country.

All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the DPPs in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Office for Witness Protection

The OWP was created in 2001, in terms of the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).

The OWP provides a support service to the CJS by protecting threatened or intimidated witnesses and related persons by placing them under protection, ensuring that they testify in criminal and other defined proceedings. The OWP has maintained a proud record of no witnesses or family members in the programme being harmed or threatened since the office was established.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998. The unit focuses on restraining and forfeiting the proceeds of crime or the property used to commit crime. The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:
- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU was established in 1999 as a pilot project to combat the deteriorating situation pertaining to commercial crime. The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by Presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the NDPP. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:
- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statue of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law. Soca aims to:
- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children
- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

The TCC concept is recognised by the UN General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. The TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high.

The TCCs aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner.

By December 2011, there were 27 fully operational TCCs in the country.

The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms (VSRs) in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence. In 2011, the department increased the number of VSRs from 806 to 900 across the country. These rooms are used for interviews, taking statements and other consultations.

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court.

There are voluntary associations of advocates such as the General Council of the Bar and other formations of independent bars. There are four regional societies for attorneys, each made up of a number of provinces. A practising attorney is *ipso jure* (by the operation of the law) a member of at least one of these societies, which seek to promote the interests of the profession. The Law Society of South Africa is a voluntary association established to coordinate the various regional societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts.

Attorneys who wish to represent their clients in the High Court are required to apply to the registrar of a provincial division of the High Court. Such an attorney may also appear in the Constitutional Court. All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney, should a person not be qualified and accepted as an attorney yet. One of these is that persons who intend to be admitted as attorneys, and who have satisfied certain degree requirements prescribed in the Act, are exempted from service under articles or clerkship. However, such persons must satisfy the society concerned that they have at least five years' appropriate legal experience.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the Minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Other legal practitioners

In terms of the NPA Act, 1998, state advocates and prosecutors are separated from the Public Service in certain respects, notably by the determination of salaries.

State attorneys derive their power from the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957), and protect the interests of the State in the most cost-effective manner possible. They do this by acting on behalf of the State in legal matters covering a wide spectrum of the law.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of state.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security.

Since 1994, and in keeping with the promotion of a human-rights culture, the focus is progressively shifting from an adversarial and retributive CJS to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs.

Crime prevention

In October 2010, the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, Mr Jeff Radebe, and five other Cabinet ministers co-signed a delivery agreement, renewing their commitment to and strengthening their partnership in eradicating crime. The ministers promised a transparent and coordinated approach in achieving Outcome 3: All people in South Africa are and feel safe.

The delivery agreement forms part of the 12 outcomes approved by Cabinet in 2010 to improve performance and service delivery.

The JCPS Cluster intends to reduce crime by between 4% and 7%. This will be achieved through improved coordinated crime intelligence; increased visible policing and crime-prevention initiatives; reducing firearms; improved strategies to arrest and charge known perpetrators; and a reduction in the number of escapes from custody.

Integrated Justice System (IJS)

The IJS aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of governmental meetings and forums.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

Modernising the justice system

This aspect includes establishing proper governance structures, effective monitoring mechanisms based on proper review findings and the integration and automation of the justice system.

The IJS Board Programme comprises:

- The Transversal Subprogramme, which focuses on the enablement of interdepartmental information exchange and clusterwide performance management information services through the established IJS Transversal Hub.
- Six departmental subprogrammes that focus on the modernisation of system capabilities within departments. While each department within the JCPS Cluster must have its own IT plan to achieve its specific vision, mission and objectives, the IJS Board coordinates the broader and shared duty to integrate information flow throughout the CJS.

Child justice

Children's Act, 2005

The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), came into effect in April 2010. The Department of Social Development is the lead department for the implementation of the Act. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's main responsibility is towards children's court operations relating to the Act.

As the Act also emphasises the effective implementation by all organs of state in an integrated, coordinated and uniform manner, the Implementation of the Children's Act Working Group was established in 2010 to address challenges the department faced in implementing the Children's Act, 2005. Two meetings during the latter part of 2010 brought about the creation of the Children's Act Training Reference Group, which was launched in 2011/12. It assists in ensuring that key stakeholders are sufficiently versed in the Children's Act, 2005 and the challenges it presents.

The department has developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) link on its website. The FAQ serves as a resource point for the public and is updated frequently. The FAQ also includes links to the websites of the Department of Social Development, and the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa). In addition, the department created an e-mail address, *children@justice.gov.za*, which the public may use to contact the department on issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who are in need of care and protection. To gather statistics from the children's courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act, 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court. This means that every children's court can serve as a direct entry point for a child to seek help and protection. Children's courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act. Children's courts must be child-friendly and conducive to the participation of the child.

Child Justice Act, 2008

In April 2010, South Africa implemented the CJA, 2008, as part of an ongoing effort to promote and protect the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures for children in conflict with the law, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The National Policy Framework was tabled in Parliament in June 2010, and published in August 2010. The remarkable decline in the number of children awaiting trial in prisons marks a further success in the implementation of the Act. The number of children between the ages of 14 and 17 who were in prison and awaiting trial dropped from 502 in April 2010 to 298 in December 2010.

The department further established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. The Directors-General Intersectoral Child Justice Committee (DG ISCJC) was established to give strategic direction in the clusteral implementation of the Act. The National Operational Intersectoral Child Justice Committee was established to give technical support to the DG ISCJC.

Nine provincial child justice forums are co-ordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused, and building peace in communities.

As defined by the JCPS Cluster, the restorative-justice concept is an approach to justice that aims to involve the parties to a dispute and others affected by the harm (victims, offenders, families concerned and community members) in collectively identifying harms, needs and obligations by accepting responsibilities, making restitution and taking measures to prevent a recurrence of the incident. This may be applied at any appropriate stage after the incident.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Restorative-justice strategies, programmes and processes in the CJS are in place to try to heal the harm caused by the crime or offence, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned, which will lead towards rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and dialogue.

Any restorative-justice option, which may include but not be limited to victim-offender mediation or a family-group conference, is always voluntary for the victim involved. Therefore, such programmes and/or strategies will not be forced upon the victim of any crime or offence.

The JCPS Restorative-Justice Task Team, under the chair of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, drafted the Restorative-Justice Strategy during 2009/10, which the JCPS Developmental Committee approved in principle. It was submitted to the JCPS directors-general for ratification during 2011.

These documents will be consulted further with national government departments, especially relating to the implementation strategy and costing; and with civil-society and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) concerned. Regular reports will be submitted on progress made in implementing the strategy.

Victim-Empowerment Programme

This programme aims to improve services rendered to victims of crime.

The NPA has court-preparation officials on contract who provide support to crime victims and especially abused children, in preparing them for court proceedings.

The Victims Charter Project engaged NGOs and community-based organisations (CBOs) on the initiation of a capacity-building project for 2011/12. This will focus on training for NGOs and CBOs on the Victims Charter to influence a change in perception of the CJS among NGOs and CBOs, in line with Outcome 3 of the JCPS.

The department appointed intermediaries in regions to assist child witnesses in presenting evidence in court.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime is expected to go a long way towards assisting crime victims and contributing to interdepartmental and cluster coordination and cooperation.

State Legal Services

The purpose of State Legal Services is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation, facilitate constitutional development and undertake research. It is divided into four branches, namely:

- The State Law Advisers, who provide legal advisory services to the executive, all state departments, parastatals and autonomous government bodies.
- The Chief Litigation Officer was established to provide litigation services to the Government and its organs. It represents the State and its organs in all matters of litigation. The core function of the branch is executed by the State Attorney's offices, which are located in the provinces. Besides the State Attorney's offices, the branch has the Chief Directorate: Legal Services, which serves as a legal adviser to the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.
- Legislative Development and the SALRC prepare and promote legislation, conduct research and promote, maintain and develop the Constitution and its values.
- The Master of the High Court funds the masters' offices, which supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates, trusts, curatorship and the Guardian's Fund.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other states/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign states to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African states, especially with the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The chief directorate coordinates human-rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with SADC states
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with other international bodies, such as the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign states outside the SADC region
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human-rights treaties, including report-writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process
- processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa was one of the proponents of the negotiation and adoption of the Rome Statute of the ICC in 1998, creating the first permanent international criminal tribunal to combat impunity for the most serious crimes of concern to the international community, namely crimes of genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and the crime of aggression.

South Africa promulgated the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002). The Act provides for a framework to:

- ensure the effective implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC in South Africa
- ensure that South Africa conforms with the obligations set out in the statute
- address the crime of genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and the crime of aggression
- address the prosecution in South African courts of persons accused of having committed crimes in South Africa and beyond the borders of the country in certain circumstances
- deal with the arrest of certain persons accused of having committed crimes and their surrender to the ICC in certain circumstances
- enhance cooperation between South Africa and the ICC
- negotiate extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements with other countries and international bodies.

Services of the Master of the High Court

The Office of the Master remains one of the key service-delivery programmes, as it impacts on the vulnerable members of society. The department provides appropriate skills to the staff in the masters' offices to improve turnaround times.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development provides for the following services of the Master of the High Court:

- deceased estates
- liquidations
- registration of trusts
- administration of the Guardian's Fund.

Each year, the value of estates under the supervision of the masters' office amounts to about R18 billion. This includes some R6,7 billion in the Guardian's Fund.

The key statutory functions of the masters' offices are to:

- control the administration of deceased and curatorship estates
- control the administration of insolvent estates and the liquidation of companies and close corporations
- control the registration and administration of both testamentary and inter vivos trusts
- manage the Guardian's Fund
- assess estate duty and certain functions with regard to estate duty
- accept and take custodianship of wills in deceased estates
- act as an office of record.

Deceased estates

The Master of the High Court takes over the powers of supervision in all deceased estates, and that all estates have to be administered in terms of the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), as amended.

All intestate estates must be administered in terms of the Intestate Succession Act, 1987 (Act 81 of 1987), as amended. This ensures all South Africans are treated equally, and that the dignity of each person is restored.

The institutional structures are the following:

- The Chief Master heads the national office and is responsible for coordinating all the activities of the masters' offices.
- There are masters' offices in Bhisho, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, Grahamstown, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Mahikeng, Polokwane, Port Elizabeth, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria, Thohoyandou and Mthatha.
- Suboffices are located in places where the High Court does not have a seat, but where workloads require the presence of at least one Assistant Master.
- At service points, officials attached to the Branch: Court Services deliver services on behalf of, and under the direction of, the Master. Each magistrate's court is a service point. Each service point has at least one designated official who is the office manager or a person of equal rank. Masters' representatives are only appointed in intestate estates of R50 000 or less, in terms of Section 18(3) of the Administration of Estates Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 47 of 2002).

A cooperation agreement was signed with Legal Aid South Africa in which it undertakes to assist in the administration of deceased estates where minor heirs are concerned. The cooperation agreement is part of the Master's drive to identify measures continuously to ensure the protection of vulnerable and poor people, especially in the administration of estates. The agreement gives

Legal Aid South Africa a mandate to protect children and minors' interests by administering estates on their behalf. It regulates the provision of administration of estates where minors are heirs and qualify for assistance.

The Master's services have been extended to widows who entered into customary marriages without their registration at the Department of Home Affairs. Although registration of a customary marriage is peremptory in terms of the Customary Marriages Act, 1998 (Act 120 of 1998), Section 4(9), which provides that failure to register a customary marriage does not affect the validity of that marriage. It makes no difference whether the customary marriage was concluded before or after the Act.

Curatorships

On 26 December 2004, the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), came into effect, repealing the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act 18 of 1973).

The Act provides that where a person falls within the ambit of this Act, the Master can appoint an administrator to handle the affairs of the person. The administrator, in this instance, replaces the appointment of a curator, as was done in the past.

In terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998, the Master also appoints curators in these estates to administer the assets of persons and legal entities attached by the AFU, in terms of a court order.

Guardian's Fund

The fund holds and administers funds that are paid to the Master of the Supreme Court on behalf of various persons, known or unknown.

These include minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons, or persons having an interest in the money of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature.

The money in the Guardian's Fund is invested with the Public Investment Corporation and is audited annually. Interest is calculated monthly at a rate per year determined from time to time by the Minister of Finance. The interest is compounded annually at 31 March. Interest is paid for a period from a month after receipt up to five years after it has become claimable, unless it is legally claimed before such expiration.

The computerisation of the administration of the Guardian's Fund allows for more accurate reporting on the activities of the fund and reduces the opportunity to manipulate the system for purposes of committing fraud and corruption.

The department aims to ensure that 80% of the beneficiaries receive their entitlements within 40 days of submitting their applications to the Guardian's Fund.

The Department of Home Affairs developed the online Home Affairs National Identity System.

This system has been made available to masters of the Supreme Court to verify the identity of claimants against the Guardian's Fund. The Guardian's Fund has the Master's Own Verification IT that is linked to the Department of Home Affairs, and which verifies identities within three minutes. The system proved most valuable when tested in the pilot sites of Pretoria, Pietermaritzburg and Cape Town; and further roll-out to the remainder of the masters' offices and 402 service points is planned.

Justice College

The Justice College is the training branch of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It has a range of training interventions, which target:

- prosecutors
- masters of the High Court
- family advocates
- court interpreters
- legislative drafters
- registrars of the High Court
- clerks
- court and area court managers
- administrative personnel
- other legal professionals.

The college evolved into two distinctive institutions when the South African Judicial Education Institute Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), came into effect.

The training offered by the college assists in capacitating the department's officials, both in terms of the acquisition of knowledge and the demonstration of requisite skills in the workplace.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities. This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

The Family Advocate derives its duties and obligations from the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act 24 of 1987), and other related legislation. In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The Office of the Chief Family Advocate is the designated central authority regarding the implementation of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, to which South Africa became a signatory in 1996. Under this Act, the Chief Family Advocate assists in securing the return of, or access to, children abducted or unlawfully retained by their parents or caregivers.

The sections of the Children's Act, 2005 which came into operation on 1 July 2007, have expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil litigation. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation, and unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation at all.

In addition, children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) Unit

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. The TRC made recommendations to government in respect of reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses.

Four categories of recommendations were approved by government in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations: the provision of a once-off individual grant of R30 000 to individual TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments: academic and formal records of history, cultural and art forms, as well as erecting symbols and monuments to exalt the freedom struggle, including new geographic and place names
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance: education assistance, and the provision of housing and other forms of social assistance to address the needs of TRC-identified victims
- community rehabilitation: rehabilitating whole communities that were subject to intense acts of violence and destruction, and which are still in distress.

The TRC Unit, located within the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, was established in 2005 to monitor, coordinate and audit the implementation of the TRC's recommendations.

The TRC identified 21 769 people as victims of human-rights violations. Of these, 16 837 applied for reparations.

By June 2011, 15 962 beneficiaries had been paid once-off grants of R30 000 as final reparation. These payments are made from the President's Fund, established in terms of Section 42 of the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act, 1995 (Act 34 of 1995).

The fund is located within the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The department has experienced difficulties tracing some of the beneficiaries because of incorrect or changed addresses, or in some cases where the victims have died.

The database of the Independent Electoral Commission and the Sassa was used to send letters to beneficiaries. In 2011, a process to verify those traced was underway. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development developed Regulations on Exhumation, Reburial and Symbolic Burial of Missing Persons, which were finalised in 2010. Monies in the President's Fund can be accessed for exhumation and reburial purposes. The regulations provide mainly for the following allowances:

- travel and subsistence for exhumations for a maximum of four people
- a once-off grant of R17 000 for the reburial, or a once-off grant of R8 500 for a symbolic burial.

The regulations also provide for their retrospective application. This is to ensure that families who buried the remains of their family members before the date of implementation of the regulations, and who have not received any assistance through other avenues, also receive assistance. By June 2011, 36 out of 39 families had been paid.

The department developed two sets of draft regulations in conjunction with the departments of basic education and higher education and training, which deal with assistance to TRC victims.

The department also developed and gazetted draft regulations related to physical and mental health assistance to victims.

Statutory bodies operating within the administration of justice

Judicial Service Commission

The JSC was established in terms of Section 178 of the Constitution. Its function is to select fit and proper persons for appointment as judges and to investigate complaints about judicial officers. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the JSC publishes a notice giving details of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations. It shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews. Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The interviews are conducted in public, after which the JSC deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the JSC, appoints the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, and the president and deputy president of the SCA.

The President appoints other judges on the advice of the JSC. In the case of the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

In terms of the Magistrates Act, 1993, the Minister appoints a magistrate after consultation with the Magistrates' Commission. The commission also investigates grievances and complaints about magistrates and submits reports and recommendations to the Minister, who in turn tables them in Parliament.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity; grievances; salary and service conditions; and the training of magistrates.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is an independent statutory body, established by the SALRC Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), which advises government on law reform. The members of the SALRC are appointed by the President on the recommendation of the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The SALRC is chaired by a judge and consists of members from the judiciary, legal professions and academic institutions. It conducts research with reference to all branches of South African law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law. This includes the following functions:

- repealing obsolete or unnecessary provisions
- removing anomalies
- bringing about uniformity in the law
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- making common law more readily available.

To achieve its objectives, the SALRC is drawing up a programme in which matters requiring consideration are included and submitted to the Minister for approval. By 2011, the SALRC's programme included:

- statute law: establishing a simplified, coherent and accessible statute book
- statutory law revision: redundancy, obsoleteness and constitutionality of legislation
- reviewing the Interpretation Act, 1957 (Act 33 of 1957)
- arbitration
- family mediation
- family law and the law of persons
- custody of and access to minor children
- review of aspects of matrimonial property law
- Hindu marriages
- sexual offences: adult prostitution
- decision-making for adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- prescription periods
- review of the Law of Evidence

- hearsay and relevance
- electronic evidence
- review of administration orders
- specific civil action in respect of consequential damages arising from hoaxes
- administration of estates
- review of witchcraft legislation
- multidisciplinary legal practices
- expungement of certain criminal records
- the practice of ukuthwala (child abduction and forced child marriages).

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for Courts of Law, established by the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985), may with a view to efficient, expeditious and uniform administration of justice in the SCA, high courts and magistrates' courts, from time to time on a regular basis review existing rules of court and, subject to the approval of the Minister, enact, amend or repeal rules for the above courts.

The Rules Board is headed by a Constitutional Court judge and has experts in procedural law drawn from the judiciary, legal profession and academic institutions.

The board's vision is:

- improving and modernising the rules of courts in accordance with technological changes and constitutional imperatives
- addressing challenges to the constitutionality of specific rules and effecting amendments precipitated by such challenges
- simplifying the courts' rules to promote access to justice
- harmonising rules of superior and lower courts
- reviewing the civil justice system to address inadequacies
- conducting legal and comparative research to determine viable solutions
- stimulating discussion with role players and interested and/or affected parties in the process of amending rules
- unifying and harmonising rules, regulations and procedures to transform the courts and to make justice accessible to all.

South African Board for Sheriffs

Sheriffs are officers of the court appointed in terms of Section 2 of the Sheriffs Act, 1986 (Act 90 of 1986), to serve and execute court processes and court orders. Sheriffs serve and execute civil-court processes against payment of a fee in accordance with the tariffs determined from time to time by way of rules of courts made by the Rules Board for Courts of Law.

The sheriffs are regulated by the South African Board for Sheriffs, appointed by the Minister in terms of the Act. The sheriffs' profession is one of the institutions that requires attention in terms of transformation.

Some of the policy initiatives undertaken by the department to transform the sheriffs' sector entail:

- drafting amendments to the sheriffs' regulations to establish objective criteria for the appointment of sheriffs
- developing and implementing progressive measures to ensure that communities living in underdeveloped areas have equal access to the services of a sheriff to enjoy the equal benefit and protection of the law as required by the Constitution
- modernising the CJS
- implementing training and capacity-enhancement programmes to establish an accountable and competent sheriffs' profession that respects and protects human rights and the principles of Batho Pele.

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid South Africa provides legal assistance to the indigent, in accordance with the Constitution and other legislative requirements. This is done through a system of in-house legal practitioners, and outsourcing to private lawyers (a system of judicare) and cooperation partners.

During 2010/11, the organisation provided legal services at all criminal courts through its 64 justice centres and 64 satellite offices; legal services in 421 365 new legal matters, which included assistance in 389 914 criminal legal matters and 31 451 civil legal matters; and general legal advice to 243 693 clients.

Legal Aid South Africa has prioritised the representation of children for civil and criminal matters. In 2010, 28 115 matters taken on by the organisation were on behalf of children. As a result, dedicated children's units have been established at a number of justice centres to ensure specialised representation for children.

In November 2010, Legal Aid South Africa launched the Legal Aid Advice Line to provide telephonic primary legal advice to clients, allowing many more South Africans to access justice without having to travel to its offices.

The Legal Aid Advice Line is a toll-free number (0800 110 110) offering legal advice in five South African languages. By the end of March 2011, the line had assisted 13 926 callers.

Constitutional commissions

South African Human Rights Commission

As the independent national human rights institution, the SAHRC was created to support constitutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring the attainment of everyone's human rights in South Africa without fear, favour or prejudice.

The values of the SAHRC are integrity, honesty, respect, objectivity, Batho Pele principles, and equality.

The commission is an independent institution supporting constitutional democracy established in terms of Chapter 9 of the Constitution. Its specific mandate is stipulated in Section 184 of the Constitution and states that it must:

- promote respect for human rights and a culture of human rights
- promote the protection, development and attainment of human rights
- monitor and assess the observance of human rights in the country.

The commission has the powers, as regulated by national legislation, necessary to perform its functions, including the power to:

- investigate and report on the observance of human rights
- take steps to secure appropriate redress where human rights have been violated
- carry out research
- educate.

Each year, the SAHRC requires relevant organs of state to provide it with information on the measures taken towards the realisation of the rights contained in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, healthcare, food, water, social security, education and the environment.

The SAHRC has additional powers and functions prescribed by specific legislative obligations in terms of the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (Paia), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000).

The commission has to:

- promote awareness of the statutes
- monitor compliance with the statutes
- report to Parliament in relation to these statutes
- develop recommendations on persisting challenges related to these statutes and any necessary reform.

The SAHRC is actively involved in ensuring the ratification of international and regional human-rights instruments by, among other things, advocating for the domestication of human-rights instruments.

At international level, the SAHRC is recognised by the UN Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights as an A-status national human rights institution (NHRI). As an A-status NHRI, the SAHRC has adhered to the Paris Principles, which are the guiding principles that set out the nature and functioning of a NHRI. These principles emphasise the independent nature of NHRIs and guide the manner in which the SAHRC conducts its work. The principles state further that national human-rights institutions should:

- monitor any situation involving the violation of human rights
- advise government and Parliament on specific violations
- educate and inform on issues of human rights
- use their quasi-judicial powers where violations exist.

Public Protector

Section 182 of the Constitution mandates the Public Protector to:

- investigate any conduct in state affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice
- report on that conduct
- take appropriate remedial action
- be accessible to all persons and communities.

The Public Protector has additional legislative powers contained in about 16 statutes. Among other things, it must resolve disputes or grievances involving the State through mediation, consultation, negotiation and any other remedies. It also has a mandate to enforce executive ethics; the Paia, 2000; the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000); and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004). The only matters excluded from the mandate of the Public Protector are court decisions, judicial functions and matters outside the public sector.

The Public Protector's vision is to be a trusted, effective and accessible public servant who rights administrative wrongs and consistently acts with integrity to ensure fair, accountable and responsive decision-making, service and good governance in all state affairs and public administration in every sphere of government.

Its mission is to strengthen constitutional democracy in pursuit of the constitutional mandate by investigating, rectifying and redressing any improper or prejudicial conduct in state affairs and resolving related disputes through mediation, conciliation, negotiation and other measures to ensure fair, responsive and accountable public sector decision-making and service delivery.

South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI)

The SAJEI Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), came into operation in January 2009. The SAJEI Act, 2008 established the institute to provide independent judicial education for judicial officers.

The SAJEI is responsible for the formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners in this legislation and other areas of judicial work. The purpose of the SAJEI is to promote the independence, impartiality, dignity, accessibility and effectiveness of the courts by providing judicial education for judicial officers.

In carrying out this function, the SAJEI is primarily directed and controlled by the judiciary. The institute provides education and training for aspirant and newly appointed judicial officers, and ongoing legal education and training for experienced judicial officers.

Department of Correctional Services

The Department of Correctional Services aims to contribute to a just, peaceful and safe society by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and persons subject to community corrections.

The *White Paper on Corrections*

The *White Paper on Corrections in South Africa* is the principal strategic document aimed at directing the management and service provision of the department over the next 20 years and beyond.

The White Paper also sets objectives against which the people of South Africa can measure the department's performance and service delivery.

The White Paper represents the final fundamental break with a past archaic penal system and ushered in the start to the Second Decade of Freedom, where prisons became correctional centres of rehabilitation and offenders are given new hope and encouraged to adopt a lifestyle that will result in them having a second chance to become law-abiding South African citizens.

Policy development

Correctional Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 25 of 2008)

The Correctional Services Amendment Act, 2008 was gazetted in November 2008. This followed a series of consultations with stakeholders to ensure broad representation by all concerned.

The amendments included: substitution, amendment or deletion of certain definitions; further provisions for the manner in which correctional centres are managed; authorisation of the National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS) to determine, under certain conditions, the period before an offender may be placed on parole; and further provision for matters relating to correctional supervision, parole boards and the Judicial Inspectorate. It also provides for compliance management and monitoring of relevant prescriptions, a departmental investigation unit and a unit dealing with disciplinary procedures.

In 2011, Parliament debated the Correctional Matters Amendment Bill, 2010.

The Bill seeks to improve the administration of three key areas of corrections, namely medical parole; the parole system in general; and the management of remand detention.

The provisions of the Bill limit the granting of medical parole to sentenced offenders who are in the final phase of terminal illness. The proposed Medical Parole System balances the medical condition of the inmate against the risk posed to society should such inmate be placed on medical parole.

Work of statutory bodies

National Council for Correctional Services

The NCCS is a statutory body with the primary aim of guiding the Minister of Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

The NCCS serves as the recommending institution to the Minister in relation to parole decisions for offenders sentenced to life imprisonment. The NCCS also serves as the parole-review mechanism and meets as the Correctional Supervision and Parole Review Board.

Ministerial Task Team on Categorising Inmates

This is an independent team appointed by the Minister to conduct an audit of certain categories of inmates within the correctional facilities.

Statistics are collected and trends, shortcomings and best practices identified. The audit helps the department address the state of overcrowding within facilities.

The task team audits the following categories of inmates:

- unsentenced inmates awaiting trial
- sentenced inmates – placement of certain categories of inmates on parole, correctional supervision, or the conversion of sentences to correctional supervision
- vulnerable inmates (mothers with babies, mentally ill and elderly inmates).

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services (JICS)

The JICS was established in 1998, with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The JICS is an independent office.

Key projects and programmes

Corrections Week

The Department of Correctional Services celebrates Corrections Week every year from 27 September to 3 October to create awareness of the department's mandate and promote understanding of corrections as a societal responsibility. The project was launched in September 2006.

Operation Vala

Operation Vala (meaning "close") is a 50-day special festive-season security plan. It was launched in 2006 to deal with security pressures and escapes experienced during the festive season.

The campaign plan includes:

- tightening security
- limiting offenders' externally focused activities to essential services only
- curtailing goods and products brought to facilities by families and friends
- conducting impromptu searches to eliminate illegal substances
- maintaining appropriate staffing levels as informed by local threat assessments by heads of correctional centres and area commissioners.

Without security, no rehabilitation can take place. The department adopted a minimum security standards policy with six key pillars, namely: personnel, technology, information, operational, physical and management supervision of security.

Operation Funda

Operation Funda (meaning "learn") is one of the Department of Correctional Service's flagship projects, launched by the Minister in January 2011 to enhance offenders' access to education and training to equip them for effective and sustainable social reintegration.

It came into being after the Minister raised concerns about the number of inmates serving life sentences considered for placement on parole who were incarcerated as juveniles for serious crimes, and had not had access to or used the opportunity to empower themselves.

Young people between the ages of 18 and 25 constitute 69% of the total offender population. There are 13 dedicated youth facilities nationally, but for years there was only one full-time school doing the National Curriculum Statement (NCS) programme – the Usethubeni Youth Centre in Durban-Westville Correctional Services.

Of the many young inmates that should be eligible for studying full-time, Usethubeni catered for about 30 inmates a year.

In 2011, three additional full-time schools doing the NCS Programme were launched in the Voorberg, St Albans and Kuthama Senthumule correctional centres.

Mother and Child Units (MCUs)

The MCUs are separate cells built for mothers incarcerated with babies in correctional centres.

The Department of Correctional Services launched two MCUs in August 2011 as part of celebrating Women's Month. The two facilities were launched in Cape Town and Durban respectively. Two more facilities were expected to be built in Gauteng and the Eastern Cape by the end of 2011/12. The vision is to develop and design child-focused and child-friendly units across the department's six regions.

The idea is to allow the child as close to normal an existence as possible, while at the same time providing rehabilitation programmes that enhance the mothers' capacity to care for their children.

These facilities were also launched in response to the CJA, 2008. The Act created an imperative for the department to treat children incarcerated with their mothers in a humane way. It called for a revisit in the department's programmes, particularly those designed for women with children. These ideals resulted in the MCUs.

Imbeleko Project

The department launched the Imbeleko Project which seeks to provide, as far as possible, a home-like environment for children below the age of two in centres and subsequently to place children of two years of age and above outside correctional facilities with sustainable family structures. The objectives of the programme are aligned with those of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child. The first phase of the Imbeleko Project was successfully rolled out across all the regions. This entailed the creation of a safe, humane and friendly environment for mother-child interaction. The second phase will focus on finding alternative placement for children above two years, outside correctional facilities.

Offender labour

Offenders continue to be awarded opportunities to participate in community-development projects by providing offender labour. In an effort to enhance the use of available resources, the Department of Correctional Services has engaged various stakeholders to involve offenders in mainstream activities that could lead towards poverty alleviation within communities.

The aim is to formulate a relationship with other government departments and stakeholders, so that they consider offenders as an available workforce that can be used as some sort of reparation and payback to the communities they have offended. The department has developed a draft concept document on the use of offenders in meaningful work activities.

The involvement of offenders in community projects or activities is of fundamental importance in their rehabilitation and reintegration process.

Strategic priority areas

The department's strategic priority areas include:

- Improved rehabilitation and reintegration of offenders: A draft project charter was developed, as well as draft action plans for the respective work streams. The key elements of improved rehabilitation and reintegration of offenders lie in the implementation of the correctional sentence plans, the responsibilities of case-management committees and parole processes, and the refinement of correctional officials' job functions that have been part of the Occupation Specific Dispensation (OSD) process.
- Improved Remand Detention Management System: Development of the system is a departmental and cluster priority and the policy framework has been put in place. In 2009/10, the department signed the Bail Protocol with the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development and the Minister of Police. The agreement ensures that inmates who committed petty crimes and cannot afford bail are diverted to alternative programmes. In 2010/11, the department finished setting up the Remand Detention Branch.
- Improved stakeholder relations: The work of the department towards establishing an all-Africa corrections body saw results with the launch in September 2008 of the Africa Correctional Services Association (ACSA). South Africa was appointed secretary of ACSA and the department has been actively involved in the SADC substructures, including interaction with counterparts on transferring foreign offenders to their countries of origin.

Achievements

The Department of Correctional Services' achievements for 2010/11 include:

- The implementation of the Seven-Day Establishment. It has enabled the department to comply with Section 8(5) of the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 11 of 1998), which prescribes intervals between meal times for offenders. The implementation of a shift system as a component of the Seven-Day Establishment has made more time available in day programmes within correctional centres. This has enabled more rehabilitation activities to be implemented, as well as improved offender labour programmes. The shift system also allows for compliance with legislation governing basic conditions of employment as adequate rest time is available to personnel.

- Implementation of the OSD was delivered within budget. The OSD allows for improved career pathing for professions within the department. Another consequence of implementing this remuneration system was the migration of qualified personnel to the coalface of service delivery, thereby distinguishing between administrative officials and those working with the correction of offenders.
- The department continues to win the war on fraud and corruption:
  - the anti-fraud and corruption capacity of the department is rated as the third most efficient of departments audited by the Department of Public Service and Administration
  - the measures put in place resulted in an 89% conviction rate during 2009/10
  - R2,5 million was recovered from a R4,5-million debt owed by officials who were found guilty of defrauding the department's medical aid scheme.
- The Minister of Correctional Services launched the department's Service-Delivery Charter in 2010. The charter confirms that the department will provide high-quality professional services that are responsive to all service recipient needs.
- In 2010/11, the department reduced overcrowding by 5,75%. This was due to efforts within the department and across the JCPS Cluster, such as the completion of a new correctional centre in Kimberley, the signing of bail protocols and the application of diversion sentences in terms of the Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2008 by heads of correctional centres. A process of reclassifying some offenders reduced the number of maximum security offenders by 12%.
- Two correctional centres, namely Boksburg and Krugersdorp, were accredited to provide antiretroviral treatment to offenders, bringing the total number of such facilities across the country to 21.
- A total of 138 correctional officials participated in the 13th World Police and Fire Games (WPFG) held in Vancouver, Canada. The department has expressed interest in hosting the 2017 WPFG. The games attract thousands of officials from 80 countries and present about 70 different sporting codes. South African correctional officials were the gold medallists in athletics and rugby, and the athletes returned with 216 medals.
- In partnership with the Department of Basic Education, the department has initiated an Early Childhood Development (ECD) programme for babies and toddlers who are incarcerated with their mothers. The programme recruits unemployed community members and parolees and trains them as ECD practitioners. The ECD qualification empowers the beneficiaries with a qualification equivalent to National Qualification Framework levels four and five.
- The Pre-Adult Basic Education and Training Programme, also in partnership with the Department of Basic Education, is a mass literacy campaign that involves illiterate offenders. Volunteers from the community are recruited and trained as literacy facilitators.
- Eleven computer-based training centres were established for offenders. Computer-based training forms an integral part of the subject Life Orientation within the NCS for grades 10 to 12 as well as the National Curriculum Vocation. The department completed and implemented the national project to align presentation of the curricula with national requirements.

Inmate profile

In March 2011, there were 162 162 inmates in 241 correctional service centres throughout the country. Of the 162 162 offenders in the department's correctional centres, 158 400 were male and 3 762 were female.

There are two private prisons in South Africa. Of the 241 correctional centres, eight are for women, 13 are for the youth, 129 are for men and 91 are mixed (women and men). The average cost of incarceration per offender per day was estimated at R123,37.

Overcrowding

Overcrowding in correctional centres continues to pose a challenge, affects how the department functions and influences its service delivery. At the close of the 2010/11 financial year, the department's facilities were overcrowded by 137,25%.

By mid-2011, the actual capacity in correctional facilities stood at 118 154, with 25 000 beds meant for remand detainees and 93 154 earmarked for sentenced offenders.

The department manages overcrowding through the transfer of offenders between centres and through releases resulting from sentence conversions. The construction of new centres should furthermore alleviate the pressure put on facilities and staff.

The intersectoral Management of the Awaiting Trial Detention Project involves all the departments in the criminal justice sector. There are continued efforts to encourage the judiciary to use the Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 65 of 2008), with a view to reduce overcrowding.

Automated Fingerprint and Identity System (AFIS)

The Department of Correctional Services had initiated the roll-out of AFIS in correctional centres around the country. By 2011, facilities for capturing and storage of fingerprint data had been installed at 145 sites. The integration of this system with those of the SAPS and the departments of home affairs and social development was expected to be completed by the end of 2011.

Service delivery

The focus of the department remains to be on improving service delivery through initiatives such as the:

- Integrated HR Strategy: The department developed and launched the strategy in 2007/08 for effective work organisation, recruitment, retention and development of employees. In 2010, the three-year strategy was implemented and reviewed.
- Compliance Improvement Plan: Since its inception in 2005/06, this plan has been used as a system to monitor matters concerning the performance of management areas and centres that have been recurring in the Auditor-General's reports. The management of compliance is tracked annually with the Compliance Improvement Plan as a strategic focus area.
- Risk Management Framework: Significant progress has been made in identifying risk indicators and mitigation plans. By mid-2010, the Risk Management Committee was developing indicators to assist in tracking the mitigation progress.
- Service Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP): The department identified four key services to form the basis of the SDIP for 2009/10 to 2013/14. These are integrated into the department's strategic and operational plans. Regions report quarterly on:
  - improving access of service-providers and other stakeholders to correctional centres
  - improving telephone and switchboard etiquette at all service points
  - managing the payment of bail and fines at correctional centres
  - improving the scheduling of visitations to offenders to support family ties between offenders and their families.
- Security enhancement: Security continues to receive priority attention as one of the core pillars of the department's legal mandate. The decrease in escapes from the Department of Correctional Services' centres over the last eight years is the result of the department's escalated measures to improve security, including security operations, technological installations, policy developments and training of personnel.
- Care and development of inmates: The department continues to improve the healthcare of inmates. The implementation of the OSD for nurses also ensures the availability of suitably qualified nurses to take care of the inmates' health and assist in the retention strategy in relation to nurses.
- Rewarding service excellence: Each year, the department honours officials who excel in their tasks and go beyond the call of duty to ensure that quality service is delivered. The annual National Corrections Excellence Awards represent the executive management's appreciation and recognition of the good and hard work done by many departmental officials.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
BuaNews
Budget Vote, 2011
Department of Correctional Services
Department of Justice and Constitutional Development
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
South African Law Reform Commission

www.constitutionallyspeaking.co.za
www.dcs.gov.za
www.fm.co.za
www.gov.za
www.idasa.org.za
www.publicprotector.org
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. 2010. *Fruit of a Poisoned Tree: A True Story of Murder and the Miscarriage of Justice.* Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
Bhauna, H. 2010. *The Survivor's Guide for Candidate Attorneys.* Claremont: Juta.
Bennett, T. 2011. *Traditional African Religions in South African Law.* Cape Town: UCT Press.
Brand, R. 2011. *Media Law in South Africa.* Alphen aan den Rijn: Kluwer Law International.
Gilmore, SA. 2010. *PULP Guide: Finding Legal Information in South Africa 2010*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Legal Press.
Gready, P. 2011. *The Era of Transitional Justice: The Aftermath of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission of South Africa and Beyond*. Abington: Routledge.
Hammond, S, Mabena, V and Strydom, E. 2011. *Understanding the Skills Development Act.* Cape Town: Juta Law.
Handmaker, J and Berkhout R. 2010. *Mobilising Social Justice in South Africa: Perspectives from Researchers and Practitioners*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.
Ismail, AAM. 2009. *Understanding Land Tenure Law: Commentary and Legislation.* Cape Town: Juta.
Lollini, A. 2011. *Constitutionalism and Transitional Justice in South Africa.* New York: Berghahn Books.
Meintjies-Van der Walt, L *et al*. 2011. *Introduction to South African Law: Fresh Perspectives.* Cape Town: Heinemann/Pearson Education South Africa.
Mukuka, GS. 2010. *'Reap What You Have Not Sown': Indigenous Knowledge Systems and Intellectual Property Laws in South Africa.* Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.
Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 4 of 2000. 2010. Claremont: Juta.
Van der Linde, M and Feris, L. 2010. *Compendium of South African Environmental Legislation.* Second edition. Pretoria: Pretoria University Legal Press.
Van Marle, K. 2010. *PULP Fictions No 6, August 2010: On 'Shoot the Boer', Hate Speech and the Banning of Struggle Songs.* Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.


INKUNDLA YOMGAOOSISEKO
INKANTOLO YOMTHETHOSISEKELO
KHOTO YA VUMBIWA
INKANTOLO YEMTSETFOSISEKELO
KGOROTSHEKO YA MOLAOTHEO
CONSTITUTIONAL COURT
LEKGOTLA LA DINYEWE LA MOLAOTHEO
KHOTHE YA NDAYOTEWA



Mineral resources

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

South Africa's mining industry has been and remains the bedrock of Africa's economic powerhouse. The mining sector and its related industries are critical to the country's socio-economic development.

South Africa is well endowed with a considerable mineral resource base, estimated by Citibank at US$2,5 trillion. The country's mining sector contributes about 8% to gross domestic product (GDP), which increases further to 18% when taking into account the indirect effect of mining on the economy. South Africa ranks among the top 10 countries in terms of the production of minerals such as manganese, iron ore, gold, chrome and ferrochrome.

The Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch of the Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for formulating and promoting mineral-related policies that will encourage investment in the mining and minerals industry, making South Africa attractive to investors while ensuring that environmental management forms an integral part of the ongoing exploitation of mineral resources.

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) is responsible for implementing mine-health and -safety legislation.

The Mineral Regulation Branch regulates the mining and minerals industry to achieve transformation and contribute to sustainable development.

Policy and initiatives

Mining and minerals policy is based on the principles of the Freedom Charter, according to which the mineral wealth beneath the soil will be transferred to the ownership of the people as a whole. The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of historically disadvantaged South Africans in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources. The MPRDA, 2002 enshrines equal access to mineral resources, irrespective of race, gender or creed. Section 100 of the MPRDA, 2002 provides for the development of the Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter, which is popularly known as the Mining Charter.

The introduction of the Mining Charter in 2002 was aimed at transforming the mining industry to redress historical imbalances engendered by apartheid so that the industry is consistent with the changes in South Africa's overall transformation of its social, political and economic landscape.

In 2010, the Department of Mineral Resources concluded an assessment of the progress of the industry's transformation against the Mining Charter objectives.

The racial ownership pattern of the country's mining assets had remained largely unchanged, with only 8,9% black ownership attained by 2009 against the target of 15%.

The reviewed Mining Charter, launched in September 2010, seeks to correct this, putting emphasis on 26% of South Africa's mining assets being Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)-compliant by 2014.

It also provides for the complete elimination of hostels on South Africa's mines by 2014, and introduces a sustainable element, premised on the understanding that the social licence to operate includes environment, health and safety performance.

Under the charter, companies found not complying could face penalties, which could include the revoking of a mining company's licence.

Working with the Mining Industry Growth, Development and Employment Task Team (Migdett), the Department of Mineral Resources identified industry constraints, including infrastructure, the lack of a beneficiation policy, skills shortages and regulatory issues.

A set of interventions was put in place to address these constraints, culminating in the signing of the Declaration on the Strategy for Sustainable Growth and Meaningful Transformation of the South African Mining Industry on 30 June 2010.

All stakeholders represented in Migdett signed the declaration document. The relevant transformation aspects of the declaration document were effectively migrated to constitute the bulk of the amendments of the Mining Charter.

A single window for processing mineral rights, associated environmental authorisation and water licences will ease administrative processes within government and mining companies. This is addressed by the following interventions:

- amending the MPRDA, 2002 to address ambiguities in interpretation of the law, mining of associated minerals, the consultation process, the partitioning of mineral rights, rehabilitation issues and alignment with the Beneficiation Strategy

In April 2011, the Ministry of Mineral Resources launched the online South African Mineral Resources Administration System for applying for prospecting rights, mining permits and mining rights. By February 2012, more than 3 000 applications had been lodged.

- discussions on the proposed amendments between the Department of Mineral Resources, Migdett, industry stakeholders, mine communities and various state departments
- streamlining administrative processes to shorten turnaround times for prospecting and mining rights
- auditing all rights since the implementation of the MPRDA, 2002
- developing an online licensing system.

The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010), expands the functions of the Council for Geoscience (CGS) by:

- mandating the CGS to be the custodian and curator of geotechnical information, to be a national mandatory advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure development, to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors and to add to the functions of the council
- putting mechanisms in place to address problems associated with infrastructure development on dolomitic land
- empowering the CGS to be the custodian of all geotechnical data to compile a complete geotechnical risk profile of the country
- enabling the CGS to become the custodian of technical information relating to exploration and mining.

The Beneficiation Strategy was approved by Cabinet in June 2011. Five value chains were prioritised from the selected commodities in the strategy, namely:

- iron and steel: beneficiating iron ore, chrome, manganese, nickel and vanadium
- energy commodities: focusing on coal and uranium
- autocatalytic converters and diesel particulate filters: beneficiating platinum group metals (PGMs)
- pigment and titanium metal production
- jewellery manufacturing: to increase beneficiation of PGM, diamonds and gold.

Mine environmental management

Mine environmental management forms an integral part of the management of mineral resources in South Africa. For the Department of Mineral Resources to manage effectively, it has to undertake research; develop mine environmental policies (legislation and strategies); and provide strategic guidance on mine environmental management, mine rehabilitation, water ingress, mine environmental legacies and sustainable development.

After more than a century, mining has left a scourge of derelict and ownerless mines, which cause serious environmental and health hazards, particularly for communities living nearby. The department has prioritised the rehabilitation of such mines.

The Minister of Mineral Resources, Ms Susan Shabangu, established the Rehabilitation Oversight Committee within the department to drive the implementation of a rehabilitation programme for all mines that were licensed prior to the passing of the Minerals Act, 1991 (Act 50 of 1991), and the MPRDA, 2002.

The Rehabilitation Strategy was signed off and the implementation plan and costs for the rehabilitation programme finalised. An amount of R52 million was set aside for the implementation of this programme in 2010/11.

The programme includes eliminating environmental damage by returning the affected land to a sustainable, usable condition. In 2010/11, five derelict and ownerless mines in the Northern Cape were rehabilitated:

- Jebolo
- Owendale
- Strelley
- Prieska
- Prieska Mill.

In 2011/12, the following mines were identified for rehabilitation:

- Osizweni in KwaZulu-Natal
- Lusikisiki in the Eastern Cape
- Penge in Limpopo
- Heuningvlei in the Northern Cape
- three more mines in Prieska in the Northern Cape
- Vergenoegd in Gauteng
- Ga-Motsamai in the Northern Cape
- Bestwell in the Northern Cape.

Comprehensive measures have also been put in place to compel companies to provide financially for post-mining rehabilitation.

Acid mine drainage (AMD)

Acid rock drainage occurs owing to reactions between sulphide minerals, oxygen and water, catalysed by bacteria. The mining of sulphide-rich materials exposes sulphide minerals to the elements, accelerating the natural process and forming AMD.

The sulphuric acid generated in these reactions can mobilise other components of materials, often resulting in high concentrations of toxic heavy metals in the rivers and streams that drain mining areas.

Key problem areas have been identified, including the Witwatersrand Gold Fields (the gold-mining areas of Gauteng and the Free State), various coalfields in Mpumalanga and the O'Kiep Copper District in the Northern Cape. Other areas are still being investigated.

In response to this threat, government constructed a number of canals in problem areas, including Grootvlei and the Klipspruit area between Florida Lake and the Fleurhof Dam. A task team led by the CGS drafted a report with recommendations that included pumping and treating the water in the Western, Central and Eastern basins, which was actioned by government.

By March 2012, the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority had reported progress in the implementation of the short-term solutions of the AMD Project as approved by Cabinet. The emergency or immediate solution as the first phase of the short-term solution was developed exclusively for the Western Basin to address the surface decant of acid mine water into the Tweelopie Spruit. National Treasury allocated R433 million for the implementation of the short-term solution. The emergency solution will increase the partial treatment of AMD (neutralisation of acid and removal of heavy metals) from 12 million litres (ML) per day to 30 ML per day.

It is envisaged that the short-term solutions will maintain underground mine water levels in the East Rand and Central Rand mining basins by protecting the environmental critical levels and also preventing surface decant of AMD in these basins. The water level in the Western Basin also needs to be drawn to the environmental critical level. The long-term feasibility study has begun.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP was launched in 2004 to further the New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives through mining and mineral initiatives in the quest for economic development on the continent.

Countries were assigned projects to spearhead and ensure that they contributed towards growing Africa's economy through its mineral wealth.

In February 2010, the AMP merged with the African Union (AU). This improved its standing and helped to attract more countries to participate. The merger also gave the AMP access to the AU's financial resources and is helping it achieve its vision of increasing the benefit of Africa's mineral wealth for its own people.

African Diamond Producers' Association (ADPA)

The Department of Mineral Resources received Cabinet approval to participate in the ADPA in 2009.

The ADPA has three organs, namely the Council of Ministers, Executive Secretariat and the Meeting of Experts. The Council of Ministers constitutes 18 African countries, 11 of which, including South Africa, are full members, while the remainder enjoy observer status.

The Executive Secretariat is the administrative organ and comprises a secretariat and two deputies. The Meeting of Experts consists of officials from the member countries and serves as the Working Group.

For South Africa, membership of this association presents an opportunity to position itself strategically among diamond-producing countries in Africa. It could add significant impetus to the diamond-beneficiation initiatives of South Africa. This will also boost the country's aim of becoming the beneficiation hub and gateway to Africa.

Public entities and other agencies

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)

The SADPMR was established in terms of the Diamonds Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), and the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), which came into effect in July 2007. The Acts mandate the SADPMR to regulate the diamond, platinum and gold industries; and to accelerate beneficiation in the jewellery industry.

The regulator's objectives relating to precious metals are:
- ensuring that precious metal resources are exploited and developed in the best interests of all South Africans
- promoting equitable access to and local beneficiation of precious metals
- promoting the development of precious metal enterprises
- advancing broad-based socio-economic empowerment.

Council for Mineral Technology and Research

The mandate for the Council for Mineral Technology and Research, as set out in the Mineral Technology Act, 1989 (Act 30 of 1989), is to serve the national interest through research, development and technology transfer; to promote mineral technology; and to foster the establishment and expansion of industries in the field of minerals.

The council develops appropriate and innovative technology for transfer to the industry; and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, and analytical and mineralogical services.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993). It is mandated to carry out systematic geological, geophysical, geochemical, marine geoscience, metallogenic and engineering geological mapping of South Africa. The council is also able to provide commercial geoscientific services.

State Diamond Trader

The State Diamond Trader was established in terms of Section 14 of the Diamonds Amendment Act, 2005. Its main purposes are to promote equitable access to diamonds and local beneficiation.

Mining industry

The discovery of world-class diamond and gold deposits in the latter half of the 19th century laid the foundation for the emergence of South Africa from an essentially agricultural to a modern industrial economy. The mining industry subsequently covered a wide-ranging spectrum of minerals, in which South Africa has an exceptional geological/mineral endowment.

Mining played a vital role as a foundation industry, which stimulated the development of key services, manufacturing and side-stream industries. Mineral production has been a major contributor to foreign-exchange earnings and employment in South Africa. In the 1980s, the gold sector accounted predominantly for all mineral-related income.

However, gold has fallen from its eminent position as the main contributor to mineral sales, as a result of which employment in the mining industry has contracted significantly since 1986.

Employment in the mining sector decreased by 21,3% from an average of 553 542 jobs in 1997 to 435 628 in 2003. Employment figures started to grow after the promulgation of the MPRDA, 2002 in 2004, peaking at 492 219 in 2009 due to the impact of the world economic crisis, resulting in operations being downscaled and projects suspended owing to a decline in commodity demand and prices.

The PGM sector has become the largest employer and contributor to revenue earnings, contributing 37,4% of total mining employment, followed by the gold and coal sectors respectively. Although mining's contribution to GDP showed a marked decline from above 22% in 1980 to 9,7% in 2009, principally resultant from the introduction and faster growth of other sectors contributory to GDP, the mining sector grew significantly in real terms in the same period.

The relative percentage decline of mining's contribution to the national GDP from 1986 to 2007 should be understood in the context of the apparent economic diversification and faster growth pace of such sectors as manufacturing, financial and construction, to which the mining industry also contributes significantly.

With significant resources of gold, uranium, chrome, manganese, PGMs, titanium minerals, vanadium, coal, limestone, vermiculite and zirconium, South African mining real estate remains attractive for development.

Despite considerable diversification of the country's economy in the recent past, the mining sector remains a key variable in the economic growth equation. In 2009, the industry contributed 9,7% to gross value added, 10% to total fixed capital formation, more than 30% to the country's total export revenue, and it employed 2,9% of the country's economically active population, at just below half a million direct jobs and a further half a million indirect jobs.

The sector contributes 18% to the country's corporate tax receipts. The listed mining companies represent over 30% of the market capitalisation of the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd. While mining activities consume 15% of national electricity, the mining industry directly contributes more than 95% towards the country's electricity generation.

According to the Chamber of Mines, total 2010 mining production grew by 5,4%, with PGM production up by 5,9% and coal production up by 1,6%. Iron ore production increased by 6,1%; manganese production grew by 56,6%; and diamond production improved 45,1%, albeit off a low base in 2009. Gold production fell by 4,5%, a much slower rate of decline versus the 7,1% in production recorded in 2009.

South Africa has significant known reserves and resources of mineral commodities, with almost 60 minerals being actively mined and prospects for exploitation of an additional two new minerals in the short to medium term. A large number of these known reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methodologies. For this reason, there still lies considerable residual potential for discovery of world-class deposits using modern exploration technology. This is further supported by existing mining infrastructure, which enables investors to leverage maximum value from their investment in South Africa, while simultaneously contributing to socio-political improvement.

Mineworkers

According to the Chamber of Mines, in 2008 the South African mining sector employed 518 585 employees compared to 495 474 in 2007, representing an improvement of 4,7%. Mining accounted for 6,1% of total non-agricultural formal employment in the economy and 7,8% of total private-sector non-agricultural employment.

If the indirect and induced effects of mining are included, then another 500 000 jobs are estimated to exist in addition to direct mining jobs.

Mine health and safety

The MHSI of the Department of Mineral Resources, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), as amended, is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mineworkers and people affected by mining activities.

The activities of the MHSI focus on achieving a safer and healthier mining industry for all. The MHSI works closely with industry and labour unions to reduce the incidence of mine accidents, with stakeholders committing themselves to reducing fatalities continuously by at least 20% a year. The inspectorate is also pursuing a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss (NIHL), also known as occupational deafness, by 2013.

The safety track record in the South African mining industry is a matter of great concern to the department, although the mining industry recorded a year-on-year reduction in fatalities from mine accidents from 2009 to 2010. In total, 127 mine employees died in 2010, compared to 168 fatalities in 2009. Fall-of-ground accidents remain the largest accident category and the predominant cause of fatalities, followed by transportation and machinery respectively.

To deal with the pressing occupational health and safety challenges facing the industry, the Department of Mineral Resources embarked on a number of interventions, including:

- implementing the amendments to the MHSA, 1996 to improve enforcement and prosecutions
- improving seismic network coverage and systems integration to assess actions taken by mines in dealing with high-risk areas, which are prone to seismic events
- establishing the Chief Directorate: Health to improve the health capacity of the inspectorate.

Silicosis remains a major cause of premature retirement and death at South African mines owing to excessive dust exposure. Tuberculosis (TB), which is exacerbated by HIV and AIDS, is a serious challenge to the mining industry. NIHL is also a significant health hazard due to exposure to high levels of noise in working areas. Research conducted through the Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC) is focused on ways of reducing excessive exposure to silica dust to prevent silicosis.

The amendment of the MHSA, 1996 is ongoing. The review of the MHSA, 1996 seeks to:

- strengthen enforcement provisions
- simplify the administrative system for the issuing of fines
- reinforce offences and penalties
- substitute, add and remove ambiguities in certain definitions and expressions

- effect certain amendments necessary to ensure consistency with other laws, particularly the MPRDA, 2002.

An amount of R145,8 million was allocated toward health and safety programmes in 2011/12.

The MHSC as an advisory body generates health and safety advice for the Minister on regulation, research, mine occupational health and safety information management and technical standard-setting. The MHSC continues to develop mechanisms that support the implementation of industry initiatives such as the Summit Action Plan, Mining Charter and HIV and AIDS Programme in the mining sector.

The Department of Mineral Resources continues to work with security forces to develop a strategy to combat illegal mining, which is one of the biggest threats to mineworkers' health and safety.

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority and aims to facilitate the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring the implementation of a sector skills plan
- registering skills-development facilitators at workplaces within the sector
- approving work-skills plans and annual training reports of companies in the sector
- developing unit standards and qualifications
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning provision in the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships
- administering existing apprenticeship systems
- administering and disbursing skills-development levies.

In 2011, the MQF placed 627 learners with 20 mining companies to gain work experience.

In 2010/11, the Department of Mineral Resources and the MQA entered into a partnership where the MQA undertook to offer 60 bursaries to build the department's internal capacity. First-year students who were already enrolled and registered in the engineering fields at various tertiary institutions were recruited, owing to the urgency of the scheme. Other criteria were that the bursaries be awarded to students in great financial need.

Recruitment was done at the:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- Durban University of Technology
- University of the North West
- University of Limpopo
- Vaal University of Technology
- University of Venda
- Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

Of the 120 shortlisted students who were interviewed by the department, 60 met the criteria. They were equally divided among three branches, namely Mine Health and Safety; Mineral Regulation; and Mineral Policy and Promotion.

The agreement stipulated that the bursary scheme be implemented in the 2011 academic year for a period of four years, to be followed by a two-year internship programme. On completion, the students will be required to serve the department for the number of years for which they received financial assistance.

The MQA is developing training to support gemstone processing and jewellery manufacturing. Programmes include, among other things, developing management capacity within designated groups; workplace coaches and instructors; and an HIV, AIDS and TB prevention programme.

Chamber of Mines

The Chamber of Mines of South Africa is a prominent industry employers' organisation. Its purpose is to advance, promote and protect the collective interests of its members.

Its mandate includes monitoring, investigating, analysing and considering matters of collective interest to its members and providing recommendations on the position to be taken. Where appropriate, the Chamber of Mines represents its members and provides technical and expert assistance on matters affecting their collective interest.

A range of professional resources is maintained to support the chamber's policy review and advocacy functions; and to equip it to render advice to its members, including mining health and safety, education and training, communication, environmental management, economics and industrial relations.

For its members in the gold and coal sectors, the Chamber of Mines negotiates wages and conditions of employment with trade unions representing mining employees.

Members of the Chamber of Mines account for about 90% of South Africa's mining production by value and employ about the same percentage of the mining industry's labour force.

There are environmental issues that affect the integrity of the industry. To tackle these, the chamber has, among other things, engaged in:

- liaising with biodiversity stakeholders to develop the Biodiversity Guidelines that will be user-friendly for environmental managers within the mining industry
- facilitating the industry's involvement with government and other stakeholders to develop and implement the plan to manage AMD
- supporting the development of best practices for mine-water management through the Department of Water Affairs, such as the draft guidelines on water conservation and water demand management.

The chamber also represented the views and positions of South Africa's mining industry at the 19th United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development session, which focused on mining-waste management, transport, chemicals and the 10-Year Framework on Sustainable Consumption and Production. Moreover, the Chamber of Mines provided input in climate-change activities and participated in the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties held in November and December 2011 in Durban.

Small-scale mining in South Africa

The Department of Mineral Resources deems the role of small-scale mining in community upliftment, job creation and poverty alleviation critical. The department's Small-Scale Mining Srategy provides a framework for creating a sustainable sector that is characterised by growth and development, and contributes to rural development, job creation and poverty alleviation through community-linked small, medium and micro-enterprise projects.

Small-scale mining projects that fall within the Presidential poverty nodes will receive special attention. The Department of Mineral Resources aims to identify and demarcate areas with mineral deposits and foster economies-of-scale by forming community clusters.

Small-scale mining projects and government-supported initiatives are also to be linked with financial institutions.

Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 93% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium resources
- the Bushveld Complex is known for PGMs (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources

The Northern Cape Diamond Strategy is aimed at diversifying the province's economy from a primary-sector focus to secondary value-addition activities by establishing Kimberley as a centre of excellence within the Southern African Development Community.

The Kimberley International Diamond and Jewellery Academy is one of the six priority elements of the strategy. Its objectives include:

- responding to skill demands and development opportunities within the sector in a rapid and strategic manner, and engaging proactively with the sector to anticipate skills needs
- providing a mechanism for employers within the sector to formulate skills-development strategies that will increase competitiveness in regional, national and internatonal markets
- providing accredited courses recognised by government and sought after by the industry, with eventual international accreditation
- promoting the empowerment of previously disadvantaged industry workers, including new entrants, through skills-development programmes
- becoming an integral part of the Diamond Centre for Excellence by promoting and developing skills as a critical component of competitiveness
- operating in a professional and business-like manner
- becoming financially and technically self-sustaining within five years of its establishment.

- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

The bulk of the known mineral resources and reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methods, but the country still has significant potential for additional discoveries of world-class deposits, using modern exploration technologies.

South Africa has the world's largest resources of PGMs (87,7% of world total), manganese (80%), chromium (72,4%), gold (29,7%) and alumino-silicates. South Africa also accounts for over 40% of global production of ferrochromium, PGMs and vanadium.

It is also the world's leading producer of chrome ore, vermiculite and alumino-silicates, and is among the top three producers of gold, manganese ore, titanium minerals and fluorspar.

The South African mining industry contributes 51,7% of world ferrochromium exports and 54% of alumino-silicates, and is one of the world's largest exporters of PGMs, gold and vanadium, and a significant exporter of manganese ore. Other important export commodities include ferromanganese and fluorspar.

Although South Africa is probably the largest exporter of vanadium, gold and PGMs, it is not possible to rank it because of the unavailability of export data from other producing countries.

The Directorate: Mineral Economics of the Department of Mineral Resources monitors and analyses the global supply and demand of minerals that affect the South African economy.

Gold

In 2009, total world gold demand increased by 8,4% to 4 264 t. This was the net effect of a 16,3% decrease to 2 417 t in demand for fabrication, a 51,6% fall in gold bar hoarding to 187 t, an increase of 33,3% in implied net investment to 1 429 t and a decrease of 27,8% to 254 t in producer dehedging.

Silver

South Africa does not have a primary silver mine and the metal is produced only as a by-product of other minerals. Silver was produced as a by-product from 13 gold operations, one uranium

Source: Statistics South Africa, January 2012 mine, two copper mines and two platinum mines in 2008. Despite the vagaries of the global economy, global production was estimated at 718,3 million ounces in 2009.

Coal

South Africa's saleable coal production declined by a marginal 0,8% to reach 250,6 Mt in 2009 compared to 2008. Local sales declined by 6,2% to 184,7 Mt while export sales declined by 0,2 % to 60,5 Mt. The value of local sales rose by 14,5% to R34,5 billion, while revenue from export sales fell by 30,8% to R30,9 billion.

Platinum-group metals

South Africa's PGM production decreased by 1,6% to 271,3 t in 2009 from 275,8 t in 2008. Production of platinum and palladium fell by 3,7% to 140,7 t and by 0,5% to 75,1 t respectively, while production of rhodium increased marginally to 20 t. However, despite a significant increase of 12,5% to 250,9 t in the export sales mass, revenue from such sales decreased by 31,3% to R53,5 billion, mainly due to low PGM prices in 2009 caused by the global economic crisis.

Non-ferrous minerals

Production of primary non-ferrous metals and minerals, excluding titanium and zirconium minerals, decreased slightly by 0,41% to 207,7 kt in 2009, compared to 2008, while total sales declined by 26,2% to R8,8 billion. Local sales volume decreased by 2,5% to 99,6 kt, while exports declined by 5,9% to 105,5 kt. Domestic sales revenue decreased by 27,9% to R4 billion, while export revenue decreased by 24,8% to R4,9 billion in 2009. Total sales of non-ferrous metals and minerals (primary and processed), excluding titanium minerals, zirconium minerals and aluminium, declined by 25,5% to R10,2 billion in 2009. During the same period, domestic sales decreased by 26,1% to R5,3 billion, while export sales declined by 24,9% to R4,9 billion.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa plays a significant role as a source of ferrous minerals. The country is the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores, and a minor producer of ferrosilicon and silicon metal. Ferrous minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloy smelters. Total sales of ferrous minerals amounted to R61,8 billion in 2009, contributing 25,6% to South Africa's primary and processed mineral sales. Ferrous minerals export sales accounted for R53,4 billion, which is 30,4% of South Africa's export sales. At R36 billion, primary ferrous minerals contributed 14,5% to the revenue generated by the country's minerals industry.

Over the last decade, increasing portions of the production of chrome, manganese and vanadium ore have been processed to value added alloys in line with the drive for beneficiation, whereas the bulk of growth in iron ore production has been exported.

Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brickmaking and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. Sales of primary industrial minerals in South Africa grew steadily at an annualised compound growth rate of 15% from 2005 to 2009.

Industrial minerals contributed 4,6% of the total revenue from South African mineral sales during 2009, of which R10 billion was from local sales and R1 billion from exports.

From 2005 to 2009, sales of primary industrial minerals grew at an annualised compounded rate of 15%. However, total revenue decreased from R13,6 billion in 2008 to R11,1 billion in 2009, owing to the depressed economic conditions which resulted in weak demand for commodities in most sectors.

The bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

In 2009, aggregate and sand, and limestone and dolomite accounted for more than 50% of industrial minerals' local sales value driven by demand from activities in the construction sector. The local sales value of industrial minerals decreased from R11,9 billion in 2008 to R10 billion in 2009.

Processed minerals

Total sales revenue of processed minerals decreased by 45,6% from R86,1 billion in 2008 to R46,8 billion in 2009, and export sales accounted for 80% of total sales. The value of local sales of processed mineral products decreased by 53% from R17,4 billion in 2008 to R9,4 billion in 2009. The largest contributors to total sales were classified commodities at 48,7% as well as chromium alloys at 38,7%. Total production of processed minerals decreased by 18,5% to 6,6 Mt in 2009.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved and along with them, mineral deposits. The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved. Ten of the more significant geological formations in South Africa are discussed below.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga. The renowned Barberton Greenstone Belt, the largest of its kind in South Africa, contains remnants of original crust, dated at around 3,5 billion years old.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface. Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae. Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the "Ridge of White Waters" are world famous. Nearly half of all the gold ever mined has come from the extensive Witwatersrand conglomerate reefs that were discovered in 1886, not far from Johannesburg's city centre. The Witwatersrand is the greatest goldfield known to mankind. More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates. These "gold reefs" were formed from gravels transported into the basin and reworked 2,75 billion years ago. The gold and uranium originated from a rich source in the hinterland.

Bushveld Complex and Great Escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km^2 and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PGMs and vanadium.

This mega-complex was emplaced in a molten state about 2 060 billion years ago into pre-existing sedimentary rocks, through several deep feeder zones.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex can best be viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features potholes at Bourke's Luck, the Blyde River Canyon and the dolomite formation in which giant stromatolites bear witness to the 2,5-billion-year-old fossilised remains of vast oxygen-producing algae growth.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The northern area of the Drakensberg has been declared a world heritage site. More than

40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution.

During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

Kimberlite originates as magma from very deep below the surface, and typically occurs as small volcanic pipes and craters at the surface. Included within solidified kimberlites are fragments of deep-seated rocks and minerals, including rare diamonds of various sizes.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth.

One such site is the Vredefort Dome, the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth.

Declared a world heritage site in 2005, it lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

This spectacular and complex geological feature, measuring 70 km across, was caused by the impact of a 10-km wide asteroid some two billion years ago. Only a partial ring of hills remains of the dome, created by the rebound of rock below the asteroid's impact site. The original crater – now eroded – is estimated to have been between 250 km and 300 km in diameter.

The Vredefort structure comprises a core zone of granitic rocks, surrounded by a ring-like collar zone of younger bedded formations. Only the north-western portion of the structure remains visible. The south-eastern half was flooded by sediments of the Karoo Supergroup, which cover the Free State.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is Tswaing, a small bowl-shaped meteorite-impact crater. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park, located some 120 km north-west of Johannesburg in North West, is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world.

The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures created during the collapse of the volcano.

There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Cradle of Humankind

This world heritage site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research material.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is, arguably, South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group, which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded around 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak. Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

Acknowledgements

Chamber of Mines
Council for Geoscience
Department of Mineral Resources
Eskom
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011
Department of Mineral Resources, *2011/12 Medium-Term Expenditure Framework Strategy Plan*
Mining Weekly

www.bullion.org.za
www.cef.org.za
www.globaldialogue.info
www.gov.za
www.hartrao.ac.za
www.miningweekly.co.za
www.murrob.com
www.sabcnews.com
www.sabinetlaw.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bond, P, Dada, R and Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments*. Scotsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Machens, EW. 2009. *Platinum, Gold and Diamonds: The Adventure of Hans Merensky's Discoveries*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.

Masilo, P and Rautenbach, G. 2008. *Commentary on the Mine Health and Safety Act and Regulations*. Cape Town: Juta.

Mazema, HK *et al*. 2008. *A Pilot Study into Available Upstream Cleaner Production Technologies for the Petroleum Refining Industry to Meet the Requirements of the Waste Discharge Charge System*. Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).

Rainmakers and Potstirrers. 2008. Sandton: Miningmx.

Royal Bafokeng Administration. Research and Planning Department. 2010. *Mining the Future: The Bafokeng Story*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Zhao, B *et al*. 2010. *Evaluation and Validation of Geochemical Prediction Techniques for Underground Coal Mines in the Witbank/Vryheid Regions: Report to the Water Research Commission*. Gezina: WRC.


Police, defence and intelligence

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

In October 2010, the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster (JCPS) ministers signed a delivery agreement with President Jacob Zuma. It signified the cluster's undertaking to embark on a prioritised Programme of Action towards making South Africa safe for all and attractive to visitors and investors.

The JCPS Cluster aims to have a stable, safe and thriving democratic dispensation. It is charged with ensuring that the relevant defence, police and correctional mechanisms are in place and work efficiently and effectively.

It employs a focused approach, which channels available resources towards ensuring that all people in South Africa are and feel safe (Outcome 3).

Department of Police

The Minister of Police is responsible for policing in general and is accountable to Cabinet and Parliament. Important features of the Minister's responsibilities include determining national policing policy and providing civilian oversight. Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police (CSP)
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

Civilian Secretariat for Police

The CSP derives its mandate from the Constitution, which requires the Minister of Police to establish a police civilian secretariat that operates directly under the Minister's direction and authority. Historically, the CSP was governed by the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995). However, in 2010/11, the Civilian Secretariat for Police Services Bill was developed and passed by Parliament to ensure that the CSP operates under separate legislation. It was initiated following a decision by the Minister of Police to strengthen civilian oversight over the police.

The objectives of the Bill include, among other things:

- providing for the establishment of a single civilian secretariat for the SAPS
- defining the objectives, functions and powers of the secretariat
- aligning the operations of the secretariat at the national and provincial spheres of government and reorganising the secretariat into an effective and efficient organ of state
- assisting the Minister in fulfilling his or her constitutional obligations
- providing the Minister with policy advice and support
- developing effective policies, strategies and partnerships such as community policing forums (CPFs)
- regulating the appointment, duties and functions, powers and the removal from office of the secretary for the police and the heads of provincial secretariats
- providing for the establishment of the Senior Management Forum and Ministerial Executive Committee
- providing for cooperation with the IPID
- providing for intervention into the affairs of provincial secretariats by the CSP.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The IPID's mandate is to conduct independent and impartial investigations of alleged criminality and misconduct committed by members of the SAPS and municipal police services (MPS). This mandate was expanded by the new IPID legislation signed into law by President Zuma in May 2011. This legislation mandates the IPID to:

- sharpen the focus on the types of investigations to be conducted, namely:
  - deaths in police custody
  - deaths as a result of police actions
  - complaints relating to the discharge of an official firearm by any police officer
  - rape by a police officer, whether the police officer is on or off duty
  - rape of any person while that person is in police custody
  - complaints of torture or assault against a police officer in the execution of his or her duties
  - corruption matters within the police initiated by the Executive Director on his/her own, or after the receipt of a complaint from a member of the public, or referred to the directorate by the Minister, a Member of the Executive Committee (MEC) or the Secretary
  - other matters referred to it as a result of a decision by the Executive Director, or requested by the Minister, an MEC or the Secretary.
- be notified immediately by the Station Commissioner, or any member of the SAPS or MPS, after becoming aware of any matters that must

be investigated by the directorate and to submit a written report to the IPID within 24 hours.

By June 2011, the directorate was dealing with about 6 000 cases, of which approximately 2 000 were related to service delivery.

South African Police Service

The mandate of the SAPS is derived from the Constitution. The objectives of policing are:

- preventing, combating and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all the people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is:

- preventing and combating anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community
- investigating any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensuring offenders are brought to justice
- participating in efforts to address the causes of crime.

The values upheld by the SAPS are:

- protecting everyone's rights and being impartial, respectful, open and accountable to the community
- using the powers given to them in a responsible way
- providing a responsible, effective and high-quality service with honesty and integrity
- evaluating their service continuously and making every effort to improve on it
- using resources effectively, efficiently and economically
- developing the skills of all members through equal opportunity
- cooperating with all communities, all spheres of government and other relevant role players.

In September 2011, crime statistics for the 2010/11 financial year were released.

The levels of "contact crimes" in South Africa had decreased by 6,9%. All seven categories of contact crime with reference to murder, attempted murder, sexual offences and assault with serious grievous bodily harm, common assault, aggravated robbery and common robbery, recorded a decline.

Murder was down by 6,5% and sexual offences by 3,1%. Assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm dropped by 4,5%, while robbery with aggravating circumstances decreased by 12%.

There was an increase of 3,5% in drunken driving cases. In house robberies, 16 889 cases were reported, compared to the 18 786 reported in 2009/10. This was a decrease of 10,1%.

The police reported a 23,6% decrease in car hijacking and a 29,2% decrease in truck hijacking, with 413 cases reported.

One of the biggest improvements noted in the crime statistics for 2010/11 was a significant decline in bank robberies. They decreased by 58,1%, with 39 cases recorded in 2010/11, as opposed to the 93 cases recorded in 2009/10.

Organisational profile

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. The Chief Operations Officer, four deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner. By August 2011, there were 1 123 police stations countrywide. The establishment of the SAPS stood at 193 892 at the end of March 2011, including 154 748 SAPS Act, 1995 members and 39 144 Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) members.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The SAPS functions as an integral part of the JCPS Cluster and must adhere to its priorities. The Ministry for Performance Monitoring and Evaluation in The Presidency developed an outcome-based planning framework for the priorities contained in the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The Presidency, together with the JCSP Cluster, developed an outcome-based model as well as evaluation and monitoring tools to realise this broad outcome of ensuring that South Africans are and feel safe.

Outcome 3 is based on the fact that over the past few years, the Criminal Justice System (CJS) has been burdened by high volumes of crime and the varying degrees of seriousness of reported crimes. Certain serious crimes, such as murder, aggravated robbery and hijacking, have been found to undermine people's sense of safety and affect the national psyche more than any other crime. As a way of directly addressing government's Outcome 3, the CJS will focus on these crimes to restore public confidence and ensure a safe and secure society.

The related outputs within Outcome 3 are:

- addressing overall levels of serious crime, in particular contact and trio crimes, which include house robbery, business robbery and hijackings (Output 1)

- improving the effectiveness and ensure the integration of the CJS (Output 2)
- combating corruption in the JCPS Cluster (Output 3)
- managing the perceptions of crime among the population and investors (outputs 4 and 5)
- safeguarding and securing the borders of South Africa through integrated border management (Output 6)
- securing the identity and status of citizens (Output 7)
- integrating information and communications technology (ICT) systems and combating cybercrime (Output 8).

Strategic Plan for 2010 – 2014

The SAPS' Strategic Plan provides a clear framework for personnel members to focus their efforts during the five-year period. It also provides the community with information on the direction of policing during this period.

The department's Strategic Plan for 2010 to 2014 lays down the key operational priorities for the medium term, namely:

- crime prevention, which includes developing and implementing an intelligence-driven, integrated and comprehensive crime-prevention strategy to reduce crime levels, specifically the trio crimes and crimes against women and children by:
  - reducing illegal firearms
  - addressing substance abuse
  - increasing the visibility of SAPS members
  - improving police response
  - mobilising the community in the fight against crime
  - establishing and building partnerships
  - further developing the Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP)
- improving regional cooperation to enhance efforts to combat crime that has the potential to affect the southern African region and the continent
- establishing the Border Management Agency
- improving the capability to respond to incidents of a public disorder or security nature
- combating corruption
- effective investigation of crime, which includes apprehending and charging known criminals
  - establishing and developing the specialised investigative capacity within the Directorate of Priority Crimes Investigation (DPCI), also known as the Hawks

> There were 321 013 arrests during the 2010/11 festive season's *Operation Duty Calls*. More than 4 500 firearms were seized, including 1 697 magazines and 46 678 rounds of ammunition. Seizures included 3 638 vehicles, 11 648 kg of dagga and 19 019 Mandrax tablets.

  - improving the CJS
  - increasing the capacity and professionalism of detectives investigating crime
  - establishing specialised units to deal with priority crimes, particularly crimes against women and children
  - stock theft
- supporting the investigation of crime, including improving the collection of evidence at crime scenes and procedures for updating records of offenders convicted of crime
  - extending the capacity of the Criminal Record and Forensic Science Division
  - vetting SAPS personnel via fingerprint testing, DNA and the testing of all police firearms to curb corrupt and criminal activities within the SAPS
  - establishing war rooms in provinces that have high levels of violent organised crime
- crime intelligence, which includes intelligence operations pertaining to serious crime (contact and trio crimes, syndicates involved in drug- and people smuggling and human trafficking)
  - capacitating crime intelligence.

Organisational priorities for the medium term include:

- human-capital development, which includes developing and retaining skills
  - developing and implementing training courses to provide commanders at station level with operational and tactical skills, and skills to manage their personnel
  - recruiting skilled personnel
  - promoting the health and wellness of SAPS' employees
  - bolstering the progression of transformation in the SAPS (including issues such as representivity, racism, discrimination and effective discipline management)
  - improving employment equity
  - promoting gender equality within the SAPS
- budget and resource management, which includes:
  - improving infrastructure through a structured capital works programme

- capacitating the core functions of crime prevention, investigation and detection
- procuring and distributing critical assets such as vehicles, firearms and bullet-resistant vests

• enhancing information systems and ICT, including directing information systems and ICT towards the requirements of the SAPS and the CJS.

Annual Performance Plan

The SAPS Act, 1995 requires that the National Commissioner develop a one-year plan that sets out the priorities and objectives of policing for the next financial year. It provides a clear indication of the strategic priorities within the context of the prevailing financial year, the measurable objectives and targets associated with the priorities and guidelines for the implementation of the one-year focus. The plan takes into consideration the MTSF, the Medium-Term Budget Policy Statement, the SAPS Strategic Plan, the President's State of the Nation Address, the Estimates of National Expenditure, and Outcome 3 and the related outputs of the JCPS Cluster.

Key financial programmes

Based on its legislative mandate, the SAPS has been organised into five financial programmes:

- Administration regulates the overall management of the department and provides centralised support services
- Visible Policing discourages all crimes by providing a proactive and responsive policing service that will reduce the levels of priority crimes
- Detective Services contributes to the successful prosecution of crime by investigating, gathering and analysing evidence, thereby increasing the detection rate of priority crime
- Crime Intelligence contributes to neutralising crime by gathering, collating and analysing intelligence that leads to an actionable policing activity
- Protection and Security Services minimises security violations by protecting foreign and local prominent people and securing strategic interests.

Human resources planning

In 2010/11, the SAPS' personnel increased from 190 199 to 193 892. It expanded its human resources (HR) by appointing 5 844 new entry-level SAPS Act, 1995 and 1 726 Public Service Act, 1994 personnel during 2010/11. Special emphasis was placed on increasing the number of detectives from 20 291 to 22 594 in 2010/11.

> By September 2011, the South African Police Service (SAPS) had deployed 491 planned mobile connectivity devices for tracing stolen vehicles, firearms and missing or wanted persons; and was on course with achieving the Fingerprint Exhibit Imaging target.
>
> The SAPS was also on course with the deployment of a pilot site in Pretoria for the Forensic Science Laboratory Integrated Case Management System, which will provide an automated solution for daily activities and optimise the chain-of-custody process. The SAPS also expected the e-Docket System to be rolled out in 2011/12.

Human-resource development

The 13 in-service police-development academies; 10 basic police-development academies; and two management, leadership and international development academies countrywide provide quality strategic training to members. The Division: HR Development of the SAPS is an accredited education, training and development (ETD) provider with the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority (Sasseta). Strict adherence to the stringent criteria of the Sasseta ensures the provision of value-driven ETD in the SAPS with the exponential aim of increasing productivity, enhancing internal functioning, optimising operational functioning and assuring quality policing services.

HR are developed by providing needs-based training, provided in terms of the Training Provisioning Plan, which consists of:

- entry-level training (basic training for lateral entrants)
- entry-level Basic Semester One training (basic training for new recruits)
- entry-level Basic Semester Two training (basic field training)
- management and leadership training
- operational training
- support training
- reservist training.

During 2010/11, a cumulative total of 178 870 employees (including employees who attended training in more than one category for this period) attended either entry-level training (5,6%), operational training (81,3%), support training (9,4%), and/or management and leadership training interventions (2,3%) and reservist training (1,4%).

During 2010/11, 368 trainees completed entry-level training (lateral entrants in the SAPS), 3 825 trainees completed Basic Training Semester One and 5 241 trainees completed Basic Training Semester Two.

Skills development and the retention of skills remained a priority in 2011/12. Significant emphasis was placed on training detectives. Coupled with this was the re-skilling and retraining of police to ensure quality officers as opposed to quantity were produced.

Expenditure

Expenditure increased from R36,5 billion in 2007/08 to R53,5 billion in 2010/11, at an average annual rate of 13,6%. This was due to the spending on current payments, which increased by R16,7 billion between 2007/08 and 2010/11, driven mainly by increased expenditure on employees' compensation.

Expenditure was expected to grow to R66,7 billion over the medium term due to employing additional police officers, investing in capital infrastructure and technological enhancements, especially in the forensic science and investigative functions, upgrading the ICT network, and reviewing and modernising the CJS to create an integrated criminal justice environment.

Capital investment

To increase access to communities by building/upgrading/improving police stations, 19 police facility projects were completed in 2010/11.

Core functions

Visible policing

Visible policing is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS specifically responsible for:

- combating crime through crime operations
- providing for activities at police stations
- combating crimes in the railway environment
- dealing with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children and community-based crime prevention
- providing a rapid-response service in respect of crimes in progress
- providing K9 and mounted services

> Between 1 April 2010 and 31 March 2011, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation arrested 8 294 people and secured 5 267 convictions. In organised crime, they arrested 2 439 and secured 532 convictions. The directorate profiled and pursued the 50 most wanted suspects for armed robberies, automatic teller machine bombings, cash-in-transit and bank robberies and apprehended 49 suspects.

> The South African Police Service (SAPS) strives to enhance job creation. Subsequently, the Recruitment Policy has been amended to ensure focus on quality and not quantity.
>
> The policy moves away from a single-point decision-making authority to the involvement of community structures such as community policing forums, non-governmental organisations, schools and churches in ensuring quality recruits.
>
> Fixed and mobile career centres are fully functioning in all provinces and at national level. These centres are monitored continuously through feedback received from the community and SAPS employees. The extent to which the centres are being used is growing steadily.

- rendering specialised services by hostage and suicide negotiators and police divers
- eradicating the proliferation of firearms for the availability and use in crime and violence
- ensuring effective compliance and enforcement of liquor-control legislation to address serious and violent crime as well as contact crime in South Africa.

Crime prevention

In 2010/11, 29 891 integrated law-enforcement operations were conducted, focusing on a number of priority areas to address the incidence of priority crime (contact crime, contact-related crime, crimes dependent on police action for detection, property-related and other serious crime).

These operations included 65 381 roadblocks and 2 063 923 stop-and-search operations. More than 1,4 million arrests were made, which included 688 937 arrests for priority crime.

In 2010/11, 72 707 vehicles were stolen and robbed in South Africa, of which 33 638 vehicles were recovered.

During 2010/11, 92 620 arrests were made for drug-related crime during integrated law-enforcement operations.

Cannabis remains the primary drug of abuse. Between April 2010 and March 2011, the SAPS seized more than 179 716 kg of cannabis and 251 227 cannabis plants. Some 282 880 Mandrax tablets, 73 952 kg of cocaine, 62 832 kg of heroin, 11 374 ecstasy tablets and 163 928 kg of crystal meth were also seized during police action.

In addition, 13 of 45 organised crime project investigations, specifically focusing on illicit drug trafficking, were successfully terminated in 2010/11, resulting in the arrest of 45 leaders and runners and the confiscation of 13 342 738 kg of cocaine, 246 544 kg of crack cocaine, 29 551 184 kg of cannabis, 52 602 kg of crystal meth, 1 357 kg of heroin, 32 088 kg of Cat, 970 ecstasy tablets, 623 180 Mandrax tablets and 19 704 kg in chemicals. Thirty-two clandestine drug laboratories were also dismantled.

In 2010/11, the DPCI's successes included:

- A R83-million trans-shipment container destined for Zimbabwe from Paraguay being intercepted in the Eastern Cape and 166,3 kg of cocaine being seized in August 2010, which culminated in the arrest of several members of an international drug-trafficking organisation.
- In December 2010, a ship was intercepted in Knysna harbour with 1,7 t of cocaine valued at R510 million on board, which resulted in five arrests.
- The Hawks, together with the United Arab Emirates, British Serious Organised Crime Agency and the Dutch National Crime Squad, conducted a joint operation targeting an international drug-trafficking organisation. In December 2010, a controlled delivery was executed, culminating in the seizure of cocaine and Mandrax valued at about R100 million. Simultaneous arrests were effected in Dubai, the Netherlands and South Africa, resulting in the arrest of 14 suspects.
- In April 2011, the SAPS uncovered one of the largest covert drug operations in South Africa, seizing chemicals and equipment worth more than R2 billion, as well as a large quantity of cocaine. Chemicals that could have been used to manufacture two million Mandrax tablets and equipment to the value of R10 million were seized.
- In a separate incident at the OR Tambo Airport, Gauteng, members of the SAPS Crime Intelligence Unit confiscated cocaine to the value of R12 million.

The South African Police Service (SAPS) finalised its *Youth Crime Prevention Manual*, which will guide police stations on the partnerships they need to engage in to ensure young people build resilience and resistance against crime.

The partnership between the Department of Basic Education and the SAPS continued in 2010/11 and led to a draft protocol between the two departments.

The School Safety Programme addresses both the immediate safety concerns of school communities and provides a platform for the SAPS to contribute to education as a long-term investment in safe and sustainable communities.

Programmes in support of interdepartmental initiatives to improve services to women and children and reduce crime

The SAPS contributes to and participates in various initiatives to improve services to victims of crime relating to gender-based violence, children and youth at risk, the Domestic Violence Programme, the VEP and the Local Crime Prevention Development Programme.

The SAPS participates in various task teams such as the Interdepartmental Management Team for Rape and Sexual Offences Programme, the Interdepartmental Task Team on Domestic Violence, the Intersectoral Steering Committee for Child Justice and the Interdepartmental Youth Committee.

During 2010/11:

- 1 117 SAPS members were trained in the Sexual Offences First Responders Course, aimed at first responders to sexual offences
- 1 983 members were trained in the Domestic Violence Programme to ensure that service delivery by SAPS members to the community complies with the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998)
- 15 891 members were trained to deal with children in conflict with the law and children in need of care and protection
- 1 018 members received training in the VEP to sensitise police officials to the needs of crime victims.

An audit of the number of victim support rooms (VSRs) countrywide was conducted during 2010/11. The audit included VSRs at satellite police stations; contact points; railway police stations and mobile units; airport police stations; family violence, child protection and sexual offences units; and existing police stations.

During 2010/11, 10 additional VSRs were established, bringing the number of functioning VSRs to 900. These facilities are used for the consultation of victims of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence, interviews and statement-taking.

The SAPS continues to support the implementation of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme and the Urban Renewal Programme by working with police stations in nodes to improve access to policing, police service delivery and integrated community safety programmes.

Community policing

Community policing is a concept that guides police-management styles and operational strategies. It emphasises the establishment of police-community partnerships and a problem-solving approach responsive to the needs of the community. It is based on the assumption that the objectives of the SAPS can only be achieved through the collaborative effort of the SAPS, other government institutions, the organisations and structures of civic society and individual citizens.

A major objective of community policing is to establish an active partnership between the police and the community through which crime, service delivery and police-community relations can jointly be analysed and appropriate solutions designed and implemented. This, however, requires that the police should strive consciously to create an atmosphere in which potential community partners are willing and able to cooperate with them.

Police/community partnerships have been structured by means of CPFs, with the aim to promote the local accountability of the police and enlist the cooperation of communities with the SAPS. By the end of March 2011, 1 118 functioning CPFs had been established at police stations.

Sector policing

Sector policing is an operational policing tool adopted in terms of the SAPS' community policing approach. It provides for practical policing practices to complement community participation in accordance with policing needs and community requirements, and links to CPFs.

By March 2011, sector policing had been rolled out to 986 police stations countrywide.

Rural safety

During 2010/11, a comprehensive Rural Safety Strategy to enhance safety and security, accessibility to policing and service delivery to rural communities was approved by the Minister of Police. The aim of the strategy is to address rural safety as part of an integrated and holistic day-to-day crime-prevention approach based on the principles of sector policing. The strategy is based on four pillars:

- improving and enhancing service delivery at local level
- enhancing cooperation and coordination among all role players
- improving community safety awareness in rural areas
- rural development.

Reservists

As part of cooperative police-community relations, reservists are being used to support the SAPS in combating crime. The reservist system provides for the active involvement of the community in policing and supports a solution-oriented approach.

In support of the recruitment of qualifying reservists as permanent members of the SAPS, 1 245 reservists were appointed in terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 and 332 in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994.

By March 2011, the Reserve Police Force stood at 64 360 reservists. A 2010/11 audit revealed that only 26 259 were considered active reservists, performing at least 16 hours of duty per month.

In 2010/11, 2 532 reservists were trained. In addition, short skills programmes on topics such as the administration of community service centres, crime investigation, crime prevention and street survival were presented to improve the skills and knowledge of reservists in performing policing duties.

In March 2011, the Police Reservist Policy was reviewed to improve the management of reservists and change selection criteria.

Crime Stop and Primedia Crime Line

Crime Stop is a call centre responsible for collecting information on criminal activity from the public. When phoning 08600 10111, members of the public are assisted by trained interviewing specialists to pass on information about criminal activity to the SAPS. In 2010/11, the call centre received 168 560 calls and 686 web tips, which led to 226 positive cases.

Crime Line is a partnership between the Primedia Group and the SAPS, launched in June 2007. It gives members of the community the opportunity to blow the whistle on crime by reporting it anonymously via SMS to the number 32211 or the website *www.crimeline.co.za*. In 2010/11, 1 257 SMS tips and 632 web tips were received, which led to 73 prosecuted cases. Goods valued at R4 million were recovered and 116 arrests made.

In 2011, the SAPS signed a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) with Business Against Crime South Africa, which focuses on improving service-delivery at community service centres and 10111 centres.

Emergency response services

The Police Emergency Services respond to crimes in progress and provide services through:
- dog units
- mounted units
- hostage and suicide negotiation units
- police diver units
- uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad.

The Police Emergency Services are also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

Railway policing

Railway policing prevents and fights crime in the rail environment.

The Railway Police function was reintroduced in the SAPS in 2004. As part of the pilot project and roll-out plan, 24 railway police stations and six provincial command structures had to be built in the Metrorail environment between 2004 and 2010. During this period, 29 completed facilities were handed over to the SAPS.

A total of 2 644 railway police employees have been deployed for Metrorail and 663 for Mainline Services.

In 2010/11, contact crime decreased by 37% in the railway environment.

Firearms and liquor control unit

The Firearms and Liquor Control Unit addresses the abundance of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. It also ensures compliance and effective enforcement of firearms, liquor and second-hand goods control legislation.

In December 2010, the Minister of Police, Mr Nathi Mthethwa, announced the amendment of the Firearms Control Act, 2006 (Act 28 of 2006), which primarily provides for owners of muzzle-loading firearms to apply for competency certificates for such firearms.

The amendment of this Act also provides for the renewal of competency certificates within a period of at least 90 days before the expiry of the certificate. Furthermore, the period of validity of licences and permits was also amended.

A task team was appointed to finalise the backlog of applications and simultaneously deal with new applications. A nine-month turnaround strategy was developed by the Central Firearms Registry (CFR) together with the CSP to address all outstanding backlogs.

This contributed to the improvement of service delivery at the CFR and has strengthened the relationship among the various role players. In 2010/11, the SAPS processed 268 459 firearm licence renewals and 240 422 competency certifications.

The accreditation of business entities, associations and organisations is integral to the implementation of firearm-control legislation in South Africa. A total of 1 936 institutions, including training-providers, shooting ranges, hunting associations and sport-shooting organisations are now accredited.

During 2010/11, 7 888 stolen or lost firearms, whose serial numbers could be linked to firearm owners in South Africa, were recovered. The tracing of illegal firearms and testing for legal compliance remains a priority for the SAPS.

To address the proliferation of firearms, a total of 19 357 firearms and 255 924 rounds of ammunition were recovered during day-to-day and special operations. Over 10 260 arrests were made for illegal possession of firearms during law-enforcement operations.

Specific procedures are in place for legal firearm owners to surrender firearms and ammunition voluntarily to the SAPS for destruction. In 2010/11, 20 404 legal firearms and 175 944 legal rounds of ammunition were handed in voluntarily, and 46 527 firearms were destroyed.

Joint liquor-compliance operations conducted in 2010/11 by the SAPS, the National Liquor Authority, provincial liquor authorities, metro policing authorities and other relevant departments in Gauteng, Limpopo, the Northern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal resulted in the closure of 18 883 unlicensed liquor premises and the confiscation of 1,2 million litres of liquor.

The process, instituted in November 2010 to address concerns about the implementation of the Firearms Control Act, 2006, was continued in 2011. Processes and procedures have been developed to deal with the inflow and outflow of applications. Management of personnel and resources was improved.

Progress was made in clearing the backlog of applications for firearm licences, with the process finalised by July 2011.

The number of approved firearm licence applications between 1 October 2010 and 18 April 2011 totalled 46 374, while 39 851 applications were rejected.

Operational response services

The Operational Response Services Division provides for specialised interventions and polices South Africa's borders.

It is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS specifically responsible for:

- maintaining public order
- conducting medium-to-high and high-risk operations
- stabilising volatile situations
- preventing cross-border crimes
- providing a diplomatic policing service.

Specialised interventions

Specialised intervention units provide for a rapid-response capability by intervening in extreme situations where normal policing requires additional support.

There are four national intervention units countrywide that deal with medium- to high-risk operations, which include stabilising serious and violent crime incidents (volatile situations), escorting dangerous criminals, safeguarding VIPs and special events and providing specialised operational support to police stations and other government departments. In 2010/11, 1 960 interventions were conducted.

The Special Task Force provides a rapid-response capability by intervening in extreme situations, which include hostage situations, interventions to combat urban and rural terror, organised crime, serious and violent crime incidents, crimes against women and children and search-and-rescue operations. In 2010/11, the task force intervened in 196 extreme situations.

The policing of dangerous situations involving civil unrest remains a challenge for the SAPS, requiring the mobilisation of significant numbers of personnel.

The crime-combating intervention capacity within the SAPS deals with combating crime and maintaining public order. This involves monitoring various major incidents such as strikes and public gatherings.

During 2010/11, 12 651 crowd-related incidents were recorded, including 11 680 peaceful incidents such as assemblies, gatherings, meetings and demonstrations. Violence errupted at 971 unrest-related incidents, where SAPS action was required to restore peace and order, leading to 3 671 arrests.

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, which includes the deployment of members in peacekeeping missions and cross-border operations.

In 2010/11, 154 members were deployed to Sudan to assist in developing proactive public confidence-building measures to establish and maintain contact with the local police authorities by collaborating in day-to-day activities, performing village and town patrols with Sudanese police, and monitoring and reporting on the effectiveness of the local police.

The Diplomatic Policing Unit's main responsibility is to create a safe and secure environment for the foreign diplomatic community in Pretoria. Services are being extended to include consular offices and officials in Johannesburg, Durban and Cape Town. The unit patrols and visits diplomatic premises on a 24-hour basis and serves embassies, high commissions and international organisations. Various complaints, motor-vehicle accidents and the policing and safeguarding of official diplomatic functions were attended to.

In 2010/11, the SAPS' 37 helicopters and 14 aeroplanes flew 8 463 hours, of which 6 715 hours were flown exclusively for crime-related matters such as call-outs, crime-prevention operations, information-driven operations, assistance to foreign countries, and special-forces operations.

Border security

Borderline Operations combat cross-border crimes at air, sea and land borders. Land Borderline Control polices the South African land border, while Air Borderline Control polices more than 1 200 smaller airfields and airstrips. Sea Borderline Control is responsible for policing smaller sea harbours and slipways, including the South African ocean. Its operational area of responsibility extends seawards by 200 nautical miles and 10 km inland off the shoreline.

Following the decision taken in 2009 to reinstate members of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) to render borderline control, the following borderline bases were handed over to the SANDF from December 2010: Swartwater, Rooibokkraal, Pontdrift, Musina and Madimbo (Limpopo); Sandrivier, Macadamia and Zonstraal (Mpumalanga); Pongola and Ndumo (KwaZulu-Natal); and Ladybrand (Free State). Borderline bases at Beitbridge (Limpopo), Muzi (KwaZulu-Natal) and Blenheim (Free State) were closed down.

Ports of entry provide for security at border posts, airports and harbours. Eight seaports, 53 land ports, one dry port and 10 international airports are operational. To enhance national security and territorial integrity, the SAPS conducted 4 008 planned crime-prevention and combating actions at ports of entry. These operations and day-to-day activities contributed to various arrests and seizures.

The Border Control Operational Coordinating Committee (BCOCC) is a subcommittee of the JCPS Cluster and was mandated in 2005 to manage and coordinate the ports-of-entry environment. The BCOCC's mandate as a coordinating structure extends to all sea, land and airports ports of entry and exit. During peak seasons, including the Easter period, the festive season and major events, the SAPS participates in intensified crime-prevention measures to monitor trends in the movement of goods and people, employ contingency plans and ensure the swift processing of travellers at various ports of entry.

Detective services

The Detective Services Branch is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

> In April 2011, South Africa's police officers who had gone beyond the call of duty received recognition for their brave acts.
>
> The SAPS Gold Cross Bravery Medal was awarded to Lieutenant Colonel S Williams and Warrant Officer PG Odendaal for rescuing the occupants of a burning vehicle.
>
> Constable AD McLean and student Constable JG Michael were awarded the SAPS Silver Cross Bravery Medal for entering a burning house and saving a four-year-old girl from the blaze.

General investigations

General Investigations accommodates detectives who are based at police stations. It investigates crimes of a general nature.

During 2010/11, 2 071 487 serious and violent crime cases were reported to the SAPS. Some 1 092 861 charges were detected and 155 933 case dockets were court-ready.

The total number of charges reported for crimes against women (18 years and older) decreased by 10,9%. Some 159 440 cases were detected, while 26 922 case dockets being court-ready.

The total number of charges reported for crimes against children (under 18 years) decreased by 12,57%, with 5 267 cases investigated and 12 549 case dockets were court-ready.

The Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit (FCS) was re-established in June 2010. By March 2011, all 176 clusters had an FCS unit. In total, 1 864 police officials and 218 support staff were placed at these units.

The functioning of the units has yielded promising results. Community participation has also contributed positively towards arrests and convictions.

By October 2011, the FCS units had secured 306 convictions for life sentences and over 20 000 years' imprisonment for crimes against women and children.

Specialised investigations

The DPCI, or Hawks, investigates cases relating to organised crime, serious and violent crime, commercial crime and corruption.

Organised crime spans a wide area:
- illegal drugs
- plundering precious metals and diamonds
- smuggling firearms and weapons
- human trafficking
- money laundering
- specific violent crime
- vehicle-related crime
- endangered species
- crimes against the State.

In 2010/11, the SAPS' Organised Crime Unit identified and investigated 179 organised crime groups, composed of 492 targets. Fifty-seven of these groups were successfully terminated, resulting in the arrest of 282 suspects.

Commercial crime refers to fraud, forgery and uttering, theft of trust money or funds that have been manipulated to such an extent that the services of a charted account are required; and the enforcement of 54 Acts of Parliament, including the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), the Close Corporations Act, 1984 (Act 69 of 1984), the Counterfeit Goods Act, 1997 (Act 94 of 1997), the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990), and others. During 2010/11, the DPCI received 28 720 cases compared to 30 114 in 2009/10.

Criminal records and forensic sciences

The function of the Criminal Record Centre (CRC) is to identify and confirm any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

During 2010/11, the CRC received 1 206 333 crime-related fingerprint enquiries for possible identification and/or confirmation compared to 1 181 797 in 2009/10. Of the enquiries received, 595 707 (49,4%) resulted in previous convictions being identified and/or confirmed.

In total, 1 163 209 commercial/non-criminal-related enquiries were received. These enquiries are made to determine whether or not persons applying for, among other things, firearm licences, professional drivers' permits and employment, have any previous convictions.

Upgrading the Automated Fingerprint Identification System has resulted in a faster response time, allowing for search results to be returned faster to the remote sites. It completes between 11 000 and 12 000 searches in a 15-hour period, compared to the previous 8 750 searches in a 22-hour period.

The Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) renders a support service to investigating officers by analysing any physical evidence that is collected from various crime scenes. In 2010/11, it received 260 826 entries and analysed 318 665 entries (owing to a backlog from previous years), including:

- ballistic evidence
- scientific and chemical substances
- biological material, e.g. DNA analyses
- questioned documents.

The backlog at the FSL is a priority. Between 2009/10 and 2010/2011, the overall backlog decreased by 66%, from 59 023 entries to 16 200.

Crime intelligence

This division of the SAPS is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, co-ordinating and analysing information gathering. It also provides technical-intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS. Through its various national and provincial-linked components, Crime Intelligence has established coverage throughout the country, extending to station level. Cooperation with foreign law-enforcement agencies is done through platforms such as Interpol and the South African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation. This extends the range of crime intelligence beyond the national borders.

In 2010/11, a total of 13 351 cluster operations (police-investigation and intelligence-gathering techniques, which include the detection, investigation, uncovering and/or prevention of criminal conduct) and 11 033 ad hoc operations (police investigations not part of a registered undercover or network operation) were conducted.

Protection and security services

The VIP Protection Service provides for the protection of the President, Deputy President, former presidents and other identified VIPs while in transit.

During 2010/11, VIP Protection Services provided protection to 229 presidential, national and provincial dignitaries; and 204 foreign dignitaries, including heads of state who visited South Africa.

Static Guard Services protects VIPs and their property, and other identified government buildings. Protection was provided to 28 installations/government buildings and 93 presidential and national ministerial residences in 2010/11.

Mobile Operations is responsible for safeguarding valuable government cargo (with material or monetary value with considerable importance or quality such as cash currency, gold bullion and currency printing material) and/or dangerous government cargo (causing danger, risk or harm such as explosives and ammunition, nuclear material, firearms and drugs). In 2010/11, 214 loads of cargo were protected.

The Government Security Regulator provides for security regulation and administration relating to national key points and strategic installations.

Department of Defence and Military Veterans

Defence posture

The SANDF will have a defensive orientation and a non-threatening posture in accordance with the

White Paper on National Defence of the Republic of South Africa.

Defence mandate

According to the summary of the mandate of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in the Constitution, the primary object of the Defence Force is to defend and protect South Africa, its territory and its people in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force. The mandate is given substance by the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), as amended, the General Regulations, the *White Paper on Defence, (1996)*, the *Defence Review (1998)* and delegated legislation.

Mission success factors (MSFs)

For the Department of Defence and Military Veterans to achieve its mission, it is essential that it is managed strategically. As part of this process, certain factors that are fundamental to achieving success were identified. The department's MSFs are:

- national consensus on defence
- strategic direction
- resource management
- combat and support forces
- professionalism in the conduct of operations
- implementation of the transformation process.

Functions

The role and mandate of the SANDF in the defence of South Africa and its people is a direct derivative from the Constitution and the Defence Act, 2002, stating that the SANDF may be employed for service in:

- the defence of South Africa, for the protection of its sovereignty and territorial integrity
- compliance with the international obligations of South Africa with regard to international bodies and other states
- the preservation of life, health or property
- the provision or maintenance of essential services
- upholding law and order in South Africa in co-operation with the SAPS under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to maintain law and order on its own
- support of any department of state for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment
- order to effect national border safeguarding.

Strategic orientation

Defence Strategy

The Defence Strategy provides the strategic direction for the achievement of the department's core objectives that are aimed at attaining its vision.

Taking cognisance of the rapidly changing geostrategic and macro-economic environment that places limitations on the defence capability to respond appropriately, the Defence Strategy endeavours to meet these ever-changing challenges, especially since they have implications for human security. The strategy acknowledges that many of the human security threats are non-military in nature.

The foundation of democratic governance has been characterised by efforts aimed at pioneering the institutionalisation of civil-military relations. The Defence Strategy strengthens and consolidates the sound basis upon which civil-military relations are founded. It underscores the need for the requisite resources to provide for both the core and other functions of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans, as prescribed in sections 200 and 204 of the Constitution.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Air Force (SAAF), South African Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements. Each (staff) division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Each formation has its own commander. A group system includes, where practical, all units and support elements related to a specific user-system type. Each group system/formation is capable of providing a fully supported user-system to a commander responsible for the exercising and combat-readiness of land, air, maritime and military health capabilities, such as a brigade or division commander. A group system/formation can provide the same service to a task-force commander appointed by the Chief of Joint Operations. This is a considerable improvement in cost-effectiveness, while it also provides the best way of retaining core defence capabilities, especially expertise in critical mass function. Some examples of group system/formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the Air Command
- SAN – fleet command
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A group system or formation's specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

Force employment

The SANDF exists to employ military capabilities during operations. The complexity of contemporary military operations demands a high level of integration between force elements contributed by the various services of a defence force.

The Chief of Joint Operations, on behalf of the Chief of the SANDF, is responsible for employing forces of the SANDF and is supported by the SA Army, SAAF, SAN and other divisions. For internal operations, nine tactical-level headquarters have been established, one in each province. If required, temporary joint task-force headquarters may be created for specific operations. Services and divisions are responsible for preparing, providing and supporting combat-ready units as and when required for employment by the Chief of Joint Operations.

Force support

The preparation and employment of the SANDF is supported by the management of finances as well as the acquisition, maintenance and disposal/retirement of HR, finances, logistic supplies and information systems, and which are administered by internal controls within the business rules derived from the applicable resource regulatory framework.

Military strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence (1996)*, the *Defence Review (1998)* and the National Security Strategy.

Military strategic objectives

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity. The military strategic objectives of the SANDF are:

- Enhancing and maintaining comprehensive defence capabilities by providing self-defence in accordance with international law against any external aggression which endangers the stability of South Africa.
- Promoting peace, security and stability in the Southern African Development Community region (SADC) and on the continent. The purpose is to provide armed forces for external deployment in accordance with international obligations, or support to enhance security of decisions by the national executive.
- Supporting the people of South Africa by being employed for service in this country by means of operations other than war, during periods when the responsible state departments do not have the capacity to do so.

Missions

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the Peacetime Strategy for Force Preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational force preparation as well as force employment during times of conflict. The missions include:

- countering a conventional, unconventional or non-conventional threat or attack
- peace-support operations
- health support
- defence diplomacy
- special operations
- support to other government departments
- disaster relief and humanitarian assistance
- presidential tasks.

Military strategic concepts

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives:

- Providing mission-essential training: The SANDF educates, trains and develops its soldiers in the essential skills required to execute the tasks necessary to accomplish its missions. It focuses on force training and preparation aligned with the allocated budget.

- Establishing a mission-trained force: The SANDF is to have the capability to establish a mission-trained force that can engage in specific missions. The force will be relatively small, but must ultimately be prepared according to the missions and capabilities required.
- Selective engagement where possible: The SANDF will execute all missions as ordered, but will be selective in the courses of action it will follow, the force levels it will field, as well as the capabilities and resources it will provide and maintain. It focuses on consciously taking calculated strategic and operational risks.
- Strategic positioning: This entails that the SANDF is willing to proactively establish a sound security environment, supported by influencing military foreign relations actions and the pre-placement of appropriate military capabilities in support of foreign-relations initiatives.

Military strategic capabilities

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:
- command and control, communications, computers, information, intelligence, infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities
- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- effective and appropriate support capabilities.

Employment of the SANDF

Operational commitments

Operational commitments include:
- achieving international and regional defence cooperation aims
- executing peace-support operations
- effective land-, sea- and air-border control
- maintaining law and order in support of the SAPS
- controlling South African maritime areas of responsibility, including the Exclusive Economic Zone
- when requested, providing support to civil authorities within the scope of regulations regarding:
  - preservating life, health and property
  - maintaining essential services
  - providing medical and health services
  - search-and-rescue operations
  - missions to the Antarctic and the southern oceans
  - diplomatic initiatives
- air-transport missions, including for diplomatic commitments and scheduled departmental flights
- area-defence operation missions
- joint, interdepartmental and multinational force-preparation missions
- special forces missions.

Conventional operations

In the event of a conventional military threat against South Africa, the broad joint concept of operations will be as follows:
- land operations: the SANDF will conduct offensive, proactive and reactive land operations directed at stopping and destroying the enemy
- air operations: opposing air power will be neutralised mainly by the employment of offensive and defensive counter-air operations assisted by air-mobile land operations aimed at destroying the adversary air force on the ground
- maritime operations: opposing maritime forces will be attacked at range, while the defence of own and friendly shipping will be enhanced by defensive patrols and escort
- SAMHS operations: during conventional operations, the SAMHS deploys its mobile formation in direct support of land, air and maritime operations.

Non-conventional operations

The broad non-conventional concepts of operations are as follows:
- support to the SAPS in maintaining law and order will be provided by general support tasks and focused rapid-reaction operations directed at priority crime and the conduct of special operations
- general area protection will be provided by a combination of high-density and rapid-reaction operations.

Border safeguarding

Border safeguarding entails the following:
- Deploying permanent self-supported and sustained light mobile forces on all geographical borders throughout South Africa.
- Deploying air and maritime assets to control the maritime environment and enforce state authority at sea.
- Employing air and landward assets to enhance the integrity of the air space, assist with airspace control and enforce state authority.

- Employing mobile ground, air and maritime sensors to enhance detection, and support interdepartmental and multinational operations.
- Deploying information warfare capabilities to support border safeguarding operations.
- If necessary, limited military operations to intercept and interdict the identified adversary can be conducted using available land, air, maritime and special forces capabilities. This requires a high degree of interdepartmental and regional cooperation.

The phased return of the SANDF to cover the over 4 471 km of land border between South Africa and Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia and Zimbabwe has strengthened the safety of South African citizens and those of the SADC.

Four companies have been deployed and are respectively based at Musina and Pontdrift along the Zimbabwe/Botswana/South African border, Macadamia along the Mozambique/Mpumalanga border and Ndumo along the Mozambique/KwaZulu-Natal border. The SANDF will be fully established on the South African borders by 2014/15.

By the end of 2012/13, it is expected that the SANDF will cover the total 4 471 km of land-border, 2 700 km of sea and 76 600 km of air. The SANDF will also continue patrolling the SADC waters to ensure smooth movement of ships and safe commerce and trade in the SADC region.

Other defence commitments

The department's other commitments are to:

- achieve a reasonable level of military diplomacy by:
  - placing and managing defence attachés
  - establishing and maintaining bi- and multilateral agreements
  - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, the African Union (AU) and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meet the international obligations of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- provide healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

Peace-support operations

The policy regarding the SANDF's peace-support operations is based on the *White Paper on South African Participation in International Peace Missions*.

Some 3 000 SANDF soldiers are deployed at any given time in peace-support and related operations outside South Africa's borders.

The number of South African peacekeeping operations on the African continent has increased. As a member of the AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC) and a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council, South Africa has become a significant contributor to peacekeeping in Africa. This includes troop contributions and mediation or facilitation.

South Africa has also rendered assistance to a number of countries during disasters and elections, while assistance in support of post-conflict reconstruction is an ongoing activity.

In 2011/12, the SANDF deployed 2 240 military personnel in operations across the African continent: the Democratic Republic of Congo (1 290), Darfur (850) and the Central African Republic (100). These deployments are tasked with restoring peace, training, and formalising and developing the security structures of those countries to stabilise and facilitate economic growth and a better life for the citizens.

Organisational structure

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, through various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence (JSCD) and the Defence Secretariat. While the Minister is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the JSCD ensures that the Executive Authority (Minister of Defence and Military Veterans) remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Defence Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the Department of Defence and Military Veterans.

As head of the department, the Secretary for Defence is responsible for advising the Minister on defence policy through:

- enhancing civil control through briefings to the parliamentary committees having oversight over the department and the Minister over the department
- providing the Chief of the Defence Force with comprehensive instructions
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister to the Chief of the Defence Force
- disciplining of, administrating control over and managing employees, including their effective use and training.

Chief of the SANDF

The Chief of the SANDF is appointed by the President of South Africa. His or her duties include, among other things:

- advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing, managing and administrating the armed forces
- executing approved programmes of the Defence Budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

South African Military Health Service System

The SAMHS derives its mandate from the Constitution, 1996 and from the Defence Act, 2002, the Defence Strategy, the *White Paper on Defence* and the *Defence Review*.

> The South African National Defence Force (SANDF) and SANparks have reached an agreement to patrol the borders inside the national parks. From April 2011, the SANDF moved to the second phase and is now deployed in the pivotal area of the Kruger National Park border. The SANDF and SANparks will cooperate in protecting all national parks. The cooperation will include joint operations, sharing of information and training.

As a specialised and unique service in the SANDF, the SAMHS's mandate is also influenced by relevant health-related legislation as pertaining to the Department of Health and all other health practitioners in South Africa.

Human Resource 2010 Strategy

A key initiative to sustain the department's state of readiness in the context of people-centred transformation is the HR 2010 Strategy (HR 2010).

HR 2010 aims to ensure that the department has the most effective, efficient and economical HR composition of both uniformed and civilian members to deliver on its mandate and support for government.

Military Skills Development System (MSDS)

In May 2011, the SANDF trained 2 000 young men and women through its National Youth Service, joining 500 other young South Africans who went through the initial pilot programme, which was held in collaboration with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

At the end of the programme, recruits were deployed in various working environments in government, the private sector and enterprise incubation ventures in collaboration with the relevant stakeholders.

The programme included building youth character, with a focus on leadership, discipline and team work. Since its inception in 2003, the SANDF has trained over 27 000 young people through the MSDS.

Military training, including drills, physical fitness, swimming, diving, sailing, military law and basic life skills, is central to preparing young people for a positive leadership role in their community, government and the business world.

More young women are recruited into different services of the SANDF, such as the SAAF, SAMHS and SA Army, to specialise in scarce skills such as navigation, flying, engineering, diving and sailing.

The MSDS aims to ensure a continuous intake of young, healthy South Africans into the SANDF to rejuvenate its Regular Force, as well as to supply the Reserve Force in an effort to maintain mission readiness.

There has been a marked improvement in the rank-age profile of SANDF troops and, as the number of youth intakes increases over the next few years, the capacity of the reserves will be addressed.

Defence Matériel Division

In 2011/12, defence acquisition focused on acquiring new equipment and upgrading existing equipment, as prioritised by the Chief of Joint Operations.

Specific technology programmes are also in place to ensure the retention of the required technology base for effective local participation in scheduled acquisition programmes, in addition to applying these technologies to optimise the remaining life of existing equipment. Defence science, engineering and technical expertise focus on the strategically essential requirements of the SANDF.

By mid-2011, the Defence Matériel Division was completing the acquisition process of the Strategic Defence Package programmes, of which most systems had been delivered to South Africa and commissioned by the SAAF and SAN.

Project-related

Landward defence acquisition

Upgraded Z13 anti-tank missiles, Rooikat armoured cars and Casspir armoured protected personnel carriers were delivered in 2010/11. After operational tests and evaluation of the tactical intelligence processing system had successfully been completed, the system was commissioned by the SA Army.

Strategic defence packages

The last of 30 Agusta A109 light utility helicopters were delivered in 2011/12. A retrofit programme was executed to correct deficiencies identified during operational testing and evaluation.

The ninth and last dual-seat SAAB Gripen advanced light fighter and the first two of 17 single seat SAAB Gripen advanced light fighters were also delivered.

Training of the first group of aircrew and relevant ground crew was completed. The Phase One handover of the 24 BAE Systems Hawk lead-in fighter trainer to the SAAF was concluded.

Other

The Westland Super Lynx Maritime Helicopter was successfully integrated into the SAN Meko 200 frigates. The development of the A-Darter infra-red air-to-air missile was continued as a successful joint venture with the Brazilian Air Force.

> During July and August 2011, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) and United States of America (USA) Armed Forces jointly conducted a multinational peace-support operation and humanitarian-relief exercise, Exercise Shared Accord 2011 (Ex Shared Accord 11) took place at Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality and in Grahamstown.
>
> The aim of Ex Shared Accord 11 was to provide collective training for the SANDF and US Armed Forces, building interoperability and mutual understanding between the two forces. All services of the SANDF were involved in the operation.
>
> Ex Shared Accord is an annual, combined, bilateral US-partner nation event. Previous Ex Shared Accord exercises were hosted in Benin, Ghana, Senegal and Mozambique.

Defence technology development

The Technology Development Programme undertook successful trials of low-cost precision-guided munitions at the Overberg Test Range. The Landward Electronic Defence System tested well under competitive trials in the United States of America. The locally conceived dual-band radar, led by Reutech Radar Systems of Stellenbosch and supported by the Engineering Faculty of the University of Cape Town, was also successfully demonstrated.

Naval acquisition

With the SAN's Strategic Defence Package programmes approaching completion, having operationalised four Meko 200 frigates and delivering three Class 209 Type 1400 submarines, the focus of naval acquisition was directed towards upgrading and sustaining the Navy's patrol vessel, hydrographic vessel and submarine torpedo replacement capabilities. Phase One of the underwater range was completed and handed over to the project team.

Defence transformation

Defence transformation aims to:

- maximise defence capabilities through an affordable and sustainable force design and structure
- minimise defence costs using business processes, such as engineering and restructuring of especially the support structures
- institutionalise appropriate leadership, command and management practices, philosophy and principles

In February 2011, Cabinet mandated the Department of Defence to put together a strategy to address piracy issues in the Southern African Development Community waters. The strategy was approved by Cabinet in April 2011.

In June 2011, South Africa and Mozambique signed a Memorandum of Understanding on piracy and trans-border crime. The South African National Defence Force had improved its sea and air border management with additional deployments being made. The *SS Mendi* had resumed patrol along the Mozambican channel to ensure the security of southern African waters.

- align defence policies, plans and management with overall government transformation and administrative-reform initiatives
- ensure compliance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended by Act 29 of 1999 and National Treasury regulations.

Shared defence values

After comprehensive research, seven shared values for the department were approved:

- military professionalism
- human dignity
- integrity
- leadership
- accountability
- loyalty
- patriotism.

Business process management (BPM)

To optimise performance in complex organisations, such as the Department of Defence and Military Veterans, it is vital that business processes be aligned with the organisational strategy and policy framework to make the most effective, efficient and economic use of resources.

The department is an organisation subject to change, due not only to local but also to international, political, social, economic and technological pressures. This necessitates the management of business processes to study the impact of such change quickly and effectively, and address them.

BPM facilitates the orderly and accountable change from one business architecture baseline to the next.

Project Loquacious has been established to ensure the optimal management and use of business processes, so that the department's strategic objectives can be achieved effectively, efficiently and economically.

Bases

Bases are structures provided by all services. Units are generally clustered in or around bases and share common facilities and services. Bases provide administrative support, but do not command units for which they are responsible.

One Force

"One Force" comprises the collective regular and reserve-force components of the SANDF. The Regular Force consists of highly trained soldiers to operate and maintain a core capability, as well as sophisticated equipment and defence systems. The Reserve Force is the former part-time component of the SANDF. Members are trained to support the core defence commitment.

Resettlement

The Directorate: Personnel Separation has executed programmes at various levels in terms of HR 2010. It serves as a nodal point for redeployment and resettlement.

The Department of Defence and Military Veterans established the Personnel Rationalisation Advisory and Coordinating Committee to ensure efficient and cost-effective support programmes for resettling and redeploying the department's members and employees affected by separation.

The directorate has established and implemented the Social Plan, which addresses the reskilling and psychosocial needs of the department's employees.

Professional multidisciplinary teams execute this support programme. The HR Planning

In June 2011, a draft Military Ombudsman Bill was introduced in Parliament. This Bill will give the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) its own Military Ombudsman to investigate complaints and serve as a neutral third party on matters related to the SANDF.

The Ombudsman Bill came soon after the establishment of the National Defence Force Service Commission, which aims to advise the Minister of Defence on service conditions.

The Office of the Ombudsman is expected to act as a direct source of information, referral and education. The introduction of the Ombudsman, alongside the Defence Force Service Commission, will go a long way towards promoting democratic civil-military relations in the SANDF.

Instruction Plan guides the process of interdepartmental transfers of redeployable members and employees.

Defence Reserve Force

Role of reserves

In terms of the *South African Defence Strategy 2010 to 2030* and the *SANDF Military Strategy 2007,* the role of the reserves is to be in a state of predetermined readiness and provide the following capabilities:

- augmenting the regulars as key elements within the core force
- providing the bulk of the growth force and contributing to the ongoing operations conducted by the SANDF
- supplementing peace-support operations
- providing certain specialist skills.

Ministerial priorities

The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans determined that the Reserves is an absolute requirement within the Core-Growth One-Force. The reserves must be multiskilled and contribute on an ongoing basis to the operational output of the SANDF.

The Chief of Defence Reserves reports to the Military Command Council and is the manager of this strategic issue, providing strategic direction to the department by monitoring and controlling development plans.

Other SANDF priorities

In addition to using reserves for deployment priorities, which directly affect the reserves include:

- MSDS intakes to capacitate the reserves must grow
- sufficient leader groups for the reserves must be addressed in terms of feeding, learning and career paths
- adequate training that stimulates interest, ensures the retention of members and maintains appropriate readiness must be provided.

Legislation

Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010)

The Defence Amendment Act, 2010 compels Reserve Force members to respond to call-ups. An action plan for the implementation of the Defence Amendment Act, 2010 has been prepared. The general regulations for the Reserve Force do not require amendment to cater for the latest change to the Act, as they were drafted in anticipation of this amendment.

Force preparation

The Defence Reserves Board is continuing with its monitoring role in ensuring implementation of the Reserve Strategic Plan by the services and divisions. The external deployment by the Reserve Force in peace-support operations is ongoing and the Reserve Force has also been successfully used in internal deployments on the borders as part of Operation Corona. Several tertiary institutions have been engaged to give effect to the roll-out of the University Reserve Training Programme.

Force support

By June 2011, several defence provincial liaison councils (DPLCs) had been established in six of the nine provinces, with more planned. The purpose of these councils is to ensure support for Reserve Force service from industry, non-governmental organisations, academia and traditional leaders. The establishment of the DPLCs will not only promote Reserve Force service, but also provide feedback on the workings of the system. Good progress is being made in helping MSDS members to obtain civilian jobs.

Military veterans

The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect in February 2001.

The Minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans' Affairs from nominations received from recognised military veterans' organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.

In November 2010, Cabinet approved the Military Veterans Bill. The Department of Defence and Military Veterans completed the process to pay the non-statutory pension and fast-tracked the rolling out of all benefits in the Bill.

The Seeker 400 prototype, a South African-designed and -built unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV), or drone, is due to make its maiden flight in 2012. UAVs can be used for national security, crime fighting, disaster management, election monitoring and search-and-rescue operations.

During August and September 2011, a special forces exercise (Exercise Stalwart) took place in the Langebaan area in the Western Cape. The aim was to exercise special forces' seaborne and airborne conventional capabilities at tactical level in a multinational full mission special forces deployment.

Exercise Stalwart was a joint multinational integrated exercise where the scenario required special forces from Southern African Development Community countries to react to several emergencies of a strategic nature. Activities during the exercise included a command post exercise and integration training of forces in Dwarskersbos, followed by a field training exercise in the Langebaan/Elands Bay areas.

The troop-contributing countries, which pledged special forces and supporting resources for the exercise, were Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, the United States of America and Zambia.

A call centre to facilitate easy communication with veterans was established at the end of May 2011. The department constantly updates its database of beneficiaries.

Facilities, land and environment

Facilities, Land and Environmental Management in the Department of Defence and Military Veterans strives for the efficient management of these entities. The department has adopted the process of base conversion. The focus is on the role and responsibilities of the military process of conversion aimed at assisting role players in closing down and re-using military bases.

The *Military Integrated Training Range Guide* provides military environmental managers with information to ensure the long-term continuation of environmentally sound management practices. It also enhances the ability of the defence sector to sustain long-term and cost-effective range operations.

The department continues to demonstrate its responsibility as the custodian of land entrusted to it through active cooperation in government's land redistribution and restitution policies.

Over the past decade, it has been rationalising its land portfolio and made a third (close to a quarter million ha) of its original estate available for non-military use.

The systems for self-maintenance and management of the SANDF's properties have been laid and the Works Regiment will intensify the maintenance and upkeep of all properties.

The department completed a strategy to establish its own real estate agency to manage the property portfolio of more than 430 000 ha of land, almost 35 000 buildings and more than 12 million m^2 of surface area within buildings.

The Works Regiment of the SANDF began a project to access the maintenance and building work required in the SANDF to ensure accommodation for soldiers and their families and additional office space for the SANDF.

Defence Force Service Commission (DFSC)

The DFSC was established in terms of the Defence Amendment Act, 2010. Its functions include making recommendations to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans concerning improvements to salaries and service benefits of members of the SANDF.

During November 2010, the Interim National Defence Force Service Commission (INDFSC) provided a final report to the Minister, making recommendations regarding the:

- relationship between the Military Command and the Defence Secretariat
- disempowerment of commanding officers
- Defence Budget allocation and composition
- need for a new defence review
- state of defence infrastructure
- professional health support
- transport
- career management
- MSDS
- transformation
- grievance mechanisms
- command, control and communication in the SANDF
- promotion and use of personnel
- remuneration and conditions of service for the SANDF.

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The NCACC is a committee of ministers of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member. It was established by the National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002), as a statutory body to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control, and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.

The NCACC's Policy for the Control of Trade in Conventional Arms was promulgated in January 2004.

National conventional arms-control regulations, published in May 2004, deal with applications for permits and the list of dual-use goods, technologies and munitions that are subject to control. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, after which the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications.

Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision. An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the JSCD.

Public-sector defence industry

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

Armscor is the official acquisition organisation for the SANDF. With the approval of the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, it also renders a professional acquisition service to other government departments and public entities.

Armscor is a statutory body established in terms of the Armaments Development and Production Act, 1968 (Act 57 of 1968), and continues its existence through the Armscor Limited (Ltd) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003), and the Armscor Ltd Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 16 of 2005), which came into effect in May 2006.

The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for Armscor. The management and control of Armscor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management are in the hands of the management board.

In the execution of its functions, Armscor has established and maintains capabilities and technologies required to fulfil its mandate, such as appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation (DIP) Programme, the management of technology projects and strategic facilities.

In July 2011, the South African National Defence Force and the International Committee of the Red Cross hosted the Senior Workshop on International Rules Governing Military Operations, the first of its kind to be held in Africa, at the Military Academy in Saldanha Bay, in the Western Cape.

The workshop, which has taken place four times in Europe, was attended by 70 senior officers from different armed forces across the globe.

Armscor's acquisition role pertains to all the actions that need to be taken to satisfy the need for matériel, facilities or services intended for client use or in support of client requirements. These actions include:

- long-term operational research
- requirement planning
- establishing and developing technology
- designing and developing products and systems aimed at industrialisation
- manufacturing mature products and systems that fully meet user requirements.

The acquisition role can be broadly divided into the following four categories:

- system-acquisition management
- procurement management
- product-systems management
- technology-acquisition management.

In addition, Armscor also performs:

- quality assurance
- DIP
- management of strategic facilities.

The management of strategic facilities is vested in a subsidiary company, Armscor Business (Pty) Ltd. To fulfil its mandate, Armscor Business is structured into three groups, namely:

- Defence Science and Technology Institute, which houses the research and development facilities
- Test and Evaluation Facility, which is responsible for rendering comprehensive test and evaluation services in the military and civilian environment
- Defence Support, which is responsible for defence matériel disposal, configuration management and data management.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a commercially driven holding company, with equity of varying degrees in several defence and aerospace subsidiaries and associated companies.

In September 2011, Carl Zeiss Optronics in Centurion, south of Pretoria, launched the design and manufacture of a new-generation periscope for conventional attack submarines, establishing South Africa as one of the few countries worldwide with such an advanced manufacturing capacity.

The fully assembled periscope weighs more than 850 kg and has a superb direct-view optical channel. More than 70 different components of lenses, mirrors and prisms are used in a periscope optical channel.

In addition, the periscope is fitted with an advanced gyro stabilising system that enables it to perform optimally in the roughest sea conditions.

More than 15 South African companies are involved as suppliers of parts and services in the production process, creating more than 100 jobs.

With its focus on the military aerospace and landward defence domains, Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973. Its defence capabilities, however, date back more than 70 years when some of Denel's first manufacturing plants were established.

As a state-owned enterprise, Denel reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises. The Minister, on behalf of government, appoints an independent board of directors while an executive management team is responsible for the day-to-day management of the company.

A key objective with Denel's turnaround strategy was to ensure that the business becomes self-sustainable and profitable. Although the restructuring of the group is still underway, some of its businesses already have equity partnerships with major international companies.

While the unbundling of the South African Government's defence company is key to refocusing its business, government considers Denel a strategic asset. It therefore retains a "golden share" in the businesses to protect the country's technological capabilities and ensure their role as key domestic suppliers to the SANDF.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the SANDF's defence systems and equipment.

As such, they ensure a greater measure of strategic independence for the country, while providing the SANDF with the cost-effective means to undertake its role in peacekeeping and peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

Denel provides a sustainable technology base to enable the Department of Defence and Military Veterans to acquire systems uniquely suited to African conditions. Denel also makes a significant contribution to South Africa's socio-economic development and manufacturing base.

Unlike developing countries without an indigenous defence industry, South Africa benefits from Denel's value-add in areas such as skills development. Denel's skills-intensive approach creates an opportunity for an applied scientific and engineering base.

Through a range of high-end skills-development programmes, Denel aims to retain engineers, technicians and scientists for the industry. These programmes include:

- Denel Centre for Learning and Development, offering business and marketing training alongside its artisan and technician training
- Denel Youth Foundation Training Programme with its focus on upgrading young learners' Mathematics and Science skills
- engineering bursary schemes and internships
- school-outreach programmes to entice the youth to the high-technology careers found at Denel.

Through the years, Denel has created substantial intellectual property that has been cross-leveraged in other industries such as telecommunications, energy and mining.

International benchmarks have shown the defence industry to remain the prime technology incubator for industry at large with an added employment multiplier ratio of 6:1 jobs for each engineer employed.

Denel's core businesses and associated companies

Denel's business entities comprise:

- Denel Aviation
- Denel Dynamics
- Denel Pretoria Metal Pressings
- Denel Overberg Test Range
- Denel-Saab Aerostructures

In May 2011, the South African Navy frigate *SAS Isandlwana* docked in Simon's Town after a mercy mission to Tristan da Cunha, following a call for help from the Taiwanese Government. A fishing vessel exploded at sea.

The 11 injured sailors were taken on board the *SAS Isandlwana* that took two doctors and a team of paramedics who used the ship's sick bay to care for the injured sailors.

It was the first time that one of the South African Navy frigates had been deployed on a rescue mission.

- Denel Integrated Systems Solutions
- Denel Land Systems
- Mechem
- Denel Technical Academy
- Denel Properties.

Associated companies include:

- Turbomeca Africa
- Carl Zeiss Optronics (Pty) Ltd
- Rheinmetall Denel Munition.

Intelligence services

In May 2009, President Zuma tasked the ministers of state security, police, defence, home affairs, justice and correctional services to review the structures of the civilian intelligence community to develop a more effective and efficient intelligence architecture.

After the review process, the State Security Agency (SSA) was created by the President. A phased approach brought together the following departments:

- the National Intelligence Agency (NIA)
- the South African Secret Service (SASS)
- the South African National Academy of Intelligence (Sanai)
- Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd
- the Office of Interception Centres.

The respective heads report to the Director-General of the SSA and are accountable to the Minister of State Security.

The mandate of the SSA is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order and the safety and well-being of its people. This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- the Domestic Branch (formerly NIA)
- the Foreign Branch (formerly SASS)
- the Intelligence Academy (formerly Sanai)
- National Communications, which includes the former National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The mandates of these structures are determined by the same proclamations. In the case of the domestic and foreign branches, the mandates are linked to the National Intelligence Strategic Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994); Intelligence Services Act, 2002, (Act 65 of 2002); and the Security Services Special Account Act, 1969 (Act 81 of 1969).

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest, namely:

- terrorism
- sabotage
- subversion
- espionage
- organised crime.

Since 1994, various ministerial intelligence review committees have focused on the way the intelligence-services dispensation operated. Many of these reviews have sought to improve internal processes, including the management of information. Importantly, the reviews noted the uneasy fit of the Protection of Information Act, 1982 (Act 84 of 1982), the lack of a coherent system of protecting information, its classification and declassification, its review after a lapse of a given period and the granting of access to the general public for daily use, research, scientific enquiry and for advancing their rights as provided for in the Constitution.

Government introduced the Protection of Information Bill as a response to clear and present dangers that call for the enactment of a law that would help protect the national security of South Africa. The Bill, which was passed by the National Assembly in November 2011, aims to, among other things, address the rising threat of undercover activities, the selling of information and the protection of critical databases in government, without impeding the constitutional rights of citizens to accessing information.

The Bill aims to balance the presumption of secrecy with a presumption of openness. The consequence flowing from the assent of the Bill into law is to significantly reduce the volume of information classified but at the same time to strengthen the protection of state information that truly requires protection.

The objectives are to provide a statutory framework, which provides direction to those in government who are charged with information protection; substantially reduce the amount of state information that is protected from disclosure; provide more effective protection to that information that truly requires safeguarding; and to align the information regime with the values, rights and freedoms enshrined in the Constitution.

The Bill aims to regulate the manner in which state information may be protected and promote transparency and accountability in governance

The Bill creates a legislative framework not only for classification but also declassification of state information. The Bill not only deters and seeks to prevent human-rights infringement but has built-in safeguards to ensure fairness and justice in implementation.

It is essentially a security Bill aimed at protecting the national security of South Africa. It is in line with best international practice, as countries have constitutional obligations to protect their people and territorial integrity.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Defence *Strategic Plan 2010*
Denel
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
Secretariat for Safety and Security
South African National Defence Force
South African Police Service (SAPS)
SAPS, *Annual Report 2010/11*

www.army.mil.za
www.cdpsp.mil.za
www.dfac.mil.za
www.dod.mil.za
www.gov.za
www.intelligence.gov.za
www.nia.gov.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.sass.gov.za
www.secdef.mil.za

Suggested reading

Baines, G and Vale P. 2008 reprinted 2011. *Beyond the Border War. New Perspectives on Southern Africa's Late-Cold War Conflicts*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
Blake, C. 2010. *From Soldier to Civvy*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Faull, A. 2010. *Behind the Badge: The Untold Stories of South Africa's Police Service Members*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Hendricks, C and Musavengana, T (eds). 2010. *The Security Sector in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
Hornberger, J. 2011. *Policing and Human Rights: The Meaning of Violence and Justice in the Everyday Policing of Johannesburg*. Abington: Routledge.
Kasrils, R. 2010. *The Unlikely Secret Agent*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Landau, LB (ed). 2011. *Exorcising the Demons Within: Xenophobia, Violence and Statecraft in Contemporary South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Matthysen, P, Kalkwarf, M and Huxtable, M. 2010. *Recce: A Collector's Guide to the History of the South African Special Forces*. Johannesburg: 30° South.
Mills, G. 2011. *An Option of Difficulties? A 21st Century South African Defence Review*. Johannesburg: Brenthurst Foundation.
Ngculu, J. 2009. *The Honour to Serve: Recollections of an Umkhonto Soldier*. Claremont: David Philip.
Nicol, M. 2010. *Killer Country*. Cape Town: Umuzi.
Retief, H. 2011. *Byleveld: Dossier of a Serial Sleuth*. Cape Town: Umuzi.
Tait, S and Van der Spuy, E. 2010. *Cooperation and Accountability in the Cross-Border Policing of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: African Policing Civilian Oversight Forum.
To Spy Or Not To Spy? Intelligence and Democracy in South Africa. 2009. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
Volker, WV. 2010. *Signal Units of the South African Corps of Signals and Related Signal Services*. Pretoria: Veritas Books.


AFRICAN
POLICE SERVICE
POLICE



Rural development and land reform

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

Rural development is a critical intervention as it calls for the establishment of meaningful economic development capacity in rural areas.

The implementation of rural development is expected to result in vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all. The essence of such a community would be measured through:
- food security
- rapid and sustained economic growth
- intellectual development
- environmental sustainability
- healthy rural communities
- political maturity
- social stability and growth
- self-reliant and confident communities
- fairness in line with the Bill of Rights
- social cohesion.

With the introduction of government's outcomes-based approach, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has revised its 2010/13 Strategic Plan to take into account the need to create vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities (Outcome 7), including food security. The outcome is linked to five outputs, which are all pertinent to the department's work and which have been integrated into its strategic goals. These are: sustainable agrarian reform with a thriving small and large farming sector (Output 1); improved access to affordable and diverse food (Output 2); improved rural services to support sustainable livelihoods (Output 3); rural job creation linked to skills training and promoting economic livelihoods (Output 4); and an enabling institutional environment for sustainable and improved growth (Output 5).

It has developed strategic goals, which address the outcome and its five related outputs. These strategic goals are:
- sound corporate governance and service excellence
- a reformed policy, legislative and institutional environment by 2014
- effective land planning and administration that promotes rural development
- institutional arrangements for effective co-operative governance and stakeholder participation
- increased access to land and its productive use
- improved access to affordable and diverse food
- improved rural services to support sustainable livelihoods
- improved access to sustainable employment and skills-development opportunities.

Rural development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's purpose is to initiate, facilitate, coordinate and catalyse the implementation of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) that leads to sustainable and vibrant rural communities. The department has two branches, namely Social, Technical, Rural Livelihoods and Institutional Facilitation (STRIF); and Rural Infrastructure Development (RID).

In 2010/11, STRIF mobilised 28 communities and profiled 13 694 households. The profiling results are captured on the National Integrated Social Information System. During 2010/11, more than 960 youths were trained in participatory rural appraisal and social survey methods. The youths were assigned as field workers in community and household profiling.

Councils of stakeholders (CoS) were established in 25 CDRP sites in 2010/11. The World Bank Technical Programme is assisting with the capacitation of the CoS. STRIF also supported the Alice Agri-Park Project, which can be regarded as a best-practice joint venture between a university (University of Fort Hare), government and communities.

The RID Branch has succeeded in improving access to services in rural areas by facilitating the construction and renovation of schools, houses, sanitation systems, water infrastructure, energy infrastructure, fencing and roads.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The CRDP is a strategic priority in government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). The design of the programme is predicated on lessons learnt from pilot sites selected through socio-economic profiling, community participatory processes and intergovernmental cooperation. A great deal of baseline data has emerged from the

The second phase of Mpumalanga's Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) was launched in April 2011. The CRDP is an integrated programme that focuses on the provision of, among other things, water, electricity, housing, agrarian projects and job creation in rural areas.

The roll-out of the programme to additional municipalities follows a pilot phase that was launched in the Mkhondo Local Municipality in Piet Retief in 2009.

first two pilot engagements in Riemvasmaak in the Northern Cape, and Muyexe Village in Giyani in Limpopo.

The CRDP is different from past government strategies in rural areas because it is premised on a proactive participatory community-based planning approach rather than an interventionist approach to rural development.

It is aimed at being an effective response to poverty and food insecurity by maximising the use and management of natural resources to create vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities.

The CRDP must improve the standards of living and welfare and rectify past injustices through rights-based interventions and by addressing skewed patterns of distribution and ownership of wealth and assets.

The strategic objective of the CRDP is therefore to facilitate integrated development and social cohesion through participatory approaches in partnership with all sectors of society.

This will be done by:

- contributing to the redistribution of 30% of the country's agricultural land
- improving food security of the rural poor
- creating business opportunities
- decongesting and rehabilitating overcrowded former homeland areas
- expanding opportunities for rural women, youth, people with disabilities and older persons.

The CRDP is premised on three phases: Phase One, which has meeting basic human needs as its driver; Phase Two, which has large-scale infrastructure development as its driver; and Phase Three, with the emergence of rural industrial and credit financial sectors, which is driven by small, medium and macro-enterprises and village markets.

By October 2011, the CRDP was being implemented at 65 sites across the country. Some 33 560 hectares (ha) of agricultural land had been acquired to provide emerging farmers with access to land. Some 116 farms had been recapitalised by providing funds for, among other things, infrastructure, mechanisation, seeds, livestock and the transfer of skills by commercial farmers to enhance the productivity of transferred farms.

In areas where the CRDP is being implemented, a new vibrancy has been created around working together, involving communities, the three spheres of government and the private sector. This has enabled communities to mobilise resources from all sectors of government to enhance delivery.

An inclusive CRDP stakeholder participation model has been developed in the form of the CoS, which function as partners in planning, implementation and monitoring. Through these inclusive bodies, communities themselves have become central to their own development.

Through the work undertaken at the CRDP sites, and in conjunction with fellow departments at national, provincial and local government level, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform erected infrastructure such as housing, water, sanitation, pack-sheds, community halls, multipurpose centres, fencing, early childhood development centres, satellite police stations and renovated schools and clinics.

The department initiated a new youth skills-development and employment programme, the National Rural Youth Service Corps (Narysec).

The objectives of Narysec are to:

- train youth through specifically developed programmes linked to community needs in rural areas
- develop youth with multidisciplinary skills through civic education
- capacitate youth in retaining knowledge and technical skills acquired during training
- increase the number of rural communities receiving support in their self-development through the CRDP.

Narysec participants are contracted for 24 months following their recruitment from rural communities.

Recruitment is done through advertisements and selection by community structures.

The first part of the two-year programme is a foundational phase, which consists of an orientation programme followed by training in conducting household profiling. Next, household profiling is done in rural areas in conjunction with the Department of Social Development. The youths thereafter undergo a seven-week non-military training programme in the South African National Defence Force.

The programme has been specifically designed as part of the National Youth Service and focuses on aspects of discipline, patriotism and service delivery in rural communities.

The foundational phase is followed by a skills-development phase. The skills-development programmes presented to Narysec participants are related to the activities of the CRDP, which are identified by conducting household profiling. The skills-development programmes therefore vary according to the needs of the various rural communities.

Construction in rural areas has been identified as an immediate focus area of skills development.

The skills-development phase will be followed by the community-service phase, where the youth will apply their newly acquired skills in rural communities under the leadership/mentorship of the responsible department.

The final phase or exit strategy of the Narysec will be linked to the maintenance and operations activities of local and district municipalities. The strategic outcomes of the programme in the long term are expected to be:

- a decline in the level of youth unemployment in rural areas
- an increase in literacy and skills
- an increase in disposable income of youth in rural areas as a result of employment and entrepreneurial opportunities
- decreased dependence on transfers from family members working in urban areas.

In its initial phase, it enlisted 7 958 young people between 18 and 35 years of age, with a minimum educational standard of Grade 10. They were drawn from rural wards across the country, including farms, small rural towns and some peri-urban areas.

These young people, 50% of whom are women and at least every fourth one a person with some form of disability, have been enlisted on a continuous 24-month contract.

Of these, 600 have gone through 10 days of training in self-orientation and life skills through Further Education and Training colleges and 500 have gone through two-months of non-military training, mainly character development, personal discipline and patriotism. Each one receives a stipend of R60 a day, which will be increased as they receive high-level skills training.

War on Poverty (WoP) Programme

The WoP and rural development programmes are concerned with human development. The methods they use are similar, such as helping people to get identity documents for social grants or for work-related matters and creating job opportunities. Rural development is a short-term strategy while the WoP Programme is long term.

One of the long-term solutions is to ensure that people become self-sufficient. The department is specifically concentrating on rural communities.

Poverty in rural areas is rife and more vicious than in urban areas. In rural areas there is a lack of basic services such as clinics, police stations, schools and recreational facilities.

The objective of the WoP Programme is to have a positive impact on people's lives, address poverty and hunger and ensure that people take control of their destiny.

As part of the WoP Programme, the department had conducted 26 935 household and 594 community profiles by August 2011. These are necessary to ensure proper and targeted interventions in areas where there is a need for services.

Improving the quality of life for rural communities remains a priority for government. As part of the zero-hunger programme, more than one million beneficiaries are accessing food through the existing food-distribution programmes.

Land reform

In 2010/11, the department transferred 322 844, 9931 ha, eqalling 288 projects, and provided access to land to 3 089 beneficiaries through its land-reform programme. The *Green Paper on Land Reform 2011* was published for public comment. The thrust of the Green Paper is based on the view that:

- separate rural development and land reform be aligned at policy programme and institutional levels to ensure coordinated service delivery
- in pursuit of agrarian transformation there is a link between the land question and agriculture

In 2011, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, working with partners from the public and private sectors, intervened in areas, which had been hit by natural disasters – lightning, flash floods and thunderstorms – by providing emergency houses using steel and sandbag technologies, as well as accessories such as gel stoves, solar lights, solar radios and lightning conductors.

These interventions go a long way in assisting affected households to recover and give government an opportunity to pilot new ways to help vulnerable households.

Another challenge is access to clean, piped water for rural communities. The department has revived existing boreholes and drilled eight new ones in Limpopo. Elsewhere in the country, the department, working with its national, provincial and local counterparts, facilitated the installation of 400 rainwater harvesting tanks, constructed a water reservoir in Msinga, KwaZulu-Natal; drilled and equipped boreholes; had a water reservoir under construction in Disake, North West; and, a 37-km water pipeline, from the Orange River to Riemvasmaak, Northern Cape, was nearing completion.

as the basis for the search for an economic rationale and a vision of a post-reform agrarian structure.

The demand for land may be for other productive but non-agricultural uses as well.

The change agenda pursued in the Green Paper is to create a new trajectory for land reform. A set of proposals is put forward, which attempts to break from the past without significantly disrupting agricultural production and food security, and to avoid redistributions that do not generate livelihoods, employment and incomes.

The Green Paper focuses on seven key areas, namely:

- programme a vision for land reform
- principles underlying land reform
- current challenges and weaknesses: rationale for change
- an improved trajectory for land reform (including institutions to support land reform)
- the strategic thrust for land reform
- land-reform experiences elsewhere
- challenges and constraints.

The department is working on a number of policy initiatives over the medium term.

It is proposing a three-tiered system of land ownership in South Africa. The three tiers will be:

- state land, which will be under leasehold
- private land, which will be held under freehold with limited extent
- foreign ownership, with precarious tenure linked to productivity and partnership models with South African citizens.

The policy on precarious tenure for foreign nationals will be developed to determine the basis on which foreigners can own or use South African land around which there are sensitivities. The Land Protection Bill, which will make formal provision for this, was submitted to Cabinet in 2011.

Key role players in the land-reform sector have set a goal that all land-reform farms should be 100% productive and sustainable during the next three years.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has set aside R3,3 billion for land reform, excluding the restitution programme.

Of that amount, R2 billion has been earmarked for strategic land acquisition of about 303 612 ha and R1,3 billion for making all land-reform farms fully functional and 100% productive through the Recapitalisation and Development Programme. This is expected to cover an additional 387 farms, and revitalise 27 irrigation schemes, which have already been identified across the country.

The policy for developing the Land Management Commission to support the implementation of the three-tiered land tenure system was expected to be developed by 2012.

The policy for establishing a valuation system, including the Valuer General's Office that would manage standards and guidelines for land valuations, is expected to be developed by 2012, giving the State a proactive role in valuation to consider land acquisitions within the proposed three-tiered land tenure system as part of the Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy.

A land tax policy will be developed in 2013. The policy will propose the development of a land tax regime that would increase the cost of holding underused and unused land.

Recapitalisation and development

The Recapitalisation and Development Programme (RADP) is aimed at resuscitating all distressed land-reform projects implemented since 1994. In 2010/11, the department had planned to develop 504 farms under distress. It advertised 852 projects and 411 farms were selected for recapitalisation and development. Irrigation systems were installed in Boschhoek, Igalelo and at Nxamalala in Msinga in KwaZulu-Natal.

The department worked with its stakeholders towards revitalising seven defunct irrigation schemes at an estimated cost of R370 million. This project was expected to be implemented in 2011/12. It is envisaged that this programme will contribute a great deal to improving food security in the country.

By the end of September 2011, 595 farms under the RADP were at various stages of development. Good progress recorded under recapitalisation includes sugar cane in KwaZulu-Natal; red meat in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape; poultry in North West, Gauteng and Mpumalanga; and citrus in Eastern Cape, Limpopo and Western Cape.

A cumulative figure of 823 300 ha had been acquired and redistributed since 2009. Of these, 7 000 ha had been allocated to provide the core estate for the Cradock Bio-Ethanol Project in the Eastern Cape.

Within a short period of time, this programme has improved the productivity of land-reform projects. The success of this programme will go a long way towards providing food security.

Geospatial and cadastrial services

National Geospatial Information is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

In an effort to provide access to geospatial information (maps) to visually impaired persons, the National Geospatial Information component will produce a Braille atlas for each province over the next three years. Limpopo will be prioritised.

This component will continue its map literacy and map awareness training for adults and support to educators and school learners to promote the use of geospatial information. Priority will be given to rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of geospatial information and a record of the land at that time. It is necessary to "refresh" the aerial imagery regularly basis to record the changes taking place.

National Geospatial Information acquires aerial imagery annually. The CRDP sites have been prioritised.

The branch will also assist in creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans to existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The department has considered the adverse impact that disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people, and included in its strategy a disaster-management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

Cadastral surveys management

The Cadastral Surveys Management Branch aims to provide efficient cadastral survey-management services and cadastral information services in support of land delivery and development.

The programme is responsible for:

- regulating the Surveyor-General's (SG) offices
- examining and approving all surveys for the registration of land and real rights
- maintaining cadastral survey records
- archiving all cadastral surveys
- compiling, maintaining and revising maps of property boundaries
- providing cadastral advisory and spatial information services.

> During 2011, one of the flagship rural development programmes in the Eastern Cape was the Wild Coast Development Zone initiative. The Eastern Cape partnered with United Nations' agencies, national government, local government and the private sector to start off sustainable growth and development on the Wild Coast. A technical team was deployed to package and fast-track the implementation of projects in areas such as agriculture, forestry, agroprocessing and tourism, as well as infrastructure projects to revitalise small towns such as Port St Johns. It is expected that the initiative will leverage significant public and private investment in the region and create jobs.

SG offices have been decentralised to seven of the nine provinces. They are responsible for the examination and approval of all land surveyed in the country as depicted on diagrams, general plans and sectional plans prior to registration at the Deeds Registration Office.

The branch is also the sole custodian of cadastral information.

Cadastral information preserved and maintained at the offices of the SG assists the department in its analysis and planning of rural development initiatives. The officers also facilitate state land surveys and identify unsurveyed and unalienated state land.

Cadastral Surveys, together with Deeds Registration, deals with the land administration system by improving access of SG offices to the majority of the population in all the provinces, as well as improving the multimedia lodgement facility that was implemented in 2008.

Through its training unit, professional land surveyors, survey technicians and pupil survey officers will continue receiving training and development.

About 88% of the National Spatial Data Set was completed in 2010/11. The examined and approved diagrams, general plans and sectional plans, which have been archived, assisted in the updating of the National Spatial Data Set.

Deeds registration

The core functions of the Chief Directorate: Deeds Registration and the 10 deeds registries are to:

- register real rights in land
- maintain a public land register
- provide registration information
- maintain an archive of registration records.

The deeds registries are in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, A self-empowerment project initiated five years ago is improving the lives of 600 women in Swayimane, a disadvantaged rural community in KwaZulu-Natal. Through the Zimele (meaning "I am self-reliant" in isiZulu) Self Help and Savings Programme, a non-profit organisation that seeks to improve the quality of life in KwaZulu-Natal's rural areas, the women were able to start small businesses. The women were able to save more than R170 000 over the five years of the scheme's existence. Together with loans amounting to R292 932, the savings fund bankrolled the women's enterprises such as businesses in agriculture, crafts, retail and catering. It is also the driving force behind emerging cultural guest houses in the area.

In 2011, the group sold craft products to the value of R300 000 at an international trade market.

The participating women have empowered themselves with financial, business and social skills that saw them get out of the cycle of poverty.

Zimele Self Help and Savings has also started two early education centres in the area, where they offer quality education and day care to at least 45 children.

Zimele is encouraging women to enrol at their nearest adult basic education and training programme to eradicate illiteracy and empower themselves.

Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. This project entails establishing a deeds registry in Polokwane, Limpopo.

The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public to access information with regard to the following:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- the purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

By 31 March 2011, a total of 904 928 deeds and documents had been registered in the 10 deeds registries countrywide.

As far as the e-Cadastre Project is concerned, the enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records has commenced.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR)

The purpose of the restitution programme is to provide equitable redress to victims of racially motivated land dispossession, in line with the provisions of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994).

The aim of this commission is to resolve restitution claims within the target period through negotiated settlements that restore land rights or award alternative forms of equitable redress to claimants.

The intentions of the CRLR are to:

- facilitate access to land by victims of racially motivated land dispossessions that took place under the previous government
- alleviate poverty through sustainable development on restored land and improved livelihoods

One major socio-economic infrastructure development project, which commenced in 2011, is the Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela Legacy Bridge on the Mbhashe River, in the Eastern Cape. It joins two districts, OR Tambo to the east and Amathole to the west, and will cut the travel time between Mvezo Village, former President Mandela's birthplace, and its closest town, Dutywa, by at least 50 minutes.

This project, which will cost about R100 million and create some 100 jobs over a two-year period, is a partnership between the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and the Eastern Cape Department of Roads and Public Works. The overall project includes the construction of one additional low-water bridge along the road leading to the main bridge. The department is going to construct four other low-water bridges, two each in Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

Two other major socio-economic projects are underway in Nkandla and Skame (Vryheid) in KwaZulu-Natal. The Nkandla Project is the brainchild of the community's Hlalazi Smart Growth Development, together with the Masibambisane Trust. The department, working with other departments, both nationally and provincially, is supporting the community with technical skills, such as design and planning.

By June 2011, the project was at a feasibility and design phase. At Skame, the department has laid out bulk infrastructure for water and sanitation for 900 housing units. This project is a joint effort between the department and Abaqulusi District Municipality.

Indigenous people in South Africa have sustained their unique world views and associated knowledge systems for millennia, even while undergoing major social upheavals. Many of the core values, beliefs and practices associated with those world views have survived and are beginning to be recognised as having an adaptive integrity that is as valid for today's generations as it was for the past generations.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, through the Chief Directorate: Technology, Research and Development, embarked on an awareness campaign on indigenous knowledge at Comprehensive Rural Development Programme sites countrywide.

The awareness campaign project primarily seeks to recognise, collect, document, restore and exhibit indigenous knowledge systems (IKS) to protect, preserve and promote their existence. The project also intends to empower rural communities on ways through which they can improve their socio-economic status using IKS, such as patenting and commercialising their IKS products and instil pride in the use of IKS. The awareness workshops consist of traditional activities such as music, dance, poetry and African cuisine.

- foster the rights of vulnerable groups in terms of ownership and participation in economic activities
- foster national reconciliation and stability.

People dispossessed of land rights after 19 June 1913, in terms of racially discriminatory laws and practices, are entitled to restitution of that right or equitable redress.

All claims are against the State, and no one may be deprived of property except in terms of law of general application.

The restitution process is implemented in line with the provisions of Section 25 of the Constitution, which emphasises equitable redress.

The commission is committed to facilitating negotiations among all interested parties to settle the claims administratively.

The CRLR is led by the Chief Land Claims Commissioner and has nine regional offices headed by regional land claims commissioners.

The CRLR settled 457 claims between April 2010 and March 2011, benefiting 13 310 households. Consequently, 124 507 260 ha were restored and the cost of land paid amounted to over R800 million. The financial compensation paid to beneficiaries was over R460 million.

Acknowledgements

Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Pretoria News

www.info.gov.za

Suggested reading

Alden, C. 2009. *Land, Liberation and Compromise in Southern Africa*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
Bloom, J. 2009. *Rising Tide: How Freedom of Responsibility Uplifts Everyone*. South Africa: South African Institute of Race Relations.
De Villiers, B. 2008. *Land Reform: A Commentary*. Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.
De Villiers, B. 2008. *People and Parks: Sharing the Benefits*. Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.
Gibson, JL. 2009. *Overcoming Historical Injustices: Land Reconciliation in South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa*. Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.
Land, Memory, Reconstruction, and Justice: Perspectives on Land Claims in South Africa. 2010. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.
Nelson, F (ed). 2010. *Community Rights, Conservation and Contested Land: The Politics of Natural Resource Governance in Africa*. London: Earthscan.
Walker, C. 2008. *Landmarked: Land Claims and Land Restitution in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
Yanou, MA. 2009. *Dispossession and Access to Land in South Africa: An African Perspective*. Mankon, Bamenda: Langaa Research and Publishing CIG.

Science and technology

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

The science and technology (S&T) sector in South Africa is filled with examples of competence and excellence, and has immense potential to support South Africa in contributing to improving the country's development status, expanding economic growth and enhancing quality of life for many communities.

The aim of the Department of Science and Technology is to realise the full potential of S&T in the social and economic development of human resources (HR), research and innovation.

The department funds basic research at universities and public entities, including science councils, so that they can train scientists, engineers and technologists and produce publications and patents. Almost 60% of the department's R4,4 billion budget is spent on public entities. Of the overall research and development (R&D) spend, the greatest portion is on the natural, medical and health sciences.

Entrepreneurship and private-sector innovation are encouraged through an annual R200-million R&D tax incentive.

Some of the work being supported by the department includes its operation in a wide range of fields, from aerospace to palaeoanthropology; stem-cell research to nanotechnology; reviving African identity to understand social change; and advancing excellence in health and agriculture.

The focus for 2010/11 was to address the innovation chasm by establishing the National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO) as a government agency. By June 2011, an administrative NIPMO was established. Work is in progress towards establishing NIPMO as a stand-alone government component, which is a major step in stimulating innovation and economic growth for the country. The objective is to ensure that intellectual property (IP) created from publicly financed R&D is identified, protected and used for socio-economic benefits as well as IP management training.

Since the announcement of South Africa and Australia as potential candidates for the core of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio telescope, a number of initiatives have been undertaken to demonstrate the country's readiness.

To this end, South Africa has created a radio astronomy reserve in the Karoo, near the small town of Carnarvon in the Northern Cape.

The commissioning of the Karoo Array Telescope (KAT-7) was expected to be completed by the end of 2011. KAT-7 is a test bed for the Karoo Array Telescope known as the MeerKAT radio telescope array, which will start operations in 2016.

The MeerKAT passed its concept design review in July 2010. This was a major milestone in the construction of the 64-dish radio telescope in the Karoo Astronomy Reserve.

With 64 offset dishes, each 13,5 m in diameter, the MeerKAT will be one of the largest, most sensitive and scientifically most exciting radio telescopes in the world. It has attracted international interest from scientists, engineers and industry. MeerKAT is a true test for SKA engineering, as it encapsulates the dish-design specifications of the SKA antennae.

The Karoo Core Astronomy Advantage Area will contain the MeerKAT radio telescope and some of the core planned SKA radio telescopes that will be used for the purposes of radio astronomy and related scientific endeavours.

By July 2011, five years before the MeerKAT goes online, 43 000 hours of observing time, including a consortium led by internationally renowned astronomers, had been allocated for astronomy.

In November 2011, the Department of Science and Technology launched its *Full Moon Fever* Campaign to support the SKA bid with a play titled *African Stars* at the State Theatre in Pretoria.

The *Full Moon Fever* Campaign included events scheduled for the Friday or Saturday closest to the full moon of each month; S&T career exhibitions organised by the Tshwane University of Technology and the University of South Africa; and a nine-province tour of the *African Stars* production. South Africans were also urged to place messages of support for the bid on the SKA website.

It was announced in May 2012 that the SKA would be hosted by South Africa and Australia.

Legislation

Parliament has approved several laws, including the Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008), and the South African National Space Agency (Sansa) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008).

The Sansa Act, 2008 provides for the establishment of a national space agency, in line with the space S&T challenge, while the IPR Act, 2008 promotes the protection and commercialisation

South Africa has the third-largest biodiversity resource base in the world. Several biopiracy cases involving the pelargonium, rooibos and honey bush biological resources have recently been lodged with the European Patent Office. The Department of Science and Technology is supporting the Department of Trade and Industry in its initiative to amend intellectual property laws to broaden the protection that indigenous knowledge enjoys.

of IP derived from publicly financed R&D for the benefit of all South Africans.

It establishes the NIPMO and provides for the setting up of offices of technology transfer at institutions.

Policy framework

The Department of Science and Technology's 2002 National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS) and its 10-Year Innovation Plan of 2007 remain the basis for its interventions.

It continues to invest in, promote and catalyse innovation in South Africa according to national priorities, namely global change, renewable energy, space science, the bio-economy and human sciences.

By June 2011, the department had finalised the 10-Year Global Research Plan to guide research aimed at a better understanding of global environmental changes to provide a scientific basis for responses to climate change.

Ten-Year Innovation Plan

Since 2008, the Department of Science and Technology has focused primarily on implementing the 10-Year Innovation Plan, while continuing with the implementation of the NRDS.

The aim of the plan is to assist in establishing a knowledge-based economy for South Africa, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

Its success will be measured by the extent to which S&T contributes towards enhancing productivity, economic growth and socio-economic development.

The department has five strategic goals, namely to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the science system and thereby contribute to socio-economic development
- develop South Africa's knowledge-generation capacity
- develop appropriate human capital for research, development and innovation (RDI)
- build world-class RDI infrastructure
- position South Africa as a strategic international RDI partner and destination.

Expenditure on research and development

Over the past decade, R&D expenditure has grown fivefold from R4 billion to R21 billion. By 2011, there were 14 000 scientists, engineers, technologists, technicians, managers and other technical staff directly involved in R&D.

South African universities train more and more scientists each year, and by 2011 some 30% of science PhD students came from the rest of Africa. The Department of Science and Technology aims to spend R45 billion on R&D by 2014 to reach its target for gross expenditure on R&D of 1,5% of gross domestic product (GDP).

The department has strengthened its interaction with business leaders of companies that invest heavily in S&T, regarding programmes and the policies that impact on them, particularly the Research and Development Tax Incentive Programme. The tax incentive has been available since 2008, and between 2008 and 2011, companies have claimed R632 million back from the South African Revenue Service under the incentive.

Human-capital development

The Department of Science and Technology's Human Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at the development and renewal of science, engineering and technology (SET) human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

The subprogramme also develops science platforms that leverage South Africa's geographical advantages; and promotes SET, Mathematics, and innovation literacy and awareness.

By July 2011, the South African Square Kilometre Array Project Office had awarded almost 300 grants and scholarships worth about €15 million to students and scientists from several African countries. Some of this aid has been instrumental in helping to establish new radio astronomy and related undergraduate courses at universities in Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique and Zambia.

Early in 2011, about 272 interns graduated from the Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation (NRF) Internship Programme.

Since 2006, almost 750 interns have been hosted by various Department of Science and Technology institutions, including science councils, national facilities and museums. By 2011, R29 million had been invested in the programme, with a further R45 million earmarked for the next three years.

The initiative has proven valuable in increasing the HR science pool. In addition, 60% of interns have been absorbed as permanent employees by their host institutions.

At the sixth Science Centre World Congress in Cape Town in September 2011, the Minister of Science and Technology, Ms Naledi Pandor, announced the establishment of 26 science centres across South Africa. The centres are seen as vital to developing human capital and strengthening the country's S&T culture.

In October 2011, the Deputy Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Derek Hanekom, opened the first science centre in Mothibistad in the Northern Cape. Science centres aim to enhance S&T literacy among the youth and the public and to nurture youth talent with potential for S&T-based careers.

As part of the initial phase, the department equipped the science centre with interactive exhibits worth about R650 000. The Northern Cape Department of Education provided computers and software for the computer simulations done by the astronomy-awareness programme run by the South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO). This centre will provide support in the learning and teaching of Mathematics and Science to about 197 schools in the area.

In September 2011, the South African Young Academy of Science (SAYAS) was launched. The SAYAS is intended to facilitate and enhance the participation of young scientists in the mainstream of R&D across all disciplines and to provide young scientists with the opportunity to use their knowledge to address South Africa's socio-economic challenges.

A number of postdoctoral students receive funding through centres of excellence (CoEs) and the South African Research Chairs Initiative (SARChI), which was established in 2006.

The Department of Science and Technology launched the CoEs Programme in 2004 to support the development and funding of high-quality research of a globally excellent standard and to respond to the education and training of highly qualified individuals in the strategic areas of S&T and medicine. The CoEs are hosted by specific universities, but also draw on expertise from other institutions.

The SARChI is proving to be an effective instrument for developing human capital. The R200-million-a-year initiative supports 82 research-chair professors and 10 others co-funded by the business sector.

Half of the current research chairs works in the natural and agricultural sciences, while the other half works in health sciences, social sciences and humanities, and engineering. Most research chairs are in basic research fields, but there are a few in technology development and innovation. The majority of these research professors work at the country's six research-intensive universities.

By 2014, SARChi will be a R428 million-a-year initiative supporting 154 research chair professors. An extra 25 postdoctoral fellowships, each worth R180 000 a year for three years, will be created.

International science cooperation can be seen in the growth of the number of internally co-authored publications, particularly after 2004, and of citations, according to *Science Watch*. Papers co-authored with the United States of America (USA) rose from 1 700 to nearly 5 000 between 1994 and 2008. South Africa is strong in several fields, including computer science, environment/ecology, space science, immunology and clinical medicine.

Indigenous knowledge systems (IKS)

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

The Centurion Aerospace Village (CAV) was launched in November 2011. It is an initiative by the Department of Trade and Industry to develop a high-tech and advanced manufacturing aero-mechanical and defence cluster adjacent to the Waterkloof Air Force Base in Centurion.

While its primary aim is to integrate local aerospace and defence companies into the global supply chains to become suppliers of choice to original equipment manufacturers such as Boeing, Airbus and Spirit Aviation, the CAV will also be home to new process technologies within the aerospace sector.

In October 2011, the third International Conference on Science and Indigenous Knowledge Systems (IKS) was hosted by the School of Science and Mathematics and Institute of Public Administration of the University of the Western Cape.

The introduction of the Bachelor of IKS Degree at universities will produce unique knowledge and the human capital required to sustain the country's National System of Innovation.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information. Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies. By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The San and Khoi, the earliest people to live in South Africa, were among the first to record and document their struggles against the challenges of climate change through rock art that dates back almost 80 000 years.

Indigenous communities all over the world have used their local knowledge to interact with the environment.

The Department of Science and Technology has three IKS priorities. The first of these is the development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.

The second is the development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage, management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until verbally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect.

The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge. This system aims to collect successful grassroots community knowledge and experiences, which will prove to be a valuable resource in improving the understanding of how communities empower themselves to manage their own development.

In addition to the establishment of IKS documentation centres in KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo, an IKS documentation centre was also expected to be established in the Moruleng area in North West by the end of 2011/12. The department aims to establish IKS documentation centres in all the provinces by 2013.

The third strategic priority is applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be how, with funding from the NRF, the Medical Research Council (MRC) is developing the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in the North West, with the aim of producing a nutritional herbal tea for the commercial market.

The Department of Science and Technology has put in place validation systems within its science system to ensure that indigenous knowledge products are safe and backed by the best science in the world. To give further impetus to these critical initiatives, the department has set aside a dedicated fund to support research into indigenous knowledge.

The fund is open to all South African researchers, whether they are based in higher institutions of learning or in communities. In addition to funded research, the department has a vision of growing a new generation of researchers in the field of indigenous knowledge.

Two indigenous knowledge research chairs have been awarded as part of the SARChi. The first was awarded to the University of KwaZulu-Natal for work in the field of traditional medicines. The second has been awarded to the Walter Sisulu University. These two chairs represent significant injections into the development of national research capacity in IKS.

The Department of Science and Technology also established an indigenous knowledge studies CoE at the universities.

Science bodies

These include the:

- Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)
- Sansa
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci).

Technology Innovation Agency

TIA was established in terms of the TIA Act, 2008

The Intellectual Property (IP) Laws Amendment Bill was tabled in October 2011. It is the sequel of two policy processes, namely, the development of the Indigenous Knowledge Systems (IKS) Policy adopted in 2004 and the Policy on Protection of Indigenous Knowledge through the IP system in 2007.

(Act 26 of 2008). Its task is to channel the existing body of knowledge at universities and public research institutions towards the development of technology-based industries. TIA was formed after the merger of seven organisations funded by the Department of Science and Technology, including the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy, Biotechnology Partnerships and Development, Cape Biotech Trust, Innovation Fund, EcoBio LIFElab, Tshumisano Trust and Biopad Trust, and is mandated to stimulate and intensify technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The agency is set up to be a world-class innovation organisation that supports and enables technological innovation to achieve socio-economic benefits for South Africa by leveraging strategic partnerships.

The agency seeks to build on the achievements of its forming entities, by continuing to support innovation and product development in the sectors within which it operates.

The 15 technology stations and institutions of advanced tooling located at higher education institutions across the country made significant contributions towards helping TIA fulfil its mandate. They incubated and cultivated many promising ideas, and equipped many innovaters (including small, medium and micro-enterprises [SMMEs]) with the skills and expertise to produce and commercialise their products and services.

The Technology Stations Programme assisted 1 791 clients to produce over 323 prototypes, with pilot manufacturing resulting in 619 new and/or improved products and processes ready for commercialisation. TIA helped 647 SMMEs become internationally competitive, and thus able to export their products and services.

The Department of Science and Technology intends to create an institutional and policy framework that advances and sustains a coordinated and responsive National System of Innovation (NSI). TIA is the key agency in this regard.

By June 2011, about 26 investments had been identified; 11 had a very strong likelihood of enhancing job creation and socio-economic development; 11 others had proceeded beyond proof of concept stage; and four were ready for commercialisation.

In 2011, R433 million was allocated to TIA.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

The Naci Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997), mandates the council to advise the Minister of Science and Technology, through Cabinet, on the role and contribution of innovation (including S&T) to promote and achieve national objectives.

The advice should be directed at, among other things:

- coordinating and stimulating the NSI
- promoting cooperation within the NSI
- structuring, governing and coordinating the S&T system
- revising the innovation policy
- promoting strategies of all aspects of technological innovation
- identifying R&D priorities
- funding the S&T system.

In November 2011, the Department of Science and Technology; the Human Sciences Research Council's (HSRC) Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators; and the Naci hosted a workshop on measuring and monitoring innovation in South Africa. The purpose was to review the scope and objectives of the *South African Innovation Survey* and to evaluate other indicators that need to be monitored to better inform policy-making in this area.

The workshop also facilitated:

- learning from international practices and informing the methodology and approach for the innovation survey
- reviewing the lessons learnt from the *South African Innovation Survey*
- evaluating international practices for measurement and monitoring of innovation performance
- reviewing the interface between innovation measurement and policy-making in South Africa
- strengthening the national capacity for data-collection indicator monitoring.

South African National Space Agency

Sansa is mandated by the Sansa Act, 2008 to promote the peaceful use of space, foster international cooperation in space-related activities and create an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology through research, human-capital development, outreach programmes and infrastructure development.

In August 2011, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University announced senior Zoology lecturer Dr Kwezi Mzilikazi's selection as an honorary ambassador scientist for the Alexander von Humboldt Foundation.

Dr Mzilikazi is recognised as Africa's first black evolutionary physiologist due to her ground-breaking research into how small mammals cope with challenges posed by their environment.

The establishment of Sansa resulted in the merger and amalgamation of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) Satellite Applications Centre and the NRF's Hermanus Magnetic Observatory. By March 2011, all the requirements for the migration had been fulfilled, including transfer agreements with the CSIR and NRF, providing for the official establishment of Sansa on 1 April 2011.

South Africa's approach to space S&T is shaped by the National Space Strategy, which has three core objectives:

- capturing a share of the global market for small to medium-sized space systems with the intention of expanding investment in "micro" satellites, building on the existing SumbandilaSAT platform
- improving decision-making through the integration of space-based systems with ground-based systems for providing data
- developing applications for the provision of geospatial, telecommunications, timing, and positioning products and services.

In 2011/12, R93 million was allocated to Sansa. It was directed to assist the Department of Science and Technology in ensuring the provision of support to Sunspace in an effort to convert it into a viable satellite-manufacturing company.

The SumbandilaSAT satellite was designed and built in South Africa for the Department of Science and Technology by SunSpace, a company created by Stellenbosch University. SunSpace has secured orders from international clients for satellites and subsystems, and has demonstrated that it can train engineers in other emerging space nations.

In October 2011, Minister Pandor announced plans to build a third satellite as part of an African satellite constellation. The SumbandilaSat was damaged in July 2011.

While SumbandilaSat was a prototype or "pathfinder" satellite, the new satellite will be a fully operational shuttle costing about R400 million, compared to the R26 milion for SumbandilaSat. It will also be used for Earth observation, in line with South Africa's space strategy, which seeks to apply satellite data to improve livelihoods, reduce poverty and manage natural disasters.

In November 2011, Sansa assisted the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Nasa) of the USA as it launched the Curiosity rover to Mars. Sansa tracked the Atlas V-missile on behalf of Nasa through its Hartebeesthoek station as the spacecraft split from the missile, sending data and video images to Nasa.

Sansa has been involved in supporting 17 missions to the International Space Station.

Research areas

Biotechnology

South Africa's research institutions and universities are conducting biotechnology research to increase production of crops suited to local conditions, enhance crop nutritional value and improve preservation and processing methods, resulting in novel and improved food products.

Research is being conducted into understanding the nutritional components of food indigenous to South Africa, with the aim of making those with a high nutritional value available and accessible to most people.

Within the biotechnology space, South African researchers are doing the country proud. This is especially true in the area of tuberculosis (TB) research, where local researchers are working closely with national health institutes in drug discovery and the development of new potential drugs. The work being conducted at the University of Cape Town and at the CoE for Biomedical TB Research at Stellenbosch University and

Africa's involvement in space activities would help address the challenges of telecommunications, energy and food security on the continent, The Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, said at the opening of the 62nd International Astronautical Congress in Cape Town.

The International Astronautical Federation's prestigious annual congress, themed *African Astronaissance in 2011*, attracted thousands of space players from around the globe. It ran from 3 to 7 October 2011 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre.

This was the first time the congress was hosted in Africa.

The congress also coincided with World Space Week, an annual global space celebration that took place in 55 countries around the world from 4 to 10 October 2011.

at the National Health Laboratory Services, are world-class.

South Africa is classified as one of the 14 mega biotech countries in the world, and the only one in Africa. These countries have a special responsibility to ensure that the potential impact of genetically modified organisms on human or animal health and on the environment, together with their probable socio-economic impact, are carefully measured, assessed and estimated before they are released, thus ensuring a favourable risk-benefit ratio.

The objective of the Department of Science and Technology, as stated in the National Biotechnology Strategy (NBS), is to establish a sustainable and competitive biotech industry, which will result in the development of safe and beneficial products.

The biotechnology sector is attracting a fast-growing portion of R&D funding. South Africa is also committed to developing biotechnology in Africa.

Other initiatives include the establishment of biotechnology regional innovation centres (Brics), namely the Biopad, Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre. Brics were created as instruments for implementing the NBS, and cover a wide spectrum of subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bioinformatics and plant biotechnology.

TIA has absorbed the Brics and will significantly expand on the innovation development portfolios.

The Department of Science and Technology has launched the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme to ensure a clear and balanced understanding of the scientific principles, related issues and potential of biotechnology, and to stimulate public debate around its applications in society.

Biosafety

The aim is to make South Africa one of the top three emerging economies in the world in terms of the pharmaceutical, nutraceutical, flavour, fragrance and biopesticide industries by 2018.

Biosafety relates to the avoidance of risk to human and animal health, safety and prosperity, and to the environment, when researching, developing and commercialising the products of modern biotechnology.

The vision of Biosafety South Africa is to support innovation in biotechnology by ensuring the development of safe and sustainable biotechnological products. It promotes the biosafety of biotechnological products through the delivery of value-adding services and investment in strategic biosafety research.

Biosafety South Africa has:

- established firm collaborative partnerships with various international role players in biosafety, including the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology, the Biosafety Resource Network of the Donald Danforth Plant Science Centre and the New Partnership for Africa's Development's African Biosafety Network of Expertise
- developed and commissioned a wide range of strategic biosafety research projects and committed more than R5 million over the 2011 to 2013 period to strategic biosafety research
- established new capacity in South Africa for biosafety research by investing in research groups that had not previously undertaken any biosafety research, and funded 11 postgraduate bursaries.

In the delivery of the NBS, the Department of Science and Technology has set up the necessary instruments to drive biotechnology's commercialisation, a series of technology platforms to enable biotechnology development and a range of capacity-development initiatives to ensure there is human capital for the growing sector.

Astronomy

South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

In October 2010, the Department of Science and Technology established the Astronomy Desk to advise the Minister on substantive policy and

BioFISA is a three-year programme that is jointly funded by the Finnish Government and the Department of Science and Technology to build bioscience research capacity in southern Africa.

The programme is managed by the Southern Africa Network for Biosciences, which manages the funded projects in all bioscience nodes in southern Africa. It is also supported by the New Partnership for Africa's Development. The total amount expended in 2010/11 was R15, 3 million.

In May 2011, it was announced that the Department of Science and Technology would support the Stellenbosch Institute for Advanced Study (STIAS) with a grant of R6,526 million over three years.

Established in 2000, STIAS is the only multidisciplinary think tank for advanced study in Africa. The institute also focuses on nurturing and retaining the intellectual leadership of Africa. It attracts leading international scholars and researchers.

Support for STIAS will complement some of the department's other initiatives, such as the Africa Institute for Mathematical Sciences, the African Laser Centre, the Southern African Network for Biosciences and the newly launched African Doctoral Academy.

strategic matters regarding the development of astronomy. The Astronomy Desk submitted its report to the Minister in March 2011. Key among its recommendations was the establishment of a dedicated national astronomy entity whose main function would be to unite all astronomy activities under a single umbrella body.

The Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) was launched in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

This is a multimillion-rand project involving Germany, Poland, the USA, New Zealand and the United Kingdom. It is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

As a region, southern Africa is already internationally recognised in the area of astronomy. The region has major astronomy facilities that include Salt and the High Energy Stereoscopic System gamma-ray telescope in Namibia.

Economically, the SKA represents the largest science-based capital injection into the African economy by far. The estimated total investment is in the order of €1,5 billion (R15 billion). This investment will result in a number of immediate and long-term socio-economic benefits accruing to the entire continent.

Immediate benefits are in the form of R&D opportunities during the design phase. Scientists from universities across the continent have an opportunity to participate in the design of SKA novel technologies and instrumentation.

The construction phase of the SKA will generate localised direct benefits in the form of jobs, procurement and sourcing of local materials in each of the partner countries. A combination of these benefits will contribute to improvement in the sub-Saharan GDP.

In addition to the immediate or short-term benefits, there are numerous long-term benefits for the general community at large. Because of the scientific nature of the project, the biggest benefit will be the improvement of the skills base and access to top international research facilities and networks which, in turn, will boost output of scientific publications.

The SKA science provides opportunities for the development of new algorithms and underlying Mathematics for manipulating large data sets, new imaging technologies and techniques and new information and communication technology (ICT) skills beyond what is currently available. These are essential skills which may be applied in other productive sectors of the economy.

The Assembly of Heads of State and Government of the African Union (AU) have adopted a declaration expressing the AU's support for Africa's bid to host the SKA with core stations in South Africa and outer stations in Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia and Zambia.

The African Ministerial Council on Science and Technology recognised the SKA as a flagship project. The whole of the Northern Cape, excluding Sol Plaatje Municipality, has been declared an astronomy advantage area for optical and radio-astronomy purposes in terms of Section Five of the Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007).

Five new research chairs dedicated to the SKA project were created at leading South African universities and filled by international astronomers and cosmologists, with funding for 15 years committed to these.

Some of the SKA's African partners are doing valuable work building new telescopes or converting redundant satellite telecommunications antennae to establish what will be known as Africa's Very Long Baseline Interferometry (VLBI) Network.

VLBI is significant for imaging cosmic radio sources, or for applications in astrometry. It can also be used to precisely map the movements of the Earth's tectonic plates. When used in conjunction with other economically beneficial facilities such as global positioning systems, VLBI networks can improve the accuracy of surveying and mapping in a country.

For this reason, South Africa is assisting Ghana with the construction of a radio telescope using a communications antenna that was acquired by the Ghanaian Government. The radio telescope is expected to boost postgraduate research and teaching programmes in radio astronomy.

If linked to the MeerKAT as an anchor, the African VLBI Network will provide unparalleled resolution in the southern hemisphere. It will effectively look like a pre-phase I of the SKA, thereby demonstrating the seriousness of Africa's bid to host the SKA.

The 62nd International Astronomical Congress was held in Cape Town in October 2011.

The 34th International School for Young Astronomers was scheduled to take place in February 2012 in Cape Town. It is organised jointly by the International Astronomical Union, the SAAO and the University of Cape Town (UCT).

The International Astronomical Union (IAU) global Office of Astronomy for Development (OAD) was launched in March 2011 at the headquarters of the South African Astronomical Observatory.

The OAD is a partnership between the IAU and the South African National Research Foundation to coordinate a wide range of worldwide activities designed to use astronomy as a tool for education and development. This is part of the realisation of a visionary decadal plan by the IAU, entitled *Astronomy for the Developing World*, which aims to use astronomy to stimulate development at all levels including primary, secondary and tertiary education, science research and the public understanding of science, building on the success of the International Year of Astronomy 2009.

Nanotechnology

Nanotechnology, unlike other technologies, can find applications in virtually all areas of human life. In spite of it being in its beginning stages, some of the known issues related to nanotechnology suggest a wide spectrum of potential societal impact. For a society to switch from a merely passive, observational role to one of active participation in the public discourse about nanotechnology must be encouraged.

Known as "the technology of the very small" (that is about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

These include aerospace, the manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

The department has stepped up investment in emerging research areas in general and the National Nanotechnology Strategy in particular. Two nanotechnology innovation centres were established at the CSIR and Mintek. The two nano-innovation centres have a budget of R134 million over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

In 2011, the department acquired a world-class, R30-million high-resolution transmission electron microscope that was expected to be be commissioned in the latter part of the year.

The state-of-the-art electron microscope, one of just 15 in the world and the first in Africa, is housed in the new R120-million Centre for High-Resolution Transmission Electron Microscopy (HRTEM) at Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University in Port Elizabeth.

The Japanese-made instrument is the most powerful high-resolution microscope in Africa, enabling scientists to analyse materials down to atomic level, and making the university a new continental hub for nanoscience research.

The analytical attachments of the instrument make it versatile, with applications ranging across fields as diverse as materials engineering, metallurgy, chemistry, zoology, geology and botany.

The HRTEM was established in collaboration with the NRF; the departments of science and technology and higher education and training; and Sasol.

The National Nanotechnology Strategy focuses on nanotechnology in the area of health as one of its goals. This is the Mintek nanotechnology centre's speciality. It has already developed prototype point-of-care diagnostic tools for diseases such as TB and malaria.

In addition, there are several flagship projects in some of the country's nanotechnology development programmes. In particular, there is the nanotechnology-based TB drug-delivery system, a project led by the CSIR.

The project seeks to address the challenges of the current TB treatment regimen, with the ultimate goal of reducing the frequency and quantity of dosages. This will also reduce the cost of treatment. Through this project, existing TB drugs will be encapsulated into a biodegradable nano-polymer for slow release in the system.

By March 2011, the CSIR and the project team had successfully encapsulated all four first-line TB drugs in nano-polymer using technology they patented. With the project conducting clinical

The Department of Science and Technology sponsors Dinaledi learners' participation in the National Science Olympiad through its Youth in Science Programme. It planned an increase in sponsorship from 11 000 learners in 2010 to 20 000 in 2012. Science centres are another important part of the Youth into Science Strategy. A total of 90 schools in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and Gauteng stood to benefit from curriculum-based science experiments provided through mobile laboratories. During 2011/12, the number of mobile laboratories were expected to increase from three to seven.

trials, prospects for success are looking good. The novelty of the project and its commendable progress saw the team receiving several awards, including a grant from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation.

Identification of potential risks associated with nanotechnology and the development of strategies for mitigation should be integral parts of nanotechnology research and development.

As far as safety is concerned, South Africa has embarked on processes for the establishment of a nanotechnology risk-identification-and-mitigation research platform.

The Department of Science and Technology, in partnership with the University of the Western Cape and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, hosted the second nanoscience and nanotechnology summer school in November 2011, targeting Honours and Master's Degree students interested in the nanoscience and nanotechnology fields.

The vision for the school is to create a pool of nanoscientists sufficiently trained to conduct nanoscience research. The theme for 2011 was *Nanoscience Characterisation Techniques*.

Palaeosciences

The South African Strategy for Palaeosciences (incorporating palaeontology, palaeo-anthropology and archaeology) was published for public comment in September 2011. The NRDS describes palaeosciences as a scientific area in which South Africa has a geographic advantage, therefore the strategy provides a holistic framework for the development of this discipline, building on the African Origins Platform.

The strategy addresses five goals centred on:

- building human capital
- providing resource support and an enabling environment to curate and research the country's palaeoscience treasures
- engaging the public in all spheres of the field
- recognising the importance of developing a national network of sites to create a vibrant and lasting public engagement with the country's palaeosciences.

Information and communications technology

The Department of Science and Technology is leading the implementation of the national ICT RDI Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the advancement of ICT RDI in South Africa.

The ICT RDI Strategy aims to achieve a marked increase in advanced HR capacity, promote world-class research and build robust innovation chains for the creation of new high-tech ICT small enterprises. Implementing the strategy demands partnerships involving government, the private sector, Higher Education (HE) institutions and science councils.

The Meraka Institute of the CSIR manages and coordinates the implementation of the strategy. An important envisaged outcome is a vibrant, sustainable and innovative indigenous ICT industry that addresses a significant portion of the country's ICT needs and attracts investments by overseas-based multinational ICT corporations in RDI and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), the South African National Research Network (Sanren) and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyberinfrastructure that the Department of Science and Technology supports.

The CHPC in Cape Town was the first of its kind in South Africa. Hosted by the UCT and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

It supports a diverse base of researchers and scientists, and facilitates the collaboration and multidisciplinary approach needed to solve complex computational problems, advancing South Africa's research capabilities in areas such as advanced manufacturing, space science and research into infectious diseases.

The high-speed computational infrastructure has 50 terabytes of storage space and 160 computer nodes (640 processors) in a clustered architecture. It has a peak performance of around 2,5 teraflops per second.

Sanren, which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic

In September 2011, the National Research Foundation (NRF) announced the recipients of the NRF President's Awards 2011, which honour the career achievements of rated researchers acknowledged by their peers as world leaders in their fields.

The following researchers received A-ratings:

- Prof. Frank Brombacher: University of Cape Town (UCT)
- Prof. David Glasser: University of the Witwatersrand (Wits)
- Prof. Shabir Madhi: Wits
- Prof. John Pettifor: Wits
- Prof. Lyn Wadley: Wits
- Prof. George Janelidze: UCT
- Prof. Alan Weinberg: University of South Africa.

Other awards included:

- Lifetime Achievement Award: Prof. Malegapuru W Makgoba: University of KwaZulu-Natal
- Transformation of the Science Cohort Award: Prof. Bongani M Mayosi: UCT
- Champions of Transformation Capacity Development at South African Higher Education Institutions Award: Prof. Yusef Waghid: Stellenbosch University.

and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).

A major project for Sanren is the national backbone network, which aims to connect all major metros in the country with a 10-gigabyte-per-second link. Phase One of this project was completed in November 2011, linking Salt in Sutherland and the proposed SKA site with Cape Town. On completion, the network will reach about 200 sites, both nationally and internationally. The overall network architecture will consist of a national backbone connecting Durban, Pretoria, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and East London; with metro rings in Johannesburg, Tshwane, eThekwini and Cape Town.

In August 2011, the CHPC announced it was working with the Cape Universities Brain Imaging Centre on a long-term project that would analyse structural brain changes in subjects suffering from mental diseases such as schizophrenia, obsessive compulsive disorder and bipolar mood disorder.

International science and technology cooperation

In 2011, the Department of Science and Technology grew its portfolio of over 60 international R&D partnerships. One of these is BioFISA, its biotechnology partnership with the Government of Finland. This national and regional collaboration includes 12 Southern African Development Community (SADC) member states, with a hub at the CSIR.

The department accessed over R300 million in international funding support for South African researchers, leading several important initiatives. It is also liaising with Algeria, Kenya and Nigeria on the African satellite project. South Africa continues its active engagement with the European Union (EU), having established policy dialogue on space science, energy and social sciences, and humanities. This resulted in specific EU Framework Programme calls for proposals aimed at addressing South African and African challenges.

The ongoing dialogue resulting from the AU-EU partnership resulted in the first EU Framework Programme Africa Call, where significant research funds were allocated to S&T research in Africa.

In September 2011, South Africa hosted the International Cooperation National Contact Points Conference, confirming Africa's efforts to collaborate with the rest of the world in using S&T to harness economic development.

National Research Foundation

As an independent government agency, the NRF promotes and supports research in all fields of knowledge. It also conducts research and provides access to national research facilities.

The NRF's three main functions are to:

- support research and innovation, through its agency, Research and Innovation Support and Advancement (Risa)
- encourage an interest in S&T through its business unit, the South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta)
- facilitate high-end research through its national research facilities.

SAP Africa and the Department of Science and Technology announced their support for an advanced human-capital development programme in information and communications technology (ICT) in South Africa in November 2011, by signing a memorandum of understanding.

SAP and the department first joined forces in 2006. Since then, South Africa has seen over R140 million injected into joint ICT research and development activities. The partnership has also given rise to new and exciting innovations within the ICT sector, including the establishment of the SAP-Meraka Unit for Technology Development.

Funding from the NRF is largely directed towards academic research, developing high-level HR and supporting national research facilities. Funding opportunities cover the full spectrum of beneficiaries: from students and researchers through to institutions and staff, and from scientists involved in bilateral and multilateral joint research projects to private individuals or companies and science councils.

Through Risa, the NRF:

- invests in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- develops the workforce, particularly previously disadvantaged men and women, to help all researchers unlock their full creative potential
- facilitates partnerships and knowledge networks
- supports and provides S&T information to guide and steer strategic decisions.

Through Saasta, the NRF:

- steers young minds towards careers in S&T
- interacts with the public on SET issues
- communicates the advances of S&T to the public.

Through the national research facilities, the NRF:

- provides access to unique technologies, research methods and information
- provides state-of-the-art research platforms
- offers access to networking opportunities and international collaboration.

The objectives of the NRF Strategic Plan, NRF Vision 2015, include:

- promoting internationally competitive research as the basis for a knowledge economy
- growing a representative S&T workforce in South Africa
- providing cutting-edge research, technology and innovation platforms
- operating world-class evaluation and grant-making systems
- contributing to a vibrant national innovation system.

The NRF aims to contribute to the knowledge economy in South Africa by attaining at least 1% of global R&D output by 2015. The Department of Science and Technology allocated R1,089 billion to the NRF in 2011/12.

In 2010/11, the NRF's highlights included:

- a fourfold increase in the number of female postgraduate students supported through CoEs
- Risa's grant investment in research equipment at research institutions and national research facilities totalled R186 million
- 599 students, 258 of whom female and 411 of whom black, in Chemistry being supported by contract and core grants
- doctoral students supported by the NRF totalling 1 937
- the first carbon-footprint study for the NRF being undertaken
- a R324-million investment in research areas where South Africa has a geographic advantage
- the completion rate for applications for NRF rating coming to 99,8%
- Risa disbursing a total of R1 billion (81%) in available grant funding
- a 93% increase of post-doctoral students being supported
- a R1,3-billion investment in research grants (including bursaries and scholarships)
- a 37% increase in grant expenditure
- an increase of 28% in total income received
- additional support from the department coming to R255 million to expand bursaries, support for women and young researchers and to upgrade infrastructure.

The National Research Foundation's role in the National System of Innovation

The NRF is a funding agency for research through its Risa division within the NSI, an implementing policy and it is also a research-performing institution mostly through its National Research Facilities division. The foundation is involved in areas such as the following:

- The NRF supports the Department of Science and Technology's Youth into Science Strategy. This strategy promotes S&T literacy among the public in general and the youth in particular. Through Saasta, the NRF supports competitions, camps and olympiads, all of which aim to identify students who have talent and potential

Professor Tebello Nyokong, director of the Nanotechnology Innovation Centre at Rhodes University, received the 2011 Distinguished Women in Chemistry Award from the Royal Society of Chemistry – Europe's largest organisation for advancing the chemical sciences – and the Pan-Africa Chemistry Network. It is not the first time she has received international recognition for her work in chemistry and nanotechnology. In 2009, she became the first South African scientist in Physical Sciences and one of only five women in the world to win the prestigious L'Oréal-United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation Award for Women in Science.

South Africa's Professor Malegapuru Makgoba was elected vice-president of the International Council for Science in October 2011. Makgoba is a trained physician and an internationally recognised molecular immunologist. He will serve as vice-president for three years, while continuing to serve as vice-chancellor of the University of KwaZulu-Natal. Makgoba was also the recipient of the 2011 National Research Foundation President's Lifetime Achievement Award.

from an early age, and encourages the country's youth to participate in science.

- The South African Nanotechnology Strategy aims to increase the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. The Nanotechnology Equipment Programme, which resides in the NRF, provides the infrastructure that forms the foundation of nanotechnology flagship research projects.
- The departments of labour, basic education, higher education and training, and science and technology are responsible for ensuring that training in scarce skills takes place, especially in the fields of S&T. The NRF manages the funds allocated for this purpose.

The NRF contributes to the Department of Science and Technology's 10-year Innovation Plan through developing:

- knowledge capital
- human capital
- knowledge infrastructure.

Business units

Research and Innovation Support and Advancement

Risa is the agency that translates government's S&T strategies and policies into programmes and initiatives that support research institutions and researchers.

Risa promotes and supports research and research-capacity development in all fields of knowledge and technology by:

- investing, on a competitive basis, in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- developing research capacity and advancing equity and equality to unlock the full creative potential of researchers
- assisting with the development of institutional capacity at HE institutions
- facilitating strategic national and international partnerships and knowledge networks
- supporting science advancement through science awareness platforms, communication and education.

South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement

As a business unit of the NRF, Saasta's mandate is to advance public awareness, appreciation and engagement of SET in South Africa. Through its outreach and awareness programmes, Saasta aims to entice students to pursue careers in science, and to instil enthusiasm and appreciation for science and its application in people's everyday lives. Saasta provides the infrastructure and competency platform to spread the message about science to learners, educators and the public.

All Saasta initiatives – from its travelling exhibits and competitions through to educator and learner programmes – fall under three key strategic areas:

- Education: through which Saasta builds up a supply of future scientists and innovators. The initiatives under this umbrella are:
  - school science support
  - SET careers
  - science resources.
- Communication: through which Saasta shares S&T achievements with the public to encourage an enthusiasm and appreciation of science benefits. The initiatives under this umbrella are:
  - science and the media
  - science promotion
  - science communication and capacity-building.
- Awareness: through which Saasta engages the public with the phenomena of SET.

Saasta, through a combination of in-house facilities and programmes, outreach and mobile awareness initiatives, competitions, festivals and events such as INSITE, SciFest African, National Science Week and Sasol Techno-X, have gone a long way towards clarifying the role of science in a fun and practical way for learners. The

In August 2011, the Department of Science and Technology's National Science Week embraced several social media platforms to more effectively achieve its science awareness objectives.

The 2011 event, held at over 90 venues countrywide, used various Internet-based communities, including Facebook and Twitter, to further promote an awareness and appreciation of science in South African society. The theme was *The Role of Science in Economic Development*.

Since its inception in 2000, National Science Week has taken science, engineering and technology to over 500 000 learners.

awareness unit manages an impressive collection of travelling exhibits and programmes that help to spread the word on science at festivals and through exhibitions throughout the year, and around the country.

National research facilities

The seven national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

South African Astronomical Observatory

The SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. It is a facility of the NRF under the Department of Science and Technology. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa. The SAAO headquarters are in Observatory in Cape Town. The main telescopes used for research are located at the SAAO observing station near Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

It is also responsible for managing the operations of the Salt.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO has been established as the national facility for radio-astronomy research in South Africa. Its primary function is to support research and training in radio astronomy and space geodesy.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

The Saiab serves as a research hub for aquatic biodiversity in southern Africa by housing and developing the National Fish Collection and associated resource collections as research tools and sources of aquatic biodiversity data.

It also generates knowledge on aquatic biodiversity through interactive and collaborative scientific research, and disseminates scientific knowledge at all levels.

The Saiab Collection Facility has about 80 000 fish specimens and contains at least 650 000 individual fish specimens.

The National Zoological Gardens has been involved in efforts to ensure the long-term survival of the Arabian Oryx (*Oryx leucoryx*). In June 2011, it announced that the species had been officially declared less threatened in the 2011 *Red List* of the International Union for Conservation of Nature and down-listed to "vulnerable".

South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

The Saeon establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories and field stations or sites) linked to an information-management network. These nodes serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that aim to advance the understanding of ecosystems and enhance the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG plays a major role in the ex-situ conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa, made up of over 7 000 individual animal specimens representing over 600 species.

These are managed across four sites stretching into the provinces of Gauteng, Limpopo and North West. African species comprise about 70% of the animal collection and global species 30%.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered-species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of continental and global significance.

In 2011, five years of collaborative research carried out by the NZG and several international institutions on cheetah populations in Africa and Asia culminated in a new conservation approach that will ensure the survival of the species.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences is a group of multidisciplinary research laboratories administered by the NRF. Based at two sites in the Western Cape and Gauteng, these provide facilities for:

- basic and applied research using particle beams

- particle radiotherapy for the treatment of cancer
- the supply of accelerator-produced radioactive isotopes for nuclear medicine and research.

Science councils

The statutory science councils are a key part of South Africa's NSI. Through them, government is able to directly commission research in the interest of the nation, and support technology development in its precompetitive phase.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC was established by the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), and is the principal agricultural-research institution in South Africa. It conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information. It also commercialises research results.

Six objectives form the basis of its strategic plan:

- generating, developing and applying new knowledge and S&T for agriculture to meet the demands for increased food production, food security and poverty alleviation
- promoting the sustainable use and management of natural resources to ensure a competitive agriculture sector and increasing wealth for people and industries dependent on natural resource-based agriculture
- improving nutrition and food security and safety by improving crop and livestock production systems, including seed security
- providing information and technical solutions that enable the agriculture sector to manage and mitigate agricultural risks, including threats to the agricultural production value chain from natural disasters, diseases, pests and agricultural practice
- disseminating information and transfering technology emanating from R&D
- achieving organisational growth and sustainability.

The ARC's functions are carried out through 11 research institutes whose activities are grouped under five divisions:

- field crops (grain and industrial crops)
- horticulture
- animal production and health

In 2011, the Department of Science and Technology provided skills-development training in intellectual property management at two summer schools in collaboration with the World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO). Further training throughout the year was supported by WIPO, Oxford University's Isis Innovation and Waikatolink of New Zealand's University of Waikato.

- natural resources and engineering
- technology transfer.

The ARC is also responsible for maintaining national assets and undertaking programmes or rendering services that are required from time to time by the department and other stakeholders.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR's mandate is stipulated in the Scientific Research Council Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1988), as amended by Act 71 of 1990, Section Three.

The CSIR aims to foster industrial and scientific development, either by itself or in cooperation with principals from the private or public sectors, thereby contributing to the improvement of the quality of life of the people of South Africa, through directed and particularly multidisciplinary research and technological innovation.

The CSIR is one of the leading S&T, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa, with its main site in Pretoria. The organisation is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices.

The generation and application of knowledge resides at the core of the CSIR. It transfers the knowledge generated through research activities by means of technology and skilled people.

Research areas include:

- biosciences
- built environment
- defence, peace, safety and security
- ICT
- laser technology
- materials science and manufacturing
- modelling and digital science
- mineral resources
- space technology
- natural resources and the environment
- mobile intelligent autonomous systems
- nanotechnology
- synthetic biology.

> One of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research's highlights in 2011 was the development of a new fingerprint classification and recognition technique. The structural fingerprint classifier can correctly classify a fingerprint with only partial information, which is a world first.

In 2011/12, R687 million was allocated to the CSIR.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation, which reports to the Minister of Minerals and Energy. About 35% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements and joint-venture private-sector companies. Mintek has about 780 permanent staff members, more than half of whom are scientists, engineers and other technical R&D specialists.

Mintek's key objectives include:

- developing efficient mineral-processing technologies and sustainable value-added products and services
- Second-Economy interventions
- human and organisational development
- good governance.

The Department of Mineral Resources granted Mintek R90 million over the 2011/14 period for the rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines in South Africa.

Human Sciences Research Council

The core business of the HSRC is to conduct large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific projects for public-sector users, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and international development agencies. This is done in partnership with researchers globally, but specifically in Africa.

As the national social-science council of South Africa, the HSRC serves as knowledge hub to bridge the gap between research, policy and action; thus increasing the impact of research. This is achieved through collaboration with key constituencies, including government, other research organisations, multinational agencies, universities, NGOs, and donor and development organisations.

With a staff complement of almost 500, comprising professional researchers, as well as technical and administrative support staff, based in six offices in four different provinces across South Africa, the HSRC is well equipped to respond flexibly and comprehensively to current and emerging needs. Its six multidisciplinary research programmes and research centres are focused on user needs. The following units make up the HSRC:

- Education and Skills Development
- Economic Performance and Development
- Population Health, Health Systems and Innovation
- HIV, AIDS, Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and TB (including the Africa-wide research network, Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS Research Alliance)
- Democracy, Governance and Service Delivery
- Human and Social Development.

The HSRC operates two centres, namely the Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators; and the Centre for the Study of the Social and Environmental Determinants of Nutrition.

In 2010/11, the HSRC undertook more than 150 projects and an assortment of initiatives.

Medical Research Council

The MRC was established in July 1969 as an independent statutory body to coordinate health and medical research activities throughout South Africa, operating as a statutory science council functioning within the ambit of the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), as well as the Public Entities Act, 1997 (Act 30 of 1997).

The MRC's objectives are:

- promoting health and quality of life of South Africa's population
- performing such functions as may be assigned to the MRC by or under this Act.

Health RDI is the core business of the MRC. During the past five years, the MRC research priorities were defined in a way that recognises the complementary relationships of three quite different, but synergistic, focal areas of health research:

- the population's health
- disease and disease mechanisms
- systems, settings and policy.

The MRC falls under the ambit of the Department of Science and Technology and the NSI, while having a direct line function with the Department of Health. A major goal set by government in the Medium Term Strategic Framework for 2009 to 2014 is to improve the health profile of all South Africans – in line with the aims of the South African Constitution.

The Department of Science and Technology and other departments have committed to help achieve this goal. The Department of Health adopted a new set of priorities called the 10-Point Plan, with a focus on four output areas which are part of the Health Service Delivery Agreement:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality rates
- combating HIV, AIDS and STIs
- decreasing the burden of disease from TB
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

These outputs link to the millennium development goals four, five and six respectively; addressing child mortality, maternal health and combating HIV and AIDS and other diseases.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in 1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

The Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), established the CGS in its present form. The council is a modern institution, boasting excellent facilities and expertise, ranking among the best in Africa.

The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 to mandate the CGS to be the custodians of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors.

A state-of-the-art electronic corporate relational database, which integrates dedicated modular databases for specific applications such as mineral deposits, boreholes, geochemistry and engineering geology into a comprehensive Geographic Information System, has been developed.

The drawing office produces a wide variety of geoscientific maps, using both conventional and electronic cartographic technologies.

The activities of the CGS include:

- geological, metallogenic and geotechnical mapping
- economic geology
- engineering geological site investigations
- airborne and ground-based geophysical surveys and interpretations
- geochemical surveys
- seismology
- ground-water investigations
- coastal-erosion studies
- marine geology
- environmental impact assessments
- palaeontology
- geographic information system development and spatial database design
- laboratory services
  - wet-chemical determinations
  - geotechnical analytical services
  - optical- and electron microscopy
  - petrographic descriptions
  - mineralogy
  - X-ray diffractometry
  - X-ray fluorescence
- data analysis, design and compilation of geoscience databases
- information management and dissemination
- map production:
  - geological maps
  - geophysical maps, including magnetic, radiometric and gravity maps
  - seismic hazard maps
  - metallogenic maps
- geoscience publications in various formats.

The National Geoscience Library contains a comprehensive collection of geoscience publications in South Africa, consisting of about 17 000 books and more than 2 800 journal titles.

The Map Library has a collection of more than 14 000 sheet maps, with a large portion of this collection devoted to maps of Africa.

The CGS maintains a prospecting borehole-log collection of over 72 000 borehole logs acquired from prospecting and mining companies.

The national Geoscience Museum provides educational facilities and information to scholars, tourists and members of the public in the form of displays; multimedia kiosks; rock-, mineral- and fossil-identification services; brochures; and worksheets. The museum's gem, mineral, meteorite and rock collection is recognised as one of the best of its kind in Africa.

The National Core Library contains a large collection of borehole cores and cuttings from South African geological strata, collected over a period of more than 25 years.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that operates in terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act 8 of 2008), as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services. The SABS:

- publishes national standards, which it prepares through a consensus process in technical committees
- provides information on national standards of all countries as well as international standards
- tests and certifies products and services to standards
- develops technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitors and enforces compliance with such technical regulations
- monitors and enforces legal metrology legislation
- promotes design excellence
- provides training on aspects of standardisation.

To maximise its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of the SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that will be easily available to clients. The seven industry sectors are:

- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials
- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

In October 2011, President Jacob Zuma officially opened the SABS' new testing laboratories in Pretoria. These will play a critical role in the SABS' conformity assessment services and improve customer services.

In November 2011, the SABS hosted the 13th International Meeting of the International Standardisation Organisation Technical Committee, 229 Nanotechnologies. International standardisation plays a critical role in ensuring that the full potential of nanotechnology is realised and that nanotechnology is safely integrated into society.

Other scientific and research organisations and structures

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

Sasol

Sasol's culture of innovation began in the 1950s when it developed its unique blend of coal gasification and Fischer-Tröpsch (FT) technology for its original coal-to-liquids operations at Sasolburg. It has since evolved these operations into fully fledged R&D facilities that form the heart of the Sasol Technology R&D group. Focused FT R&D in the 1980s and 1990s led to the development of the low temperature FT Sasol Slurry Phase process used at Sasolburg, and the high-temperature Sasol Advanced Synthol™ Process used at Secunda.

Sasol Technology's Fuels Technology Division carries out work concerning fuels, lubricants, heating-fuel and road-binding material, R&D and new-product formulation and testing at Sasolburg.

In addition, Sasol opened the Sasol Fuels Application Centre (SFAC), a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust emission testing and research facility, in Cape Town. The SFAC enables Sasol to conduct sea-level engine and emission tests in line with international standards.

In October 2011, the Department of Science and Technology and Sasol ChemCity launched a plant-oils and -extracts facility in Tzaneen, Limpopo, in an effort to create sustainable livelihoods in the area. The Nkowankowa Demonstration Centre will run a R13,9-million development project over the next three years, extracting various fruit and plant oils with a view to establishing their viability in the cosmetics sector.

Funded by the Department of Science and Technology, the establishment of the facility is informed by the department's objective to apply innovative technology to local natural resources to create sustainable employment in areas of need.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is a global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. It is a leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging.

The group is a leader in R&D and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw material and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS forms a national network of integrated pathology laboratories that use common laboratory management systems and transport networks to facilitate the transport of specimens, referral of tests to reference laboratories and delivery of results.

The NHLS has 265 laboratories and employs about 6 500 people. Their activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services; research, teaching and training; and producing sera for anti-snake venom, reagents and media. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

Research conducted by the NHLS covers a wide spectrum of activities in all pathology disciplines. Grants in support of research are made by the MRC, the Cancer Association of South Africa, the South African Sugar Association, Poliomyelitis Research Foundation, pharmaceutical companies, private donors and a number of overseas institutions, among others. A large part of the research programme is financed by the NHLS itself from the earnings of its laboratory services.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy-makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme are undertaken.

Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri)

Ieri was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation.

Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and community engagement in this field of study. Its tasks involve:

- conducting research on the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought-leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

Institute for Security Studies (ISS)

The ISS works towards a stable and peaceful Africa characterised by sustainable development, human rights, the rule of law, democracy, collaborative security and gender mainstreaming.

The ISS realises this vision by:

- undertaking applied research, training and capacity-building
- working collaboratively with others
- facilitating and supporting policy formulation
- monitoring trends and policy implementation
- collecting, interpreting and disseminating information
- networking on national, regional and international levels.

Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa)

The Aisa was first established in 1960 as a non-profit organisation. It is a statutory body following the Aisa Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001).

The organisation has long been at the forefront of research and training on African affairs. The Aisa has contributed to fostering a new generation of research specialists, and has also been able to produce some of the finest research on contemporary African affairs by having its researchers conduct field research every year throughout the African continent.

It is involved in community outreach programmes, providing maps and other resources to underprivileged schools in rural South Africa.

The department allocated R32 million to the Aisa in 2011/12.

General research areas

Mine-safety research

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines. The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

Energy research

South Africa's National Energy Research Institute (Saneri) is the public entity entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public-interest energy research, development and demonstration. Saneri was established in October 2004 as a subsidiary of the Central Energy Fund (Pty) Ltd, the State energy company in South Africa.

In August 2011, the Minister of Science and Technology, Ms Naledi Pandor, presented the Women in Science Awards to the country's leading female scientists.

The awards were part of the department's efforts to increase the number of female scientists and researchers in the country. They were also created to raise women's access to research professions and profile successful scientists and researchers as role models for younger women.

Awards were made in the following fields:

- Distinguished Women Awards:
  Life Sciences: Prof. Quarraisha Abdool Karrim
  Social Sciences and Humanities: Prof. Aimee Vivienne Stewart
  Indigenous Knowledge Systems: Prof. Namrita Lall
- Distinguished Young Women Awards:
  Life Sciences: Prof. Jolanda Roux
  Social Sciences and Humanities: Prof. Pear Mpilenhle Sithole
- Doctoral fellowships:
  Tricia Naicker, Aisha-Bibi Pandor and Karen Pillay
- Master's fellowships:
  Anneke Perold, Narine van den Berg and Anna Zawilska.

The Department of Science and Technology, together with the departments of mineral resources and energy, are joint custodians of Saneri and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

Agricultural research

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations conduct agricultural research. Provinces are responsible for farm management and technological development. These activities are aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The Directorate: Scientific Research and Development in the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries coordinates all agricultural R&D activities.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) coordinates agricultural R&D within the national agricultural research system. The NARF also provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on R&D matters.

Biannual meetings are held to debate and decide on research needs, programmes and budgeting. Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water research

The Water Research Commission (WRC) was established in 1971 through the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water R&D
- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge. This is reflected in the WRC's mission, which provides the organisation with a framework for its strategic and operational initiatives. The WRC functions as a networking organisation, linking the nation and working through partnerships. Being an innovation organisation, it is continuously providing novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the community at large, both locally and globally.

Many decades of R&D and science-based knowledge have provided the basis for the development of policies and strategies that allow for the sustainability of South Africa's water resources.

This emphasises not only the important role that water-centred knowledge has played in the past, but also its increasingly important role in providing South Africa with knowledge, which will allow it to deal successfully with the many new challenges that limited water resources will bring about in future years. The WRC plays a crucial role in this regard. It leads and coordinates research, which, in turn, creates the knowledge that facilitates the judicious management of water quantity and quality, in order to achieve sustainability.

The Water Research Act, 1971 established the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These issues are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

The organisations that participate in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- NGOs.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

Held in May 2011, South Africa's annual National Science Festival Scifest Africa 2011 attracted 65 000 visitors.

With the theme, *Science across Cultures*, Scifest offered lectures, workshops, exhibitions and other interactive activities that covered topics such as paint-making, micro-rockets, lasers, weather prediction, supersonic cars, laser beams, astronomy and kitchen chemistry.

The Division: Water, Environment and Forestry Technology (Environmentek) of the CSIR specialises in research into water quality, including technology to meet effluent and water-quality standards, and to establish reclaimed water as an additional water source.

Environmentek is a world leader in research into activated sludge processes and the biological monitoring of water to detect potentially toxic substances. It is also involved in research into the effects of afforestation and veld management on the quantity and quality of catchment water-yield.

Institute for Water Research (IWR)

The IWR is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University. Its main objective is to contribute to sustainable water-resource management in southern Africa.

This is achieved through scientific research into the structure and function of aquatic ecosystems; the application of research through specialist consultancy services; tertiary-level teaching and training; capacity-building for community development; and service on national and international management and policy-making committees.

Environmental research

The Department of Environmental Affairs annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

They cover subjects such as waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.

Some programmes are conducted in collaboration with the NRF, while others are undertaken on behalf of the department by the CSIR and universities. Research into human-environment interaction, sponsored by the department, is coordinated by the HSRC.

In addition, institutes of the ARC are concerned with environmental research insofar as environmental problems impact on agriculture or are caused by agricultural practices.

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) is a statutory body functioning under the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The SAWS delivers public-good services, mainly for the protection of life and property, as well as commercial services to the private sector, as stipulated in the Weather Service Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).

Among other activities, the SAWS runs the Global Atmospheric Watch Programme, which measures and monitors greenhouse gas datasets. The SAWS has also rolled out a number of ozone-monitoring stations in the SADC region.

The NRF directs the multidisciplinary Conservation and Management of Ecosystems and Biodiversity Focus Area, primarily in collaboration with universities and museums, to promote and support research into living resources and terrestrial, freshwater, marine, coastal and atmospheric ecosystems.

South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi)

Sanbi's biodiversity research comprises collaborative programmes set up to promote and catalyse knowledge about biodiversity.

The broad scope of research includes the origins, composition and functioning of biodiversity, its conservation and sustainable use, ecosystem services and biodiversity responses to major drivers such as climate change. The research is organised into three divisions:

- Applied Biodiversity Research
- Biosystematics Research and Biodiversity Collections
- Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation.

Fisheries research

Research into South Africa's fish resources and their conservation and judicious exploitation, is carried out by research personnel of the Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management, a division of the Department of Environmental Affairs, and by several universities and NGOs.

Research is designed to provide parameters for estimates of stock sizes and sustainable yields for the different fisheries.

Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research. The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world. The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce. It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)

- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanisms and microbiology)
- Tellumat (development of electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (development and improvement of tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables South Africa (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Council for Geoscience
Department of Science and Technology, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Department of Science and Technology, *Strategic Plan 2011 – 2016*
Estimates of National Expenditure 2010, published by National Treasury
Human Sciences Research Council
Medical Research Council
National Health Laboratory Service
National Research Foundation, *Business Plan 2010 – 2013*
Water Research Commission

www.ai.org.za
www.arc.co.za
www.acwr.co.za
www.csir.co.za
www.dst.gov.za
www.eskom.co.za
www.geoscience.org.za
www.gov.za
www.hlls.ac.za
www.iss.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.co.za
www.mintek.co.za
www.mrc.ac.za
www.naci.org.za
www.ru.ac.za
www.saao.ac.za
www.sabs.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.saimm.co.za
www.sanbi.org.za
www.saneri.org.za
www.sasol.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.tlabs.ac.za

Suggested reading

Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and Colonialism: Eighteenth-Century Travellers in South Africa*. Leiden: Brill.
James, W. 2010. *Nature's Gifts: Why We Are The Way We Are*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Phahlamohlaka, J (ed). 2008. *Community-Driven Projects: Reflections on a Success Story: A Case Study of Science Education and Information Technology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.
Southern African Steel Construction Handbook. 2010. Johannesburg: South African Institution of Steel Construction.
Van der Merwe, D *et al.* 2008. *Information and Communications Technology*. Durban: LexisNexis.

Social development

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12

The Department of Social Development strives to enable the poor, vulnerable and the excluded within South African society to secure a better life for themselves.

The department has the following core functions:

- managing and overseeing social security, social assistance and social-insurance policies that aim to prevent and alleviate poverty in the event of life-cycle risks such as loss of income due to unemployment, disability, old age or death occurring
- developing social-welfare services to reduce poverty, vulnerability and the impact of HIV and AIDS through sustainable development programmes in partnership with implementing agents such as state-funded institutions, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), community-based organisations (CBOs) and faith-based organisations (FBOs).

The department's efforts are inspired by its vision of building an inclusive society, based on the full integration of all its members, where children are cared for and protected; the disabled are supported to overcome their activity limitations; and the elderly are still meaningfully engaged in the affairs of their communities.

Funding

Poverty and inequality remain the biggest challenge. The Social Assistance Programme has proved to be the most effective social policy response.

The provision of social grants makes up the largest portion of the department's budget.

In 2010/11, social grants represented one of the department's biggest poverty-alleviation programmes and reached 15,3 million people – of whom 10,3 million were children – at a cost of R97 billion.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF), expenditure is expected to increase to R122 billion, at an average annual rate of 8%. The increase is mainly due to the extension of the Child-Support Grant (CSG) to eligible children under the age of 18. The department expected to transfer R6,1 billion to the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) to administer the grant system.

The department wants to ensure that children accessing social grants are enrolled for early childhood development (ECD) services at an early age. Over the MTEF, government aims to increase the average cost of R12 per child per day in ECD facilities to R13 across all provinces.

Government believes that children must be given equal opportunities, irrespective of where they live in the country.

The department has allocated R161 360 million to support the National Development Agency's (NDA) role in capacity-building and grants to civil-society organisations (CSOs) for development projects in poor communities.

Legislation and initiatives

The department derives its mandate from Acts such as the:

- National Welfare Act, 1978 (Act 100 of 1978)
- Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978)
- Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978)
- Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991)
- Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992)
- Non-Profit Organisation (NPO) Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997)
- NDA Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998)
- Advisory Board on Social Development Act, 2001 (Act 3 of 2001)
- Sassa Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004)
- Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004)
- Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)
- Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007)
- Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008).

Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)

The amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 saw men aged 63 to 64 qualifying for and receiving social-assistance grants for the first time. The Social Assistance Act, 2004 continues to provide the legislative framework for the provision of social-assistance grants. The Act provides the legal instruments for shifting the social-assistance function to the national sphere of government, and provides for Sassa to render the management and administration of social grants. The Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 seeks to:

Child Protection Week took place from 30 May to 4 June 2011. Held annually, the campaign is an opportunity to raise the profile of children, and to mobilise community action and responses to breaches of child protection.

The 2011 campaign, which marked 14 years since the launch of Child Protection Week, was themed *Working Together to Protect Children*.

- introduce a new definition of disability
- provide a mechanism for Sassa to review its decisions when a beneficiary is not satisfied with the outcome
- enhance the appeals process.

The passing of the amendment enables the department to distinguish between permanent and temporary disability, and people with chronic illnesses. The Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 facilitates a process which allows social-grant applicants and beneficiaries to be treated with fairness, dignity and respect.

The Act provides for applicants and beneficiaries to request Sassa to review its decisions to expedite dispute resolution and avert unnecessary and costly litigation. The Act also provides for applicants and beneficiaries to appeal against a decision of the agency and the appointment of independent tribunals in a manner to be prescribed by regulations.

The tribunals are a key part of the administrative justice process and make it possible for applicants and beneficiaries to present their grievances. If their claims have merit, the process allows them to obtain simple and speedy resolution of their cases.

Older Persons Act, 2006

The Aged Persons Act, 1967 (Act 81 of 1967), was repealed by the Older Persons Act, 2006. The latter deals with the plight of older persons by establishing a framework for the empowerment and protection of older persons and the promotion and maintenance of their status, rights, well-being, safety and security. It provides for older persons to enjoy quality services while staying with their families for as long as possible.

Chapter Three of the Act deals specifically with the development of community-based care and support programmes falling into two broad categories: prevention and promotion, which ensures the independent living of older persons in the community; and home-based care, which ensures that frail older persons receive maximum care within the community through a comprehensive set of integrated services.

The Act further recognises the wisdom and experience of older people, and the need to protect their knowledge and skills, and promotes their active role and participation in community affairs. The Act was promulgated in July 2010.

Childcare legislation

The Children's Act, 2005, sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children; defines parental responsibilities and rights; and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Inter-Country Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- recognises certain new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the *National Child Protection Register* that records all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

It also lists all persons found by the Children's Court and criminal courts to be unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register, however, is not open to the public, and all requests for information must be directed to the Department of Social Development.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- ECD
- further protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care

- child- and youth-care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without the consent of the parents or guardian
- the discipline of children.

War on Poverty Campaign

The Diagnostic Overview II (December 2010) issued by the National Planning Commission stated that deep poverty was widespread and constrained human development and economic progress. Per capita income and employment fell by about 4% and one million formal and informal jobs were lost between the last quarter of 2008 and 2009.

The *War on Poverty* Campaign, which was piloted in 2008/09, targets service delivery to poor households and monitors household progression out of extreme poverty. Government identified 1 128 of the most deprived municipal wards, where an estimated three million households comprising an estimated 15 million people live in extreme poverty. The campaign is being rolled out and it is planned that by 2014, all the identified wards will be covered.

The Department of Social Development continued to support the campaign, championed by Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe. It organised a two-day sector planning session, during which participants reviewed the department's contribution to the campaign, and developed mechanisms for strengthening support. A report was compiled and distributed to all the provinces.

Deputy President Motlanthe has been interacting with poor communities to review the impact of the *War on Poverty* Campaign, visiting service-delivery points and frontline offices. He held meetings with the provincial and local spheres of government with the aim of unlocking bottlenecks to service delivery and the implementation of anti-poverty programmes.

In the course of 2011, he visited Bitou municipality in the Western Cape, Nkomazi in Mpumalanga and Taung in North West. He also visited the Eastern Cape, where he attended a meeting of the Eastern Cape Intergovernmental Relations Committee to discuss the implementation of the Anti-Poverty Strategy (APS). The Deputy President also visited uMsinga Municipality in the uMzinyathi district in KwaZulu-Natal in April 2011, the Emthanjeni and Renosterberg municipalities in the Pixley Ka Seme district in the Northern Cape in June 2011, and wards in the Western Cape. He also participated in the Rural Economic Development Summit, attended the Masibambisane Rural Development Initiative on Ilima in KwaZulu-Natal and launched the Emerald Sky Human Settlements Project in East London.

In July 2011, government unveiled a series of measures expected to help the country alleviate poverty and speed up job creation.

The APS is expected to see government using short-term employment schemes, enterprise development and a series of public-investment schemes to address the challenge of unemployment, which was exacerbated by the global economic crisis. Cabinet also resolved to establish infrastructure and job-creation commissions.

In August 2011, government reiterated its commitment to improve the quality of life of rural people across the country. As part of its Zero-Hunger Programme, more than one million beneficiaries are accessing food through food-distribution initiatives.

By August 2011, the Recapitalisation and Development Programme to make land-reform projects more productive were implemented on 171 farms across the country, creating at least 1 316 permanent jobs and 2 724 short-term employment opportunities.

By 2014, the Department of Social Development aims to have recruited and trained 10 000 child- and youth-care workers to support child-headed families.

By July 2011, over 5 500 students had received scholarships to study social work at various higher learning institutions, with R244 million set aside to support 4 400 students and provide 1 000 new scholarships.

The scholarship programme produced over 2 000 graduates, who were absorbed in all nine provinces to bolster the provision of welfare services.

Some estimates project that the country needs 55 000 educated social workers.

By September 2011, there were 16 391 social workers employed by government and non-governmental organisations across the country to address welfare needs, ranging from prevention and treatment of substance abuse to crime prevention and HIV and AIDS support. Due to the shortage of social workers, the majority are expected to provide generic social work to any clients who require services.

Comprehensive anti-poverty interventions

Government's APS seeks to capacitate and empower households and communities to take themselves out of poverty with the help of government and its social partners, through the creation of economic opportunities, investment in human resources and the provision of income security and the social wage. The APS dovetails with existing macro-economic instruments such as the New Growth Path, the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2, as well as efforts such as those arising from the Job Creation Business Summit hosted by President Jacob Zuma in March 2010 and government's Programme to Support Pro-Poor Policy Development (PSPPD).

The PSPPD was a research and capacity-building programme located within the National Planning Commission of The Presidency. It was a partnership between The Presidency and the European Union.

The PSPPD was a five-year programme, which started in October 2006 and ended on 31 December 2011. It then entered into a six-month closure period to conduct final evaluation and audit processes, effectively closing at the end of June 2012.

The programme was developed to improve the effectiveness of public policy interventions. To achieve this, the programme focused on strengthening policy-making around poverty and inequality through the use of research within the social and economic clusters.

Only when the poor have decent employment, or are gainfully self-employed, will the demand for social grants decline. Investment in human and physical assets will need to be complemented by an economy that absorbs people and lays the foundation for decent jobs.

Grants per month, 2012/13

Grant type	Amount
State Old-Age Grant	R1 200
State Old-Age Grant (over 75)	R1 220
Disability Grant	R1 200
War Veterans Grant	R1 220
Foster Care Grant	R770
Care Dependency Grant	R1 200
Child-Support Grant	R280

Source: *People's Guide to the Budget*

The Department of Social Development has some very specific contributions to make. Investment in the development of children is one of the primary means to improve society's human capital and, over time, contribute to a reduction in intergenerational poverty.

The ECD Programme lies at the heart of the department's goal.

The Department of Social Development is the lead government department for services to children under the age of four. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005, the department's responsibility is to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, as well as provide a subsidy for children who might need it.

As part of Child Protection Week (30 May to 4 June 2011) activities, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Bathabile Dlamini, officially launched the national *ECD Awareness* Campaign.

This annual campaign seeks to educate and inform parents, primary caregivers and communities about the importance of quality early learning for children. It also aims to increase the number of registered ECD centres and the number of children benefiting from their services. By the end of December 2011, there were more than 19 500 ECD centres across South Africa. By March 2012, more than 800 000 children had benefited from ECD services.

ECD registration enables government to provide subsidies for children from poor families, provide project funding and ensure the standardisation of norms and standards.

Government is committed to working with civil society and other stakeholders to develop lasting solutions, including a review of the subsidy formula for poor children, to ensure uniformity and equity.

Comprehensive social security and assistance

In 2011/12, South Africa spent over R104 billion on social grants to assist the most vulnerable in the country. Children constituted the majority of these beneficiaries at about 10,3 million, followed by pensioners at 2,7 million and disability grants, which were allocated to 1,2 million people.

Sassa's mandate is to ensure effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance.

Sassa disburses the following grants:

- older persons
- war veterans
- disability
- grant-in-aid
- care dependency
- foster childcare
- child support
- social relief of distress.

It has worked tirelessly to improve the quality of services to beneficiaries. This has been achieved by, among other things, shortening the turnaround time from application to approval of grants, improving access for eligible beneficiaries and conditions of payments, and improving beneficiary liaison.

Sassa's average turnaround time for processing new social-grant applications has dropped from 21 to nine days.

In improving the grant-payment system, Sassa has embarked on a focused drive to reduce costs. By March 2011, 4 298 979 beneficiaries were receiving their benefits through the automated clearing bureaus or banks. This reflected a 22,33% increase over the projected annual target of 25%. The cost of administering social-assistance grants through cash-payment contractors has also been reduced from R33,52 to R30,53.

Sassa will introduce an automated biometric-based payment system for social grants.

Dealing with corruption

Sassa's continued commitment to relentlessly uprooting fraud and corruption in the administration and payment of grants has yielded positive outcomes. Since its inception, Sassa's collaboration with the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) has reduced fraud and corruption. From 2006, the SIU prosecuted 17 477 people for fraud and corruption relating to grants, including 2 828 people in 2010/11. At 5 134, KwaZulu-Natal had the most prosecutions. Over the five-year period, the SIU recovered R84 904 156, with R25 675 420 recovered during 2010/11. During this process, 6 368 people signed acknowledgments of debt.

The department's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system comprise:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (*fraud@socdev.gov.za*) and a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11).

Social-security reform

Government continues making progress on many fronts, particularly in its endeavour to build an inclusive society.

In August 2011, two studies, entitled *The Impact of the International Financial Crisis on Child Poverty in South Africa* and *Vulnerability of Children and Poor Families to the Economic Recession of 2008 to 2009*, revealed that child-support grants reduced the depth and severity of poverty during the economic recession in South Africa.

The studies were conducted by the United Nations Children's Fund, the Financial and Fiscal Commission of South Africa and the Department of Social Development.

The studies found that child grants served as a form of diversified income, making poor households less susceptible to the effects of the global economic crisis.

Number of grant benefits by grant type and region as on 29 February 2012

Grant type	EC	FS	GAU	KZN	LIM	MPU	NW	NC	WC	TOTAL
Old Age	486 575	164 254	364 980	568 390	376 644	217 620	232 800	71 039	243 174	2 725 476
War Veteran	104	15	172	110	60	34	28	27	215	765
Disability	191 027	89 815	120 397	323 018	87 141	81 462	88 798	48 759	156 876	1 187 293
Grant-in-Aid	8 413	1 018	1 284	27 797	8 763	2 091	3 297	4 062	8 955	65 680
Care Dependency	18 181	5 299	14 083	34 700	11 165	7 834	8 682	4 210	9 853	114 007
Child Support	1 816 683	612 791	1 372 388	2 696 856	1 475 392	989 790	784 002	258 720	782 973	10 789 595
Foster Child	113 897	41 783	55 644	139 850	53 991	32 250	44 413	14 099	28 451	524 378
Total	**2 634 880**	**914 975**	**1 928 948**	**3 790 721**	**2 013 156**	**1 331 081**	**1 162 020**	**400 916**	**1 230 497**	**15 407 194**

Source: South African Social Security Agency

Regarding social-security reform, the policy on mandatory retirement provisions was approved by the Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on Social-Security Reform and is pending Cabinet approval. Other initiatives include the assessment tool for children with disabilities, and work on the Social Relief Policy and Social Relief Bill.

The Social Relief Policy and Social Relief Bill seek to create a new institutional and legal framework and delegation of responsibilities to provinces to ensure timely humanitarian relief in the event of sudden contingencies

Various evaluative research findings confirmed that the provision of social grants to vulnerable individuals and households not only reduces the occurrence of hunger and extreme poverty, but also facilitates household access to basic services and economic opportunities.

Voluntary savings represent the continuation of additional voluntary, private retirement savings and insurance arrangements for those who can afford it. One of the main challenges towards the future is to extend coverage of voluntary savings to the informal sector.

As part of the comprehensive social-security reform proposals, the Social Protection and Community Development (SPCD) Cluster also completed a draft no-fault policy for the Road Accident Fund. In a related development, and as part of government's continued effort to protect people against vulnerability and other contingencies of life, the cluster, led by the Department of Social Development, will fast-track the development of a coherent policy on social relief of distress.

The second pillar of the social-security system is social insurance, which aims to prevent poverty. The goal is to introduce a statutory contributory social-security framework, which will include a basic retirement benefit element to ensure that, after a lifetime of working, people can retire and live their last years in dignity.

The ultimate goal of social development is to engender self-reliance and social cohesion. While appropriate social-security provisioning plays a critical role in addressing the basic needs of the poorest of the poor, it is only meant to be a temporary measure.

Government recognises that empowering people, particularly women, to strengthen their own capacities is a main objective of development and its principal resource. With this goal in mind, the department has begun piloting various initiatives, which will enable poor communities to become architects of their own development.

Community development

Sustainable livelihoods

The Sustainable Livelihoods Programme develops and provides support for the implementation of programmes, strategies and tools for sustainable livelihoods, and manages service-delivery partners. It aims to create an enabling environment for empowering the poor and vulnerable through the promotion of and support for community development work, strengthening institutional arrangements and dialogue with civil society.

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises. It aims to draw significant numbers of unemployed people into productive work, accompanied by training, to increase their capacity to earn an income.

The EPWP is divided into four sectors, namely infrastructure, environment, social and non-state. In the SPCD Cluster, the EPWP focuses mainly on ongoing programmes such as home-/community-based care (HCBC), ECD, as well as community and tourism safety projects.

In 2010/11, the department trained 354 community-development practitioners (CDPs) and supervisors in the use of the sustainable livelihoods concept and the toolkit for facilitating community development, exceeding its target of 350 CDPs. It also exceeded the target for completing guidelines for establishing social cooperatives. In addition, workshops were held to increase CDPs, CDP managers and Masupa-Tsela youth pioneers' understanding of the concept of social cooperatives and the implementation guidelines.

The Masupa-Tsela Youth Pioneer Programme was launched in 2008 as part of the National Youth Service (NYS) Programme.

The department helped four provinces and the City of Tshwane to establish foodbanks.

Based on a food-security model promoted by the Global FoodBanking Network, FoodBank South Africa acts as the national governing body for a network of community-based foodbanks.

FoodBank South Africa works nationally to source donated food and other grocery products. It then arranges for these products to reach those who need it most, via the national system of community food banks.

Foodbanks receive food from government agencies, farms, food manufacturers, food wholesalers, supermarkets and consumers. After sorting the food, they store it, and then issue it to local food-aid agencies, including orphanages, crèches, old-age homes, homeless shelters, soup kitchens, and HIV and AIDS clinics.

FoodBank South Africa's warehouses are equipped to sort and store food and non-food items safely.

The focus of the Community Development Programme is on creating an enabling environment for the empowerment of the poor, vulnerable and previously marginalised groups, including youth, women and people with disabilities, to achieve sustainable livelihoods.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The department is playing a pivotal role in helping to realise government's vision of *A long and healthy life for all South Africans*. This will be achieved through social behaviour-change programmes and mitigating the social and economic impact of HIV and AIDS and other chronic illnesses.

The programmes aim to ensure that the department creates AIDS-competent communities and provide psychosocial support through the HCBC Programme to those affected by and infected with HIV and AIDS.

In 2011, the department strengthened its monitoring and evaluation capacity. The results assisted in enhancing the capacity of communities to deal with HIV and AIDS by generating strategies that are community-driven, thereby placing communities at the centre of HIV and AIDS responses.

The department participates in the ongoing HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign, ensuring that all people undergoing testing receive appropriate counselling and support.

A suitable psychosocial response remains critical to restoring support in communities for children, adolescents, women and men affected by and infected with HIV and AIDS.

The department has also developed a skills plan for CDPs that enables them to address the sector skills gaps in accordance with the recommendations of the national skills audit report. The skills plan was approved and implemented by all the provinces. CDPs and Masupa-Tsela youth pioneers were trained to provide social co-operatives with technical support and mentorship.

In August 2011, the Department of Social Development launched the *Listening to the Heartbeat of Communities* Campaign.

The campaign aims to create awareness of the department's services to address socio-economic challenges, including poverty, HIV and AIDS, social exclusion, child protection and substance abuse.

It also seeks to strengthen and mobilise communities and enhance service-delivery partnerships through the promotion of constructive engagement between the department, its agencies and communities.

The department also finalised a memorandum of understanding (MoU) with the Health and Welfare Sector Education and Training Authority concerning training CDPs to draw up integrated development plans, do community-based planning, follow the sustainable livelihoods approach and use a sustainable-livelihood toolkit.

A process was finalised for developing and registering community-development qualifications at National Qualifications Framework levels five and eight, which had been delayed because of changes to the South African qualifications framework. This was a significant step towards professionalising community-development practice. A successful community-development indaba was held and provided a platform for practitioners and CSOs to discuss issues surrounding community-development practice, with attention paid specifically to the scope of practice, norms and standards, an implementation model and a funding protocol for establishing community-development forums. Guidelines developed for CBOs are meant to guide them in involving communities in their development processes. The guidelines were discussed with various stakeholders.

The Department of Social Development has also developed a framework for an integrated and coordinated response to HIV and AIDS.

The framework includes sourcing reliable research and information; providing social protection to those infected and affected, especially children; protecting children's rights; providing services; special programmes such as the HCBC Programme; empowering women; and capacitating officials to deal with HIV and AIDS.

Partnerships with other government departments, NGOs, CBOs, FBOs, the business sector, volunteers and international agencies underpin the department's response to HIV and AIDS.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

The expansion of the NPO loveLife's Groundbreaker Partnership Programme aims to strengthen the loveLife Mphintshi Initiative by linking it to the EPWP and the prevention programme in relation to HCBC and support.

The HIV and AIDS Youth Programme's services now reach marginalised and vulnerable youth in rural areas. It focuses on preventing the spread of HIV and AIDS among young people. Behaviour-changing programmes have been implemented to help reduce vulnerability.

In the fight against HIV and AIDS, the department allocated R43,3 million to loveLife for prevention programmes targeting youth in rural areas and farming communities.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection. The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Care and support

Several care and support strategies and programmes for vulnerable groups affected by HIV and AIDS and other diseases were developed and implemented. These programmes fall under HCBC, which involves the provision of comprehensive social services in the context of communities, families and individuals.

HCBC is one of the programmes selected to contribute to the social sector plan for the EPWP. Community caregivers in HCBC organisations provide services to individuals, families and communities. A total of 19 895 community caregivers were trained in aspects such as succession planning; childcare forums; the Children's Act, 2005; psychosocial support; and monitoring and evaluation. More than 1 000 community caregivers were trained in psychosocial well-being.

A monitoring and evaluation system for HCBC was developed and implemented in 341 districts.

A computerised HCBC data-capturing system was developed and rolled out in North West, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and the Northern Cape. This project was implemented in collaboration with the Department of Health, which acted as the lead department.

Guidelines for support groups and psychosocial support for children and adults with HIV and AIDS and other chronic conditions were developed.

An audit of HCBC organisations was completed, and the existence of 2 000 organisations was verified. The audit report provided information on the number of HCBC organisations, their location, whether they were active in nodal areas under the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme and Urban Renewal Programme, their registration status, staffing and management, the nature of services provided, categories of beneficiaries, data-capturing processes, funding sources, sustainability, infrastructure, resources, and needs. An online database was developed, and the provinces were trained to use and update it.

The department was actively involved in the HCT Campaign announced by President Zuma on World AIDS Day in 2009. Given the shortage of social workers needed to implement the campaign, a database of retired social workers whose assistance the department could use was established. Departmental social workers were trained in HIV and AIDS counselling.

The National Association for People Living with HIV and AIDS (Napwa) plays a vital role in achieving government's priority objective of mitigating the impact of HIV and AIDS as outlined in the National Strategic Plan.

The department awarded funding to Napwa in 2008/09, 2009/10 and 2010/11. This enabled the organisation to provide care and support to people living with HIV and AIDS by advising them on positive living, including treatment and nutrition support; and involving them in economic and business-development initiatives. The department assisted Napwa with project implementation.

The department also facilitated and monitored the implementation of a national action plan for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS. The plan was implemented by four reference teams. MoUs were concluded with 24 key strategic partners to enhance their accountability and promote reporting on the National Action Plan core indicators.

A draft framework on psychosocial support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was developed and was due to be aligned with the Southern African Development Community Framework.

The department signed a separate agreement on the Child and Youth-Headed Households Project, funded by the German Development Bank (KfW), in December 2010. This project is aimed at renovating, extending, equipping and building community care centres where children and youths will receive material and psychosocial support. The project will also be involved in developing and implementing a skills-development programme for youths, especially those who have had to assume the role of head of the household.

Regarding prevention, the department formed a partnership with the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) for training 50 national, provincial and NGO coordinators on social-behaviour change.

A service-provider was appointed to undertake the training and help develop an HIV-prevention strategy.

Partnerships

The Department of Social Development continues to strengthen its partnerships with national and international organisations involved in the fight against HIV and AIDS.

The department chairs the National Action Committee for Children made Vulnerable by HIV and AIDS, which is a multisectoral team consisting of government, FBOs, CBOs, the business sector, the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund (Unicef) and Save the Children. It focuses on the care and support of orphans and vulnerable children.

Faith-based organisations and the business sector

The department has strengthened its partnership with churches and other FBOs, the business sector, volunteer organisations and individuals to assist with poverty relief, HIV and AIDS and social-grant registration programmes.

Older persons

The growth of the ageing population in South Africa has followed global trends. According to Statistics South Africa's census data (1996 and 2001 respectively), the proportion of people over 60 years had grown significantly, from 7% in 1996 to just below 8% in 2007.

It is projected that the population of older persons will exceed 8% by 2014. Government is committed to working with all sectors of society to ensure that the rights of older persons are at the heart of the development agenda. Within the framework of the Constitution, the Older Persons Act, 2006, is intended to ensure that the rights, dignity and independence of older persons are upheld.

The Older Persons Act, 2006 came into force in April 2010. The Minister of Social Development and the Older Persons Forum launched the Charter on the Rights of Older Persons at a Human Rights Month event at Freedom Park in Tshwane in March 2011.

The Department of Social Development is working closely with the South African Older Persons Forum and Age in Action to promote active Ageing through the participation of older persons in community and sporting activities.

This is part of the Madrid Plan of Action on Ageing, which calls for governments throughout the world to take measures to address matters relating to the well-being of older persons.

In February 2011, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Bathabile Dlamini, launched the United Kingdom (UK) – South Africa Social Worker Exchange Programme for the Health and Welfare Sector Education and Training Authority.

Through this programme, the department seeks to identify and link professional social workers, representative stakeholder councils and associations into an international action learning forum. Such a forum will compare and develop best-practice models of social-work delivery and practices in the UK and South Africa.

It is expected that the findings emanating from such exposures will inform skills-development strategies in the workplace and educational institutions in both countries.

In August 2011, South Africa ratified the Africa Youth Charter and Cabinet adopted the second-generation National Youth Policy. These have been supported by a range of support programmes and strategies to empower youth in the various line functions such as:

- Expanded Public Works Programme initiatives that saw young people involved in the refurbishment, rehabilitation, and maintenance of community infrastructure across the country
- youth focal points in more than 60% of government departments, where direct engagement with youth takes place
- several departments establishing youth-development machinery at all spheres
- learnerships and internships focused on raising the skills capacity of young people through skills education and training authorities
- the launch of the Integrated Youth Development Strategy by the National Youth Development Agency.

Children and youth

South Africa has acceded to and signed the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child and other related conventions and protocols. The aim is to provide care and protection to all children, guided by the international and national legal framework.

The national guiding tools to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the *White Paper for Social Welfare (1997)* and the Children's Act, 2005, as amended. Section 137 of the Children's Act, 2005 proposes new child-protection measures for child-headed households. This section defines those children who can be regarded as coming from child-headed households, provides for appointing an adult for supervising a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households to access social grants and other material assistance.

Statutory services and community-based care services are rendered to enable orphans to continue living with their siblings in their parental homes.

Statutory services rendered to these households include:

- Therapeutic counselling: The aim of therapeutic counselling is to help family members deal with personal problems, difficulties and traumas.
- Adult supervision: An adult in the surrounding area is identified to provide the child-headed household with regular parental care and guidance. The adult supervisor lives in her or his respective home, but keeps constant supervision over the family. This is an out-of-court arrangement, but the social worker is expected to provide overall supervision.
- Poverty relief and other material assistance: Food parcels and other forms of assistance are provided to child-headed households as a temporary intervention while the social worker plans a permanent intervention.

Children are assisted to apply for social grants to which they are entitled, for example the CSG and Foster-Care Grant.

Community-based care services are rendered at drop-in centres or HCBC centres. The services include:

- providing cooked meals and food parcels
- assistance with homework for children who are attending school
- recreation
- capacity-building in parenting and life skills
- psychosocial care and support
- income-generating programmes
- ECD services.

One of the department's key interventions in the care and protection of children is alternative care, which is legislated in terms of the Children's Act, 2005. Alternative care refers to the care of children outside their parental homes. With the exception of adoption, foster care and child- and youth-care centres are temporary forms of alternative care.

In 2010/11, the *Register of Adoptable Children and Prospective Adoptive Parents* was operationalised, and 740 parents and 936 children listed. A total of 2 236 national adoptions and 200 intercountry adoptions were registered. The department accredited 23 child-protection organisations for adoption services.

The department continues its affiliation with International Social Services (ISS) and gives effect to the affiliation contract of January 1999. Intercountry social services are offered in collaboration with the nine provincial departments.

The case load increased to 547 in 2010/11. Cases involved a wide variety of social-service matters which had to be referred to the ISS global

In July 2011, the National Association for Child Care Workers held its 18th Biennial Conference. A plan to address the plight of child-headed households was announced. A variety of issues were discussed to create an environment of care, support and protection for orphans and vulnerable children in line with the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).

network for intercountry social-service intervention.

An increase in cases involving unaccompanied minors, especially from African countries, was seen in 2010/11. The easy access to and effective collaboration with social workers involved in the ISS network played a key role in resolving many of these cases. Most of the case flows were between other African countries and Europe, although some cases were shared with the American and Asian pacific regions.

Challenges included securing working agreements with adoption agencies in other countries affiliated to the ISS, and accrediting more child-protection organisations for adoption services.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. The line provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is an NPO that works collectively to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of respect for children's rights in South Africa.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line
- child rights and education
- training of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- advocacy.

Programmes delivered through the national office include:

- training and education
- analysis of law and policy
- lobbying and advocacy
- networking and coordination.

Social-crime prevention

Probation services

The Department of Social Development is implementing the Probation Services Act, 1991, as amended, and at national and provincial levels provides early intervention services and prevention programmes to offenders and victims of crime.

The Isibinde Model is being used in government's plan to recruit and train child- and youth-care workers to support children living in child-headed households.

The Isibindi Model provides prevention, protection and early intervention services for children. The services associated with the Isibindi approach will be extended to 1,4 million vulnerable children in different communities over the next five years.

The Department of Social Development aims to focus on rural and informal settlements, especially areas of high HIV and AIDS prevalence and poverty. By August 2011, 536 000 foster-care benefits had been paid to different beneficiaries.

The National and Provincial Probation Service Coordinators' Forum meets regularly to deal with service-delivery issues pertaining to children awaiting trial, especially their removal from correctional facilities.

Provinces have increased the number of diversion programmes to ensure that children are diverted from the Criminal Justice System. One such centre is the Mangaung One-Stop Youth Justice Centre in the Motheo District in the Free State.

Home-based supervision is proving to be a successful programme for any high-risk child or child in conflict with the law. It is a cost-effective manner of bringing about behavioural changes in these children. The parents are co-responsible for dealing with their children to achieve the desired changes. Different programmes can be used during home-based supervision.

The assistant probation officer is responsible for supervision but the probation officer remains the case manager. Regular consultations should take place between the probation officer and the assistant probation officer to achieve the best results.

Overcrowding in prisons remains a concern. The national office and provinces have developed an action plan to ensure that children do not await trial in prisons.

The focus of the action plan is to provide secure-care facilities.

In 2010/11, the department finalised and approved norms and standards for secure care as well as a strategy on social-crime prevention for the social sector.

Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP)

In 2010/11, a final report on developing legislation for victim-support services was completed. A costing model was developed, aimed at standardising victim-empowerment services and funding. Costing models were also developed for programmes involving older persons, children, people living with a disability, social crime, substance abuse and families. It is aimed at promoting standardisation across the provinces.

Generic indicator sets were piloted at 18 sites in three provinces. The pilot phase was conducted in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West and the second in the Western Cape, Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. These are aimed at developing a culture of cluster reporting and standardising data-collection tools in the social sector.

A training-needs assessment was conducted to determine the sector's capacity-building needs. Trauma counselling was identified as a priority, and the department responded by facilitating trauma-counselling training in various government departments and CSOs. One thousand eight hundred officials were trained, significantly exceeding the target of 1 400. A draft mentoring and coaching model was also developed. Four provinces were nominated to test the model, and 78 government officials and CSOs were trained.

The strategy for engaging men and boys in achieving gender equality, with a special focus on the prevention of gender-based violence, was implemented in all nine provinces. Three clustering workshops were held, where 270 social workers were trained to implement the strategy. Additional workshops were held for service-providers in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and North West.

A shelter strategy was implemented countrywide. It focuses on how to render services to abused women at shelters and ensure that their services adhere to the minimum standards set out in the Victim's Charter.

As part of Child Protection Week in May and June 2011, the Deputy Minister of Social Development, Ms Maria Ntuli, launched the *Children Services Directory*.

It is intended to serve as a resource to individuals, families, caregivers and organisations working with children in South Africa. It contains about 4 000 names and details of registered community-based organisations, faith-based organisations and government institutions that provide a wide range of services to children.

The directory contains information on available services for children from a number of organisations, including child-protection services.

Through its partnerships with the Government of Denmark, Unicef, USAID and RTI International as an implementing partner, government established 53 Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs) throughout the country, 16 of which were established in 2011.

TCCs are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a vital part of South Africa's Anti-Rape Strategy, aiming to reduce secondary trauma for the victim, improve conviction rates and reduce the cycle time for finalising cases.

This project is led by the National Prosecuting Authority's Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit, in partnership with various donors as a response to the urgent need for an integrated strategy for prevention, response and support for rape victims.

TCCs operate in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. They are also linked to sexual offences courts that are staffed by prosecutors, social workers, investigating officers, magistrates, health professionals, NGOs and the South African Police Service.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The *National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime*, which was launched during the *16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children* Campaign in December 2004, is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Care and support to families

The Department of Social Development is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary caregiving and families in crisis to service-providers in the area of family services.

In September 2011, the Department of Social Development published the *Green Paper on Families*. The subtitle refers to promoting family life and strengthening families in South Africa. The Green Paper contains proposals on how South African families should be supported to flourish and function optimally.

Government wants families to play a central role in the development of South Africa.

The Green Paper acknowledges that many social ills in South Africa are the result of either weak family systems or non-existent families.

The document is the start of a process to put guidelines and strategies in place to promote family life and strengthen the family unit. The department undertook research to ascertain the challenges faced by families in South Africa. Following the research, consultative meetings were held with stakeholders and other interest groups across the country. The process culminated in a national consultative workshop.

The Green Paper emphasises the way in which the historical context such as migrant labour and the global financial crisis impact on family life. It is informed by a number of principles, namely:

- human rights
- family diversity
- family strength
- community participation
- promoting and strengthening marriages and parenting
- partnerships.

In essence, the Green Paper seeks to place the family in national policy discourse. It also aims to establish a link between social ills and the state of the family in South Africa.

It also wants to see interventions from both government and civil society to stop the disintegration of families. The Green Paper focuses on:

- defining the family
- the family and post-apartheid social and economic challenges
- promoting family life
- family strengthening
- national policies and legislation
- the role of key stakeholders, including departments, professionals, civil society and business.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

The department is concerned about the effects of substance abuse on the health and socio-economy of the country, because it often leads to injuries, intentional and unintentional, or death. It is also widely known that risky sexual behaviour is prevalent when people are under the influence of substances, thus exposing themselves and their partners to contracting or transmitting infectious diseases such as HIV and AIDS. Violent crimes, including murder and domestic violence, occur mostly with the perpetrator being under the influence of a substance.

The *Ke Moja – I'm Fine Without Drugs* Campaign encourages young people to resist the temptation to experiment with drugs.

In June 2011, the Deputy Minister of Social Development, Ms Maria Ntuli, announced on the occasion of the International Day against Drug Abuse and Illicit Trafficking that the *UN World Drug Report (2010)* shows that the abuse of hard drugs such as heroin, cocaine, methamphetamine (known as "tik" or "nyaope" by youngsters), has reached alarming levels.

By 2011, South Africa had the highest number of methamphetamine users in the world, especially among people under the age of 20 years, with the highest number recorded in the Western Cape.

Cannabis and alcohol are still the most abused substances in South Africa. Estimates are that more than 2,2 million people use cannabis, followed by cocaine, heroin, ecstasy and other substances. Data from the *South African National Youth Risk Behaviour Survey* shows that the Free State is one of the provinces with high levels of alcohol abuse. A door-to-door campaign conducted in the five districts of this province shows that most families and communities are affected by alcohol and substance abuse. Experience has shown that to successfully combat the drug problem, three complementary elements must be strengthened namely:

- supply-reduction through law enforcement
- demand-reduction through prevention strategies
- harm reduction through treatment, rehabilitation and social-support programmes.

To address all three key elements, Cabinet established an IMC tasked with addressing substance abuse-related issues in a coordinated and comprehensive manner. One of the key activities of the IMC was the hosting of the second Biennial Anti-Substance Abuse Summit in March 2011.

It made a number of resolutions, including reviewing existing legislation to ensure that there is one common approach to combat alcohol and substance abuse. A programme of action was approved by the IMC to ensure the implementation of the resolutions. The programme was presented to Cabinet in 2011/12.

Government also established the Central Drug Authority (CDA), an intersectoral structure comprising 12 drug experts and representatives from various national departments. Its mandate is to assist government in combating substance abuse in a coordinated manner and within the framework of the National Drug Master Plan (NDMP).

The CDA is a statutory body in terms of the Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992. In line with the resolutions of the second biennial Anti-Substance Abuse Summit, government also reviewed the NDMP in 2011.

The NDMP places particular emphasis on educating young people and their parents about the negative effects of drugs. Its main objective is to combat substance abuse through prevention, early intervention, treatment and reintegration services. The emphasis on prevention is informed by the fact that children are exposed to drugs at a young age. Particular attention is given to interventions that target young people to equip them with life skills.

Parents and community leaders have been encouraged to participate in community structures such as community policing forums and substance abuse forums to help law-enforcement agencies deal with criminals benefiting from illegal drugs in society.

People with disabilities

South Africa was one of the first countries to sign and ratify the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (UNCRPD) in 2007.

South Africa acknowledges the importance of international cooperation in support of national efforts towards the implementation of the UNCRPD and its optional protocol to improve the living conditions of persons with disabilities in every state, particularly in developing countries.

South Africa has acceded to, or ratified, most of the African regional and international human-rights instruments in the area of economic, social, cultural, civil and political rights. The Constitution requires that particular attention be given to relevant international laws and comparable international standards and experiences. Government policies on disability are progressive and in line with the Constitution, which embodies the principles of social justice, dignity and equal opportunities. This embodiment in the Constitution creates an excellent, sustainable environment for the implementation of the UNCRDP.

As a state party to the convention and its optional protocol and with full commitment to the provisions of the convention, South Africa has, since the convention came into effect, made significant progress.

There is increased self-representation of persons with disabilities in Parliament, provincial legislatures and in local government.

People with disabilities are represented in institutions such as the Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality and the National Youth Development Agency (NYDA). Government departments and provinces are setting up disability policies and targets for mainstreaming service delivery to persons with disabilities.

As a developmental state, South Africa has made strides in improving access to health and social services for persons with disabilities. The free healthcare policy for people with disabilities includes the provision of assistive devices where needed.

The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), introduced a human rights-centred approach to the provision of care for mental-health patients.

Welfare services are also being streamlined to reach people with disabilities wherever they are through home-based care, rehabilitation and family-support programmes.

South Africa has also made commitments to improve the livelihoods of persons with disabilities through skills development and employment opportunities. The target is for at least 4% of skills-development expenditure to be used to train people with disabilities and 2% of the workforce in the public and private sector to be people with disabilities.

Government is intensifying national efforts to meet these targets, which were at 0,9% in 2011.

In December 2011, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Bathabile Dlamini, launched government's *Anti-Alcohol and Substance Abuse* Campaign in Cape Town. The campaign's theme is *Towards an Alcohol and Drug Abuse Free South Africa – Take a Stand.*

The launch follows the approval of a five-year programme of action on anti-alcohol and substance abuse by Cabinet in September 2011. Its aims are:

- developing policy and reviewing and aligning liquor registration
- educating and creating awareness about substance abuse
- promoting equal access to resources across South Africa
- responding to policies and legislation regarding drugs and organised crime
- reviewing institutional mechanisms to prevent and manage alcohol and drug use in the country.

In line with its mandate of mainstreaming and oversight, the Department for Women, Children and People with Disabilities ensures that each government department commits to clear milestones towards the attainment of 2% employment equity for people with disabilities and be held accountable for this target.

Government is also encouraging the private sector to continue increasing the number of employees with disabilities, using the skills-development programmes available in the country to invest in training people with disabilities.

Transport remains a major barrier limiting participation of people with disabilities in social, educational and economic activities. The Department of Women, Children and People with Disabilities and the Department of Transport are working together to ensure that the public-transport strategy and initiatives respond to the transport needs of people with disabilities and integrate disability considerations.

Education is one of the five key priorities of government. The department is focusing on improving access to education for learners with disabilities through the promotion of the inclusive-education policy. Government is promoting integration of children with special needs into mainstream schools, while acknowledging that children with severe disabilities still need special schools.

Welfare services

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The Department of Social Development set aside R256 million in 2012/13 for a scholarship programme to train more social workers. The department committed to train 10 000 child- and youthcare workers in the next three years in collaboration with the National Association of Childcare Workers. The intention behind this initiative is to reach out to as many child-headed households as possible.

The Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers addresses the needs of social workers in the public and private sectors. It includes the following key components:

- increasing human resources by recruiting and retaining social workers
- promoting the education, training and development of social workers
- improving the quality of social-work services

> In September 2011, President Jacob Zuma announced the development of a Disability Act to deal with enforcement, non-compliance and implementation of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities.
>
> The convention covers areas such as accessibility, rehabilitation, participation in political life, equality and non-discrimination of the disabled.
>
> To ensure the proper implementation of the convention, government is developing a national disability policy and its implementation guidelines.

- strengthening governance structures within the social-service professions
- promoting occupational safety standards within the workplace
- improving service conditions for social workers
- marketing and promoting social-work services and programmes.

The implementation of the strategy remains vital to the realisation of the goals of the Department of Social Development. To this end, the department is implementing the Occupation Specific Dispensation for various categories of social workers in the Public Service. This will create better remuneration packages.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests
- advising the Minister on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards
- assisting in the promotion of social services.

Social-work scholarship

As part of its efforts to bridge the skills gap, the Department of Social Development invited Grade 12 learners to apply for social-work scholarships. In 2011, the department had 4 735 students in its programme in various institutions of higher learning. While recruiting, preference is given to deserving learners in rural areas, In October 2011, Disabled People South Africa, in collaboration with the Department for Women, Children and People with Disabilities, delegates representing disabled people's organisations affiliated to Disabled People International (DPI) and representatives of people with disabilities from across the globe, gathered in Durban for the Eighth World Assembly of DPI, held for the first time on the African continent.

The assembly, which is held every four years, discussed global progress in building an inclusive society through the implementation of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, the attainment of the millennium development goals, the impact of HIV and AIDS on people with disabilities and the challenge of sexual violence against women and girls with disabilities.

including those from child-headed households, those living in places of safety, dependants of war veterans and learners in no-fee schools.

Statutory bodies

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA is aimed at creating and promoting coordination in youth-development matters.

The NYDA's mandate includes:

- advancing youth development through guidance and support for initiatives across sectors of society and spheres of government
- embarking on initiatives to advance the economic development of young people
- developing and coordinating the implementation of the Integrated Youth Development Plan and Strategy
- guiding efforts and facilitating youth economic participation, empowerment, education and training
- initiating programmes aimed at combating crime, substance abuse and social decay among the youth
- promoting youth interests generally and particularly those of young people with disabilities.

By September 2011, some of the outcomes included:

- sustaining 61 341 employment opportunities
- training 49 341 young people in entrepreneurship
- training 84 205 young people in the NYS Programme, thus promoting entrepreneurship and patriotism among the youth
- issuing 24 062 loans to young people, valued at R60,4 million
- facilitating business opportunities for young people, valued at R142,8 million
- providing information to over 1,5 million young people through various access points, including the call centre and its 144 local youth offices.

National Development Agency

The NDA is tasked with supporting the work of civil society in key areas of concern according to the mandate of the Department of Social Development.

The NDA is an important partner in the department's efforts to promote ECD by using its grants to strengthen the capacities of ECD service organisations.

The organisations will similarly support the department's efforts to reduce violence against women and children by providing key support to the gender-based violence sector.

The NDA was established in terms of the NDA Act, 1998 and is accountable to the Minister of Social Development.

Its key strategic objectives are:

- granting funds to CSOs for meeting the developmental needs of poor communities
- strengthening the institutional capacity of organisations for long-term sustainability
- proactively sourcing funds for achieving its development objectives
- promoting consultation, dialogue and the sharing of developmental experiences to enrich the debate about and influence of developmental policies
- developing strategies for collaboration with local community-development trusts, foundations, government clusters and CSOs.

NDA programmes include funding, capacity-building and research, policy dialogue and impact assessment.

Relief boards

Four relief fund boards were established in terms of Section 16 of the Fund-Raising Act, 1978. They are the:

- Board of the Disaster Relief Fund: key functions of the board are to assist persons, organisations and bodies that suffer damage or loss as a result of a disaster
- Board of the Refugee Relief Fund: the key functions are to assist refugees as the board may deem fair and reasonable
- Board of the State President's Fund: this board's functions are to assist victims of any act of terrorism in respect of their medical treatment and rehabilitation, and assist such victims and their dependants during any financial hardship

or financial distress caused directly or indirectly by any act of terrorism

- Board of the Social Relief Fund: the key functions of the board are to make funds available to organisations capable of assisting persons with psychosocial challenges, and rendering such social distress relief to victims of violence.

Non-profit organisations

The NPO Directorate was established in terms of the NPO Act, 1997 to administer the Register of NPOs in South Africa.

The Register of NPOs is a voluntary registration facility that enhances the credibility of the registered NPO as it reports to a public office.

The registration of NPOs remains a priority. By 2011, a total of 18 393 applications had been received and processed. Of these, 10 309 met the registration requirements.

Registered NPOs increased to 65 635, representing an increase of more than 14% since 2009.

NPOs have a major role to play in identifying, developing and implementing programmes and projects that promote social development.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Department of Social Development, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Department of Social Development Strategic Plan 2010 – 2015
Estimates of National Expenditure 2011, published by National Treasury
National Development Agency
The Presidency, *Annual Report 2010/11*
South African Social Security Agency, *Annual Report 2010/11*

www.buanews.gov.za
www.childline.org.za
www.dsd.gov.za
www.info.gov.za
www.polity.org.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sassa.gov.za

Sugessted reading

South Africa Review 1: 2010: Development or Decline? Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Daniel, J, Naidoo, P, Pillay, D and Southall, R (eds). 2011. *New South Africa Review 2: New Paths, Old Compromises*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Erasmus, J and Breier, M (eds). 2009. *Skills Shortages in South Africa: Case Studies of Key Professions*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Kaminer, D and Eagle, G. 2010. *Traumatic Stress in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors and Skills: The Need for Policy Alignment*. Cape Town: HSRC.
Mager, AK. 2010. *Beer, Sociability and Masculinity in South Africa*. Cape Town: UCT Press.
Nash, A. 2009. *The Dialectical Tradition in South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
Piombo, J. 2009. *Institutions, Ethnicity and Political Mobilization in South Africa*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
The Politics of Service Delivery. 2009. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
Re-imagining the Social in South Africa: Critique, Theory and Post-Apartheid Society. 2009. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
Scheub, H. 2010. *The Uncoiling Python: South African Storytellers and Resistance*. Athens: Ohio University Press.
Reddy, V, Sandfort, T and Rispel, L (eds). 2009. *From Social Silence to Social Science: Same-Sex Sexuality, HIV and AIDS and Gender in South Africa: Conference Proceedings*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Steyn, M and Van Zyl, M (eds). 2009. *The Prize and the Price: Shaping Sexualities in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Swart, I *et al*. 2010. *Religion and Social Development in Post-Apartheid South Africa: Perspectives for Critical Engagement*. Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
Swartz, S. 2010. *iKazi: The Moral Ecology of South Africa's Township Youth*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Sport and recreation

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) is the national department responsible for sport in South Africa. Aligned with its vision of *An Active and Winning Nation,* its primary focuses are on: providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; managing the regulatory framework; and providing funding for different codes of sport.

The right to play and to participate in sport has been embodied in United Nations (UN) instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women. It is recognised as a right, which all governments should make available to their people.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom.

In line with these constitutional imperatives, the SRSA has been assigned the powers and functions to develop and implement national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

Objectives

The SRSA aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve social cohesion, nation-building and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The SRSA's goals include:

- leading the process of sport transformation, asset development and equity in sport and recreation
- ensuring that school sport is offered in all schools in South Africa
- ensuring that institutional mechanisms are in place that provide equal access at all levels of participation in sport and recreation
- contributing to social cohesion and employment opportunities through mass mobilisation in sport and recreation
- contributing to a healthy lifestyle through the provision of recreation programmes
- instituting a funding model to enable the effective implementation of sport and recreation programmes
- ensuring that high-performance systems are in place that will enable more athletes, coaches, technical officials and administrators to reach national and international standards that will contribute to an improvement in South Africa's international rankings
- improving governance and the delivery of sport and recreation by means of effective and efficient administrative support systems and adequate resources
- supporting a well-governed sports community through the development of national policies and guidelines for sport and recreation in the country
- using the potential of sport and recreation to achieve government priorities through co-operation with identified international, national, provincial and local government departments.

Programmes

The SRSA has a number of flagship programmes through which it implements its objectives.

Sport support services

The SRSA transfers funds to sport and recreation organisations (mainly national federations) and monitors the use of funds in line with service-level agreements signed between the national federations and the department. The subprogramme also administers the transfers made to Boxing South Africa and the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS), and to non-governmental organisations such as loveLife for the promotion of HIV and AIDS awareness through sport.

Another function is to support high-performance sport by annually monitoring and evaluating services delivered by the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc) in preparing and delivering Team South Africa to selected multicoded international events.

Through its Club Development Subprogramme, the SRSA supported – with sport equipment, attire and generic and sport-specific capacity-building – the formation and/or revitalisation of 189 clubs in 2011/12 in conjunction with national federations that provide technical support and coach education.

It also empowered the sport and recreation human-resource base by coordinating the development or updating of 20 sport-specific education and training manuals, and by supporting the development of a core group of 500 accredited facilitators in 2011/12.

The first National Sport and Recreation Indaba was held in November 2011 in Midrand.

The indaba was divided into six commissions, namely:

- Recreation/Mass Participation and School Sport
- The Geo-Political Constitutional Boundaries vs Sport Federation Boundaries and Sports Councils
- Infrastructure and Facilities
- Governance at Macro Level plus Amateur vs Professional Sport
- Transformation
- All Non-Disputed Resolutions.

The commissions managed to align and integrate transformation, the Transformation Charter, school sport programmes and all other relevant issues discussed under different topics of the indaba into the Draft National Sport and Recreation Plan with tailored scorecards that are going to be the bedrock for the collective case for sport and recreation.

Through its sport-scientific support subprogramme, it facilitated the transition of at least 1 800 talented athletes from mass participation programmes to high-performance programmes in 2011/12 by providing scientific support services, including medical and sport-science support.

Community Mass Participation

Community Mass Participation delivers sport-promotion programmes by focusing on increasing the number of participants in sport and recreation, with the emphasis on disadvantaged and marginalised groups. The majority of the subprogramme's budget consists of mass participation conditional grants made to provinces. The subprogramme also coordinates initiatives with the European Union, such as Youth Development Against Violence Through Sport (YDVS) Programme.

Its aim was also to encourage active lifelong participation in sport by delivering sustainable programmes to 28 000 South Africans in 2011/12, with the emphasis on women, youth, persons with disabilities, senior citizens and rural communities.

In terms of school sport, the SRSA promoted the physical well-being of children by facilitating the training of 500 school coaches and technical officials in 2011/12, and by establishing or revitalising 200 school leagues in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education.

International Liaison and Major Events

International Liaison negotiates government-to-government agreements and manages co-operation programmes. It leverages donor funding to support the strategic goals of the SRSA, and enriched sport development, particularly skills in coaching, officiating, administration and sport science, by executing five international exchange programmes in 2011/12.

It also used sport and recreation to support the African Agenda by activating and managing bilateral relations through skills transfer and capacity-building with strategic countries in Africa.

The Major Events Subprogramme coordinates and manages government's support services for hosting identified major events in South Africa and at international events in line with requests from the Minister of Sport and Recreation. It promotes tourism in South Africa by showcasing South Africa as a sports tourist destination at, among other things, the 123rd Session of the International Olympic Committee held in Durban in July 2011.

Facilities coordination

The Planning and Advocacy Subprogramme lobbies for, facilitates and coordinates the provision of sport and recreation facilities by municipalities and other relevant institutions. The subprogramme is also responsible for implementing the YDVS Programme funded by the German Development Bank, *Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau.* The programme funds the construction and rehabilitation of kick-abouts, pitches and multipurpose sites and supports consultancy services.

The Technical Support Subprogramme provides technical assistance to local authorities and other relevant stakeholders for constructing and managing sport facilities to ensure compliance with national standards. It also oversees procuring gymnasium equipment to selected municipalities. Seventy-five per cent of the budget is used for purchasing equipment and the balance is dedicated to developing skills for managing sport and recreation facilities in municipalities.

Initiatives

Golden Games

The 2011 Golden Games, part of the SRSA Older Persons Programme, were held in the Free State in October 2011 with the theme *Celebrating Active Ageing.*

The Golden Games is a national event where persons older than 65 compete in various sporting codes at provincial level. Codes that form part of the Golden Games include soccer, athletics (800 m and 4x100-m relay), brisk walk, duck walk, passing the ball, rugbyball throw, jukskei and goal shooting.

The Western Cape was crowned the 2011 Golden Games champion, having amassed 539 points compared to North West's 486 and the Eastern Cape's 474.

South African Sports Awards

The SRSA and Sascoc created the South African Sports Awards to honour the country's sports stars in local and international sports events. In 2011, 16 awards were handed out, with the winner of the Sports Star of the Year Award decided by the public through voting by SMS and online on the Sascoc website.

Cricketer Hashim Amla won the top accolade at the fourth South African Sports Awards evening, held at Sun City in August 2011.

Cameron Van der Burgh won the Sportsman of the Year accolade.

Banyana Banyana striker, Noko Matlou, a former African Women's Player of the Year, won the Sportswoman of the Year Award.

Former world No 1 golfer Ernie Els; 2011 FIFA World Cup™ organising committee chief executive officer, Danny Jordaan; Premier Soccer League chairperson Irvin Khoza; former South African Football Association president Molefi Oliphant; and fifth-dan karateka Peter Thage received Steve Tshwete lifetime achievement awards.

The Blue Bulls was named Team of the Year, and Bulls mentor Frans Ludeke scooped the Coach of the Year accolade.

Swimming sensation Chad le Clos was recognised as the Newcomer of the Year.

Wheelchair tennis players Lucas Sithole and Kgothatso Montjane were respectively named Sportsman and Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability.

Sports organisations

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is the controlling body for all high-performance sport in South Africa.

The SRSA and Sascoc cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the SRSA also provides funding to Sascoc, for instance in the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

It is the national coordinating macro-body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

Sascoc represents Team South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All-Africa Games.

In November 2011, Sascoc and the SRSA launched a coaching framework initiative as a development scheme set to strengthen the country's sport programmes by educating and training coaches, and creating structures to improve coaching. Athletes will subsequently receive world-class mentorship, while sports officials and administrators will benefit too.

> *The Guinness Book of World Records* has recognised South Africa's famous ultra-marathon, the Comrades, as the event with "the most runners in an ultra-marathon".
>
> The 2011 race had 19 951 entries, with approximately 12 600 starters and 11 070 finishers.

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

BSA is partly funded with public money. Its functions are to promote boxing and protect the interests of boxers and officials. Its main responsibilities are to:

- consider applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing
- sanction fights
- implement the regulations pertaining to boxing
- promote the interests of all stakeholders in boxing.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS is the national anti-doping organisation, funded by the SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national anti-doping programme across all South Africa's sporting codes.

The SAIDS is International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000 certified in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark

The Sports and Events Tourism Exchange (Sete) Conference and Exhibition, held at the Cape Town International Convention Centre in July 2011, aimed to build on the legacy of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Funded by the Department of Trade and Industry and South African Tourism, the Sete Conference and Expo offered a comprehensive international hosted buyer programme. This gave international buyers the opportunity to interact with exhibitors through pre-scheduled meetings, conference sessions and networking events. The key objective of the programme was to connect international buyers with local service-providers and product owners.

for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS' key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme for South African athletes competing at regional, national and international level. The SAIDS also conducts in- and out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness for all its target groups, namely athletes; coaches; parents; sport organisations; members of the medical; pharmaceutical and sport-science professions; tertiary-education institutions; and the public. Information on national and international anti-doping issues can be accessed at *www.drugfreesport.org.za*.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with its counterparts throughout the world to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

In June 2011, SAIDS launched the *I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping* Campaign to spread the message of ethics, fair play and anti-doping in sport. The SRSA supports the campaign.

The campaign, targeting professional and amateur athletes across the country, provides education about banned substances and runs actual doping tests. SAIDS statistics show that there has been more than a 100% increase in positive doping tests recently. The number jumped from 19 in 2009/10 to 50 in 2011. More than 2 000 athletes were tested each year.

In August 2011, SAIDS announced a new mobisite and an innovative iPhone application, which brings people the most up-to-date drug information. It's aimed at ensuring the country's athletes avoid using banned substances unwittingly. Athletes can download the application free and get quick access to the list of banned and permitted substances in sport.

The campaign was kickstarted at the 2012 *Cape Argus* Cycle Tour, with the Minister of Sport and Recreation, Mr Fikile Mbalula, leading an *I Play Fair* celebrity cycling team. The team also aims to participate in other mass sports events such as the Soweto Marathon and the Business Systems Group (BSG) triathlon series, to give the campaign's message prominence. Minister Mbalula also declared 18 June as I Play Fair Day.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to co-ordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

International relations

The SRSA has embarked on a concerted effort to promote relations with international parties in the field of sport and recreation. This is done through

The legacy of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ will stand South Africa in good stead as the country prepares to stage yet another major international football tournament, this time the 2013 Africa Cup of Nations.

the two subprogrammes of International Liaison and International Events.

South Africa was a signatory to the UN millennium development goals (MDGs), drawn from the actions and targets contained in the Millennium Declaration adopted by 189 nations and signed by 147 heads of state and government during the UN Millenium Summit in 2000. Through its activities, the SRSA has continued to use sport and recreation as a mechanism for the attainment of the MDGs.

The UN General Assembly adopted a set of resolutions on sport for development and peace. The SRSA is represented in the Sport for Development and Peace International Working Group, where it plays a leading role.

It continues to play a role in the activities of the Supreme Council of Sport in Africa and the establishment of a new sport structure within the African Union. This is an important step in coordinating future continental sporting activities, and fast-tracking the sustainable development of sport in Africa.

2011 sports highlights

All-Africa Games

The 10th All-Africa Games took place in September in Maputo, Mozambique, which featured 20 sporting disciplines in which 53 countries participated. Disabled events also featured in swimming and athletics.

Team South Africa finished first on the medals table, with 62 gold medals, 55 silver and 40 bronze, totalling 157 medals.

Archery

South Africa hosted the 2011 World Indoor Archery Championships in Pretoria in October. Team South Africa won six gold medals; five silver and three bronze and set four new world records.

The gold medallists winners were Jeanine van Kradenburg, Jakkie Fleming, Jenny Wittstock, Riaan van Wyk, Danielle Wentzel and Kobus Brink. Van Kradenburg, Flemming and Wentzel set new three-day world indoor records in their respective categories, while Brink set a new one-day world indoor record.

Athletics

In January 2011, South Africa participated in the 2011 International Paralympic Committee Athletics World Championships in Christchurch, New Zealand. Team South Africa ended seventh on the medals table with 25 medals, made up of nine gold, seven silver and nine bronze. Oscar Pistorius walked away with four medals (three gold and one silver) while Teboho Mokgalagadi and Ilse Hayes both won two gold medals each.

Team South Africa's gold medallists were:

- Mokgalagadi (100 m and 200 m)
- Hayes (200 m and long jump)
- Pistorius (200 m and 400 m)
- Hilton Langenhoven (pentathalon)
- Fanie Lombaard (discus)
- Amputee relay team: Pistorius, Arnu Fourie, David Roos and Samkelo Radebe (4x100 m).

The silver medallists were:

- Pieter du Preez (200-m wheelchair)
- Langenhoven (long jump)
- Jonathan Ntutu (100 m)
- Fanie van der Merwe (100 m and 200 m)
- Pistorius (100 m)
- Anrune Liebenberg (400 m).

The bronze medallists comprised:

- Casper Schutte (javelin)
- Fourie (200 m)
- Du Preez (100-m wheelchair)
- Michael Louwrens (shotput)
- Lombaard (shotput)
- Hayes (200 m)
- Zanele Situ (javelin)
- Mncedi Khanti (1 500 m)
- Van der Merwe (400 m).

In May and June 2011, competing in the 50th Ostrava Spike in the Czech Republic, South African 400-m hurdler LJ van Zyl destroyed a classy field to win with ease in 47,66 seconds. That equalled his personal best and South African record time, which he set in Pretoria at the end of February. It was also the fifth time he ran under 48 seconds in the season.

In June 2011, South African world long-jump silver medallist, Khotso Mokoena, won gold at the Oslo Bislett Games with an 8,08-m leap. World 800-m champion Caster Semenya ran a season-best of 1:58,61 and finished in third place, while javelin-throw champion, Robert Oosthuizen, continued his fine form with his third podium spot. Oosthuizen took a short-lived lead with his first heave of the evening with a throw of 82,07 m.

Pistorius achieved a long-held dream in Lignano, Italy, in July, when he qualified for the

The first FNB 2010 Legacy Programme, an initiative between First National Bank and the South African Football Association (Safa), saw 15 coaches from rural areas receiving intensive training before a number of grassroots-development initiatives were rolled out across South Africa.

FNB and Safa unveiled the legacy programme in Johannesburg in May 2011.

400 m at the 2011 World Championships and the 2012 London Olympic Games.

It was his last opportunity to achieve the qualifying standard of 45,25 seconds and the 24-year-old did it, breaking his previous personal best of 45,61 seconds with a time of 45,07 seconds.

To put that time into perspective, it would have been good for fifth place in the Beijing Olympic Games of 2008. It made Pistorius the 15th-fastest 400-m runner in the world in 2011.

Van Zyl occupied sixth place with a time of 44,86 seconds in the 400-m hurdles.

In August 2011, Pistorius reached the semi-final of the International Association of Athletics Federation's (IAAF) Athletics World Championships in Daegu, South Korea.

South Africa finished 17th on the medals table, with two silver and two bronze. The men's 4x400-m squad and 800-m runner Semenya won the silver; while Sunette Viljoen and LJ van Zyl won bronze medals for javelin throw and 400-m hurdles respectively.

Thanks to his run in the heats, Pistorius also picked up a medal and made history as the first athlete with a disability to win a medal at the IAAF World Championships.

In December 2011, Pistorius was nominated for two 2012 Laureus World Sports Awards – the Laureus World Breakthrough of the Year Award and the Laureus Disability Award.

He received the Sportperson of the Year with a Disability Award in February 2012 at a ceremony in London.

Biking

Greg Minnaar was placed second in the downhill at the *Union Cycliste Internationale* (UCI) Mountain Bike World Cup in Pietermaritzburg, KwaZulu-Natal, in April 2011, just 0,241 seconds behind American Aaron Gwin.

Pietermaritzburg has been awarded the opening rounds of the 2012 and 2013 UCI mountain bike world cups.

Boxing

In October 2011, Moruti Mthalane successfully defended his International Boxing Federation flyweight title for a third time as he stopped home-favourite Andrea Sarritzu in the seventh round in Italy.

Cricket

India toured South Africa in 2010/11, with the third of three tests played in January 2011 in Cape Town. The test was drawn, and the series squared one-all.

The two teams then met in a once-off Twenty20 (T20) match at the Moses Mabhida Stadium in Durban. The match celebrated bowler Makhaya Ntini's career and paid tribute to Sachin Tendulkar. Ntini, the first black man to play for the South African national team, announced his retirement at the end of 2010. The match also served as a celebration of the arrival of Indian people in South Africa in 1860.

A five-match one-day international (ODI) series followed, which South Africa won 3-2, narrowly missing out on a white-wash over the visitors.

The 10th International Cricket Council (ICC) Cricket World Cup took place in India, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh from February to April 2011.

South Africa finished at the top of Group B, which they shared with India, England, the West Indies, Bangladesh, Ireland and the Netherlands. They won five matches but lost against England. They met New Zealand in the quarterfinals, where the Black Caps made 221/8 in their alotted 50 overs. South Africa made 172 runs before being bowled out in the 44th over. India went on to become the 2011 ICC World Champion.

In April 2011, cricketers Jacques Kallis and Dale Steyn were honoured in the 2011 *Wisden Cricketer's Almanack* by being named in its Test XI for the 2010 calendar year.

South Africa's cricketers fared well at the 2011 LG International Cricket Council Awards, which took place in London in September 2011.

Hashim Amla, Dale Steyn, AB de Villiers and Jacques Kallis were all included in the Test Team of the Year, with De Villiers and Steyn also included in the One-Day International (ODI) Team of the Year.

The following players were shortlisted: Amla for the People's Choice Award, the Garfield Sobers Trophy for Cricketer of the Year and ODI Player of the Year; Kallis for Test Player of the Year and Spirit of Cricket; and JP Duminy for Twenty20 International Performance of the Year.

In October and November 2011, Australia visited the country to square off in a contest comprising two T20 games, two ODIs and two tests. Hashim Amla was appointed T20 and ODI captain in the place of AB de Villiers, who was injured.

The Australians won the first T20, but the Proteas pulled a stunning comeback in the second game to win it and draw the T20 series.

Australia won the first rain-logged ODI, while South Africa won the second. Australia bounced back to win the third and decisive game.

The contest between the two countries continued into a close-fought test series, with the locals winning the first nail-biting test and the visitors being victorious in the second. On the first day of the second test, Kallis became only the fourth batsman ever to score 12 000 test runs.

In December 2011 and January 2012, Sri Lanka toured South Africa, playing three tests and five ODIs. South Africa won the test series 2-1, with batsman-wicketkeeper Mark Boucher becoming the second wicketkeeper ever to score a test half-century and make six dismissals in an innings in the same match for the second time in the first test. The Proteas won the close-fought ODI series 3-2.

Cycling

Ashleigh Moolman-Pasio, Joanna van de Winkel, Marissa van der Merwe and Cherise Taylor broke new ground in the international pro road cycling world by being selected to make up half of an eight-member team in a prestigious grand tour event, the *Giro d'Italia Femminile* in July 2011.

The South African para-cycling team returned from the 2011 International Cycling Union Para-Cycling Road World Cup Final, which took place in Canada in July, with six medals.

The three-day event hosted an assortment of categories in the road-racing discipline, accommodating hand-cycling, tricycling and bicycling.

Flying

Team South Africa put in an impressive performance at the 20th Precision Flying World Championships, held at Brits in North West, in October 2011. South Africa came second in the Team Landing Category, with squad member Hans Schwebel being named runner-up for the landing trophy. This was the first time the country hosted the event.

Golf

Rory Sabbatini captured his sixth PGA Tour title in March 2011 when he won the Honda Classic on the PGA National Champion Course at Palm Beach Gardens in Florida, United States of America (USA).

In April 2011, Sunshine Tour commissioner Gareth Tindall announced that South Africa would host one of the biggest golf tournaments in the world in 2012 – a $10-million (about R67,2 million) World Golf Championship event. A five-year contract has been signed, which will feature the top 70 players in the world rankings. It will run from 2012 to 2016.

In April 2011, Charl Schwartzel closed with four birdies in succession to capture a two-shot victory in the US Masters at Augusta, over Australia's Jason Day and Adam Scott. Schwartzel's four-round total was 14-under-par 274, made up of rounds of 69, 71, 68, and a closing six-under-par 66.

In May 2011, Thomas Aiken won the Spanish Open. His win was the fifth by a South African on the European Tour in the 2011 season, following Ernie Els' win in the South African Open Championship, Louis Oosthuizen claiming the Africa Open, and Schwartzel triumphing in the Joburg Open and the Masters. Aiken's victory was the 99th by a South African on the European Tour.

In the same month, Els was inducted into the World Golf Hall of Fame. He joined the legendary Gary Player, who entered the hall in 1974. Nicknamed "The Big Easy" because of his swing, Els was elected in his first year on the ballot.

Also in May, Schwartzel moved into the top 10, coming in at number seven, after eight top-10 finishes by the year's halfway mark.

Garth Mulroy scored his maiden PGA European Tour victory in the Alfred Dunhill Championship in November 2011, recording the 100th win by a South African on the tour.

In the same month, Hennie Otto secured his first South African Open win, the 10th victory by a South African at the competition in 11 years.

In December 2011, Schwartzel came second in the Thailand Golf Championship, finishing seven strokes behind Lee Westwood from Great Britain.

Early in 2012, the PGA Tour announced that Player would be the 10th recipient of its Lifetime Achievement Award.

South Africa's Armand Scholtz and Claudia Lim of Australia, the leaders in the Boys' and Girls' Golf Junior Masters competitions respectively, held on to win the 54-hole inaugural KeNako South African World Juniors in George in March 2011.

Hockey

In February 2011, the Investec South Africa women's hockey team defeated China 5-1 at the University of Free State Hockey Centre in Bloemfontein.

The team concluded the Investec International Series with a 3-2 win over Belgium after leading 3-1 at half time.

In June 2011, South African striker Pietie Coetzee broke the women's hockey world record of 220 test match goals with a stunning first-half hat-trick and four goals in total in a 5-5 draw between South Africa and the USA at the Champions Challenge tournament in Dublin. The team went on to claim fifth place after a 2-1 victory over the hosts, Ireland.

The men's hockey team finished third at the International Hockey Federation Champions Challenge in Johannesburg in December 2011.

In the same month, the women's hockey team played in the Four Nations competition in Argentina. They finished in second place after losing a closely contested final against world champions Argentina. India and Ireland also participated in the championship.

Motor racing

Driver Giniel de Villiers finished second in the 2011 Dakar Rally Argentina – Chile in January 2011. In November 2011, it was announced that De Villiers would lead the field of 17 cars at the start of the 2012 Dakar Rally in Argentina.

The International Superstars Series for V8 production cars was held at South Africa's Kyalami racetrack in Gauteng in November. Thomas Biagi won the series.

Netball

In July 2011, South Africa's netball team finished the World Netball Championships in Singapore on a high note when they claimed first place in Africa and fifth place in the world rankings. Erin Burger was named Player of the Tournament.

Polocrosse

In July 2011, South Africa captured the Polocrosse World Cup title for the first time when they defeated neighbours Zimbabwe in the final at the Onley Grounds Equestrian Centre near Rugby in the United Kingdom.

Both teams were undefeated heading into the final and both had beaten Australia, who had previously never lost a game at the World Cup, which was held Down Under in the first two editions in 2003 and 2007.

Polocrosse is a combination of polo and lacrosse and the format features men and women playing alternate chukkas.

Rugby

The International Rugby Board (IRB) awarded the hosting rights for the IRB Junior World Championship 2012 to the South African Rugby Union in June 2011. Cape Town and Stellenbosch will host 312 of the world's finest under-20 players over the three-week tournament as 12 international teams seek to claim the greatest prize in age-grade rugby.

South Africa's 2010/11 HSBC Sevens World Series campaign proved successful, with the team winning the USA leg in Las Vegas in February 2011 with a 24-14 victory over Fiji. This was the team's first tournament title since April 2009.

In May 2011, South Africa came back from being 7-28 down to snatch a 36-35 victory from Australia in the final phase of the match to give the Blitzbokke a 36-35 win over Australia in the final of the London leg of the series.

South Africa went on to win the tournament in the Edinburgh leg. This was the team's first successive tournament title victories since 2008, when they won the Dubai and George tournaments within the space of two weeks.

The team finished second overall on the HSBC Sevens World Series standings with 140 points, 16 behind champions New Zealand.

In October 2011, Cecil Afrika was announced the IRB Sevens Player of the Year in Auckland, New Zealand.

The 2011 Tri-Nations series was shortened from nine games to six to accommodate the Rugby World Cup (RWC), with each team playing the other two twice instead of three times. South Africa lost to Australia twice and once to the All

Blacks, before recording an 18-5 victory over the All Blacks in a bruising encounter in Port Elizabeth in August 2011. The series was ultimately won by Australia.

The seventh RWC was held in September and October 2011 in New Zealand. The Springboks, the defending champions, kicked off their campaign with a 17-16 win over Wales in a closely contested game. They went on to convincingly beat Fiji 49-3 and Namibia 87-0, a game in which Bryan Habana became the most prolific test try-scorer in South African rugby history with his 39th try in 72 matches. A 15-13 victory over Samoa saw the Boks reach the quarter-finals unbeaten at the top of Pool D.

Unfortunately, they exited the World Cup in the quarter-finals after a 9-11 loss against Australia. The hosts, New Zealand, went on to eliminate the Wallabies in the semi-finals and was ultimately crowned world champions after beating France in the final, refereed by South Africa's Craig Joubert.

Soccer

Bafana Bafana began their 2011 season on a winning note with a 2-0 victory over Kenya in a friendly international at the Royal Bafokeng Stadium in Rustenburg in February.

In March 2011, Bafana Bafana scored a 1-0 victory over Egypt at Coca-Cola Park in Johannesburg to stay at the top of the African Nations Cup qualifying Group G.

South Africa's national women's football team, Banyana Banyana, defeated Zambia 2-1 at the Nkoloma Stadium in Lusaka in January 2011 in their opening qualifier for the 2012 London Olympic Games.

Banyana Banyana took a one-goal advantage into their second-leg Olympic qualifier against Tunisia in April 2011 after beating the north Africans by a goal to nil in Umlazi outside Durban, advancing to the final group of four African countries in the hunt for two places at the London 2012 Olympics.

South Africa's under-23 football team went through to the last round of qualifying for the 2011 All-Africa Games in Maputo, Mozambique, despite a loss to Malawi in May 2011.

They put on a superb performance in the second leg of their Olympic qualifier against Benin at Johannesburg's Rand Stadium in June 2011 to overcome a 3-1 deficit from the first leg and reach the last eight of the qualifiers.

Siphiwe Tshabalala captained Bafana Bafana to a well-earned 0-0 draw in their 2012 Africa Cup of Nations (Afcon) qualifying match against Egypt at the Military Academy Stadium in Egypt in June 2011.

In July 2011, the under-23 men's side qualified for the All-Africa Games despite a loss, while Banyana Banyana were beaten in the final of the Council of Southern Africa Football Associations Women's Championship. Both sides were in action against Zimbabwe at the Rufaro Stadium in Harare.

Shakes Mashaba's charges were beaten 1-0 on the day, but Bongani Ndulula's two goals from the first leg in Johannesburg proved enough to give South Africa a 2-1 victory on aggregate.

Banyana Banyana qualified for the All-Africa Games, which took place in Mozambique in September. Unfortunately, they fell to Zimbabwe.

In July 2011, South Africa's Kaizer Chiefs netted a late winner to edge Champions League quarter-finalists Tottenham Hotspur 1-0 in the opening match of the Vodacom Challenge at Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane.

Bafana Bafana comprehensively outplayed Burkina Faso 3-0 at Coca-Cola Park in Johannesburg in August 2011. They lost 2-1 to Niger and conceded their lead in Group G in September 2011. They then drew with Sierra Leone in Nelspruit. However, the team did not qualify for the 2012 Afcon finals.

In September 2011, Banyana Banyana secured their spot at the 2012 London Olympics with a 1-0 draw over Ethiopia.

The annual Nelson Mandela Challenge was held in Port Elizabeth in November 2011, where Bafana Bafana drew 1-1 with Côte d'Ivoire to share the trophy.

On November 2011, gold officially reached record levels following the minting of a handful of Mandela medallions on the summit of Mount Kilimanjaro, the first venture of its kind ever.

Eleven intrepid South African Gold Coin Exchange (SAGCE) team members carried a unique hand-held press for the minting process all the way to the top, in honour of Nelson Mandela's achievements and the pivotal role he played in South Africa's journey to democracy.

Minting a gold medallion at that altitude presented a challenge. SAGCE arranged for the one-off construction of a hand-held press – light enough to carry up the mountain but also designed to mint a medallion to the highest standard possible. In the process, it set a record for the highest altitude at which such a coin has ever been minted.

In February 2011, Sibusiso Vilane (40) became the first black African to summit Mount Everest and walk to the South Pole completely unaided.

He was also the first black man to climb the highest peaks on all seven continents, earning him a place in the prestigious Seven Summits Club, which has just six South Africans among its 198 members worldwide.

In December 2011, the South African under-23 side drew with Gabon in Morocco in their second match of the Confederation of African Football Under-23s Championship. The eight-nation tournament also served as the qualifying tournament for the 2012 London Olympics.

Special Olympics

The South African team that participated in the 2011 Special Olympics World Summer Games in Greece brought home 71 medals and countless ribbons. They received 38 gold, 20 silver and 13 bronze medals respectively in swimming, track and field, basketball, boxing, soccer, golf and table tennis.

Surfing, surfski and canoeing

In January 2011, defending champions Hank McGregor and Abby Adie retained their titles in the Global Trader Drak Challenge Canoe Marathon.

Surfer Jordy Smith finished third in the Rip Curl Pro Bells Beach in Australia in April 2011 to move up from fifth to third in the 2011 Association of Surfing Professionals World Title rankings.

In June 2011, McGregor won his third Dunlop Surfski World Cup title in Durban. The women's race was dominated by Eastern Cape Olympian Michéle Eray, who won the women's event and finished 25th overall in the competition. The Dunlop Surfski World Cup set a world record when 330 entries were received by close of normal entries on 10 June, making it the biggest international surfski event in the world.

In July 2011, South Africa finished seventh out of 27 nations at the 2011 Billabong International Surfing Association World Surfing Games in Panama. The eight-person team collected a bronze medal for placing fourth in the Aloha Cup event.

Later the same month, South African big wave star Grant "Twiggy" Baker won the first Oakley One Wave Wonder event powered by Zigzag. The competition ran over five months and drew over 150 entries.

At the end of July 2011, Smith captured the 2011 Billabong Pro Jeffreys Bay in a hard-fought final over Australia's Mick Fanning.

In October 2011, the South African Masters surfing team finished third in the team competition at the 2011 El Salvador International Surfing Association World Masters Surfing Championship. They also bagged five individual medals, one in each of the five contested categories.

At the end of October, McGregor won the 2011 International Canoe Federation Canoe Marathon World Championships K1 title in Singapore. The competition was a productive one for the South African contingent, with the Masters Cup team claiming 11 medals in day one's races: five gold, four silver and two bronze.

Swimming

In June 2011, the South African squad claimed two gold, one silver and two bronze medals on the first day of the Canet, France, leg of the Mare Nostrum series.

Cameron van der Burgh showed his skills in the 50-m breaststroke when he won gold with a time of 27,72 seconds. The 14-year-old Michelle Weber bagged the 800-m freestyle title, finishing over five seconds ahead of the pack. Gerhard Zandberg set a new meeting record as he took gold in the men's 50-m backstroke in 24,96.

Chad le Clos made a big impact on the Fina/Arena World Cup circuit in 2011, winning 23 gold medals, 10 silver and two bronzes – a total of 34 medals from seven meets. He was also named the Best Male Swimmer in the series. Van der Burgh won two bronze medals in the series.

South Africa also excelled at the Africa Junior Swimming Championship in Nigeria in December 2011. The team returned with 69 medals out of a possible 80. They won 35 gold medals and set 11 gala records.

In July 2011, members of the International Olympic Committee (IOC) coverged on Durban for their annual general meeting – the first time that the committee met on African soil.

The meetings took place at Durban's International Convention Centre and formed part of the 123rd IOC Session, during which PyeongChang (South Korea) was selected ahead of Munich (Germany) and Annecy (France) as host city of the 2018 Winter Olympics.

Tennis

The Euro/Africa Zone Group 1 Davis Cup tie against the Netherlands took place at Potchefstroom in the North West in July 2011. Kevin Anderson, ranked 39 at the time, was joined by teammates Izak van der Merwe, Rik de Voest and Wesley Moodie. The South Africans won 3-1.

They then played Croatia in the world group play-offs in September, but lost and subsequently did not go through to the Davis Cup group.

In October 2011, Anderson reached the quarter-finals of the Erste Bank Open after defeating Marcos Baghdatis of Cyprus. He then overpowered Austria's Jurgen Melzer to reach the semi-finals, before being knocked out by former world number four Juan Martin del Potro of Argentina.

South Africa's number one women's player, Chani Scheepers, claimed her maiden Women's Tennis Association (WTA) Tour title in the Wanlima International Women's Open in Guanzhou, China, in September. Scheepers' 6-2, 6-2 victory over Magdalena Rybarikova in the final ended an eight-year title drought for South Africa.

Days later, South African doubles specialist Natalie Grandin also won her maiden WTA title at the Hansol Korea Open in Seoul, South Korea.

South Africa became the first African country to host the Wheelchair Tennis World Team Cup when the 27th competition, which falls under the auspices of the International Tennis Federation, took place at the University of Pretoria in April 2011.

Sixteen countries participated in each of the world groups, and eight countries in the quad and junior events.

South Africa's men's wheelchair tennis team won a bronze medal, while the Netherlands proved themselves to be number one in both the men's and women's game.

Whiskey Games

In August 2011, Sean Tickner, 30, a prosthetist from Cape Town, and 28-year-old Jonathan Oliff, a brand strategist from Durban, won the Make It 2 Bushmills Trophy. Also referred to as the World Whiskey Games, it is a gruelling competition where teams of two battle it out for two days at the Bushmills Distillery in the village of Bushmills, County Antrim in Northern Ireland.

Teams take on punishing tasks, both mental and physical, such as beach golf, barrel rolling and blind taste tests in the hopes of winning the prestigious Bushmills Trophy.

The prize includes a two-week stint at the 403-year-old distillery, working with master distiller Colum Egan; a chance to make a unique whiskey using techniques imparted by Egan; and an allowance of US$8 200 (R59 000) in spending money.

Teams from 11 countries took part – the competition included Belgium, Bulgaria, the Czech Republic, Germany, the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, Northern Ireland, the Republic of Ireland, Russia and the USA.

Acknowledgements

Beeld
Pretoria News
South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
Sowetan
Sport and Recreation South Africa
The Star

www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.news24.com
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sanifaa.org.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.supersport.com.
www.superswimmer.co.za

Suggested reading

Besong, MB. 2010. *South Africa: Bafana, Bafana.* 2010. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Desai, A (ed). 2010. *The Race to Transform: Sport in Post-Apartheid South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Fraser, C. 2010. *Soccer Chic: Soccer Life the South African Way.* Cape Town: Quivertree Publications.
Goode, R. 2010. *Football Muti.* Johannesburg: Jacana.
Koonyaditse, OA. 2010. *The Politics of South African Football.* Grant Park: African Perspectives.
Latakgomo, J. 2010. *Mzansi Magic: Struggle, Betrayal and Glory: The Story of South African Soccer.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.
Maralack, D. 2010. *Transforming Sport and Identity in the Post-Apartheid South African Nation State.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard Bookstore Press.
Marnewick, M. 2010. *Quest for Glory: Successes in South African Sport.* Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Matfield, V. 2011. *Victor: My Journey.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.
O'Sullivan. D. 2009. *The Penguin Book of South African Sports Trivia.* Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
Pillay, U, Tomlinson, R and Bass, O (eds). 2009. *Development and Dreams: The Urban Legacy of the 2010 Football World Cup.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Roberts, C. 2011. *No Normal Sport in an Abnormal Society: Struggle for Non-Racial Sport in South Africa: From Apartheid to Sports Unity.* Cape Town: Havana Media.
Sport and Recreation South Africa. 2011. Strategic Plan, 2011 – 2015. Pretoria.
Sport Versus Art: A South African Contest. 2010. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

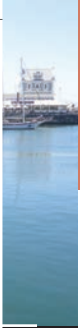

SOUTH AFRICA
TDK
PISTORIUS
Daegu 2011

Tourism

SOUTH AFRICA

YEARBOOK

2011/12



Tourism 22

South Africa is gradually becoming a preferred tourist destination among international tourists. The primary objective of the Department of Tourism is to retain the economic and social advantages of tourism development and growth, while reducing undesirable effects on the natural, historic, cultural or social environment; and integrating tourism into the broader social and economic processes in society.

The Department of Tourism aims to increase the industry's contribution to the economy from R189 billion in 2009 to R499 billion by 2020.

The department further aims to increase the number of foreign tourist arrivals from seven million in 2009 to 15 million by 2020 and the number of domestic tourists from 14,6 million to 18 million. It is expected to create some 225 000 new jobs by 2020.

Accessing markets unlocked by the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ is also fostering new growth in the tourism industry.

The industry achieved a further 3,3% growth, attracting 8 339 354 international tourists in 2011.

The majority of visitors came from Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries, but there was also a steady inflow from the United Kingdom (UK), the United States of America (USA) and Germany. Emerging Asian markets contributed a 14,6% growth to the industry.

Most of the movement into and out of the country was through OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg; Cape Town International Airport; the Beit Bridge border post between South Africa and Zimbabwe; the Lebombo border post into Mozambique; Ficksburg and Maseru Bridge into Lesotho; Oshoek and Golela into Swaziland; and Kopfontein and Ramatlabama into Botswana.

Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry. More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

There are numerous world-class sporting events on South Africa's calendar every year, such as:

- the annual *Cape Argus* Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 109-kilometre course
- the Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal in which 18 000 swimmers participate annually
- the 89-km Comrades Marathon, the biggest ultra marathon in the world.

Cruise tourism

The Department of Tourism aims to help position the tourism sector in such a manner that its economic benefits become a reality to all South Africans. The department is exploring ways to ensure that South Africa increases its global competitiveness such as identifying and further developing niche markets.

Cruise tourism was one of the areas identified for further investigation and in this regard a study was commissioned. The project was conducted under the stewardship of a national steering committee, which represented all stakeholders in the field, including port cities and provinces, the Department of Public Enterprises, the National Ports Authority and Transnet.

The Department of Tourism will continue engaging with the industry and other government departments and entities on how to address constraints, facilitate passenger transit, encourage cruise passengers to visit port cities and surrounding areas, and ultimately increase economic opportunities for communities in and around coastal cities.

The department will work closely with the cruise-line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has on offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Business tourism

It is expected that business tourism could help government meet its job objectives in South Africa and boost the economy.

The 2011 Business Tourism Exhibition in February aimed to expose local and international buyers to a range of services and products in

In 2011, South Africa's 10 principal airports saw more than 50 airlines making around 230 000 aircraft landings and carrying about 33 million passengers.

South African Airways launched its non-stop service to New York and a direct service to China. Air France launched a new thrice-weekly non-stop service from Paris to Cape Town in November 2011.

> *The Lonely Planet Travel Guide* voted Cape Town the second best of the world's 10 best beach cities in January 2011.

southern Africa, which included meeting and conference venues.

Business tourism had become a significant growth driver worldwide. The department aims to increase its focus on meetings, incentive trips, conferences and events.

In July 2011, a report by the International Congress and Convention Association ranked South Africa 34th globally and first in Africa for 2009 in terms of the number of meetings hosted. Africa hosted 314 meetings (3,8%). Of these, 90 were held in South Africa.

South Africa's tourism sector will be boosted significantly by the 200 international events confirmed to take place in the country over the next five years, which include meetings and conferences that are expected to attract about 300 000 delegates. The potential economic impact of these meetings and conferences is expected to be R1,6 billion. The country's major cities such as Cape Town, Johannesburg and Durban will host most of the upcoming meetings and conferences.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is one of the fastest-growing and most lucrative sectors of the global tourism market. In 2009, wine tourism contributed an estimated R4,3 billion to South Africa's tourism revenue. The country could increase its revenue from tourism, which could help the South African wine industry offset international volatility caused by factors such as fluctuations in foreign currency and demand. Wine and gourmet tourism could also play a role in terms of South Africa's goal of increasing the geographic spread of tourism, as it provides additional options for tourists.

The local wine and tourism industries are uniting to present the country's first specialist wine-tourism exhibition, Vindaba. This is the first initiative of its kind anywhere in the wine-producing world in which the wine and tourism sectors are jointly presenting a wine and wine tourism event.

Vindaba will be held in Cape Town in September 2012, targeting local and international travel trade as well as wine, travel and lifestyle media. The initiative represents a partnership between Wines of South Africa; South African Tourism (SAT); the wine routes; Cape Town Tourism; Cape Town Routes Unlimited; and the Western Cape Department of Finance, Tourism and Economic Development.

Medical tourism

Medical tourism, or the process of seeking medical treatment in another country, is a fast-growing source of income. It covers both elective procedures and specialised operations such as joint replacement and spinal fusion.

About 50 developed and developing countries claim medical tourism as a national industry. South Africa has offered these services for some time, but only recently began to earn a higher profile for itself in this field.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also provide organ transplants; cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery; and dentistry.

Adventure tourism

When it comes to adventure sports, South Africa has lots to offer.

The 100-mile, 50-mile or 25-mile trail run through the vast Addo Elephant National Park in the Eastern Cape is designed to test trail runners both mentally and physically. The trail tracks the mountains and valleys of the park. Runners are challenged to run primarily on tracks within the park itself and also some stretches of gravel road.

Port Elizabeth, tagged as the "Watersports Capital" of Africa, offers surf lifesaving, rubber-ducking, jet-skiing, canoeing, surfing, paragliding and power-boating.

Jeffreys Bay, a neighbouring coastal town, is renowned worldwide among surfers as the home of the "perfect wave" and hosts the annual Billabong Classic, which draws the world's top surfers.

Sandboarding has become a major activity in some parts of South Africa. This sport is extremely

> In May 2011, President Jacob Zuma promoted tourism on the sidelines of the World Economic Forum by signing the United Nations World Tourism Organisation's (UNWTO) "Golden Book".
>
> The Global Leaders for Tourism is a joint UNWTO and World Travel and Tourism Council initiative to position travel and tourism higher on the global agenda. The campaign aims to mobilise recognition and support for the tourism sector from world leaders by demonstrating travel and tourism's crucial role in economic growth, job creation and development.
>
> In its New Growth Path, government has identified tourism as one of the six job drivers in South Africa.

popular near Cape Town, in the Eastern Cape and on Gauteng's old mine dumps. Every year, an annual sandboarding competition takes place in Betty's Bay, in the Western Cape.

South Africa is a perfect playground for quad-biking enthusiasts. There are over 60 different trails to experience, and a good selection of these also offer quad bikes for hire.

In South Africa, one can cycle and go horse-riding in wildlife reserves, through the winelands, along the coast, up mountains and past waterfalls – the possibilities are almost endless, with enticing trails in every province.

South Africa is also one of the best shark-diving destinations in the world.

The country is home to the highest commercial bungee jump in the world. The 216-m Bloukrans Bridge attracts adventure-seekers from all around the world. The bridge is situated along the scenic Garden Route. A new addition to Bloukrans is the 200-m flying-fox cable slide. There is a range of jumps on the much lower Gouritz River Bridge, which boasts South Africa's first bridge-swinging operation.

Rural tourism

The development of rural areas is an identified priority area for government to promote investment in the development of tourism products and attractions in rural areas. In 2010/11, the departments of tourism and rural development and land reform developed a rural tourism strategy, consisting of strategic interventions that will have a significant pro-poor impact to allow poor communities better access to revenue accruing to the tourism market.

The Department of Tourism supported and trained 530 rural enterprises in tourism awareness, customer service and toolkits during 2011.

Tourism policy and initiatives

The *White Paper on Tourism* provides a policy framework for tourism development and entails, among other things:

- empowerment and capacity-building
- focusing on tourism-infrastructure investment
- aggressively marketing South Africa as a tourism destination to international markets
- a domestic tourism and travel campaign.

Raising general awareness about the opportunities for domestic travel remains a priority. The aim is to encourage South Africans to travel within their country, make tourism products accessible to all, facilitate the development of a culture of tourism, and create a safe and welcoming environment for visitors.

> The Big Five Marathon, which takes place in Limpopo annually in June, offers competitors the experience of running a marathon in a game reserve that features Africa's "Big Five" – lion, leopard, buffalo, rhino and elephant.
>
> The event takes place in the Entabeni Game Reserve in the Waterberg, which is also known for having almost all of South Africa's antelope species. The reserve is part of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's Waterberg Biosphere Reserve. The route of the Big Five Marathon is particularly testing and features mountains, valleys, ravines, gorges, forests, savannah and bushveld.

National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)

In March 2011, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, launched the NTSS at the Luthuli Museum in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal. The NTSS will play a major role in positioning tourism as one of the pillars of the South African economy.

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations globally by 2020.

The overall goal of the strategy rests on four pillars – to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, gross domestic product (GDP) and job creation.

In the area of job creation, the tourism sector is working towards creating 225 000 jobs by 2020. To achieve this, the NTSS will focus on domestic tourism, with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism will also be targeted, with South Africa looking to take advantage of markets such as outbound tourists, which have not been tapped into in the past.

The NTSS is one of the most important building blocks that was put in place as part of the department's new growth plans. The NTSS is the first ever strategy of this kind and was approved by Cabinet in March 2011.

It represents the department's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over a two-year period in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism-marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to, and contains coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy
- enhancing visitor experiences
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

The strategy will work towards:

- increasing the number of tourists to the country to 15 million in 2020
- increasing tourism's contribution to the GDP from an estimated R189,4 billion in 2009 to R499 billion by 2020
- creating 225 000 jobs by 2020.

In 2011/12, 27 South African beaches were awarded Blue Flag status for excelling in safety, cleanliness, water quality, provision of amenities and maintenance of environmental standards.

The Blue Flag is an international voluntary eco-label awarded to over 3 450 beaches and marinas in 41 countries. Local beaches that received Blue Flag accreditation include:

Eastern Cape

- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kariega Beach, Kenton-on-Sea
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Robberg 5 Beach, Plettenberg Bay

KwaZulu-Natal

- Lucien Beach, South Coast
- Margate Beach, South Coast
- Marina/San Lameer Beach, South Coast
- Ramsgate Beach, South Coast
- Trafalgar Beach, South Coast
- Umzumbe (Pumula) Beach, South Coast

Northern Cape

- McDougalls Bay Beach, Port Nolloth

Western Cape

- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Keurboom Beach, near Hermanus
- Kleinmond Beach, Kleinmond
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Llandudno, Cape Town
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Santos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
- Silwerboom Beach, West Coast
- Witsand Beach, mouth of the Breede River.

One of the NTSS' key focus areas is job creation. The department will contribute 10 270 full-time equivalent jobs in 2011/12 through its Social Responsibility Implementation Programme and the Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP) Programme.

Government will work towards increasing the number of tourism programmes and projects led by and benefiting the communities.

Some of the programmes the department will implement in its efforts to create a skills base and job opportunities for the industry, especially for young people, are:

- The National Youth Chefs Training Programme, with an intake of 800 unemployed young people over a three-year period, and a budget of R25 million for the first year.
- The Hospitality Youth Initiative (HYI), which is a training and experiential placement project for unemployed youth. The initial target of 300 trainees was increased to a total intake of 800. The budget of R7 million was given additional funding of R15 million.
- The Tourism Buddies Youth Project is a tourism and hospitality training and experiential placement programme, with a total intake of 975 youths to be trained nationally and a budget of R39 million. The department is expecting to extend this annual project to 2012/13 depending on its performance, availability of funding and demand.

Tourism International Relations Strategy

In 2011, the Department of Tourism developed the Tourism International Relations Strategy. Its purpose is to tactically guide engagements at multilateral level, including participation in the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade bloc, so that international engagements are informed by a sound and cogent strategy, which all relevant stakeholders and role players have had an opportunity to contribute to and enrich.

Poverty-relief funding

The Department of Tourism's poverty-relief projects promote the development of community-owned tourism products and the establishment of tourism infrastructure, including roads, information centres and tourism signage.

These poverty-relief projects are categorised into product and infrastructure development; capacity-building and training; the establishment of small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs); and business-development projects.

The tourism sector contributes to economic growth and creates jobs. In 2011/12, the department aimed to create 10 270 full-time jobs.

The tourism sector is a fertile environment for entrepreneurs and SMMEs. The department continued its partnership with the Business Trust to fund the TEP, which supported about 530 small rural enterprises in 2011/12.

The department also spent R253 million in 2011/12 to fund tourism projects aligned to the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

Hospitality Youth Initiative

In March 2011, the Deputy Minister of Tourism, Ms Tokozile Xasa, unveiled the HYI, which is aimed at training the country's unemployed youth to help them find meaningful employment in the hospitality service industry at entry level.

The HYI targets youth aged 18 to 35 with Grade 12 senior certificates.

The Department of Tourism set aside a budget of R8 million, under the auspices of its EPWP, to fund this training programme and entered into an agreement with the HYI to conduct the training.

The programme is divided into two phases. In the first, learners undergo intensive training for a month, which forms part of their theoretical learning and entry into the hospitality industry.

Their training focuses on communication, life skills, customer care, HIV and AIDS as well as leadership.

After completing the first phase, learners are placed in tourism establishments, where they will receive on-the-job training that meets internationally accepted standards, as laid down by the hospitality industry.

At the end of the training, beneficiaries are awarded a certificate of competency and the hospitality establishments may absorb some of them.

Improving service delivery

The provision of excellent service is important in the tourism value chain, as it contributes directly to the growth and development of tourism. Research conducted in 2009 highlighted the inconsistencies of service levels, ranging from poor to excellent service. There are various reasons for this state of affairs, but mostly it can be ascribed to poor leadership, inappropriate training and the general culture of South Africans accepting poor service without complaining. Consequently, service-providers are often ignorant of it that their service did not meet expected standards.

> With more than 16 000 visitors attending the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change 17th Conference of the Parties, better known as COP17, held in December 2011, the summit was billed as the second-biggest event to be held in the country, after the FIFA Soccer World Cup™ in 2010.
>
> The tourism windfall was expected to reach R100 million, with the food and leisure industries enjoying an increase in patronage. More than 50 000 curios were expected to be sold, and 50 000 metered taxis expected to have benefited from ferrying delegates around the city.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

In September 2011, Minister Van Schalkwyk launched the NMSRT in Knysna in the Western Cape. Responsible tourism is about creating better places for people to live in, and better places to visit. South Africa's natural environment is one of its greatest tourism resources, and therefore the tourism industry needs to be actively involved in conserving and protecting it.

This standard serves to:

- establish a common understanding of the minimum criteria for responsible tourism
- promote responsible tourism in the tourism sector, including accommodation, hospitality, travel distribution system, as well as all organs of state and entities, organised labour and communities involved or interested in the tourism sector in South Africa
- establish the minimum criteria for certification of the sustainability of organisations in the tourism sector.

In this regard, the Minister announced the establishment of National Convention Bureau.

It is expected that this bureau will have a significant effect in terms of, among other things, consolidating, coordinating and strengthening the department's efforts to attract meetings and conventions to South Africa. The bureau was established under the auspices of SAT and became operational in 2011/12.

In 2009, the Department of Tourism, in partnership with industry stakeholders, initiated a process of developing the NMSRT as part of its strategic objective of creating a sustainable tourism industry. South Africa was the first country to include responsible tourism in its National Tourism Policy and the *1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa*.

Following the White Paper, the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism also produced the National Responsible Tourism Guidelines in 2002, which emphasised the need to address the triple bottom line of sustainable development (economic, environmental and social sustainability). Research among tourism businesses confirmed a relatively high level of dual certification, namely tourism business undergoes certification with more than one scheme to ensure that the organisation is certified with all elements of responsible tourism. The standards can be applied to agencies running programmes certifying the sustainability of tourism businesses; tourism businesses and organisations preparing for certification or simply evaluating the organisation's progress in respect of sustainability; tourism organisations such as local tourism organisations or sector organisations, to create awareness among their members about responsible tourism, and as a benchmark for their members to work towards.

The initiatives taken by the department to improve service levels included seminars for frontline staff and trainers, which were facilitated by the Department of Tourism and the Federated Hospitality Association of South Africa.

The Disney Institute facilitated 64 service excellence readiness seminars in the nine provinces, attended by 14 072 people.

Road shows were held in nine provinces and 430 representatives from the tourism value chain attended sessions. Taking place during October and November 2010, the road shows' objectives included, among other things:

- communicating the outcomes of the research to provinces and partners
- getting input on the research outcomes and information that could be used for drafting the National Tourism Service Excellence Strategy (NTSES).

The Department of Tourism developed the NTSES to offer strategic direction to the sector, with the intention of improving service levels in the tourism value chain.

The long-term strategic goal of the NTSES is to give the country an opportunity to transform the sector into a globally competitive destination of choice. It is believed that goals can be achieved once the attitudes and perceptions of the industry's employees, employers and the general public have changed. Sustainable behavioural changes can also be enhanced by educating all major frontline job categories in the sector in appropriate behaviour and customer care.

Consumers need to be made aware of world-class standards and their right not to accept poor service. To this end, initiatives that have been developed include the service-excellence awareness material that will be used to educate the public about the importance of excellent service.

The strategy emphasises combining and coordinating efforts and activities by taking into consideration existing initiatives regarding service excellence.

The role of the department is determined by the various pillars, as some pillars fall outside the scope of the national mandate, including:

- research and information (continuous learning and accurate information)
- up-skilling and capacity-building (appropriate and relevant training initiatives)
- public awareness (public education about the importance and benefits of quality service)
- service standards and norms (tools for improving services and self assessment)
- consumer feedback (effective management of consumer feedback).

In such cases, the department assumes a facilitative role and a lead organisation is identified to drive the process.

Guidelines on the management of consumer feedback and awards systems were developed to support implementation. Inputs were also given to the Culture, Arts, Hospitality and Sport Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta) to ensure that its customer-care training modules cover key areas outlined in service excellence approaches.

The NTSES also expects the sector to create a culture of customer service in the industry.

South Africa could benefit by an estimated R14 billion a year as a result of Table Mountain being chosen as one of the New 7 Wonders of Nature, in November 2011.

It is estimated that tourism to Cape Town would increase by about 20%, mostly from international tourists.

Welcome Campaign

SAT's Welcome Campaign, launched in 2004 at the Tourist Indaba, encourages every South African to make every tourist feel at home, so that all tourists take home with them an experience that stands out.

Welcome Awards

The Welcome Awards recognise those businesses and individuals who raise the bar in the tourism sector by offering high standards of customer care and providing service excellence.

The awards aim to:

- enhance the visitor's experience
- promote and encourage the industry to focus on service excellence
- recognise organisations and individuals in South Africa who raise the level and standards of customer service
- inspire longer stays and repeat visits
- turn guests into country ambassadors
- identify and add to innovations that embrace authentic South African experiences
- encourage the industry to share ideas and best practice to improve service.

The Welcome Awards also promote the best businesses within each category as examples to the industry, encouraging members of the industry to share their ideas on how they can improve customer experiences and make their stay more enjoyable.

In May 2011, the Welcome Award winners were announced:

- Accommodation: The Cape Milner Hotel
- Car Rental: Economic Car and Bakkie Hire
- Meetings, Exhibitions and Special Events: The Plantation
- Restaurants: Hemingways Restaurant at Leriba Hotel and Spa
- Tour Operators: Western Cape Tours
- Tourist Attractions: South African Breweries (SAB) World of Beer
- Tourist Guides: Greg Lederle
- Travel Agencies: Sure Zorgvliet Travel
- Best Tourism Website (online): Sandton Sun Hotel.

Sho't Left Campaign

At the end of March 2011, Minister Van Schalkwyk launched SAT's *Sho't Left* Campaign for 2011/12. Sho't Left encourages all South Africans to explore their own country and showcases the country as a fun, affordable and easy-to-do destination.

> In September 2011, the Limpopo tourism authorities launched an initiative to attract more domestic tourists to the province, under the theme *Tourism Linking Cultures – A Celebration of Tourism in Linking Cultures of the World Through Travel.*

> The South African Tourism Ubuntu Expo was launched in August 2011. The multicity trade show expo visited New York, Atlanta, Miami and Los Angeles, promoting South Africa as a prime tourist destination.

In 2011/12, SAT invested R30 million in the *Sho't Left* Campaign. The campaign entailed, among other things, advertisements and promotions on television, radio, in print, on the Internet, on mobile telephones and in outdoor campaigns.

SAT also continued its joint marketing agreements (JMAs) with the local travel trade.

These JMAs are aimed at offering South Africans accessible and affordable holiday deals and showing that a person with a gross monthly income of between R5 000 and R15 000 can afford to travel in their own country. Some of the partners include Thompsons Holidays, Flight Centre, Pick n Pay Travel and kulula.com.

The strategy for the campaign is founded on the principles of personal relevance and emotional connection, and uses some of South Africa's most vibrant up-and-comers to tell their stories of travelling Mzansi and how they are using the country, its people and locations as inspiration for their work.

Domestic tourism

Domestic tourism declined by 4% in the third quarter of 2011, with 6,9 million trips being undertaken compared to the 7,1 million in the same period in 2010. The incidence of domestic travel remained low at 7,4% of South African adults who had taken a trip in this quarter compared to 7,7% in the third quarter of 2010.

Visiting friends and relatives continued to be the major reason for domestic trips accounting for 70% of total domestic trips taken in the third quarter of 2011, while holiday trips accounted for 15,2% of total domestic trips. While there was an overall decline in the number of domestic trips in 2011, the share of holiday trips increased from 10,4% in 2010 to 15,2% in 2011.

Due to the increase in holiday trips, domestic tourism revenue increased from R4,9 billion in the third quarter of 2010 to R5,2 billion in the same period in 2011.

Total domestic bednights decreased by 9% from 29,7 million nights in 2010 to 27,5 million in

South African National Parks Week was celebrated from 12 to 16 September 2011 under the theme *Know Your National Parks*, highlighting the importance of South Africa's national parks by looking at both human and wildlife factors. During this time, South Africans could visit all SanParks free of charge.

2011. This decline was driven by the decline in the number of trips as the average length of stay per trip remained flat at four nights.

In the third quarter of 2011, most domestic tourists travelled to KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng. Economic constraints remained the major barrier to taking a domestic trip.

International tourism

In August 2011, the Brand South Africa launched the *Play Your Part* Campaign. It is an active citizen campaign, which emphasises patriotism and the role that each South African can play to build the country's brand.

South Africa's status as a premier global leisure tourism destination is firmly entrenched in the wake of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Cabinet approved the International Tourism Growth Strategy in June 2003, which includes an analysis of core markets and their segments. Priority markets have been identified in Europe, Asia and Africa.

The strategy not only aims to increase arrivals, but also to:

- increase the duration of tourists' visits to South Africa
- increase spending by tourists
- ensure that tourists travel throughout the country and not just in a few provinces
- facilitate transformation and Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) in the local tourism industry.

The New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) identified tourism as an important sector for addressing the development challenges facing Africa. The Nepad Tourism Action Plan was developed, providing a more detailed framework for action at national and subregional levels. The action plan proposes concrete interventions in the following focus areas:

- creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment
- institution-building aimed at promoting tourism
- tourism marketing
- research and development
- investment in tourism infrastructure and products
- human-resource development (HRD) and quality assurance.

Some of the tourism initiatives South Africa is actively participating in include:

- various tourism spatial development initiatives in the SADC
- developing the SADC univisa, which would be a single visa to cover travel within the region.

Although the Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa agreement on the need for the univisa exists, the differing levels of development in SADC countries is a challenge that must be overcome first.

South African Tourism

SAT promotes South Africa generically in terms of its unique selling points as an all-season, year-round preferred tourist destination.

Its marketing initiatives are guided by the Tourism Growth Strategy, adopted by Cabinet in 2001, that incorporates four key market portfolios, namely:

- Africa and the Middle East (that includes the domestic market)
- Europe
- the Americas and UK
- Asia and Australasia.

Another two portfolios exist at SAT, namely Business Tourism and Events Tourism.

The overall marketing strategy promotes South Africa's scenic beauty, diverse wildlife, ecotourism and variety of cultures and heritage.

It also works to realise South Africa's potential as a big event destination, and engender a travel and tourism culture among South Africans.

The more focused, cost-effective and customer-driven approach taken to its international marketing operations is in a quest to "play smarter" in the increasingly competitive global tourism market.

Initiatives have included ongoing segmentation research into key spend and volume markets abroad that highlight international growth areas where SAT's marketing efforts will reap the greatest returns.

As a result, the organisation also embarked on an aggressive e-Business Tourism Growth Strategy that incorporates fully fledged research, a call centre and website: *www.southafrica.net*.

SAT participates in major travel shows, co-ordinates advertising, public relations and direct mailing campaigns, and holds educational work sessions with the international partners of South Africa's travel industry.

The organisation is active in promoting South Africa as a destination for business tourism through its Business Tourism unit that works closely with sector representatives both abroad and in South Africa.

Industry transformation

The Department of Tourism undertakes initiatives to build its capacity in terms of the growth and development of the tourism sector. It continues the work of monitoring the implementation of the Tourism BEE Charter and Scorecard, and reports on progress in this regard. A baseline study was undertaken to assess the state of transformation in the sector. The department supports the TEP in its initiatives to stimulate small business development and entrepreneurship by encouraging new businesses to participate in the sector and existing enterprises to grow and perform more profitably.

The department has integrated designated groups in the implementation of its job-creation and enterprise-support programmes with a deliberate bias towards rural areas. Action was taken to support and implement Broad-Based BEE (BBBEE) as well as SMMEs in the tourism sector. The department's procurement policy was implemented to achieve government's BBEEE imperatives.

The department's role of monitoring the implementation of the Tourism BEE Charter was enhanced by the establishment of systems to monitor compliance as well as a baseline study to assess the state of transformation in the industry.

In June 2011, South African Tourism (SAT) launched the second phase of its global marketing and advertising campaign *20 Experiences in 10 Days* internationally. It set to showcases the destination to one billion people in over 600 million households in 2012/13 in television commercials, in print media and online. It features the authentic experiences in South Africa of couples and friends from China, Brazil, Angola and Germany – key core and emerging markets.

Additional global SAT campaigns in 2011 included the continuation of the *National Geographic Adventurers Wanted* Campaign as well as a new *Sho't Left* Campaign, encouraging domestic travel by South Africans.

South Africa's Singita Game Reserves took top honours in the United States *Travel + Leisure World's Best Awards 2011 Readers' Survey*, scooping both first and second places among the World's Top 100 Hotels, as well as securing the winning slot for Best Hotel Spa in Africa and the Middle East.

Singita Grumeti Reserves was ranked number one on the Travel + Leisure World's Best Awards 2011 list of Top 100 Hotels Overall. Flagship Singita Sabi Sand, home to Singita's founding lodges Singita Ebony and Singita Boulders, as well as exclusive-use retreat Singita Castleton, followed in second place.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership

TEP is a small business development agency focused on small and medium tourism businesses in South Africa. It is a not-for-profit organisation funded by the Business Trust, the South African Government through the Department of Tourism and corporate South African organisations.

TEP has been in existence since 2000, with the mandate to improve the sustainability of small tourism enterprises, thereby facilitating job creation and transformation within the tourism industry. Each year, TEP invests millions in the development of small and medium tourism businesses across South Africa.

Since its inception, TEP has assisted more than 6 400 small tourism businesses to expand and improve business operations, which has facilitated the creation of over 57 000 jobs in the tourism industry.

TEP's Enterprise Development Portfolio provides financial aid to tourism enterprises to acquire new skills on formal and informal education platforms, develop and implement business plans, upgrade and improve their products or service offerings, implement and upgrade information and communications technology, and improve marketing and access to markets, thereby creating additional employment in their immediate communities.

In 2011/12, the Department of Tourism contributed 10 270 full-time equivalent jobs through its Social Responsibility Implementation Programme and TEP.

The department continues its partnership with the Business Trust to fund the TEP – a programme that was supposed to support about 530 small rural enterprises in 2011/12.

The Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Award (ETEYA) honours small tourism businesses around the country.

Between July and October 2011, the departments of tourism, environmental affairs and water affairs and Eskom conducted the National Greening and Resource Efficiency road shows to educate tourism product owners about the importance of using available natural resources (water and energy) optimally and efficiently in their sector.

The *White Paper on Responsible Tourism* requires that the sector promotes responsible tourism practices maximising economic, social and environmental benefits, minimising costs to destination and improving local economies. The road shows focused on the green economy, waste management in tourism, water conservation and demand management, energy efficiency in tourism, universal accessibility, and climate change.

Kagiso Legobe and his Kay 2ze Gee Tours from North West was the winner of the 2011 ETEYA.

Small businesses, such as those involved in the ETEYA programme, are the key to the country's sustainability as a tourism sector.

Selecting an ETEYA winner is a year-long judging process, which includes aspects such as leadership, strategic planning, marketing, customer service, social responsibility, financial performance, facilities and appearance.

ETEYA is aimed at developing and sustaining SMMEs in the tourism sector and enhancing job creation. A research project undertaken by SAT showed a 70% increase in job-creation opportunities between 2001 and 2010.

Tourism Indaba

Indaba, Africa's biggest travel and tourism show, officially opened at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in Durban in May 2011.

The 2011 theme for Indaba was *Playing Globally, Winning Locally*, which encapsulated the ideals of shared and inclusive growth and job creation in the South African tourism sector.

With more than 13 000 delegates attending Indaba, it remains Africa's most important tourism and business networking gathering.

Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa is SAT's marketing platform, which showcases the range of services and products in southern Africa's meetings, incentives, conference and exhibitions (Mice) industry to local and international buyers.

It targets everyone who travels for business or who books business travel, as well as organisers of events, conferences, meetings, team-incentive trips or team-building activities.

Meetings Africa 2011 set new industry benchmarks in keeping with South Africa's knack of creating memorable business experiences. It exceeded expectations and cemented its status as Africa's leading business-tourism exhibition.

The 2011 show at the Sandton Convention Centre left industry stakeholders and trade partners optimistic about the future of Africa's meetings industry; and international and local buyers more knowledgeable about Africa's diverse business-tourism offerings and equipped with a wealth of new business networks.

Over 7 000 official meetings were scheduled during Meetings Africa 2011, breaking all previous records and exceeding SAT's expectations.

Human-resource development

In 2011, the Department of Tourism continued to implement the HRD strategy for the tourism sector, which was launched in 2008. Certain areas, especially those affecting the youth in terms of unemployment and poverty, were prioritised.

The Department of Tourism solicited capable and recognised organisations that could implement on its behalf the National Youth Chefs Training Programme. The South African Chefs Association was identified as a partner to implement the training programme in the field of professional cookery for the selected beneficiaries nationwide. About 800 unemployed youths were recruited and started training in February 2011.

In partnership with the Ubuntu Institute, the Services Seta and the Public Relations Institute of Southern Africa, the department placed 233 candidates at Ritz Carlton hotels for internship programmes of six, 12 and 18 months respectively. This is an attempt to ensure that they get some workplace experience so that they can be employable. The aim of the experience is that, once they have finished the internship programme, almost 60% of them would be employed.

Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the Seta established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Economic Sector. Theta comprises the following chambers:

- Hospitality
- Conservation and Tourist Guiding
- Sport, Recreation and Fitness
- Tourism and Travel Services
- Gaming and Lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

A Seta's main function is to contribute to raising skills, or bringing skills to the employed or those wanting to be employed in the sector. This is done by ensuring that people learn skills that are needed by employers and communities.

Tourist guiding

International Tourist Guide Day was celebrated on 21 February 2012. The Department of Tourism is committed to promoting and professionalising tourist guiding in South Africa.

The department developed the integrated tourist guide registration system to fast-track registration of guides, and provide the public and the tourism industry with any information pertaining to guiding. This includes an updated database of legally registered guides.

The strategy to professionalise tourist guiding in South Africa is in place. Tourist guide associations and all other key stakeholders in the tourism family made significant contributions to the strategy. An implementation plan was completed, and the strategy's recommendations were expected to be implemented in 2011/12.

The department was engaging with SADC countries to discuss the harmonisation of training standards across the region. This move will present opportunities for registered guides to extend their services across the country's borders.

Tourist guiding is increasingly becoming a profession that is gaining recognition since the inception of the World Federation of Tourist Guides Associations 25 years ago, of which South Africa is a founder member.

By 2011, the country had more than 10 000 accredited and registered tourist guides. The Federation of South African Tourist Guides Associations is a national association of guides that regularly interacts with the Department of Tourism.

Similarly, provincial and local associations of tourist guides have similar collaborations with provincial departments of tourism or the Department of Tourism's agencies and municipalities to take tourist guiding forward.

Cape Town Tourism, Johannesburg Tourism and Durban Tourism met at the 2011 Tourism Indaba to initiate a joint city marketing agreement.

The three cities are South Africa's economic and tourism hubs and the joint marketing agreement will see them collaborate to maximise tourism development and marketing. The backbone of the agreement will consist of product and destination packaging, collaboration on events and trade shows as well as shared collateral and online campaigns aimed at the international and domestic markets.

A national task team, including the South African Police Service, Department of Home Affairs, the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency, Metro Police and some municipalities, has been established to combat illegal guiding.

Research

The Department of Tourism, SAT and a number of partners launched the Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) in 2009. It makes measurement and tracking a reality, and gives the nation and its leaders in both the private and public sector a means by which to accurately determine tourism's contribution to the national economy, and to scenario plan around imperatives such as economic growth and job creation.

The TSA is a United Nations (UN) World Travel Organisation-approved methodology used for measuring and tracking the overall value and contribution of tourism to all sectors of the economy. Findings are the result of extensive and collaborative research by partners and give an accurate account of this growing sector of the economy. Besides tracking the number of tourism jobs created and the contribution to the country's GDP, tourism bodies are also able to tell which activities are most beneficial to the tourist and, in effect, to the economy, too.

Hints for tourists

Every traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas

Cape Town took number-one spot at the international TripAdvisor Travelers' Choice Destination Awards. TripAdvisor, the largest travel website in the world, names its top 25 travel destinations each year, determined by the millions of comments and ratings posted on the site. TripAdvisor listed walks on Table Mountain as one of the top attractions. Two of the city's hotels, Blackheath Lodge and Derwent House Boutique Hotel, were among the top 10 hotels for service.

are issued free of charge. Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas. Passport-holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the USA, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas. Remote areas in KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo are low-risk malaria areas and standard precautions should be taken.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, roads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

A number of international airlines, including South African Airways, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country. (See Chapter 23: *Transport*.)

Accommodation

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed and breakfast (B&B) establishments.

Some hotels cater for businesspeople and the high-end luxury market, but there are diverse hotels available across the country, ranging from family-centred establishments to international chains, and a growing selection of conference hotels, casino resorts and golf hotels.

There are also spa resorts, numerous options for the budget traveller, and an array of charming B&B accommodation and guest houses. Facilities range from the ultra-luxury to the rustic, but most are noted for their high-quality, personalised service and warm hospitality. Many have restaurants on site.

A variety of promotional material on South Africa is available. Comprehensive guides and maps cover all the regions and aspects of interest to tourists, including accommodation. Various useful tourism websites can be found on the Internet.

Quality assurance

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) inspects standards in the hospitality and accommodation industry.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are currently the following types of establishments:

- formal service accommodation (hotels, lodges)
- self-catering
- backpacker and hostelling
- caravans and camping
- meetings, exhibitions and special events.

The previous grading criteria were originally introduced in 2002. Inconsistencies in the application of the grading criteria and minimum requirements, coupled with inadequate management processes and systems, led to a lack of uniformity in the awarding of stars.

The process to revise the grading system began in 2008 and resulted in world-class standards being implemented. The process entailed not only a review of the grading criteria and minimum requirements, but also an overhaul of the TGCSA's entire operating system to ensure a seamless process of managing quality assurance for tourism products.

The aim was not only to ensure that South Africa can maintain its international competitiveness as a tourist destination, but also to show that it can be a world leader in terms of quality assurance.

Thousands of establishments and a variety of industry stakeholders, including the Federated

Hospitality Industry of South Africa family of members, other associations such as the South African Tourism Services Association, the Bed and Breakfast Association of South Africa and the National Accommodation Association of South Africa, and the current accredited grading assessors cooperated and contributed to the process.

In March 2011, Minister Van Schalkwyk unveiled a new star grading system for accommodation and other establishments in the country, which followed revisions to the TGCSA grading system.

The key changes to the TGCSA system include:

- The appointment of awards committee members covering a broader range of skills necessary to adjudicate the awarding of star grades, such as architecture, hospitality, decor, travel and universal accessibility.
- The re-design of the grading plaque to be displayed by graded establishments. The TGCSA is taking back control of the plaque, with a new design which reflects a serial number together with the clear message that states that "This grading plaque is the property of the TGCSA", thus making it legal for the TGCSA to remove the plaque from those establishments that insist on displaying it although no longer graded. The Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008), which came into effect in April 2011, further strengthens the TGCSA's efforts.
- The purchase and installation of a new information technology back-office to ensure a seamless grading process to be followed by accredited grading assessors whenever they assess properties around the country.
- The TGCSA has introduced a grading-fee structure that takes into consideration the rate charged by the establishment, the star grading applied for, as well as the number of rooms. Previously, for example, a nine-room guest house in Mthatha charging R600 per person (pp) was paying the exact same grading fee as a nine-room guest house in central Port Elizabeth charging R2 000 pp.
- The appointment of four provincial master assessors, based in Johannesburg, Nelspruit, Durban and Cape Town, servicing all nine provinces. They ensure the presence of the TGCSA within provinces and are accessible to resolve issues on the ground, thus improving service levels for both the establishments and the accredited grading assessors.
- Under the new system, the total points that can be achieved are 1 000 compared with the 460 previously. This demonstrates the many new areas that have been added for assessment and that the process is rigorous.
- The performance management and annual review of all accredited grading assessors using a service-provider agreement signed with the TGCSA. The provincial master assessors play a key role in ensuring that the TGCSA's service-provider relationship with all its accredited assessors is implemented to the benefit of all establishments and to improve quality standards across the country.
- Training for all accredited grading assessors and all TGCSA head office staff.
- Phasing out internal assessors. Some hotel groups have their employees trained according to the TGCSA system and have them accredited as grading assessors. Consultation has commenced with these groups to phase this out.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province is considered one of the most beautiful regions in Africa; it is also the place where two oceans meet and the home of the famous fynbos vegetation.

The brooding presence of Table Mountain, the pristine coastline with its white sandy beaches, the magnificent countryside with its bountiful rivers, vlei areas and dams, fauna and flora, together with the warm summer climate and friendly community make the Western Cape the perfect holiday destination.

The Western Cape is South Africa's most developed tourism region. The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other industry. One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry, and it contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town centres on the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, a working harbour offering everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, theatres and live music to museums.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery. Also worth a visit are historical buildings in the Bo-Kaap and District Six.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour, including trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival, which is attended by more than 30 000 people.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), is a popular attraction for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly Mother City. An ultra-modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. In summer, various open-air concerts are held here.

In October 2011, *National Geographic* named Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden as one of the world's best picnic spots. One of the many attractions of the garden is that it has been positioned as a leisure destination, instead of just being a botanical garden where people can only view plants. Summer sunset music concerts at the garden are held on Sunday evenings during the summer months, from late November until early April.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch is on the slopes of Table Mountain. It was built of granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the TMNP, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend, Able Seaman Just Nuisance, stands at Jubilee Square.

Other attractions include the South African Naval Museum and the Warrior Toy Museum.

One of only two of the mainland African penguin-breeding colonies in the world can be found at Boulders Beach, also part of the TMNP.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

In Oostenberg, visitors can enjoy some fine wine and flower farms, such as Zevenwacht Wine Estate with its graceful Cape Dutch homestead. Tygerberg Zoo boasts a collection of exotic animals.

Endless stretches of quiet beaches provide popular surfing and windsurfing spots. Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and host to an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area, with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

Tygerberg is a vibrant and fast-growing area with a well-developed business centre, numerous sports fields, an international indoor-cycle track, well-kept golf courses and a racecourse.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November. You may spend as much time as you like picking strawberries and you are charged per kilogram that you pick.

Garden Route

The popular Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast.

The Destiny Africa Ecosphere Project combines business, learning and leisure in a so-called smart city. The R28-billion initiative will stand on 437 ha just outside the town of George. Components include a top-class conference centre, a business park with an incubator, a university cluster and research centre, about 7 000 residential units, ecotourism and medical-tourism facilities, retail opportunities and a waterfront. These interconnected facilities are known as an ecosphere.

Construction could take up to 17 years and will result in at least 50 000 new jobs, both directly and indirectly. The project centres on the Mice concept, which forms the core of sustainable business tourism.

For its small area, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is the last surviving hand-driven pont in operation in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River.

Whale-watching attracts tourists at Witsand and Port Beaufort from June to November.

The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails.

Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize Trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. PetroSA's Information Centre informs visitors about the production of synthetic fuels from Mossel Bay's offshore gas fields. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

George is a historically significant location, with features such as the Slave Tree located just outside the Old Library. It is so named due to the thick chain embedded in the tree trunk, however, it was only planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English Oak in the southern hemisphere.

George is the mecca of golf in the southern Cape, as it is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses.

Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus.

The George Museum, with its theme of timber history, offers ongoing exhibitions. The Montagu and Voortrekker passes are national monuments, providing spectacular views of the Outeniqua Nature Reserve, which offers several hiking trails.

The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, the Outeniqua Pass, the railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo. Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests. Birdwatchers flock to the Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species.

Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. Over 200 species can be found in the abundant fynbos and forest settings.

Knysna is also famous for its delectable homegrown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape. An eclectic mix of art galleries showcases the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale-watching, black-water tubing, hiking and forest and cycling trails.

The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

At 216-m high, the bungee jump from the Bloukrans River Bridge on the border between the Western and Eastern Cape is the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's spectacular landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the largest bird in the world – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with its gravel roads are also worth a visit. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town. The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is held in the town annually.

Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the remarkable Cango caves, a series of spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the 30-cave wonderland boasts magnificent dripstone formations. Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking and protea and fynbos admirers.

Calitzdorp has a number of wine estates. The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m-high waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Klein Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest waterwheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones.

This ancient, fossil-rich land, which is five times the size of Great Britain, is also home to the richest desert flora in the world.

In the Central Karoo, visitors will find the largest variety of succulents found anywhere on Earth.

Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, the late Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. At the Karoo National Park on the town's doorstep, visitors can experience the flora and game of the Karoo. A challenging 4x4 route takes them to the escarpment and new areas of ecological discovery. The park is also home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Next to the transport museum is a large field on which the first international cricket match was played in South Africa.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village almost totally wiped out by floods a century after it was established, is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. It is the ideal place to sample a great variety of Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg mountains, was home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Today, Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour-drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands, including the former Breede River Valley, are close to Cape Town. The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch, the oldest town in South Africa, is also known as the "Eikestad" (City of Oaks). Various historical walks delight visitors. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country. The Stellenbosch Village Museum comprises four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the middle-19th centuries.

The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up sultry summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Cheetah Outreach is an education and community-based programme, created in January 1997 on land proved by the Spier Wine Estate, to raise awareness of the plight of the cheetah and to campaign for its survival.

The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel, which was built in 1992, commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. Originally known as Oliphantshoek, it was renamed after the arrival of Huguenots who were predominantly French. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate their arrival in 1688. In April each year, this region presents the South African Cheese Festival.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the *Vignerons de Franschhoek* Wine Route.

Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000-m^2 greenhouse. This luxuriant paradise makes the free-flying exotic butterflies feel right at home. The butterfly park is located at the crossroads of the Paarl, Stellenbosch and Wellington wine routes, near Klapmuts.

The 15-ha Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre is situated between Klapmuts and Stellenbosch. Focusing mainly on African wildlife, the Giraffe House aims to provide a place for people to enjoy a family picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

Drakenstein Lion Park was established in 1998 as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. The park is in the scenic Cape winelands and comprises 50 acres of sprawling lion habitat.

Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, lies near Stellenbosch. The reserve comprises the Jonkershoek mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

On Le Bonheur Estate, visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via ramp-ways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams.

Paarl lies between the second-largest granite rock in the world and the Du Toit's Kloof mountains. It is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos vegetation supports a number of south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and the orange-breasted sunbird.

The Afrikaanse Taalmonument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum is in the centre of the town.

Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa mountains on its eastern border. Apart from three renowned cooperative wineries, one can visit several prestigious wine cellars on historic Huguenot farms with Cape Dutch homesteads. More than 90% of South Africa's vine-cutting nurseries are in Wellington. The town is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Open Air Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and can sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 Trail and the Ochre San Rock Art Trail are a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Situated on the Breede River, Bonnievale features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast, there are canoe trips, as well as birdwatching and riverboating.

Known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses", Robertson is one of the most beautiful areas in South Africa. Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, delectable fruit and radiant roses, Robertson produces connoisseur-quality wines and is also known for its thoroughbred horses.

Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Klein Karoo and set in a fertile valley. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by TO Honiball.

The area also offers several hiking trails, game-viewing drives, guided cultural tours and excellent rock climbs.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den Pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a wealth of fascinating white-washed, thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area.

Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies the picturesque town of Rawsonville, known for its array of award-winning wines. Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the awe-inspiring Slanghoek Valley, with its lush vineyards and breathtaking views, or relax in the warm-water mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of extreme beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by rich culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters. During April every year, Lamberts Bay hosts the Crayfish and Cultural Festival.

The area is a birder's paradise. In addition, every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant array of colour.

The Swartland region is known for its undulating wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the fertile Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with their wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars. The entertainment venue *Evita se Perron* is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale-watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan is a popular holiday destination. The West Coast National Park, an internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, attracts thousands of visitors each year. The park is also where the oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were discovered.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to many seabird species.

Saldanha is a watersport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the *SAS Saldanha* Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Fishing (snoek in season), hiking and whale- and birdwatching opportunities also draw many visitors.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide where various species can be viewed.

Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town.

Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February). The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders.

At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. The world-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Coop is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features, among other things, 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market.

The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is a recently built example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. There are several recognised mountain-biking, walking, hiking and canoeing trails and a skydiving club. Annually, scores of skydiving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet C Louis Leipoldt. Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersports enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Cooperative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a breathtaking view of the ocean.

Klawer was named after the wild clover growing in the area. During the flower season in spring, the area is a riot of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting.

Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. Birdwatching, mountain-biking, day walks, and hiking and 4x4 trails abound. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history buffs.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa, just over an hour's drive east of Cape Town, lies a fertile area surrounded by mountains and sea, called the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooiels. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale-watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two land-based breeding colonies of the jackass penguin in South Africa.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort, famous for the best land-based whale-watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale-watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and the Rose Boats and Toy Museum. The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignaut Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse.

The Agulhas National Park, home to a rich and diverse plant population, has more than 110 *Red Data Book* species. Among these are the endangered Cape platanna and microfrog, and rare coastal birds such as the African oystercatcher. The damara tern finds the area ideal for breeding.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters are cleaved into the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary *Birkenhead*, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere.

Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the *Arniston*, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve and adjacent De Hoop Marine Protected Area on the way to Swellendam include an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony.

The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance.

Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum Complex document the first mission station in South Africa.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also known for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, blazing summer sunshine and interesting and friendly people, the Northern Cape is a province rich with culture.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors. The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works. The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near the Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's

Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, offers breathtaking views, and boasts a host of animals, birds and insects. It encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome – an internationally recognised hotspot and the world's only arid hotspot – which stretches 116 000 km² from the southwestern Cape into southern Namibia.

Tankwa's landscape offers vivid seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus also make game viewing a simple task. Gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbok and even bustards stand out.

There are no shops, restaurants, public phones or automatic teller machines in the park; neither is there any cellphone reception within the park or on the main access roads.

The park derives its name from the river that runs through it and although the true meaning of Tankwa is unknown, it is thought to mean "turbid waters", "place of the San" or "thirst land".

socio-historical realities and features, among other things, Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley. A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

A short distance from Kimberley is the mining town of Barkley West, which, owing to its proximity to the Vaal River, attracts many water-sports enthusiasts and anglers.

Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park. The park is not only home to large raptors, but is also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors have the opportunity to view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griqua people. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Tswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water a day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built and several other buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave outside Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.

The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters. Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, which features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The roaring sands on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop are an interesting site. The white dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Eleven waterwheels are still used today along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas.

Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River.

At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest. The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town. Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River.

A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties" who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls, also known as the "Place of Great Noise", in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m^2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

The names of various landmarks within the park reflect its long history as a crossroads of many cultures, which have included the San, the Mier, the Huguenots and the Scottish at various times.

The park is an important element of the first phase of the Transfrontier Conservation Area 2010 Strategy, which is a priority of the SADC.

Namaqualand

The indigenous people of the Namaqualand region are the Namas. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf.

Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared.

The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy spring's show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay was known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade.

Established as a small-vessel harbour and railway junction in 1954 for the copper-mining industry, Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 and several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ai-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns.

The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvalspont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author, Olive Schreiner, lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town, which is steeped in history, also features an old toll house and a blockhouse dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom hydroelectric power station situated within the dam's wall.

Victoria West is home to the Apollo Theatre, South Africa's last operational art deco movie theatre from the 1950s. The theatre comes alive each September with the Apollo Film Festival.

The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near the small town of Brandvlei lies Verneukpan, where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood. The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of well-known Afrikaans author and poet, NP van Wyk Louw, is known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's (Saao) observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland.

From Monday to Saturday, the Saao offers two guided tours a day and two night tours a week. Day tours entail a guided walk through the visitors' centre adjacent to the telescope sites on the mountainside and a guided tour of selected telescopes, including the Salt.

During night tours, visitors can view interesting objects in the sky through two dedicated visitors' telescopes. Booking is essential.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflower and maize, and forms the principal breadbasket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The National Museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring, about 50 km north of Bloemfontein.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War from 1899 to 1902. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Franklin Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Watching the sunrise from Naval Hill in the middle of the town gives an idea of the size of the town. The Franklin Game Reserve is the biggest game reserve that is completely surrounded by a city.

Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events not to be missed is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.

The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis is also worth visiting.

Botshabelo ("Place of Refuge"), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of events in the area.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie is worth a visit.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.

Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State merino sheep-farming industry.

The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State and receives hunters in autumn and winter.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite outspan for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

With its beautiful snow-capped mountains providing a backdrop to numerous romantic hideaways, this untouched, pristine area with its breathtaking scenery possesses grandeur of majestic proportion.

The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Clocolan is known for its cherry trees, which provide a spectacular sight when they blossom in spring. San-rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its spectacular scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area.

Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti mountains. One can also explore the magnificent mountain scenery by bike. The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its cherry and asparagus farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witteberge, celebrated its centenary in 2011. Art, hiking, adventure sport and horseriding are just some of the activities on offer.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its beautiful scenery, is a very popular holiday destination. A vulture restaurant allows visitors to observe these scavengers closely. San paintings can also be viewed.

The Highlands Route follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. San caves and rock art are some of the main features of the route.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms. Ramsar sites are wetlands of international importance designated under the Ramsar Convention.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem lies on the banks of the Jordaan River and was founded by the Voortrekkers during the 1840s.

The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic Church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/

South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout-fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings.

Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum, using life-size models, depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer.

Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, is a popular holiday destination.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State.

It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals. Various hiking and mountain-bike trails are also on offer.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the Indian Ocean coastline makes the province most attractive to tourists and water-sports enthusiasts.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola mountain region

The Amatola mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart, where trout-fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatola Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth, which has earned the name "the Friendly City", is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. The Isuzu National Sailing Week is held annually in April in the waters of Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of several international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

The city boasts various scuba-diving sites. Visitors can also visit Bay World with its oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathola Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region, once known as the "Transkei homeland", is the home of a major section of the Xhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Mandela. In the city of Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure. The museum is a collection of heritage sectors spread across three locations: Qunu, Mveso and Mthatha.

A display reflecting the life and times of Mandela can be found at the Bhunga Building section of the Nelson Mandela Museum in Mhatha. Mandela has received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors.

To the south, is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa call it "Izi Khaleni" ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi- and San-art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, a gigantic circular impact that is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet, lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and today their population stands at about 300.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality in the Eastern Cape celebrated National Heritage Day 2011 with the launch of a heritage walk within its inner-city precinct. The walk commemorates the public life of former President Nelson Mandela and is known as Route 67.

The walk sets off from the Campanile in Strand Street. Crossing the Settlers Highway, visitors wind their way up a set of stairs past a new water feature and an impressive fishbone sculpture, before arriving at the old market square, now the Vuyisile Mini Square. Mini was one of the first activists to be executed for his involvement in the fight for freedom.

Other great figures from local history, including Robert Sobukwe, Steve Biko and Mahatma Gandhi, will also take their place on the square in future. Once fully completed, Route 67 will have 67 artworks, done by 67 local artists.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art.

Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Barkly East, Rhodes, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp and Queenstown.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches.

Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. The coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints", because of the more than 40 churches found in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest postbox in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by both tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve boasts abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the legendary frontier wars located in the area.

East London, South Africa's only river-port city, was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The city's own waterfront development, Latimer's Landing, is situated on the banks of the Buffalo River. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The East London Museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit spectacular fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles.

There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning clear, and "gami" meaning water.

South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Another popular adventure is a blackwater tubing experience on the Storms River.

Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, which the Otter Trail is named after.

Limpopo

Limpopo is a land of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. The present tranquillity of the province belies a turbulent past, to which many monuments and museums attest. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve boasts one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection. The Makapan caves are notable for their fossils and are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site. The Makapansgat caves and limeworks near Mokopane represent an archaeological site of global importance.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino.

Bela-Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. It is ideally located near the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Polokwane hosts a great variety of museums and art galleries.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, situated 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Louis Trichardt, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000-ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies in every colour of the rainbow.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, was opened to guided groups in June 1997. This followed seven years of archaeological excavations, which brought to light the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve and enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog. The Inyaka Dam at Bushbuckridge is also worth a visit.

North West

North West is blessed with several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, known as the "Jewel of the North West". It is set in a crater on an extinct volcano and is home to the Big Five as well as a wide variety of smaller game and birds.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his *Mafikeng Diary*, and the Mahikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age village ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is situated in the centre of the North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.

The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province. Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. San-rock engravings, Stone-Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse that was built in 1910, houses a unique African a collection. The Old Water Mill that was built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is situated on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

There are several golf courses in the area.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. In July 2005, the World Heritage Committee declared the Taung Skull Fossil Site an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure-seekers – especially those who enjoy the 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The Pilanesberg National Park supports more than 7 000 heads of game and 350 bird species.

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon ride, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available. Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, water sports and an artificial sea. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp, where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "the Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and birdwatching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

The cultural heritage of the province is varied and fascinating. The Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld and the different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history.

Mbombela

Mbombela (previously Nelspruit) is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Mbombela from May to September on a trip called the "Lowveld Experience". Rovos Rail's trains also travel to Nelspruit.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala caves, PR Owen Dinosaur Park and the tranquil town of White River. Well known as an artists' haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park, White River also boasts an orange winery.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini.

God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon. The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. A number of other hiking trails are also available.

The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is situated in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg heads, human-like masks dated to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine-manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities. This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard. The meander also offers numerous other activities.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing.

Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology.

The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossoms in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the inimitable San paintings embossed in some rocks.

The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini. The year 2006 saw the 20th anniversary of Machel's death in an aircraft crash.

While they are in this region, visitors have the opportunity to visit Swaziland and Mozambique, which are nearby.

Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands is a paradise, with its variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface.

There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20-km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

According to a domestic tourism survey released in July 2010 by Statistics South Africa, Gauteng was the most visited province by day trips.

It may be the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, but it still boasts some great day walks for visitors such as:

- Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg)
- Braamfontein Spruit Trust (Johannesburg)
- The Wilds, Houghton (Johannesburg)
- Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve (Johannesburg)
- Kloofendal Nature Reserve, Roodepoort
- Gillooly's Farm / Linksfield Ridge / Harvey Park
- Melville Koppies (Johannesburg)

- Westcliff (Johannesburg)
- Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (Roodepoort)
- National Botanical Garden (Pretoria)
- Smuts House Museum (Pretoria)
- Freedom Park (Pretoria)
- Tswaing Crater Trail.

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the economic powerhouse of South Africa. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan, multicultural mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km² and is a popular venue for water sports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Vanderbijlpark was built during the late 1940s by the then Iron and Steel Corporation to accommodate its employees.

The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old.

The broader Cradle of Humankind site consists of 47 000 ha, with numerous caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves. In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site.

Forty per cent of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area, and work is ongoing.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

> Dinokeng Game Reserve is situated in the north-east quadrant of Gauteng and covers almost 281 000 ha of rural land incorporating Roodeplaat, Cullinan, Rayton and open bushveld north of the Moloto Road (R573). The entire reserve is made up of individually owned parcels of land of 271 landowners.
>
> The reserve opened in September 2011. The lions arrived in the same month. The first 10 elephants arrived in October 2011, bringing the planned Big Five to four, with the remaining buffalo introduction to follow.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The South African National Railway and Steam Museum at Randfontein Estates Gold Mine outside Krugersdorp houses some of the country's old steam locomotives, a diesel-electric locomotive and more than 50 vintage passenger coaches. Train rides are offered once a month.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre at Kyalami, near Johannesburg.

Visitors to Roodepoort can go on walks and trails through the Kloofendal Nature Reserve, or enjoy a picnic or a show at the popular Kloofendal Amphitheatre. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Gardens boasts a 70-m-high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria lies a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of an impact crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. The Tswaing Meteorite Crater is similar in size to the well-known Barringer Meteor Crater in Arizona, in the USA. The crater walls at Tswaing were originally about twice as high as they are today.

There is a museum adjacent to the crater. A path leads from the museum to the crater, along the rim, and down to the central lake. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. Many turn-of-the-century houses still stand. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

There is also a display of old prescription books and dictionaries used by pharmacists.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and a host of places of historic interest.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown, the arts precinct of Johannesburg. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre Complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs.

A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

The Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg gives visitors the opportunity to meet families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice.

The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid. A team of curators, film-makers, historians, designers and architects assembled the exhibits on a seven-hectare site.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, and offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block. People once imprisoned at these facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as the only woman to be executed in South Africa's history, Daisy de Melker.

At Santarama Miniland and Entertainment World, visitors can explore models of South Africa's most popular beacons, such as Robben Island, OR Tambo International Airport, East London Harbour and the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

Fordsburg, a suburb on the western side of Johannesburg, often called the city's "Little India", has grown in recent times, its identity shifting and merging with the different customs and flavours that have made it a centrepiece in the cultural design of the city.

The South African Museum of Military History houses an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The South African Transport Museum in Heidelberg represents all aspects of South Africa's transport services.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. It is estimated that some 1 000 foreign tourists visit Soweto every day. Its tourism industry contributes about R143 million to Gauteng's GDP.

The two-bedroom house where former President Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown (Soweto) is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955.

The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates those who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The museum was named after the young boy who was the first person to be shot dead by police on that day.

Guest houses and B&B establishments are a fast-growing phenomenon in Soweto.

A tourism and information centre was opened in Soweto in February 2006. The centre provides comprehensive information to tourists. Visitors can book accommodation in Soweto, and plan and book tours and site guides.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, which is known as the "Jacaranda City" because of the many jacaranda trees that line its streets. When these are in full bloom in October, they cover the city in a lilac haze, providing spectacular views from the surrounding hills.

Church Square is built around a statue of Paul Kruger, president of the former Zuid-Afrikaansche

Republiek, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history.

Once fully completed, the 35-ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who have contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include cow milking, butter- and candle-making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the Police Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument also has a museum and commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. The monument receives about 200 000 visitors a year. It was declated a national heritage site in 2011.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Union Buildings was designed by Sir Herbert Baker and completed in 1913. It was the setting for the presidential inauguration of Nelson Mandela in 1994, Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999 and 27 April 2004, and Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silver and porcelain. Visitors can relax in the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family. A popular arts and crafts market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs and large number of game, including rhino, and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is being restored by its residents and the National Cultural History Museum. To develop the project into a viable, living tourist village, the 50 families who live there have undergone tourist-guide and business training. It is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Admiral, a giant tortoise, celebrated his 100th birthday at the Mitchell Park Zoo in Durban in September 2011. Admiral is one of three giant tortoises brought to the park in 1915 during World War I by a naval officer, who took them from the Seychelles. Admiral, who outlived the other two tortoises, has been at the park ever since.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to the freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

Tourism contributes about R18 billion a year (or ±10%) to the KwaZulu-Natal economy and employs in the order of 140 000 people, directly or indirectly.

Also known as the "Zulu Kingdom", KwaZulu-Natal is enticing, spectacular and a fascinating multicultural showpiece destination flanked by the warm Indian Ocean and soaring peaks.

Durban and surroundings

The gateway city of Durban is a pulsating and inviting fusion of East, West and Zulu motifs overlooking Africa's busiest seaport. It is South Africa's domestic tourism leader, highly popular among visitors from throughout Africa and increasingly on the "must-see, must-do" lists of discerning travellers.

These travellers from all points of the globe seek and find a unique blend of sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement – in the most breathtaking setting imaginable.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism-information office at its entrance.

There is a snorkelling trail and a tubing river around the park.

Durban's most popular fishing spot is at Blue Lagoon Beach at the wide Umgeni River mouth. Beyond the river, the La Lucia and Beachwood Mangroves nature reserves offer long, tranquil walks along empty sands.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere. Daily tours are available.

> In May 2011, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park World Heritage Site, which stretches 220 km along the northern KwaZulu-Natal coast, was proclaimed one of the three destinations in the world with the best sustainable tourism-management policies.
>
> The iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority was one of three finalists in the Destination Stewardship Category of the Tourism for Tomorrow Awards in Las Vegas, in the United States of America.
>
> The award recognises dedication and success in sustainable tourism management, and in delivering social, cultural, environmental and economic benefits in consultation with the surrounding community.
>
> Hundreds of women harvest the rare grass they use to make traditional Zulu crafts from the wetland. The park creates 3 500 jobs a year, gives bursaries for biodiversity-related courses and funds 80 small businesses.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile swimming event, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashovashova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country, the Spar Mercury Ladies 10-km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and contains rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Many varieties of birds, indigenous and exotic, inhabit walk-in aviaries.

The Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff houses the maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.

East Griqualand is home to the southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, plus the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Also nearby, the carp-abundant Umzimvubu River is an ever-popular recreation ground for locals and visitors alike. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and majestic seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The larger humpback dolphins are also found here, but rarely seen.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give the region an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th century king who established dominion here some 200 years before Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south. The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of the largest game parks in South Africa and hosts the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is the venue for a new tourism- and economic-development project. Known as "eMakhosini, the Valley of Zulu Kings", the joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. A sculptured hilltop monument named "Spirit of eMakhosini" draws many tourists. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom.

At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Ulundi lies at the hub of the old Zulu nation. The KwaZulu Cultural Museum houses interesting displays relating to Zulu history and archaeology. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and is now being reconstructed. A tour provides the opportunity to observe Zulu building techniques and experience the social life of the Zulu people. Work will begin on a R20-million multimedia centre, which will include first-rate audiovisual representations of Zulu history and culture.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The coastal iSimangaliso Wetland Park World Heritage Site has some of the highest forested dunes in the world. The park also has the greatest marine and terrestrial mammals, namely whales and elephants. St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and has five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is completely surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Ophansi entrance bridge in the iSimangaliso Wetland Park enables visitors to enjoy a unique beach and bush experience, with only an hour's drive separating uMkhuze's unique wildlife from Sodwana Bay's world-class beaches and diving.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo mountains before serving as a boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

A monument has been erected for the first Zulu martyr, Maqhamusela Khanyli, in Mondi.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2.

Birdwatching and walks through the coastal forest are popular pastimes.

Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

In October 2011, the South Africa, Mozambique and Swaziland Tourism Activation Project was launched in Mtubatuba, in KwaZulu-Natal.

The initiative is aimed at increasing tourism arrivals and coordination between the three countries, promoting heritage and also celebrating commonalities, which make the people of South Africa, Mozambique and Swaziland who they are.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and, in summer, powerboaters arrive for some of the best marlin-fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and various other activities and attractions.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Prolific bird life, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, inhabits the reserve, along with a variety of mammals. There is also a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward is known for its safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umtamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, bird life and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh.

Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers wait for the game fish following the sardines to arrive.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts. Pietermaritzburg boasts various museums, including the Voortrekker Museum, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse-riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are situated in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles down 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheesemakers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabitated by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracts thousands of swimmers.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone-Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered lammergeier (bearded vulture). The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was declared a world heritage site in 2001 and consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range, from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. The park is administered by Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. Their trout hatcheries are located in the Kamberg Reserve area. There are also trout hatcheries at Cathedral Peak.

The Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The Swamp Nature Reserve close by attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge is located in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak and contains examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. Sani Pass may be a road, but the top section is only passable using 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest. Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is well worth a visit.

The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and water sports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp-fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Other interesting places to visit are Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions in Ladysmith include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, as well as local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
Business Day
Business Report
Department of Tourism

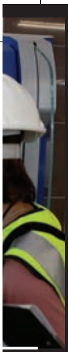
www.askzn.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.butterflyworld.co.za
www.capenature.co.za
www.capetourism.org
www.cape-town.net
www.centralkaroo.co.za
www.cheetah.co.za
www.clarens.co.za
www.doorway.co.za
www.ectourism.co.za
www.ewn.co.za
www.freestateprovince.co.za
www.gauteng.net
www.giraffehouse.co.za
www.gov.za
www.indaba-southafrica.co.za
www.iol.co.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.kzn.org.za
www.lebonheurcrocfarm.co.za
www.lionrescue.org.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.meetingsafrica.co.za
www.monkeys.co.za
www.mpumalanga.com
www.nbi.org.za
www.news24.co.za
www.northerncape.org.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saao.ac.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.sapfa.org.za
www.sasdi.co.za
www.sati-web.za
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.soweto.co.za
www.spier.co.za
www.stelmus.co.za
www.tep.co.za
www.travel.iafrica.com
www.travelwires.com
www.tourismboard.org.za
www.tourismgrading.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.visitmosselbay.co.za
www.visit-south-africa.co.za
www.wheretostay.co.za
www.zetler.co.za
www.zulu.org.za

Suggested reading

Brodie, N. 2010. *Inside Joburg: 101 Things to See and Do*. Craighall Park: Sharp Sharp Media.
Chabra, D. 2010. *Sustainable Marketing of Cultural and Heritage Tourism*. New York: Routledge.
Discover Cape Agulhas: The Southern Tip of Africa, Where the Atlantic and Indian Oceans Meet. 2010. South Africa: Wiz Marketing, for Cape Agulhas Tourism.
George, R. 2011. *Marketing Tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
Greenberg, L (ed). 2010. *Home Away: 24 Hours, 24 Cities, 24 Writers*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation. Fourth edition. London: Greenwood Guides.
Hiscock, D. 2010. *Cape Town's Man-Made Wonder: Table Mountain Cableway, the First 80 Years*. Cape Town: Table Mountain Aerial Cableway Co.
Hottola, P (ed). 2009. *Tourism Strategies and Local Responses in Southern Africa*. Wallingford, UK: Cambridge: CABI.
Ivanovic, M. 2008. *Cultural Tourism*. Cape Town: Juta.
Keyser, H. 2009. *Developing Tourism in South Africa: Towards Competitive Destinations*. Second edition. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
Tassiopoulos, D (ed). 2008. *New Tourism Ventures: An Entrepreneurial and Managerial Approach*. Cape Town: Juta.

Transport

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12



Transport and its related services are catalysts for economic growth, and direct and indirect job creation in South Africa. The provision of affordable, safe and reliable transportation of goods and people is critical to the development of the country.

Government boosted transport infrastructure spending to R66 billion in the 2011/12 financial year and is expected to raise it to R80 billion by 2013/14. The improvements are spread across the country, with urban and rural parts expected to benefit from the creation of jobs and tourism opportunities.

Over the next three years, an additional R2,5 billion will be allocated to municipalities for public transport systems and infrastructure.

In 2011, additional funds were allocated to the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa), for replacing signalling infrastructure and refurbishing rail coaches. About 8 600 new coaches (equal to 718 new train sets) will be purchased over the next three years.

In total, R30,2 billion will be spent on improving the passenger rail system over the next three years.

Policy and initiatives

Road Transport Management System (RTMS)

The RTMS is an industry-led voluntary self-regulation scheme that encourages consignees, consignors and road transporters to implement a management system that preserves road infrastructure, improves road safety and increases productivity. The system's key components are load optimisation, driver wellness, vehicle maintenance and productivity. It is designed to show transport companies how to take greater corporate responsibility for road safety.

A national RTMS steering committee is responsible for the promotion and administration of RTMS in South Africa. It comprises individuals representing major industries and aligned stakeholders within the country.

National Transport Master Plan (Natmap)

The Department of Transport presented Parliament with the R750-million Natmap in 2010, which includes linking Johannesburg to Durban and Polokwane via rapid train networks.

The plan includes expanding the Port of Saldanha, doubling the Huguenot Tunnel outside Paarl and expanding the Port of Cape Town.

Part of Natmap is to form partnerships with the private sector to help fund the projects and lower the burden on taxpayers.

Cabinet initiated the Natmap in 2007 to develop and establish a multimodal transport system to meet South Africa's needs up to 2050.

Natmap aims to:
- facilitate long-term and sustainable socio-economic growth
- promote comprehensive integrated development planning
- act as the infrastructure implementation/action plan of macro-scale projects for the whole country.

Natmap's goals include:
- maximising the use of existing infrastructure facilities
- developing future infrastructure facilities
- developing an up-to-date and accurate central land-use/transportation data bank.

Public Transport Strategy (PTS) and Action Plan (2007 – 2020)

Cabinet approved the PTS and Action Plan 2007 – 2020 in March 2007.

The PTS, which comprises a multi-billion rand transport infrastructure plan, was expected to reshape public transport travel in South Africa entirely.

The strategy articulates a vision to shift public-transport service delivery away from operator-controlled, commuter-based, intermodal routes to user-oriented, publicly controlled, fully integrated, mass rapid public-transport networks.

This includes transforming the bus and rail services into a public transport system integrated with recapitalised taxi services.

The key areas of the strategy consist of:
- safe and secure operation monitoring by intelligent transport system-control centres

In June 2011, the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, hosted the Department of Transport's Investors Conference. In contributing towards economic empowerment and the social well-being of South Africans, the department is continuously seeking opportunities for investment in transport infrastructure. The main purpose was to attract local and foreign investors to major transport infrastructure and flagship projects in the rail, road, maritime and aviation sectors.

- a car-use competitive public-transport option, which enables strict peak-period car-use management
- electronic fare integration and single ticketing when making transfers
- an integrated feeder service, including walking, cycling, bus and taxi networks.

Following Cabinet's approval of the PTS, the Department of Transport committed to huge investments in the development of public-transport infrastructure and services. Over the past six years, the department invested over R48 billion in the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System, comprising rail, bus and taxis. The department spent over R9 billion rolling out integrated public-transport networks in major cities.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

The eNaTIS provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles. It manages and records applications for and authorisation of driver's and learner's licences.

It is also a law-enforcement tool used to ensure that the details of stolen vehicles are circulated and to prevent irregular and fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The system delineates the life cycle of a vehicle from the factory floor to the scrap yard.

In February 2011, South Africa extended the use of eNaTIS to Namibia to help reduce car theft and cross-border crimes between the two countries.

The two countries signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU) to formalise the agreement. Authorities from the two countries are able to access driver and vehicle details. This will also prevent stolen vehicles being registered in both countries and drivers can be held accountable for fines issued for traffic violations across the border.

The Namibian authorities were responsible for financing the system in their country. Plans are underway to have the system implemented in all Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries.

By October 2011, South Africa's live vehicle population was 10 156 186, according to eNaTIS.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The Draft Transport Charter was gazetted in August 2009 in terms of the Broad-Based BEE (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003). The gazetting of the transport sector codes means that codes for eight subsectors, excluding the foreign airline component of the aviation subsector, are binding across the spectrum of the national transport industry.

The integrated transport sector codes will come up for review every five years.

Among other areas of development, the transport sector codes commit to:

- training and skills development to increase the number of black pilots in the aviation industry, as per the Aviation Subsector Code
- achieving a black-ownership target of 35% in the Bus Commuter Service Subsector Code within five years
- empowering workers and pursuing worker rights in the taxi industry, and equipping these individuals with the requisite skills to take up management positions
- ensuring that the taxi industry provides commuters with reliable, safe, affordable, efficient and quality public-transport services.

Non-motorised transport (NMT)

The promotion of NMT primarily aims to increase transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The Department of Transport has broadened its Shova Kalula ("Pedal Easy") Project into a more comprehensive NMT project that incorporates, among other things, cycling and animal-drawn carts. The project was first launched in 2001 and introduced in Limpopo in 2010.

The project forms part of government's Programme of Action and is expected to contribute to its anti-poverty strategy and second-economy interventions.

It is believed that these initiatives improve the mobility of and access to economic opportunities by rural communities.

In April 2011, 235 pupils who had to walk long distances to get to school, received new bicycles with which to ride to school. The pupils, who

> With the transport sector reportedly being the fastest-growing emitter of carbon emissions in South Africa, the impact of transport on the environment was top of the agenda at the Southern African Transport Conference, which took place during July 2011 in Pretoria.
>
> With the theme *Africa on the Move*, transport experts from the private and public sectors tackled critical transport issues on the African continent through a series of action-based plenary sessions, panel discussions and workshops.

In May 2011, the first global Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 was launched. Governments all over the world committed to take new steps to save lives on the roads.

The project seeks to prevent road-traffic deaths and injuries, which experts project will take the lives of 1,9 million people annually by 2020. The global plan's activities could save five million lives, prevent 50 million serious injuries and lead to US$5 trillion in savings over the course of the decade.

Road-traffic injuries have become the leading killer of young people aged between 15 and 29. Almost 1,3 million people die each year on the world's roads, making this the ninth leading cause of death globally. In addition to these deaths, road crashes cause between 20 million and 50 million non-fatal injuries every year.

Major initiatives in South Africa include:

- finalising and implementing South Africa's National Road Safety Strategy and Action Plan for 2011 – 2020
- each province, district municipality and local municipality having to report every month on the number of road accidents occurring in their area, what the causal factors are and how these are being addressed
- almost nine million vehicles and drivers were checked, more than 3,5 million fines issued for various traffic offences, 13 877 drunk drivers arrested and 34 467 unroadworthy vehicles discontinued from use from 1 October 2010 to 30 April 2011
- no less than 10 000 drivers being screened every month for drinking and driving as of May 2011
- South Africa's first National Traffic Intervention Unit being deployed to high-accident frequency locations and traffic hotspots across the country in April 2011
- amendments to the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996)
- the draft amendment to the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998), and the Points Demerit System AARTO Regulations being published in the *Government Gazette* on 15 April 2011 for comment
- the South African Police Service's (SAPS) Division: Visible Policing developing the 10-year Road Crime Crash Combating Strategy for the *Make Roads Safe* Campaign
- embarking on a massive road-safety education and communication campaign
- strengthening partnerships between the departments of transport, health, social development and education and the SAPS as road accidents place unnecessary strain on hospitals and child-support grants
- making progress towards ensuring that road-safety education forms part of the life skills curriculum at schools, and towards ensuring that every Grade 11 learner will have a learner's licence and every 18-year-old a driver's licence
- working on a programme to encourage youth from disadvantaged communities to obtain their driver's licences, by obtaining private-sector sponsorship for the payment of their driving tuition
- the provision of a more secure, tamper-proof driving licence card.

used to walked more than 3 km to schools within the Aganang municipal area near Polokwane, received the bicycles as part of the Shova Kalula Project.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015, in line with the resolution and action plan of the African Ministers' Transport Summit held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in 2005.

The Department of Transport expressed interest in establishing a local bicycle-manufacturing plant to produce bicycles for the project. The Shova Kalula Project also incorporates micro-businesses, which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the sustainability of the project.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

From a transport point of view, key issues in creating an effectively coordinated African response to global market challenges are market access, mobility and systems integration.

The Department of Transport is contributing actively to the practical realisation of Nepad and the SADC development goals in several major areas, by promoting:

- efficient and effective maritime transport services
- passenger rail-systems integration
- road-systems development and infrastructure maintenance.

With a combined population of 260 million and a regional market worth over US$430 billion, southern Africa has vast potential for socio-economic development. To achieve this, the SADC member states have to work towards developing an efficient, seamless and cost-effective cross-border transport network.

At a 2007 summit in Zambia, the SADC heads of state and government hinted that a lack of funds was one of the reasons for transport infrastructure deteriorating. They have since directed the SADC Secretariat to work out a regional Master Plan for Infrastructure Development to coordinate and harmonise all regional infrastructure developments.

The five priority sectors for regional infrastructure development are:

- transport
- energy
- telecommunications

During 2010/11, the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral) supported 1 084 black-owned small, medium and micro-enterprises. Sanral trained 15 109 people in road-building projects, of whom 4 023 were women and created about 56 298 jobs across South Africa.

- water infrastructure
- tourism.

Public entities and other agencies

The Department of Transport has established different bodies to take over certain elements of government's operational activities. They include the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa), the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA), the Transport Appeal Tribunal, the Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), the Railway Safety Regulator (RSR), the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA), the Road Accident Fund (RAF), Air Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS) and Airports Company South Africa (Acsa).

South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanral reports to the Department of Transport and is responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network, including toll and non-toll roads. Sanral manages the following: 1 573 km of dual carriageway; 550 km of four-lane undivided roads; 14 047 km of two-lane, single roads; 1 288 km of toll roads; and 1 832 km of state toll roads.

Sanral's responsibilities are to:

- strategically plan, design, construct, operate, rehabilitate and maintain South Africa's national roads to support socio-economic development
- generate revenue from the development and management of its assets
- undertake research and development to enhance the quality of life of all South Africans, with particular emphasis on their social and economic well-being
- advise the Minister of Transport on matters relating to South Africa's roads
- finance, plan, construct, provide, operate and maintain roads in neighbouring countries at the request of the Minister of Transport and those countries.

Sanral has deployed intelligent transport systems (ITS) in the metropolitan areas of Johannesburg, Tshwane and Ekurhuleni in Gauteng; eThekwini and Pietermaritzburg in KwaZulu-Natal; and Cape Town in the Western Cape.

An ITS allows for the collection of real-time traffic information, which is conveyed to a transport-management centre. The centre processes the information and uses the data to manage traffic flow, and to disseminate important information to road users. The ITS reduces congestion and removes some of the uncertainty associated with travel conditions.

Sanral's strategy of pursuing public-private partnerships (PPPs) has rendered substantial dividends. This policy is based on the reality that there are no "free" roads: they are either funded through general taxes or user fees.

By applying the "user-pay" principle, a targeted portion of the national road network can be developed and expanded.

PPPs with Sanral's concessionaires – the N3 Toll Concession (Pty) Ltd (N3TC), the N1/N4 Bakwena Platinum Concession Consortium (BPCC) and the N4 Trans African Concessions (TRAC) – allow Sanral to reduce the cost of transport, provide a safer and more reliable road infrastructure and build the economy of South Africa and its neighbours. By March 2011, the concessionaires had financed capital work to the value of R5 159,7 million.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC was established in terms of the RTMC Act, 1999 (Act 20 of 1999), and became operational in September 2005. It is responsible for coordinating road-traffic management across the three spheres of government. The core mandate of the corporation is to improve traffic-law compliance and reduce road fatalities.

In line with the United Nations' (UN) millennium development goals (MDGs) and the Moscow Declaration on Road Safety, which calls for a Decade of Action for Road Safety, the corporation has

Provincial road-safety councils will be responsible for implementing road-safety programmes at local, district and provincial level and for advising government on road-safety issues that affect communities. This is recognised as a critical step towards ensuring safer roads in the country.

set itself goals over the medium term to reduce the road fatality rate by 25%. This objective will be achieved through, among other things, enforcing driver and vehicle fitness requirements; coordinating effective prosecution of moving traffic violations; and implementing the national traffic law-enforcement code. The corporation has also reviewed its strategic focus and developed a five-year strategic plan, which aims to improve financial management.

The RTMC continues with its zero-tolerance approach against traffic offenders.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

In line with its objectives, as stated in the Samsa Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998), the organisation's primary areas of responsibility include:

- participating in the development and implementation of national and international maritime safety and marine environment-protection standards
- enforcing technical and operational standards for all shipping operations in South African waters and for South African ships anywhere, to promote responsible operations in terms of seaworthiness, safety and pollution prevention
- enforcing training standards and the competency of seafarers
- managing the national capability to respond to marine-pollution incidents and other maritime emergencies
- operating the Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC) to coordinate maritime assistance services, and to detect and coordinate the location and rescue of people in maritime distress situations throughout the internationally agreed South African search-and-rescue region
- overseeing the provision of maritime distress and safety communications services to discharge South Africa's responsibilities under the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System
- administering South Africa's voluntary ship-reporting system for identifying and tracking ships at sea for safety purposes and to provide a ships' database for responding to marine emergencies
- investigating maritime casualties.

Funding comes from, among other sources, levies on ships calling at South African ports, direct user charges and government service fees.

In September 2011, the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa) observed World Maritime Day in Richards Bay, KwaZulu-Natal, to focus attention on the importance of shipping safety, maritime security and clean seas.

The 2011 theme, *Piracy – Orchestrating the Response,* was chosen as part of efforts to safeguard human life at sea. To this end, the objectives pursued during 2011 were:

- increasing pressure at political level to secure the immediate release of all hostages being held by pirates
- reviewing and improving guidance to the industry and promoting full compliance by ships with all recommended preventive, evasive and defensive measures
- promoting greater levels of support from navies
- promoting anti-piracy coordination and cooperation between and among states, regions and organisations
- building the capacity of states in piracy-infested regions of the world, to deter, interdict and bring to justice those who commit acts of piracy and armed robbery against ships
- providing care for those attacked or hijacked by pirates and for their families.

Government, through the Department of Transport with the support of Samsa, has through the years intensified its efforts to fight piracy. Samsa is a custodian of some of the best technologies in the world that monitor the movement of ships bound for South Africa. The Long-Range Identification Tracking System technology, housed at the Samsa Centre for Sea Watch and Response in Cape Town, plays an important role in the fight against piracy.

Samsa's activities are centred on the following business centres:

- ships and boating
- seafarers
- sea watch and response
- industry development and excellence
- corporate affairs
- policy and regulatory
- Office of the Chief Examiner.

The Merchant Shipping (Safe Containers Convention) Act, 2011 (Act 10 of 2011), helps South Africa to carry out its obligation to maintain the highest standards with regard to the safe carriage of containers over the country's waters. A major part of world trade depends on South Africa's coastal waters. About 98% of the country's trade is seaborne.

The Act gives effect to the International Convention for Safe Containers, which came into force in December 1977, as adopted by countries belonging to the International Maritime Organisation.

In September 2011, Samsa launched a study aimed at contributing to the process of skills development and empowerment in the maritime sector. The Maritime Skills Development Study, in partnership with the Human Resource Develop-

In May 2011, the Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Malusi Gigaba, announced that South Africa was to start building locomotives domestically. Transnet plans to spend R110 billion on expanding ports and railways in the next five years.

ment Council South Africa, will help to highlight the skills gap within the broader maritime sector and provide further insights into pivotal interventions needed by the industry.

The study, which was also supported by the Department of Transport, called on training institutions, government and the private sector to work together to ensure that South Africans are armed with skills that enable them to participate in the maritime sector.

It provides for measures that will be put in place to promote growth and development in the five subsectors in the maritime industry, namely: shipping; marine resources; marine tourism and leisure; marine manufacturing and construction; and commercial support, business services and public interests.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA was established under the Cross-Border Road Transport Act, 1998 (Act 4 of 1998). The Act's responsibilities include regulateing cross-border road transport by providing unsurpassed service in advising, facilitating and law enforcement.

The CBRTA is playing a major role in promoting economic development within the SADC region by facilitating access to cross-border markets and improving the regulatory environment for trade and transport within the SADC region.

Cross-border road transport is regulated through multi- and bilateral road-transport agreements, concluded with various SADC member states and in line with the stipulations of the SADC Protocol on Transport, Communications and Meteorology.

In October 2011, transport industry stakeholders from the SADC region as well as experts from organisations such as the World Bank, the SADC Secretariat on Transport and the United States Agency for International Development Southern Africa participated in a cross-border road-transport indaba.

With the theme, *Changing Gears – Transcending Borders*, the aim of the indaba was to promote the role that the CBRTA and cross-border road transport play in promoting economic development within the SADC region. The indaba further aimed to create a platform for discussion and debate in moving the industry to new levels of operational efficiencies.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF is a public entity that compensates victims of motor-vehicle accidents for bodily injuries and/or loss of financial support caused by the death of a breadwinner. The rights for compensation are prescribed by the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996).

It derives its income from tax levied on petrol and diesel sold in South Africa.

The role of the RAF is to reintegrate victims of road accidents into society from a health and economic perspective and protect wrongdoers and their families from financial ruin.

The RAF provides compensation for loss of earnings and support, general damage, and medical and funeral costs to victims of road accidents caused by the negligent or wrongful driving of another road user.

Since the promulgation of the RAF Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005), compensation has been limited to earnings and loss of support.

Compensation for pain and suffering is available only to the seriously injured.

Due to the delayed impact of legislation, the amendments have implications for the personal insurance required by road users as a form of discretionary social security protection.

In April 2011, the S'hamba Sonke ("Moving Together") roads infrastructure upgrade and maintenance programme was launched in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

Through the S'hamba Sonke Project, local people are recruited to repair damaged secondary, district and municipal roads.

The Department of Transport has set aside R22 billion over the next three years to repair potholes on South African roads. An amount of R6,4 billion was spent on this initiative across the country in 2011/12. The programme created about 70 000 job opportunities in 2011/12.

In partnership with all provinces, the S'hamba Sonke Project improved access to schools, clinics and other social and economic opportunities by upgrading the secondary roads network and repairing roads damaged by potholes throughout the country.

The project will be in line with the department's Zibambele initiative (which means "doing it ourselves"), which is routine road maintenance using labour-intensive methods in which a family or household is contracted through a provincial department to maintain a specific length of road on a part-time basis.

The fund has extended its geographic footprint to make it more accessible to the public. In 2010/11, the strategy focused on piloting and testing new business processes, supporting the Department of Transport in transforming the inherently flawed fault-based legislation and reducing the backlog of claims through improved efficiencies.

Over the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework, the focus will be on pursuing legislative amendments, achieving operational efficiency and effectiveness, and seeking sustainable funding.

The fund is setting up an in-house litigation department to deal with magistrates' court matters, which is expected to save about R1 billion.

The implementation of the RAF Amendment Act, 2005 was expected to lead to a decrease in general-damage claims, which are estimated to comprise 25% to 33% of total pay-outs.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

In April 2011, the second report card on infrastructure, released by the South African Institution of Civil Engineering, stated that the aviation infrastructure was the country's best performing infrastructure.

The SACAA was established in October 1998, following the enactment of the SACAA Act, 1998 (Act 40 of 1998). The Act provided for the establishment of a stand-alone authority charged with promoting, regulating and enforcing civil-aviation safety and security.

The creation of the SACAA reflected government's priorities of policy development, economic restructuring, addressing social inequalities and reducing the burden on the taxpayer by expanding the application of the "user-pays" system. The setting up of a self-funding authority has resulted in the SACAA becoming more accessible and accountable to its stakeholders.

Setting up a stand-alone civil-aviation regulatory authority was also in line with international trends in the aviation world.

The SACAA's vision is to be a world-class enabler of a safe, secure and sustainable aviation industry. Its mission is to:

- maintain a safe, secure and sustainable civil-aviation environment while adhering to international standards
- regulate and oversee the functioning and development of the industry in an efficient, cost-effective and customer-friendly manner
- promote transformation and development.

The primary purpose of the SACAA is to promote, regulate and support high levels of safety throughout the country's civil-aviation industry. The organisation's core activities include, among other things, aviation safety and security and oversight in terms of operations, aircraft, personnel, airports and airspace.

The SACAA is responsible for regulating all individuals or organisations involved in civil aviation in South Africa. The SACAA's stakeholders include:

- airports
- aircraft owners and operators
- aircraft designers and manufacturers
- aircraft maintenance organisations
- air cargo
- airline operators
- licensed aviation personnel
- aviation training organisations
- air-traffic service units
- air cargo operators.

South Africa hosted the third Pan-African Aviation Training Coordination Conference in Cape Town in July 2011 under the auspices of the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO).

The conference was attended by aviation experts representing the African continent and SADC region, and international aviation institutions from around the globe, including international member states and bodies such as the United Kingdom, the United States of America (USA), India, the African Civil Aviation Commission, the Airports Council International, the Agency for Air Navigation Safety in Africa and Madagascar and the ICAO.

The conference reviewed the implementation of the action plan adopted by the second conference, held in Cairo, Egypt, in June 2010.

Airports Company of South Africa

Acsa operates South Africa's nine principal airports, providing airlines with world-class, secure infrastructure.

The nine airports are:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal

During Transport Month in October 2011, 6 336 unroadworthy public-transport and freight vehicles were taken off the roads, with the majority (1 821) being buses, mini-buses and trucks removed in Mpumalanga. This was part of the Department of Transport's National Rolling Enforcement Plan.

More than 46 402 fines were issued to public-transport and freight drivers, and 1 460 public-transport and truck drivers arrested, including 196 for drunk driving, 25 for excessive speed, eight for reckless and/or negligent driving, 877 for overloading, 73 for false documents and 281 for other offences.

From 31 August to 30 October 2011, as part of the department's pre-December holiday traffic law-enforcement operations, 623 469 public-transport vehicles were stopped and checked; 2 207 mini-buses, 885 buses and 1 699 trucks discontinued from use for being in an unroadworthy condition; 93 945 fines issued for various public-transport offences; more than 2 653 public-transport drivers arrested, including 371 for drunk driving; 1 947 for overloading; 91 for excessive speed; 28 for reckless and/or negligent driving; and 154 in connection with public-transport permits.

- Bloemfontein International in the Free State
- Port Elizabeth International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape.

Acsa handles more than 10 million departing passengers and 200 000 aircraft landings annually.

The airports handle over 98% of the country's commercial air traffic.

With South Africa focusing on economic growth, Acsa has done much to help ensure that the South African aviation industry maintains its upward trend, despite global market threats and uncertainty. A great deal of work has been done at the OR Tambo and Cape Town international airports in readiness for expected growth in the aviation industry.

The capacity of the old Durban International Airport was about five million passengers a year. In the first year of its operation, Durban's new King Shaka International Airport facilitated almost five million passengers.

Air Traffic Navigation Services

The ATNS is responsible for air-traffic control in approximately 10% of the world's airspace. Its services extend into the provision of important aeronautical information used for all flight-planning purposes as well as search-and-rescue coordination activities and the maintenance of a reliable navigation infrastructure.

ATNS operations include:

- aerodrome and aeronautical-information services and technical maintenance
- alert, search-and-rescue coordination services
- managing the flexible use of airspace through the Central Airspace Unit
- support for special events and special requirements such as test and demonstration flights
- implementing and maintaining a terrestrial-based navigational structure
- training of licensed air-traffic controllers and technical staff through the Aviation Training Academy (ATA).

The ATNS is the sole provider of air-traffic, navigation, training and associated services within South Africa.

In recent years, the ATNS has identified the need for high-technology aviation equipment to allow for the effective and cost-efficient training of air-traffic controllers. This culminated in the launch of the 3D aerodrome simulator in October 2011.

The ATNS trains air-traffic controllers from South Africa, Africa and the Africa-Indian Ocean area.

The ATNS entered into a partnership with Airways New Zealand to facilitate an aerodrome simulator skills and technology transfer. Under the partnership agreement, Airways New Zealand developed the software to fulfil the user requirements, while the ATNS supplied the hardware, which was manufactured and procured in South Africa.

The ATNS also acquired the enterprise licence that allows installation of additional 3D aerodrome simulators at other ATNS sites within South Africa to allow for additional training.

Knowledge transfer was also facilitated through the Aerodrome Simulator Project.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by government. It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet Port Terminals – manages port and cargo terminal operations in the country's leading ports

In March 2011, Airports Company South Africa's OR Tambo International Airport was named the best airport in Africa at the 2011 World Airport Awards in Denmark. The awards are based on 11,38 million survey questionnaires completed by over 100 different nationalities of airline passengers in 2010/11, covering more than 240 airports across the globe.

The survey evaluates traveller experiences across 39 different airport service and product factors – from check-in, arrival and transfer through to departure at the gate.

OR Tambo International Airport was also acknowledged as one of the three most improved airports worldwide.

- Transnet Pipelines – the fuel and gas-pipeline business pumps; it also manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – responsible for the safe, effective and efficient economic functioning of the national port system, which it manages in a landlord capacity.

Transnet's revenue increased to R38 billion in 2010/11.

Transnet projects that it will create over 5 000 jobs in the next five years. By June 2011, the entity employed 55 519 people, and estimated that the number would increase to 61 520 by 2016. This projected increase can be directly attributed to government's New Growth Path (NGP).

During 2010/11, capital investment included:

- acquiring of 58 19E dual-voltage locomotives, 34 Class 15E locomotives, two Class 43 GE diesel locomotives and 354 wagons for the Port Elizabeth manganese plant
- replacing 555 km rail, 292 km sleepers and screening 582 km of track
- upgrading 41 locomotives from Class 6E to Class 18E and converting 410 wagons from 48 t to 60 t
- delivery three tug boats (two in Durban and one in Richards Bay), a dredger and the bulk liquid berth in Richards Bay
- installating the Agriport Bulk Terminal with 80 000 t of storage capacity and rubber-tyred gantry cranes
- replacing Richards Bay's quayside fleet and ageing ship-to-shore cranes at Durban Container Terminal Pier and Port Elizabeth Container Terminal
- constructing a second state-of-the-art Phelophepa healthcare train with 18 coaches.

Road infrastructure

National roads

In terms of the National Roads Act, 1998, government is responsible for overall policy, while road-building and maintenance are the responsibility of Sanral.

The Department of Transport continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe. A new national roads plan was developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

Between 2010 and 2015, R75 billion is to be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading; with an additional R3 billion budgeted for the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) access roads, all of which are attempts by government to alleviate traffic congestion.

The department identified the lack of dedicated funding for road maintenance, poor asset management and capacity challenges in municipalities and provinces, and underinvestment in the maintenance of road infrastructure as the causes of poor road conditions. It plans to develop a ring-fencing mechanism by creating a fund to source additional funding for maintenance.

The provinces have made significant progress in job creation against a target of 68 000 jobs, namely: KwaZulu-Natal, 4 562; Mpumalanga, 3 845; North West, 2 120; Gauteng, 1 112; the Eastern Cape, 512; the Western Cape, 497; Northern Cape, 323; the Free State, 79; and Limpopo, 230.

As a result, the following road functions have been addressed countrywide:

- 510 988 m^2 road surface resealed
- 321 km road re-gravelled
- 182 629,69 m^2 blacktop patching
- 80 304 km blading.

With a recent study showing that potholes are costing motorists R50 billion in injury and vehicle

According to the National Association of Automobile Manufacturers of South Africa, vehicle sales grew by 18,9% year-on-year in October 2011, improving from 44 029 vehicles sold during October 2010 to reach 52 338 vehicles in October 2011.

Total new car sales during October 2011 at 36 826 units reflected an improvement of 6 076 new cars or an increase of 19,8% compared to the 30 750 new cars sold in October 2010.

The first-ever Taxi Industry Training Academy was launched in October 2011. The training academy is part of the South African National Taxi Council's (Santaco) new vision, known as the TR3 2020 Strategy, which seeks to transform the taxi industry and reinforce the taxi industry's commitment towards the Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 that aims to reduce the carnage on South Africa's roads.

Through Operation Hlokomela, Santaco seeks to improve driver and passenger safety as well as enhance customer care and responsible driving in the taxi industry.

repairs every year, the objectives of the S'hamba Sonke Programme are to, among other things, allocate a sizable amount of budget for pothole repairs on a district-by-district basis as well as the maintenance and upgrading of heavily trafficked rural transport corridors and to ensure access to public facilities.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The Department of Transport assists provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The toll-road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid.

Some 1 832 km of these toll roads are managed by Sanral. Sanral will continue with the selective expansion of the toll road network.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

During 2010/11, Sanral spent R738 million of its operating costs on 1 900 km of toll roads. Over the same period, capital expenditure on toll roads to strengthen and improve roads, and to build new facilities amounted to R7 billion.

The three concessioned routes are: the N1/N4 highway, which is operated by BPCC, between Pretoria and Bela Bela and between Pretoria and the Botswana border on the N4; the N3 between Heidelberg in Gauteng and Cedara in KwaZulu-Natal, which is operated by the N3TC; and the N4 East, Maputo Development Corridor, which is operated by TRAC.

Public transport

In terms of the Constitution, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy-formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation. The Department of Transport continues to administer subsidies for buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

The department identified public transport as a key legacy project for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ and beyond. It included world-class airports, upgraded train stations, refurbished coaches and luxury buses, taxis and integrated rapid public-transport networks such as the BRT System.

Government invested more than R40 billion in public-transport infrastructure for the tournament.

Transport-infrastructure over the next few years is guaranteed to change the way South Africans travel, due to a multi-billion rand boost by government. Amounting to R66 billion in 2011/12 and rising to R80 billion by 2013/14, the improvements are set to create numerous jobs and tourism opportunities across the country.

This comes as transport-infrastructure developments have been recognised as being of world-class standard.

Johannesburg's Rea Vaya BRT System has been described as far better than that of New York by the Institute for Transportation and Development Planning in New York City. Rea Vaya has also won various international awards.

Rural transport

By August 2011, the Department of Transport and National Treasury were engaging in a rural transport grant as part of efforts to speed up improvements in the public transport system of the country's rural areas. Such a grant will also

The taxi industry has a turnover of more than R35 billion a year. It employs over 250 000 employees who are mainly lower and semi-skilled workers, consequently contributing to government's poverty-alleviation programmes.

In addition, the industry serves ancillary economic activities such as hawkers and other informal retailers, who rely on taxis for their livelihood. Some 283 100 taxis operate on South African roads, excluding informal taxis awaiting permits.

serve as a long-term commitment to the country's PTS as adopted by government.

The deep rural areas are still isolated from major road and rail routes. However, the Rural Transport Strategy, approved by Cabinet in December 2007, is promoting mobility in such areas.

Regarding the improvement of strategic roads and implementation of the Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework of South Africa, National Treasury and the Department of Transport have rolled out the provincial road maintenance grant of more than R22 billion.

Rural infrastructure contributes to job creation and improves the socio-economic needs of people in rural areas. It ensures access to schools, clinics and economic opportunities.

The Rural Access Improvement Programme is part of a comprehensive rural transport strategy for South Africa, which addresses challenges in rural development, such as:

- building bridges and NMT facilities
- developing and implementing the integrated rapid public-transport networks for regular transport services
- developing and upgrading the airport network with a proper road-link infrastructure and services
- revitalising rural railway operations by expanding rail passenger services and freight operations to the rural areas.

Through the EPWP, the department aims to contribute to job creation by implementing labour-intensive projects.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire for an integrated public-transport system. The main objectives are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy, puts the passenger first and meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability.

The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team, to consider specific interventions to turn the taxi industry around.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate types of vehicle, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

Bus Rapid Transport

Tshwane and Johannesburg have rolled out Phase A of the BRT. In February 2011, the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, and the City of Johannesburg handed over Phase 1A Bus Operating Company of the Rea Vaya BRT System to the taxi industry shareholders.

A third of shareholders relinquished their operating licences and raised the 66,7% shareholding, making the Rea Vaya Bus Operating Company majority-owned and managed by former taxi-industry operators.

Each of the 316 shareholders was required to pay R54 000 from the proceeds of the scrapping or sale of their vehicles. Some operators submitted more than one vehicle to be scrapped.

A database of one employee per affected vehicle was developed and at least 200 former taxi drivers have been employed as bus drivers, while a further 150 affected workers have been employed at Rea Vaya stations as station ambassadors and marshalls.

In May 2011, Johannesburg's Rea Vaya BRT was honoured with an Encouragement Award for promoting the use of public transport in Johannesburg at the Public Transport Congress, hosted by the International Association of Public Transport in Dubai, United Arab Emirates.

Rea Vaya buses transport an average of over 30 000 people to and from work daily. The buses give residents of Soweto and the southern parts of Johannesburg direct access to the inner city and surrounding areas. The buses run at regular intervals on dedicated lanes, combating traffic

In October 2011, the Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC), in collaboration with Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) and the Department of Public Enterprises: North West Provincial Department of Public Safety and Liaison, launched the Road Safety Level Crossing Project in Rustenburg, North West.

Due to the high incidence of fatalities and injuries at level crossings, TFR has engaged the assistance of the RTMC to address and promote safety at level crossings.

The North West Project is a pilot in the Rustenburg area, mainly due to the high occurrence of level-crossing crashes. The project is one of the many projects undertaken by the RTMC in response to the Decade of Action for Road Safety.

congestion and improving the quality of public transport.

In addition, the Rea Vaya buses run on low-sulphur diesel, with the most advanced pollution-reduction equipment.

Road-traffic safety

Worldwide, roughly 1,3 million people die on the roads and 50 million sustain non-fatal injuries every year. In South Africa, 14 000 people die in road crashes annually. This amounts to almost R56 billion annually in lost revenue, medical costs, insurance and lost income.

The Zenani Mandela Road-Safety Scholarship, launched in April 2011 by the Nelson Mandela Foundation and the Commission for Global Road Safety, will help young South Africans tackle the growing epidemic of death and injury on the country's roads. The announcement took place at the launch of the *Make Roads Safe, Time for Action Report* of the Commission for Global Road Safety. The report makes a series of recommendations for the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020.

In March 2011, the Traffic Police National Intervention Unit (NIU) was established. The NIU is a specialised intervention force that was deployed to deal with any traffic situation in the country. It is a joint programme of the RTMC and Sanral.

The 231 traffic officers who comprise the NIU received special training in advanced driving, interpersonal communication, anti-corruption, dealing with diplomatic personnel, first aid and incident management. This unit will intensify the policing of the national roads network.

The unit will engage in joint operations with provincial traffic authorities, municipal/metro police, the South African Police Service (SAPS), the CBRTA, the Military Police and other relevant agencies such as the South African Revenue Service, and the departments of home affairs and environmental affairs.

The NIU will be at roadside checkpoints, multidisciplinary roadblocks, high-impact visibility patrols, unmarked patrols and alcohol test centres.

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign aims to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5%, compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

In June 2011, the RTMC in partnership with the South African Roads Federation, hosted the International Road Safety Conference, following the launch of the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety in May 2011. The RTMC is a member of the UN Road Safety collaboration.

The objectives of the conference included, among other things:

- identifying and understanding the issues related to the high accident rates in developing and emerging nations
- sharing best local, regional and international practices and experiences, which can be translated into action plans to reduce fatalities and serious injuries
- developing action plans and strategies to reduce the perpetuation of road-user deaths and injury rates in line with the principles of the Decade of Action.

The conference featured renowned international speakers who addressed, among other things, driver fitness and behaviour, habits that kill, the impact of road infrastructure on road safety, the safety standard of cars, regulation, education programmes, and road deaths in South Africa.

Cross-border transport

Multilateral

Cross-border road transport is underpinned by ground-breaking multilateral and bilateral agreements between South Africa and several of its neighbouring countries under the auspices of the CBRTA and the SADC Protocol on Transport, Communications and Meteorology, including the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) MoU.

The SADC and Sacu documents encourage, among other things, good neighbourliness between member states and the facilitation of the unimpeded flow of goods and passengers between and across their respective territories.

Rail transport

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

Prasa merges the operations, personnel and assets of the South African Rail Commuter Corporation, Metrorail, Intersite Property Management Services, Shosholoza Meyl and the long-distance bus company Autopax (Translux and City-to-City).

Prasa is at the forefront of government efforts to transform public transport in South Africa, with rail services forming the backbone of the network. The essence of Prasa is to integrate inter-modal facilities and services into public transport solutions that optimise the performance of the whole transport system.

Over the past five years, Prasa has invested over R40 billion in passenger rail infrastructure and services in South Africa. This involved R23 billion in the Gautrain Project and almost R13 billion on rehabilitating Prasa coaches and signalling systems.

Prasa transported 476 million passengers in 2010/11, excluding passengers during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Of these passengers, 99,1% used commuter rail, 0,3% Shosholoza Meyl and 0,6% Autopax long-distance buses.

It used a commuter fleet of 4 589 motor coaches and trailer coaches, 124 locomotives and 1 214 long-distance rail coaches, and 570 long-distance passenger buses with 15 247 employees across 489 commuter stations and 71 long-haul stations in South Africa.

Government aims to achieve the following objectives in the future:

- sustainable passenger rail-service delivery
- improved passenger rail services in terms of quality and passenger service levels
- improved efficiency in service delivery
- improved effectiveness of asset management
- effective targeting of subsidies to achieve socio-economic and transport objectives
- improved oversight by government
- improved accountability to users.

The Department of Transport, through Prasa, is embarking on a bold and ambitious programme to invest in new rail rolling stock over a period of 18 years at an estimated cost of R97 billion.

The programme will enable Prasa to procure new rolling stock and locomotives for metro and long-distance rail services. This is expected to increase the country's passenger rail-transport network, offering new routes and destinations throughout South Africa.

The department aims to develop rail as part of a worldwide rail renaissance, necessitated by rapid urban migration, economic development and the emergence of mega-cities. In geographically spread countries with long-distance commuting on a daily basis, rail transport presents the best option.

A sustained programme over a 20-year-period is expected to create certainty and enable input-manufacturers to re-tool their factories, creating sustained local industrial activities. The rail development plan template has four outcomes, namely:

- urban transit systems
- long-distance transit systems
- key strategic freight corridors
- rural access and mobility.

Part of the department's rail plan is to identify critical inputs through a cost-benefit analysis based on its competitive advantage and through the creation of economies of scale. This approach is important to create sustainable jobs and economic growth.

Long-distance commuter services such as the Moloto, the Durban-to-Johannesburg and the Durban-to-Gauteng corridors were identified for development.

The Durban-to-Gauteng Corridor is the busiest corridor in the southern hemisphere, both in terms of value and tonnage. It also forms the backbone of South Africa's freight-transportation network.

It facilitates economic growth for the country, the region and the continent. The 2050 Vision for the Durban-to-Gauteng Corridor was adopted in September 2010.

A multi-agency structure comprising the Gauteng, Free State and KwaZulu-Natal provincial governments, the eThekwini and Johannesburg municipalities and the departments of trade and industry and public enterprises has been established.

The structure will drive the development of passenger and freight services on the Durban-to-Johannesburg Corridor.

In April 2012, the Minister of Transport formally invited manufacturers of rolling stock in South Africa, and all over the world, to submit their bids to win the right to build 7 224 metro coaches, estimated at R123 billion. These are modern trains that will be built in South Africa with the aim of revitalising the country's rail engineering industry, promoting local manufacturing, creating an estimated 65 000 jobs and developing a new generation of railway workers, in the form of engineers and artisans.

Gautrain

The Gautrain, Africa's only high-speed train, became fully operational between Pretoria and Johannesburg in August 2011.

Gautrain's first leg, the link between Johannesburg and OR Tambo International Airport, opened in June 2010, three days before the opening match of the 2010 World Cup.

This landmark initiative is supported by a network of feeder buses.

Gautrain can travel at speeds of 160 km/h, enabling commuters to make the trip from Johannesburg to Pretoria in less than 40 minutes.

Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for the setting up of the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport. The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with SADC railway operations
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS), developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements and the management of human factors.

In May 2011, the SABS published the *National Standard on Human Factors Management*, which was developed to provide railway operators with the minimum requirements to manage human factors. The standard will be mandatory for all railway operators in South Africa. The standard is applicable to all employees undertaking safety-related work in the railway environment.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and indeed the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways. This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator. The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railway Association (Sara).

Since the RSR's creation, there has been an increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa and regional railways operating into South Africa. The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems. Through its Sara membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central role in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the *Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail*.

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Freight transport

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. Yet, roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in Africa, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Government will also review its rail investment programme to accelerate the shift of freight transport from road to rail. Transnet will invest about R63 billion in the freight rail system over the next five years. For its part, organised business will continue to promote greater use of rail freight by companies.

In August 2011, the Integrated Transport Planning Unit in the Department of Transport made a presentation to Parliament on *The Reduction of Freight Transportation by Road – A Shift Towards Rail*, which focused on, among other things:

- the challenges of transporting freight by both road and rail
- an analysis of the road and rail market share (with mostly the market share shifting to road)
- key freight corridors

- identified rail- and road-friendly commodities
- factors contributing to the decline of freight rail
- policy and strategic thrusts.

The Department of Transport has, in its efforts to address challenges, taken the following steps:
- the 2005 Cabinet-approved National Freight Logistics Strategy, which proposed an institutional arrangement for railways
- the Draft Rail Branch Line Strategy, which seeks to capacitate the current challenges faced by the secondary rail network and allow private operators on this specific network, and subsequently competition
- the Natmap, which deals with a demand forecast model in relation to demand for both passenger and freight transport and the insitutionalisation thereof
- the Road Freight Strategy, which recommends proposals on how to better manage the road freight environment such as through axle load mass limits, commodities that were identified as road-friendly as well as those that are rail-friendly
- the *Green Paper on Rail Policy* as a blueprint for railways (both passenger and freight in the country)
- a single transport regulator and related rail economic regulator, which seeks to regulate market access to the current rail network for private operators who would have an opportunity to operate on the secondary rail network.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR, the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenue.

Transnet Ltd, operating and controlling South Africa's major transport infrastructure, is also responsible for ensuring that the country's transport industries operate according to world-class standards. Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:
- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually
- exports 100% of the country's coal
- exports 100% of the iron ore
- has annual revenue of over R14 billion
- will, over the next five years, invest R35 billion in capital
- has 25 347 employees system-wide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

In February 2011, TFR took delivery of 100 locomotives in line with its capital investment and skills-development programmes.

The locomotives were the first AC diesel locomotives to be introduced in sub-Saharan Africa. They will be used on the coal line and for general freight business, and are part of TFR's fleet renewal plan and the company's R93,5-billion five-year capital investment programme.

The agreement with the parastatal was in line with its commitment to use its capital investment programmme to meet the objectives of the Competitive Supplier Development Programme (CSDP). The CSDP is the department's initiative to encourage localisation of manufacturing, sustainable employment and skills development.

The first 10 locomotives will be built at the General Electric (GE) plants in the USA, while the other 90% will be assembled at TFR's manufacturing facilities in Koedoespoort, Pretoria, with GE supplying Transnet with all major components, including engines. Transnet Rail Engineering will be responsible for the complete assembly as well as sub-assemblies.

The GE/TFR agreement is South Africa's largest CSDP transaction, positioning the utility as the leading state-owned enterprise (SOE). The agreement between TFR and GE will go a long way towards ensuring that SOEs play a significant role in advancing the goals of government's NGP.

The long-term objective of TFR is to localise its supply chain of imported manufactured goods or services to a reasonable level, while also promoting local industries and South Africa. Locomotive fleet renewal is central to the company's drive to improve productivity, safety and efficiency of assets and people.

It also gives TFR an opportunity to develop its engineering, technical and manufacturing skills in partnership with a leader in this field.

TFR Engineering's Koedoespoort plant has been upgraded and employees received training at GE facilities in the USA, Mexico and Australia.

To accommodate the increased demand for its container services and to further stimulate container and automotive growth on rail by offering a sustainable superior service, TFR has created a ring-fenced business unit known as the Container and Automotive Business.

This follows on the success of the turnaround of this business unit, which has seen it increase its market share from 17% to 34% nationally and the increase from four to 22 trains per day on the KwaZulu-Natal corridor. This unit achieved record volumes in 2010/11 with 20-ft equivalent units (TEUs) – a TEU is the volume of a standard 6-m shipping container – increasing from 525 000 in 2007/08 to 628 000 and the company expecting to handle 1,118 million TEUs by 2016. Record volumes in the automotive sector were also recorded. Volumes increased from 102 000 units in 2009/10 to 131 000 units in 2010/11 – a 29% increase.

These gains can be largely ascribed to a reduction in transit times, which saw the average transit time on the KwaZulu-Natal corridor being reduced from 30 hours to 18; and the introduction of the Anaconda, which created an increase in capacity from a 40-wagon to 75-wagon train. Close collaboration with the industry has also provided customers with confidence in the unit's capabilities and enhanced inter-modalism.

Civil aviation

Aviation is a critical strategic component of the South African economy, and the economies of all countries in southern Africa.

In 2010, 21 million people and 240 000 t of freight travelled to, from and within South Africa. One of the key legacies of the 2010 World Cup was an investment of R17 billion in airport infrastructure.

In January 2011, the Department of Transport announced the approval and coming into effect of the National Airspace Master Plan (NAMP) 2011 – 2015.

It provides a strategic view and direction of airspace organisation and management within South Africa, as well as the notion of performance-based transition planning at global, regional and local level. It has been compiled in accordance with the National Civil Aviation Policy, as amended and is effective as of January 2011.

The objectives of the NAMP are, among other things:

- servicing the airspace in accordance with ICAO standards and recommended practices in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users and, particularly, the international community
- rationalising all managed airspace in accordance with ICAO standards and recommended practices in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users by a consultative process, strategically and tactically
- minimising all permanently prohibited, restricted and danger areas in accordance with ICAO standards and practices, and to facilitate the flexible use of airspace to the benefit of all users.

The NAMP will also guide the National Airspace Committee, established through the Civil Aviation Regulations, 1997, in the execution of its mandate, by providing measurable key performance areas, performance objectives, indicators and targets in contemplating amendments to airspace, procedures and infrastructure.

Airlift Strategy

Cabinet approved the Airlift Strategy in July 2006 to introduce effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa.

In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

In particular, the strategy supports the MDGs and the objectives of Nepad to increase African connectivity and access through the accelerated implementation of the Yamoussoukro Decision of 1999 on the liberation of intra-Africa air-traffic services.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air-transport services.

In June 2011, the Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, signed a bilateral air services agreement with his Cameroonian counterpart, Mr Maigari Bello Bouba, which will help further open up the African skies to air services. The ministers signed the agreement on the final day of the Transport Infrastructure Conference. It is the first such agreement to be signed in line with the Yamoussoukro Decision of 1999, which aims to deregulate air services on the continent.

The bilateral agreement allows South African airlines to fly to Cameroon, take on passengers, and fly on to second or third countries.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

Airlines

Major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

South African Airways (SAA), British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Inter-Air operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, SAA operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula, Mango and 1time. The South African National Taxi Council (Santaco) launched its low-cost airline in September 2011 from Lanseria Airport. Santaco Airlines is expected to open up air travel to many people who have not had access to travel by air.

The venture is significant because it is a practical example of economic and social emancipation in ownership and consumption. The airline is owned by over 10 000 taxi owners, making it one of the most BBBEE ventures in South Africa.

Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

South African Airways

SAA is the largest air carrier in Africa, with OR Tambo International Airport being on the busiest routes in Africa. Nearly 75% of air-traffic activity in Africa takes place in the region.

SAA made a net profit of R782 million in 2010/11. Group operating profit rose by 66% to R807 million from 2009/10. Turnover, consisting largely of passenger revenue, increased from R16,9 billion to R18 billion.

SAA is the only non-stop service from the USA to South Africa, with daily departures from Washington DC.

Effective May 2011, SAA offered its customers the convenience of flying non-stop between Johannesburg and New York.

The King Shaka International Airport offers vast commercial opportunities. It has approximately three times more retail outlets than the old Durban International Airport, contributing over the medium to long term to the subsidisation of tariffs. The airport site also has property-development opportunities, which would be unlocked over the next few years.

In February 2011, President Jacob Zuma officially received the new A330-200 Airbus delivered at the Cape Town International Airport. The aircraft was the first of six to be delivered in 2011.

The delivery of the new aircraft came at a time when the airline rolled out its network expansion plan, offering its passengers more convenient connections to local, regional and international destinations.

The aircraft was named after heroine Charlotte Maxeke in recognition of her contribution to the country.

The acquisition of the Airbus for its fuel efficiency was in line with the country's mission to reduce its carbon footprint and contribute towards a green economy.

Ports

A major part of world trade depends on South Africa's coastal waters. The country is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 million ton (Mt)

South African Airways won the Best Airline Africa Award for the ninth consecutive year and the Service Excellence Africa Award for the second consecutive year at the 2011 World Airline Awards. The awards were presented in Paris, France, on 22 June 2011.

The Best Airline Africa Award is awarded to the airline rated the best in the region for all the different items of airline front-line product and service. A quality, unrivalled product as well as unwavering service standards and consistency experienced at the airport and onboard the aircraft were judging criteria for this award.

of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The country's ports handle over 430 Mt of varied cargo types, carried on over 9 000 ship calls each year. In addition, thousands of merchant ships, fishing and commercial vessels and hundreds of special platforms mining houses and multinational industries use South Africa's ports annually.

The nine commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea. The National Ports Regulator was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- coordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Of the four distinct market sectors in which Port Terminals operates, containers and dry bulk contribute about 80% of revenue.

Most of the world's major container shipping lines call at Port Terminals' container terminals in Durban, Ngqura, Port Elizabeth and Cape Town.

Of these, three shipping companies contribute in excess of two thirds of the market volumes of imports, exports and transshipments.

The dry bulk volumes consist of exports of iron ore, manganese, magnetite, chrome and various other commodities of a lesser magnitude. Imports of vital raw material destined for harbour-bound and inland industries are also handled through Port Terminals' dry bulk terminals.

Port Terminals operates three car terminals in the ports of Durban, East London and Port Elizabeth.

All terminals are differentiated by their design, layout and service offering to numerous original equipment manufacturers. Port Terminals also provides import services for most makes of vehicle that are sold but not produced in South Africa.

Based on the *White Paper on the National Commercial Ports Policy (2002)*, the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

This will be achieved through the delivery of high levels of service and increasing efficiency for a growing customer base. It will result in the enhancement of South Africa's global competitiveness and facilitate the expansion of the economy through socially and environmentally sustainable port development. The TNPA consists of the following divisions:

Trade and Logistics

This division is the strategic business arm of the TNPA. It is responsible for customer-relationship marketing, in combination with technology and human resources (HR).

Three South African women have set the standard in Africa by becoming the first black female marine pilots on the continent to gain open licences, enabling them to navigate ships of all sizes and types into local waters.

Precious Dube, Bongiwe Mbambo and Pinky Zungu, who are three of only five female marine pilots in South Africa, are tasked with guiding ships through dangerous or congested waters, such as harbours.

The marine pilot acts as an adviser to the captain, who maintains legal, overriding command of the vessel.

The three women are products of Transnet's National Ports Authority development scheme, which has been encouraging more equitable participation in the maritime sector since the 1990s. Transnet offers aspirant students bursaries to complete a national diploma in maritime studies – specialising in navigation – and a national diploma in marine mechanical engineering. These courses can be taken at the Cape Peninsula and Durban universities of technology.

Landlord Services

Landlord Services ensures the planning, development and optimal use of port property and infrastructure, as well as a safe, secure and healthy port environment.

The division consists of property, engineering, and planning and development. Landlord Services has traditionally been the TNPA's major revenue earner, initially through wharfage, and currently through cargo dues.

Maritime Services

Maritime Services includes improving efficiency in shipping services, dredging navigational waterways, and ensuring a safe shipping environment through vessel-tracing services, pilotage and lighthouse services.

The ports provide:

- pilotage, tug and berthing services
- bulk-handling installations to handle dry and liquid bulk, complemented by storage facilities
- container-handling facilities
- multipurpose terminals for the handling of break bulk and containers
- access to rail and road links
- ship-repair facilities
- feeder services.

Lighthouse Services

Lighthouse Service is a business unit of the TNPA. It owns, provides and operates all the lighthouses and aids to navigation along the coast of South Africa. Lighthouse Services is also contracted to provide and maintain the aids to navigation in the ports, Sea Fisheries harbours and most private harbours and marinas, thus ensuring that all the aids to navigation on the South African coast comply with international standards.

Lighthouse Services in South Africa operates and maintains 45 lighthouses, along with other beacons and aids to navigation along the approximately 3 000 km of South African coastline, stretching from Port Nolloth on the West Coast to Jesser Point at Sodwana on the East Coast.

Due to modern technology and automation, only 15 of the 45 lighthouses are still manned. Most of the lighthouses are equipped with self-catering accommodation for use by visiting maintenance staff. These include Cape Columbine in the Saldanha Bay area; Danger Point near Gansbaai; Cape St Blaize at Mossel Bay; Great Fish Point in Port Alfred; and North Sand Bluff near Port Edward. Cape Columbine has a conference facility, where 100 persons can be seated cinema-style and 30 conference-style. The venue also has a swimming pool.

This venture, known as SA Lighthouse Adventure Tour Operations and managed by the Lighthouse Services, was officially launched at Cape Columbine by the then Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Jeff Radebe, in September 2002. It is a tour-operating business specialing in lighthouse tours, which include visits and accommodation at lighthouses. The main objective is to develop the lighthouses and related facilities in South Africa into attractive and sought-after tourist destinations.

The services offered range from a guided tour of a lighthouse to a holiday in a fully equipped, self-catering cottage.

Marine Services

Marine Services operates 24 large tugs, eight work boats, four pilot boats and 14 launches in South Africa's commercial ports. The ports of Durban and Richards Bay provide 24-hour services.

Portcon International

This division provides a consultancy and training service appropriate to ports operating within the African context.

Port and Corporate Affairs

This division is responsible for the efficient and profitable running of the ports as service-delivery platforms.

Deepwater ports

South Africa's new deep-water harbour, the Port of Ngqura near Port Elizabeth, launched operations in October 2009, when its first commercial customer, the *MSC Catania*, docked at the port.

The port is an integral part of the Coega Industrial Development Zone. The 300-m long and 13-m deep ship was used to test vessel operators' skills in offloading and handling containers with an average of 19 containers handled per hour.

The Ngqura Port, which lies at the mouth of the Coega River in Algoa Bay, is a deep-water port with a depth of between 16 m and 18 m.

The improved infrastructure will relieve container congestion in the South African port system, while attracting additional transshipment cargo. The Ngqura Container Terminal will have the capacity to accommodate "ultra-mega" ships carrying 6 000 to 10 000 TEUs, a measure used for capacity in container transport.

The port is considered the most modern harbour in Africa. Although sub-Saharan Africa has a number of smaller ports, these are only suitable for medium-sized ships. It will not only boost the economy of the Eastern Cape; but is also an important development for trade in South Africa and the rest of Africa.

The port development will directly create employment in the region and holds positive secondary benefits for other product groups such as agriculture, fishing, construction, transport (including storage), financial and business services, electricity and gas, as well as wholesale and retail business.

Rail operations at the new port have also received a stamp of approval. The rail route will connect the new port to the City Deep Rail Terminal in Johannesburg in Gauteng via Beaconsfield in the Northern Cape. Transnet has refurbished 400 container wagons and will use its 7E locomotive fleet for traffic on the line, which has a designed capacity of six trains per day, each with 50 wagons.

The Port of Richards Bay is South Africa's leading port in terms of cargo volumes, handling in excess of 80 Mt of cargo annually.

The port covers a surface area of 2 174 ha on land and 1 443 ha on water, making it the biggest port in South Africa in terms of size. It also offers easy access to South Africa's national rail network.

One of the port's inherent strengths is its deep-water infrastructure, with a maximum permissible draught of 17,5 m. This, coupled with the high-tech state-of-the-art terminal infrastructure, allows for high-speed and high-volume cargo handling and a fast turnaround of vessels.

The port with its immediate region has become a popular call for international cruise ships because of the close proximity to game parks and the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park.

The facilities at Richards Bay's Port comprise a dry-bulk terminal, a multipurpose terminal and a privately operated coal terminal. Other private operators within the port include several woodchip export terminals and a bulk liquid terminal.

Richard's Bay Dry Bulk Terminal is a unique terminal that handles a variety of commodities on its conveyor system.

To avoid contamination, every belt, transfer point, rail truck and vessel loader/unloader is washed thoroughly before the next product is handled. A high-volume woodchip loader has made this terminal one of the world's best and most efficient woodchip-loading facilities.

Saldanha Port, situated on the West Coast, is the deepest and the largest natural port in southern Africa. The port is unique in that it has a purpose-built railroad serving a bulk-handling facility, which is connected to a dedicated jetty for the shipment of iron ore. Saldanha also serves as a major crude-oil importation and transshipment port. It is the only iron ore-handling port in South Africa.

Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic. The Port of Durban has developed into Africa's busiest multiservice port, handling up to 80 Mt of

In September 2011, Transnet signed an agreement with Shanghai Zhenhua Heavy Industries, from China, to buy seven tandem lift ship-to-shore cranes for the Durban Container Terminal.

The cranes will replace the terminal's ageing infrastructure as part of the parastatal's interventions to renew the fleet of port-handling equipment to boost efficiency and productivity. The cranes will be manufactured in China and are expected to be installed during 2012/13.

cargo, and on average, 4 000 ships a year. For the port to remain globally competitive, Transnet has embarked on a series of large-scale infrastructural and operational development programmes within the port.

The flagship project was the deepening and widening of the entrance channel to the port, making it the southern hemisphere's largest and best-equipped commercial harbour.

The widening and deepening of the Durban harbour entrance provides the port with a new entrance channel, which allows safe access to all vessels under all weather conditions.

It is especially effective as a hub port for cargo to and from the Far East, Europe and the Americas, serving South Africa, as well as west and east African countries. The port is also the premier port for a wide range of commodities, including coal, mineral ores, granite, chemicals, petrochemicals, steel, forest products, citrus products, sugar and grain.

It is estimated that the port and its related industries contribute in excess of 20% of Durban's gross domestic product (GDP). Durban contributes almost 55% of the KwaZulu-Natal GDP, which in turn is about 15% of the South African GDP. The maritime industry in Durban contributes between 1,5% and 2% of the national GDP. This is a contribution to the local GDP of between R25 billion and R35 billion, according to Port of Durban statistics.

The Port of Cape Town is the other hub in South Africa. It offers multipurpose dry, and liquid and dry terminals, as well as fully serviced dry docks.

The port is renowned for its deciduous fruit and frozen-product exports. A major fishing industry is also based here. The Port of Cape Town is strategically positioned and ideally situated to serve as a hub for cargoes between Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Oceania. The port provides a complex network of services to its clients and a favourable environment for all stakeholders, maximising benefits to the local and national economy. Integrated intermodal cargo systems, ship repair, bunkering facilities and the reefer trade are examples of these services.

In June 2011, the R5,4-billion expansion of Cape Town Harbour's Container Terminal was on track for completion within budget and ahead of schedule, following the dredging and refurbishing of the second of four quays.

The completion of berth 602 saw 720 m of quay wall made available to accommodate two 305-m vessels along the quay.

The project signifies Transnet's commitment to ensure the competitiveness of the economy as custodians of the transport and logistics infrastructure.

The investment, which is part of Transnet's R110-billion rolling five-year capital investment programme, will not only increase capacity, but go a long way towards improving productivity and efficiency at the ports.

Completion of the five-year-long project is expected to double the terminal's capacity to 1,4 million TEUs a year.

SOEs such as Transnet, through their expansion projects, were encouraged to be the key drivers of the Government's developmental objectives, as articulated in the NGP.

Multipurpose ports

The Port of Port Elizabeth, with its proximity to heavily industrialised and intensively farmed areas, has facilities for handling all commodities – bulk, general and container cargo.

Being situated at the centre of the country's motor-vehicle-manufacturing industry, the port imports large volumes of containerised components and raw material for this industry.

The bulk of exports comprises agricultural products. Apart from agricultural produce, manganese ore, motor-vehicle-industry-related products and steel are exported.

The container terminal has maintained the highest handling rates in Africa in recent years and is accredited to International Standards Organisation 9002. Located mid-way between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the Port of Mossel Bay has in the past specialised in serving the local inshore and deep-sea fishing industry, as well as limited commercial cargo. However, it now serves the oil industry as well as other client-oriented marine cargo.

This port is the only South African port that operates two offshore mooring points within port limits. Both mooring points are used for the transport of refined petroleum products.

The Port of East London is situated at the mouth of the Buffalo River on South Africa's east coast, and is the country's only commercial river port.

It boasts a large container terminal and grain elevator, and is the largest exporter of maize.

With a world-class R80-million car terminal, the port has become one of the major motor-vehicle export and import terminals in South Africa.

Through Transnet, government is investing close on R50 billion in rail- and port-infrastructure improvement.

The project is expected to have a significant impact on Transnet's container-handling capacity, which includes the expansion of capacity of container terminals in Durban, and the construction of the state-of-the-art Ngqura Container Terminal outside Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape.

From a customer perspective, the rate at which containers are moved per hour had improved by more than 30% by the end of 2011.

Key aspects of the project include:

- deepening all four berths to 15,5 m
- reconfiguring the stack yard to maximise space
- replacing the old ship-to-shore cranes with eight Liebherr Super Post-Panamax cranes with twin-lift capability – six of these were already in place by June 2011
- replacing straddle carriers with 28 Kalmar-manufactured rubber-tyre gantry cranes that stack containers wider, deeper and higher
- refurbishing the quay wall to support the Super Post-Panamax ship-to-shore cranes
- introducing additional reefer plug points for refrigerated containers, with a total of 2 712 reefer points to be served by gantry cranes
- recruiting and training operators of lifting equipment to operate the new cranes.

Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion litres of petroleum products a year.

Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to Botswana. Transnet Pipelines plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at Natref, from where almost 70% of their refined products and 80% at Secunda are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Investment is ongoing in the pipeline sector.

> In October 2011, the South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa) Seafarer of the Year Awards were held in Cape Town. With the awards, the maritime sector celebrates the significant role played and contribution made by South African seafarers. The categories are: Fishing, Commercial, Shore-based and Overall Samsa Seafarer of the Year.

Construction of a R5,8-billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450-km pipeline transports up to 3,5 million litres (Ml) a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3,5 Ml of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1,5 Ml is diverted to Mbombela, while the remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid fuels-demand lies within the Durban-to-Johannesburg Corridor. The Durban-to-Johannesburg Pipeline has become inadequate to transport the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

The New Multi-Product Pipeline, which is under construction at a cost of R23 billion between Durban and Johannesburg, will be replacing the existing Durban-Johannesburg pipeline and is expected to increase capacity from 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres by December 2013.

Maritime affairs

Maritime administration, legislation and shipping

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It caters to a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The Department of Transport is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act, 1998.

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships. The Department of Environmental Affairs is responsible for combating pollution and uses *Kuswag* coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operating local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, HR and information-technology issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation, Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports, but also as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional MRCC in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia in 2007.

Training

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simonstown in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy. The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology.

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the Department of Transport, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

Search-and-rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue Organisation (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all search-and-rescue activities with South Africa's area of responsibility (SAR Region).

South Africa is responsible for a huge area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28,5 million km^2 in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into two SAR regions, namely the aeronautical and maritime SAR regions.

South Africa is located on a coastline of just under 3 000 km. The country has jurisdiction over about one million square kilometres of economic exclusive zone, and a search-and-rescue responsibility spanning a 27-million square kilometres zone, covering a vast sea room up to the polar continent of the Antarctic, including a part of the Southern Ocean.

A major part of world trade depends on South Africa's coastal waters. The country is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 million tons of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production.

The country's ports handle over 430 metric tons of varied cargo types, carried on over 9 000 ship calls each year. In addition, thousands of merchant ships, fishing and commercial vessels and hundreds of special platforms transit or visit South Africa's ports every year.

South Africa's Centre for Sea Watch and Response, which houses the Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre and the Standby Salvage Tug Programme, responds to over 40 marine incidents a month, with the standby tug assisting hundreds of transiting ships in distress annually, some incidents occurring far out in the polar Antarctic region.

The Aeronautical SAR Region covers South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland, Lesotho and associated flight-information regions. The Maritime SAR Region stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side.

It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the South Pole. Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and Samsa.

Search-and-rescue operations only work when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of search-and-rescue services within their territories to ensure that assistance is rendered to persons in distress.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities. Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform manner across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of search-and-rescue operations.

The SADC approached ICAO and the IMO to consider funding the training requirements identified for the region. Together with the Department of Environment Affairs, the Department of Transport is planning to create search-and-rescue capacity in the Antarctic region.

The Department of Transport, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance are members of Sasar and contribute their services and facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet (the national amateur radio emergency communication network) and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The ARCC Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search-and-rescue services and coordinates aeronautical search-and-rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

South Africa has been re-elected to the United Nation's 170-member International Maritime Organisation (IMO) for a two-year term during the body's 27th Assembly in London.

More than 1 000 delegates from IMO member states as well as from international governmental and non-governmental organisations attended the session in March 2011.

Maritime safety

Thousands of vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based MRCC.

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food stocks and economic development.

The sea plays an important role in both the SADC's economy and international commerce and maritime security is essential for the SADC's continued economic and political stability.

The SADC therefore has both an international and regional responsibility to help promote good order at sea. Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international anti-pirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy must entail a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all member states necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways. Some countries, for example, provide land-based equipment such as radar, as well as soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC must establish robust rules of engagement for anti-piracy, which should be largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services. Various laden, large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established Pollution Prevention Strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa acts in terms of the Indian Ocean MoU on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of west Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Acknowledgements

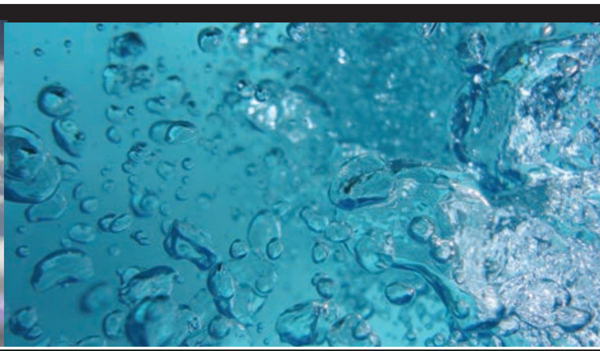
BuaNews
Business Day
Civil Aviation Authority
Department of Transport
Die Beeld
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011
National Household Travel Survey, 2003
National Ports Authority of South Africa
Pretoria News
Road Accident Fund
Sabinet
South African National Roads Agency, *Annual Report 2010/11*
Sapa
South African Rail Commuter Corporation
Transnet Annual Report, 2010/11
Transnet Freight Rail Limited

www.acsa.co.za
www.arrivealive.co.za
www.atns.co.za
www.buanews.gov.za
www.cbrta.co.za
www.enatis.com
www.engineeringnews.co.za
www.gautrain.co.za
www.gov.za
www.iol.co.za
www.itweb.co.za
www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com
www.mg.co.za
www.news24.com
www.politicsweb.co.za
www.polokwane.org.za
www.ports.co.za
www.prasa.com
www.raf.co.za
www.rsr.org.za
www.sa2010.gov.za
www.saa.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samsa.org.za
www.sanral.co.za
www.shine2010.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.spoornet.co.za
www.tradeinvestsa.co.za
www.transnet.co.za
www.transport.gov.za
www.umdloti.org

Suggested reading

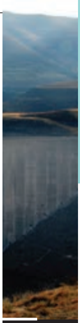
Louw, B. 2008. *The Gibson Brothers of the Red Star Line*. Welgemoed: JBZ Louw.
Rorke, WB. 2007. *Trek Airways: A South African Adventure*. London: Athena Press.
Ross, G. 2007. *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
South Africa. Department of Transport. (2000). (e-resource). *Moving South Africa: A Transport Strategy for 2010: Report and Strategy Recommendations*.


DBS
DBS
macs
P&O Nedlloyd


Water affairs

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12



Water affairs 24

The Department of Water Affairs is mandated to ensure that South Africa's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled in accordance with the requirements of the policies of the department, the Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), and the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Its core functions are:

- formulating policy
- managing water resources
- developing infrastructure
- capacity-building
- intergovernmental and intra-sectoral co-ordination
- water regulation.

In relation to government's 12 outcomes, the department contributes directly to an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (Outcome 6) through the mainenance and supply availability of the country's bulk water infrastructure (Output 4); and environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually improved (Outcome 10) through enhanced quality and quantity of water resources (Output 1). The department also contributes indirectly to a number of other outcomes.

A departmental or suboutput relating to Outcome 6 is to strengthen the regulation of the water sector, and for Outcome 10 it is to promote equitable and sustainable water-resources management.

Other key priorities include:

- giving effective support to local government to deliver water services
- realigning the institutional arrangement of the water sector
- strengthening the oversight of the water boards and centralising the management of the entire water value chain
- strengthening internal technical capacity to address the massive backlog in the operations and maintenance of the national water infrastructure.

South Africa is a water-scarce country – it has a low rainfall and one of the lowest run-offs in the world. Water resources must be managed well and used judiciously to ensure continued supply. Factors such as climate change and increasing population growth are leading to increased water consumption. Educating the general public on water conservation is imperative. The department has implemented campaigns aimed at raising awareness about saving water and educating communities on how to combat water wastage. Projects to desalinate ocean water have also been initiated.

Hydrological conditions

South Africa is classified among the driest countries by world standards. It is located in a predominantly semi-arid part of the world.

The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to sub-humid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

The country's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country amounts to about 49 200 million m^3 per year. This is less than half of that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water across the country is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and, consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels for most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already

Important dates:
World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
World Water Day: 22 March

far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchments have, therefore, been implemented in South Africa.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water in the country from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed over most of South Africa.

Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households since 1994.

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country where there are still significant undeveloped and little-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m^3 per year, including about 4 800 million m^3 per year of water originating from Lesotho, and about 700 million m^3 per year originating from Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa. Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the country's total water requirements, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total net abstraction of water from surface-water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m^3 per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the reuse of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m^3 per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

South Africa's first *Atlas of Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas* was launched in Pretoria in November 2011. The atlas provides the first comprehensive assessment of the freshwater ecosystem priority areas – those areas of the country that are most important for sustaining the health and continued functioning of freshwater ecosystems.

Maps were developed for each of the water management areas in South Africa. The maps facilitate informed choices and trade-offs that can be made based on a clear understanding of where valuable freshwater ecosystems are located.

Water-resource management and development

To ensure compliance with minimum water-quality norms and standards, the department started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and waste-water systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking-water quality standards and 80% compliance with waste-water effluent standards.

The department is also seeking to establish an independent economic regulator that will ensure efficient pricing in the water value chain and that inefficiencies in the water-supply sector are not passed on to users. The current pricing strategy will also be reviewed. Various models of independent regulators, including multisector or bi-sector (such as water and energy) options, will be investigated.

To resolve these apparent conflicts and to avoid the traditional fragmented approach (handling one aspect of water management to the exclusion of others), the department adopted the Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM) approach, which provides a more holistic approach to water management.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands. The department developed two key strategic frameworks to guide it, namely the National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS) of 2004, and the Water for Growth and Development Framework of 2008. The strategy seeks to achieve reconciliation between available water resources with growing requirements.

The Water for Growth and Development Framework guides actions and decisions that will ensure water security in terms of quantity and quality to support South Africa's requirements for economic growth and social development.

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country will be divided into nine catchment-management agencies.

Over the years, water-resource development and management in South Africa have continuously evolved to meet the needs of a growing population and a vibrant economy, within the constraints imposed by nature. These developments have largely been made possible by recognising water as a national asset, thereby allowing its transportation from where it is available to where the greatest overall benefits for the nation can be achieved.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the department is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This commitment is particularly relevant with respect to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need to mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

The Department of Water Affairs recognises that a sustainable reconciliation of supply and demand for water as well as for quality and quantity requires a robust focus on regulation. Regulation in certain priority areas such as drinking-water quality and access to services has started; and the department has also initiated an electronic Drinking Water Quality Management System, which provides the first national overview on the status of municipal drinking-water quality and performance of waste-water treatment works (WWTWs).

As issues of water security (quality and quantity) and regulation have emerged as major concerns in the water sector, the need for the department to become visible as sector leader regulator has been emphasised. The department aims to embark on a targeted skills- and development programme for the sector.

This will entail skills-gap analysis, integration of already existing interventions, and enhancement of partnerships with the Department of Higher Education and Training, the department's public entities and institutions of higher learning.

Major dams of South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10^6 m^3)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongola
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal
Theewaterskloof	480	Sonderend
Heyshope	451	Assegaai
Woodstock	380	Tugela
Loskop	361	Olifants
Grootdraai	354	Vaal
Kalkfontein	318	Riet
Goedertrouw	304	Mhlautze
Albert Falls	288	Mgeni
Brandvlei	284	Brandvlei
Spioenkop	277	Tugela
Mthatha	253	Mthatha
Driekoppies	250	Lomati
Inanda	241	Mgeni
Hartbeespoort	212	Crocodile
Erfenis	207	Groot Vet
Rhenosterkop	204	Elands
Molatedi	22	Groot Marico
Ntshingwayo	198	Ngagane
Zaaihoek	192	Slang
Midmar	175	Mgeni

Source: Department of Water Affairs

The department also aims to build internal capacity required to regulate the technical, economic, environmental and social aspects involved in providing water services.

Water-quality management

The Blue Drop and Green Drop certification programmes are flagship innovations of the Department of Water Affairs. Introduced in 2008, this incentive-based regulation system aims to improve municipal drinking-water quality and waste-water management.

South Africa's drinking-water quality matches best international practice and follows the guidelines set out by the World Health Organisation. As it involves a benchmark score of 95%, the Blue Drop certification is the recognition of exceptional performance, and should not be equated to a pass mark. It simply credits exceptional drinking-water quality.

In 2011, the Blue Drop Certification Programme verified the status of drinking-water quality and the management of the supply systems of 162 municipalities. Teams from the department assessed 914 water systems, compared to the 787 systems assessed in 2009.

In 2010/11, 66 water supply systems were awarded Blue Drop certificates, an increase of 74% from the 38 systems in 2009/10.

The top 10 municipal performers were:
- City of Johannesburg
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metro
- Witzenburg Local Municipality
- West Coast District Municipality
- Tlokwe Local Municipality
- George Local Municipality
- Mogale City Local Municipality
- Bitou Local Municipality
- Emfuleni Local Municipality.

The number of water supply systems that obtained Blue Drop scores of more than 50% increased to 539 compared to 370 in 2009/10. In the three years that the certification system has been in use, an improvement in water-quality management has been seen.

The Green Drop certification measures the performance of waste-water treatment works. The 2010/11 assessment was done done by a team of 70 assessors, and 821 systems were assessed, compared to 449 in the previous term. Forty systems received Green Drop certification, up from 33 in 2009/10.

The top 10 Green Drop performers were:
- Tlokwe Local Municipality
- Bitou Local Municipality
- eThekwini Metro
- George Local Municipality
- City of Johannesburg
- Witzenburg Local Municipality
- Beaufort West Local Municipality
- Mossel Bay Local Municipality
- Overstrand Local Municipality
- City of Cape Town.

Water and sanitation

Between April and December 2011, 449 082 people received basic water supply. This means that South Africa has surpassed the millennium development goal (MDG) of halving the proportion of people without sustainable water and is likely to achieve the 2014 goal of universal access to potable water, despite the challenge of an ever-increasing number of households.

Government is deploying the municipal drinking-water management system in all water-services authorities (WSAs) to ensure that the water is of good quality across municipalities.

Government has moved closer to attaining its objective of eradicating the bucket system in formally established settlements. The target date for universal access to sanitation is 2014.

The Water Services Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG) is a target support programme for WSAs to supplement financing for the development of regional bulk water infrastructure, regional bulk sanitation collection as well as regional water-treatment works and WWTWs.

The RBIG remains a strategic area to facilitate connecting water resources to the distribution and reticulation systems for consumption and industrial purposes.

The department approved the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Implementation Framework to facilitate its contribution to Output 4 of Outcome 6, which states that, among other things, a total of nine regional bulk schemes were completed for basic water supply. These are:
- Mthatha Bulk Water Intervention in the Eastern Cape
- Malangeni Waterborne Sanitation in KwaZulu-Natal
- Greytown Regional Bulk Scheme Phase One in KwaZulu-Natal
- Groblersdal Lukau Bulk Water Supply in Limpopo

- Olifantspoort Water Treatment Works in Limpopo
- Specon Bulk Water Supply in Limpopo
- Mbombela 2010 Water and Sanitation in Mpumalanga
- Hoxane Bulk Water Supply in Mpumalanga
- Kenhardt Bulk Water Supply in the Northern Cape.

Two of these are WWTWs, three are water treatment works and four are bulk water supply schemes.

The RBIG created 1 313 job opportunities against a planned 1 185 job opportunities. Its budget allocation was R893 million and actual expenditure R869,5 million, which reflected 97,4% expenditure for 2010/11.

Freshwater Programme

The Freshwater Programme aims to expand and consolidate the freshwater activities within the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi).

This includes the management of the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water affairs; environmental affairs; and agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, Sanbi has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects. Key to the programme's operation will be further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives, especially the Department of Water Affairs.

Monitoring water resources

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs are monitored. The evaporation and rainfall station network comprises 360 stations.

> In 2011, the War on Leaks Project was launched in Mogale City in Gauteng. It is aimed at educating water users about the importance of repairing water leaks. The project educates the community on how to fix leaking taps and toilets, while creating job opportunities and enhancing skills development. By the end of 2011, 146 job opportunities had been created nationwide.

The oldest flow-gauging station still in operation in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the department's website at *www.dwa.gov.za*.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges is in operation to monitor rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands need to be strengthened through improvements in land-use planning, land- and development-management policies as well as operational and regulatory means at various scales (national, provincial and local levels).

The adoption of ecosystem-based approaches and aggressive implementation of the open-space planning and management programmes will add impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level. Such implementation will require integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The *River Health Report* will be used for assessing the pattern of water quality. Generally, water quality is good in the upland regions and deteriorates downstream, particularly in areas affected by mining and urban development. Because of the longitudinal nature of rivers, poor water quality may extend far downstream of the source of pollutants.

The River Health Programme (RHP) was implemented in all nine provinces, comprising 48 projects. During the 2010/11 National Water

Week in March, the Adopt-A-River Programme facilitated the adoption of the following:

- Wilge River in the Free State
- Buffalo River in the Eastern Cape
- Shixini River in the Eastern Cape
- Umtata River in the Eastern Cape
- Mutale River in Limpopo
- Ngwenani River in Limpopo
- Livuvhu River in Limpopo
- Moreleta Spruit in Gauteng
- Kraal Spruit in Gauteng
- Bergvlam River in Mpumalanga
- Gradespruit River in Mpumalanga
- Kanyamazane River in Mpumalanga
- Isipingo River in KwaZulu-Natal
- Eerste River in the Western Cape
- Khayalethu River in the Western Cape.

The implementation of resource-directed measures (that is, ecological water requirements/reserve, the classification of water resources and the setting of resource quality objectives as part of water-use authorisations) also indicated a need for the massification of natural-resource management programmes such as Working for Water (WfW), Working for Wetlands, Working on Fire, Working for Woodlands and Working for Energy, as these are key components of the management of water quantity and quality in South Africa.

Compliance monitoring and enforcement is expected to improve through the use of legislation, incentives, disincentives, advocacy and research. Other specific interventions include:

- implementing the ecological water requirements/reserves
- empowering water managers to understand the water balance for water-use licence applications
- streamlining and synchronising procedures for reserve determinations, to facilitate the provision of ecological water requirements and RHP information at numerous nodes within a catchment area
- investing in capacity and data that will enable sufficiently considered decisions to be taken
- making the necessary investments in at least two catchments/subcatchments, where resource-directed measures, environmental planning and implementation are undertaken to demonstrate the value of water for growth and development and securing these across the country.

Construction work on the Spring Grove Dam and its water transfer system is expected to begin in 2012, with the completion date set for 2014.

The Department of Water Affairs aims to spend more than R2 billion on the dam, which is expected to provide water to more than two million people in KwaZulu-Natal.

Most of the funds will come in the form of long-term loans sourced from the European Investment Bank and the Development Bank of Southern Africa, which will provide about £195 million and R250 million respectively.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems.

It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

These organisms' biological communities integrate, respond to and reflect the effects of chemical and physical disturbances that occur in aquatic ecosystems over extended periods and provide a direct, holistic and integrated measure of the ecological integrity of a river.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit a watercourse, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from a RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role players to report on the status of and

trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. Based on a report produced in 2002, the main water quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is due to high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly due to poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are especially prone to cholera outbreaks.

The Department of Water Affairs is designing water-resource monitoring programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of South African water resources. The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme also reports on the status of DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

The department has introduced the electronic Water-Quality Management System to WSAs.

Through the department's efforts alongside the Institute of Municipal Engineers and with the support of the South African Local Government Association, a challenging two-year project to monitor all 169 WSAs on their drinking-water quality was successfully put in place.

The result was an overall improvement in the quality of drinking water and the creation of an enabling environment to ensure the effective management of drinking water. Of those municipalities on the system, close on 95% reported that their drinking-water quality complied with the national drinking-water standard.

Another international obligation is to report on chemical water quality through the Global Environmental Monitoring System's Water Programme. The department started bringing in the aspect of voluntary monitoring in the form of the Adopt-a-River initiative.

Policy and legislation

South Africa's Constitution and Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment. The two Acts that enable government to fulfil these rights through the Department of Water Affairs are the:

- Water Services Act, 1997, which created a regulatory framework within which water services could be provided. Schedule Four of the Constitution vests the responsibility for water and sanitation services in local government. National government, however, is responsible for the regulatory function.
- National Water Act, 1998, which aims to ensure that water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable manner, for the benefit of everyone in South Africa.

In August 2011, the Department of Water Affairs embarked on a review of the National Water Act, 1998; the Water Services Act, 1997; the National Water Resources Strategy; and the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971). Parallel to this is the Institutional Reform and Realignment Project, aimed at realigning all water institutions in the country to ensure that they are able to effectively implement their respective mandates.

National Water Act, 1998

The Act provides for:

- integrated management and sustainable use of surface water and groundwater

In July 2011, the Department of Water Affairs embarked on a drive to prioritise the eradication of the Water Use Licence Applications backlog, which had piled up since 1998. To tackle this challenge, the department established the Letsema Project to strengthen water-resource management in South Africa.

A person is only entitled to use water if the water-use licence is permissible under the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), and must apply for water-use authorisations at the department.

This venture fulfils the regulatory function in the water sector on water allocation. It also allows the transition from older repealed acts to the National Water Act, 1998.

- devolution of surface and groundwater to catchment and local level
- government to play a support role through functions such as promoting awareness, providing information and building capacity.

The Act aims to control the use of water resources, protect them from being impacted on or exploited and polluted, and ensure that every person has equitable access to them.

The Act gives the Department of Water Affairs the tools to gather the information it needs to optimally manage the country's water resources. The registration of water use is one of these tools.

All water users instructed to register have the statutory obligation to do so. There are strict penalties, prescribed in the Act, for those who do not comply.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service-provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, must register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses of water that must be registered include:

- diversion of rivers and streams
- discharge of waste or water containing waste
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose (including irrigation, domestic supply, industrial use, mining, aquaculture, fishing, water sports, aesthetic value, gardening, landscaping, golfing, etc.) from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m^3, or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission
- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

The implementation of the National Pricing Strategy for Raw Water began in 2002 to ensure that, as far as possible, the costs of the management of water resources and water-supply infrastructure are borne by water users.

The majority of water users pay the water-resource charge or cost for which they are billed. However, underrecovery of costs remains considerable.

Action has been taken against a number of illegal water users across South Africa in response to growing concern about an apparent increase in the rate of illegal water use in some catchment areas.

Water Services Act, 1997

The Act aims to:

- set out the rights of consumers, and the rights and duties of those responsible for providing water services
- provide for the right of access to basic water supply, and the right to basic sanitation necessary to secure sufficient water and an environment not harmful to human health or well-being
- allow the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs to set national standards (including norms and standards for tariffs) to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable water services
- promote the effective and sustainable use of financial and natural resources
- establish effective and financially viable statutory institutions to assist local government to fulfil its obligations
- ensure the production by WSAs of water-services development plans (WSDPs) required by municipal legislation within the framework of integrated development plans
- provide a comprehensive framework for the oversight and regulation of water boards under the authority of the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs

- provide a framework for the collection and publication of information about water services.

National Water Resource Strategy

The NWRS is an assessment of the supply-demand ratio in relation to water resources, which was initiated in 2004. The assessment is conducted on a five-yearly basis in each of South Africa's water-management areas (WMAs).

The strategy also proposes options for increasing the supply of water in each WMA. The NWRS determines how water resources will be protected, used, managed and conserved.

Elevating the status of water as a scarce and vulnerable resource requires the department to strengthen its regulatory role, provide support and guidance to relevant stakeholders, and influence the behaviour of economic sectors. In ensuring that water supply is of the appropriate quality for consumption and productive use, the department is finalising the water-classification system and regulations.

The Department of Water Affairs has a dedicated team of specialists developing a comprehensive response strategy for the water sector. The development of the strategy is necessitated by a strong call for the sector to adapt to potential effects of climate change.

Proposals from the strategy will be integrated into the revision of the NWRS and will form part of a plan to ensure that water resources are protected, developed and conserved to meet future needs. Among other things, the strategy will look at developing:

- tools for data modelling to track emerging hydrological patterns and the impact on water resources; providing the information to plan confidently
- mechanisms for early-warning systems, including predicting floods and responding to potential risks
- adaptation initiatives that target those catchments that are most vulnerable to climate risks based on predictions
- reconciliation strategies to manage demand in urban centres, where increased urbanisation and industrial development are putting pressure on water resources
- investment strategies to expand the necessary infrastructure for water storage and flood management
- new technologies for water treatment to respond to chemical changes caused by high temperatures
- water-conservation and -demand strategies to ensure efficient water use
- measures to assess carbon footprints from the infrastructure and propose ways of reducing these.

Accelerated Community Infrastructure Programme

Growing demand for water for both domestic and economic use is having a serious impact on water resources. In the Water for Growth and Development Strategy, key priority programmes that will help achieve water security in the country have been identified.

It is in this context that the Department of Water Affairs initiated the Accelerated Community Infrastructure Programme, which was allocated R83 million in the Cape Town, eThekwini and Nelson Mandela metros. This programme is a rapid intervention that seeks to focus on four key areas:

- community water and sanitation infrastructure
- water-conservation and -demand management
- waste-water infrastructure refurbishment
- drought intervention.

This programme has selectively targeted provinces where there were serious challenges relating to drought, cholera, water supply, ageing infrastructure and general shortages of water. Under this programme, the department has identified four priority areas for water conservation and demand-management activities, namely the Vaal River System and the metropolitan areas of Johannesburg; eThekwini; Nelson Mandela Bay; and Cape Town.

The upper Vaal River System has been identified as the most appropriate area to address "illegal" use of water for irrigation purposes. The department is implementing measures to curb this unlawful use of water and to speed up monitoring and enforcement efforts.

The programme also provides for investment in the refurbishment of 20 WWTWs. This intervention is meant to address areas where there is potential risk of cholera, treatment plants exceeding the effluent quality units and exceeding hydraulic capacity, and treatment plants that suffer from mechanical failures or treatment plants that are in areas prone to spillages.

Water-management institutions

The National Water Act, 1998 sets the framework for the management of South Africa's water resources. This framework provides for the establishment of water-management institutions, which include catchment-management agencies (CMAs) and water-user associations (WUAs).

Catchment-management agencies

Chapter 7 of the National Water Act, 1998 provides for the progressive establishment of CMAs, of which there were three in the country by the end of 2011, namely the Breede-Overberg CMA, the Inkomati CMA and the Komati River Basin Water Authority. The purpose of the CMAs is to delegate water-resources management to regional catchment level and to involve local communities in decision-making processes.

The intention is for water-resource management to meet the basic human needs of present and future generations, promote equitable access to water, redress the results of past racial and gender discrimination and facilitate social and economic development.

The initial role of a CMA is communicated in the National Water Act, 1998 as managing water resources in a WMA; coordinating the functions of other institutions involved in water-related matters; and involving local communities in water-resource management. In essence, CMAs are service-delivery agencies and are listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

Water boards

Water boards are established in terms of the Water Services Act, 1997 as government organs. Their primary aim is to provide water services to other water institutions within their respective service areas. Water boards submit annual business plans and policy statements a month before the end of the financial year. The Minister of Water Affairs may direct water boards to change these to meet the requirements of the Water Services Act, 1997.

Thirteen water boards have been set up as financially independent institutions, in terms of of the Water Services Act, 1997 and must aim to be financially viable. These are:

- Overberg Water
- Amatola Water
- Lepelle Northern Water
- Pelladrift Water
- Bloem Water
- Magalies Water
- Rand Water
- Botshelo Water
- Mhlathuze Water
- Sedibeng Water
- Bushbuckridge Water
- Namakwa Water
- Umgeni Water.

Water-user associations

According to the National Water Act, 1998, all irrigation boards formed under the Water Act, 1956 must be transformed into WUAs to provide a vehicle for localised users to manage the use of the resource in a more integrated manner.

The membership of the irrigation boards previously consisted of commercial farmers and was based on water allocation which was connected to title deeds on land, with previously disadvantaged groups not having access. The current arrangement requires that the previously marginalised sectors be represented in the WUAs, including domestic water users receiving water through the WUAs' infrastructure, local government institutions, historically disadvantaged farmers, aspiring farmers and environmental concerns.

Smallholder WUAs are mainly existing smallholder irrigation schemes that existed in the former homeland areas, where raw water supply and agricultural activities were managed by government or state-owned development organisations. Smallholder farmers farm mostly on communal land, which belongs to government. Land allocation is administered by the tribal authority through the issuing of Permission-to-Occupy certificates, which, in modern terms, are not regarded as valid security for production loans at financial institutions, since there is no basis upon which banks can repossess and sell land to recover losses on bad debt.

Multisectoral WUAs are cooperative associations of water users established in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. Their role is to undertake water-related activities for the mutual benefit of all members and also manage local water infrastructure, for example, irrigation water-supply schemes. WUAs play an important role in the implementation of poverty alleviation and food-security programmes. There are 13 WUAs, namely:

- Tulbagh
- Kabous River

- Northern Sandveld
- Krom Antonies
- Wolsel
- Onrus
- Duivenhoks
- Kweekvallei
- Oukloof
- Sekhukhune
- Tubatse
- Ilanga
- Tshiping.

Water-related research

Being a water-stressed country, South Africa progressively needs to find innovative ways of managing water resources to ensure that the basic needs of its citizens are met, that social and economic development is not restricted by a lack of or poor quality of water, and that sustainability of water resources and water-dependent ecosystems is achieved.

As reflected in the Water Research Commission's (WRC) mission and its various undertakings, the WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge.

It is a networking organisation linking the nation and working through partnerships. The organisation continuously provides novel and practical ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector and the local and international community.

The WRC continues to play the leading role in building a sustainable water-related knowledge base in South Africa by:
- investing in water research and development
- building sustainable and appropriate capacity
- developing skills for the water sector
- being adept at forming strategic partnerships to achieve objectives more effectively while making optimal use of the latest global information and knowledge and other technologies available.

The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the establishment of the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:
- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:
- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

To ensure that research results are relevant to the broader objectives of water-resource management, the applicability of research in each key strategic area is maximised by addressing

Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million m³ per annum)

Water management	Natural mean annual run-off(1)	Ecological reserve(1,2)
Limpopo	985	156
Luvuvhu/Letaba	1 185	224
Crocodile West and Marico	855	165
Olifants	2 042	460
Inkomati (3)	3 539	1 008
Usutu to Mhlatuze (4)	4 780	1 192
Thukela	3 799	859
Upper Vaal	2 423	299
Middle Vaal	888	109
Lower Vaal	368	48
Mvoti to Umzimkulu	4 798	1 160
Mzimvubu to Keiskamma	7 241	1 122
Upper Orange	6 981	1 349
Lower Orange (5)	502	69
Fish to Tsitsikamma	2 154	243
Gouritz	1 679	325
Olifants/Doring	1 108	156
Breede	2 472	384
Berg	1 429	217
Total	**49 228**	**9 500**

1) Quantities refer to the water-management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water-management area).
2) Total volume given, based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.
3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million m³/a).
4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million m³/a).
5) Includes contributions from Senqu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4 765 billion m³/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs

the relationships between water and society, the economy, health and the environment.

The WRC's key objective is to support the development of human resources in the water sector. Research is recognised as an important vehicle for building and developing expertise among water-resource practitioners. Every research project is required to incorporate a strong element of capacity-building, especially among historically disadvantaged individuals.

The Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation are partners with the Department of Water Affairs and the WRC in ensuring that approaches to water research are consistent with South Africa's broad policy on science and innovation.

Working for Water Programme

Invasive alien species cause billions of rands of damage to South Africa's economy every year, and are one of the biggest threats to the country's biological biodiversity.

Invasive alien species are plants, animals and microbes that are introduced into countries, and then out-compete the indigenous species.

Invasive alien plants (IAPs) pose a threat not only to South Africa's biological diversity, but also to water security, the ecological functioning of natural systems and the productive use of land.

They intensify the impact of fires and floods and increase soil erosion. It is estimated that between 6% and 7% of South Africa's annual water run-off is being consumed by IAPs.

Of the estimated 9 000 plants introduced to this country, 198 are classified as invasive. It is estimated that these plants cover about 10% of the country and the problem is growing at an exponential rate.

The fight against IAPs is spearheaded by the WfW Programme. Since its implementation in 1995, more than one million ha of IAPs have been cleared. WfW's aim is to reduce the impact of "water-guzzling" invasive species and protect indigenous biodiversity.

> The Department of Water Affairs has joined forces with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research to make the Vaal Dam the first dam in South Africa to use Internet social media to disseminate information via Facebook and Twitter.
>
> Follow @vaal_dam on Twitter or Vaal Dam Levels on Facebook. Updates include information on how full the dam is and other information relating to water affairs.

The project has seen the steady recovery of indigenous biodiversity in cleared areas and wetlands. It has seen the rebirth of flowing streams where riverbeds had been perennially dry.

WfW runs over 300 projects across South Africa. Scientists and fieldworkers use a range of methods to control IAPs. These include:

- mechanical: felling, removing or burning IAPs
- chemical: using environmentally safe herbicides
- biological: using species-specific insects and diseases from the IAPs' country of origin – some 76 biocontrol agents have been released in South Africa against 40 weed species
- integrated: combinations of the above three approaches; an integrated approach is usually required to prevent enormous impacts.

The core business of the programme is to contribute to the sustainable prevention and control of IAPs, thereby optimising conservation and the use of natural resources. In doing so, it addresses poverty relief and promotes economic empowerment and transformation within a public-works framework.

WfW is recognised internationally as one of the most effective programmes for addressing the problem of IAPs, combining environmental issues with social-development objectives.

WfW considers the development of people as an essential element of environmental conservation. It has provided jobs and training to approximately 20 000 people, of whom 52% are women.

Creating an enabling environment for skills training, it is investing in the development of communities wherever it works. Implementing HIV and AIDS projects and other socio-development initiatives are important objectives.

Flood and drought management

The floods experienced by South Africa in the beginning of 2011 as well as breakdowns of infrastructure in municipalities, which then affected the quality of water in rivers, prompted the department to develop a model for the establishment of a rapid response unit to respond to water-related crises and emergencies within a short period of time.

The department's approach to governance and management of the unit has been informed by the substantial intelligence on the vulnerability of municipalities gathered over the last few years, as well as lessons learnt from the emergency response facility.

The scope of the rapid response unit can be summarised as follows:

- responding to crises that result from water and waste-water infrastructure challenges, e.g. cholera outbreaks and sewerage spillages
- augmenting the Department of Water Affairs' capacity to respond to disasters, i.e. floods, droughts and water pollution
- designing and implementing proactive interventions aimed at pre-empting crises before they occur
- implementing small-capital and refurbishment projects
- capacity within the entities reporting to the Minister will also be used for intervention activities.

Dams and water schemes

The central objective of managing water resources is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development.

Dams and water schemes form an integral component of the strategy to meet these objectives. The NWRS provides details on possible major water schemes to be developed in the next 25 years, amounting to about R21 billion at 2004 price levels.

The Department of Water Affairs follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes need to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental-impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs. The guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management.

Initiatives to identify and establish new water resources are occurring for both surface and groundwater.

Government has implemented key projects to augment South Africa's water resources:

- The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority has procured funding to implement the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project's first two phases with a total cost of about R2 billion, to deliver water to Eskom's new Medupi Power Station and other industries in the area, as well as domestic water to the Lephalale Local Municipality. The first water delivery is expected in 2014.
- In KwaZulu-Natal on the Mooi River, near Rosetta, a R2,2-billion contract was awarded for the construction of the 42 m-high Spring Grove Dam, with a storage capacity of 142 million m^3.
- R91,2 million was spent in 2011/12 to raise the Hazelmere Dam, to augment the water supply provided by Umgeni Water to KwaZulu-Natal's north coast.
- Construction of De Hoop Dam to deliver water for domestic and agricultural use in the Greater Sekhukhune, Waterberg and Capricorn district municipalities. The estimated cost of its construction is approximately R3,1 billion. This will deliver water to three million Limpopo residents.
- During 2011/12, the construction of a water conveyance system from the Vaal Dam to Secunda to augment the water supply to Eskom power stations and Sasol was commissioned, comprising abstraction works, a storage reservoir, a high-lift pump station and a 121-km pipeline.

In addition to the infrastructure development currently underway, planning and preparing for the construction of other dams and related infrastructure is also afoot.

These include the completion of the water treatment works and bulk distribution system from Nandoni Dam in Limpopo; the construction of a pipeline from the Flag Boshielo Dam to Mokopane and nearby communities; the completion of feasibility studies and designs for the Umzimvubu and Foxwood dams in the Eastern Cape; the construction of the bulk distribution pipelines and reticulation networks from the Jozini Dam in KwaZulu-Natal and the Groot Letaba Augmentation Project, comprising raising the Tzaneen Dam; and finalising plans for the construction of the N'wamitwa Dam and the associated water-treatment plants and bulk distribution pipelines.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme (DSRP)

The department owns more than 300 dams. In 2004/05, a large number of these were identified as being in need of rehabilitation to bring their condition up to international standards. The DSRP started in 2005/06. Some R1,35 billion was spent by the end of 2010/11, completing the rehabilitation of 22 dams; R300,8 million was spent in 2010/11 alone.

A number of dams are in various phases of planning and design. The rehabilitation of 13 dams was in progress by the end of 2010/11:

- Molepo, Nsami, Mashashane, Chuniespoort and Rust de Winter in Limpopo
- Klein Maricopoort in the North West
- Elandsdrift, Grassridge, Glen Brock, Mankazana, Laing and Magwa in the Eastern Cape
- Boegoeberg in the Northern Cape.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two thirds of South Africa's surface area are largely dependent on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also extremely important.

Through government's commitment to meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale-user situation.

Groundwater also contributes a considerable portion to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

South Africa has signed cooperative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP)
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These cooperative agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union (AU). All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

Strategic bilateral engagements remain critical to advancing peace and security and enhancing water security in the region. In this regard, South Africa has developed strategic relations with neighbouring countries by signing cooperative agreements in water.

In addition to participating in the African Ministers' Council on Water (AMCOW), South Africa is active in watercourse commissions that have been established to manage the rivers it shares with Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia, Mozambique, Botswana and Zimbabwe.

In August 2011, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Edna Molewa, signed the agreement for the implementation of Phase Two of the LHWP in Maseru, Lesotho. The implementation of Phase Two will consist of a water delivery system to augment the delivery of water to South Africa and a hydropower generation system. The system comprises the Polihali Reservoir on the Senqu River, a water conveyance tunnel connecting Polihali Reservoir with Katse Reservoir, access roads to the project sites, camps, power transmission lines and administration centres, including social and environmental projects and programmes.

The LHWP supplies about 46 million m^3 water a year. The second phase will raise this to 70 million m^3.

In March 2011, South Africa hosted a successful World Water Day in Cape Town, which coincided with National Water Week. It was held in partnership with UNHabitat and the AMCOW.

In 2011, strategic talks were held with Egypt, with a view to exchanging knowledge and experience on shared river basins; with Sudan on the feasiblity study aimed at identifying areas of collaboration; and with the Democratic Republic of Congo, to negotiate new areas of cooperation and establish current priorities for the refurbishment of the Katanga Infrastructure Project. Draft agreements were negotiated and signed in 2011.

In pursuit of strategic relations outside Africa, an agreement was signed with Vietnam. Another agreement was reached with China about the renewal of the Memorandum of Understanding on Cooperation in the Field of Water Resources.

Areas of cooperation were agreed to with technical experts from the Netherlands. Funding opportunities from Germany and Switzerland were explored.

South Africa participated in workshops organised by Mozambique, where social and environmental impact assessments were presented on the completion of the Corumana Dam.

With reference to the multilateral portfolio, a draft position paper on the Department of Water Affairs' engagement with the Organisation for Economic Development was developed.

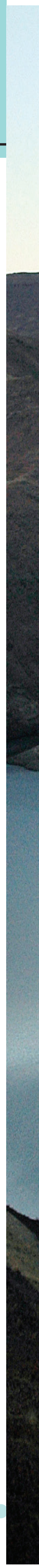
Acknowledgements

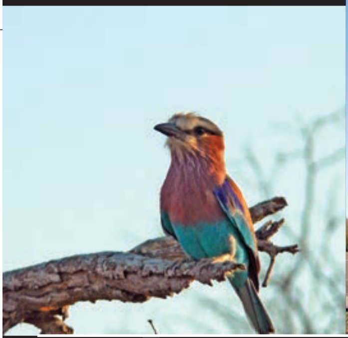
Business Report
Delivery Agreements for Outcome 10
Department of Water Affairs, *Strategic Plan 2011 – 2014*
Development Indicators, 2009
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2011, published by National Treasury
Water Research Commission
BuaNews
Beeld

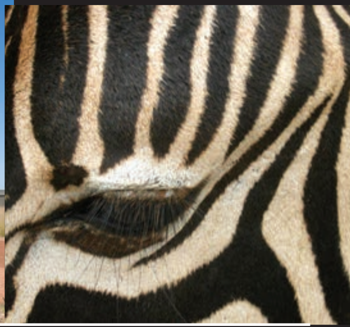
www.csir.co.za
www.dwa.gov.za
www.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

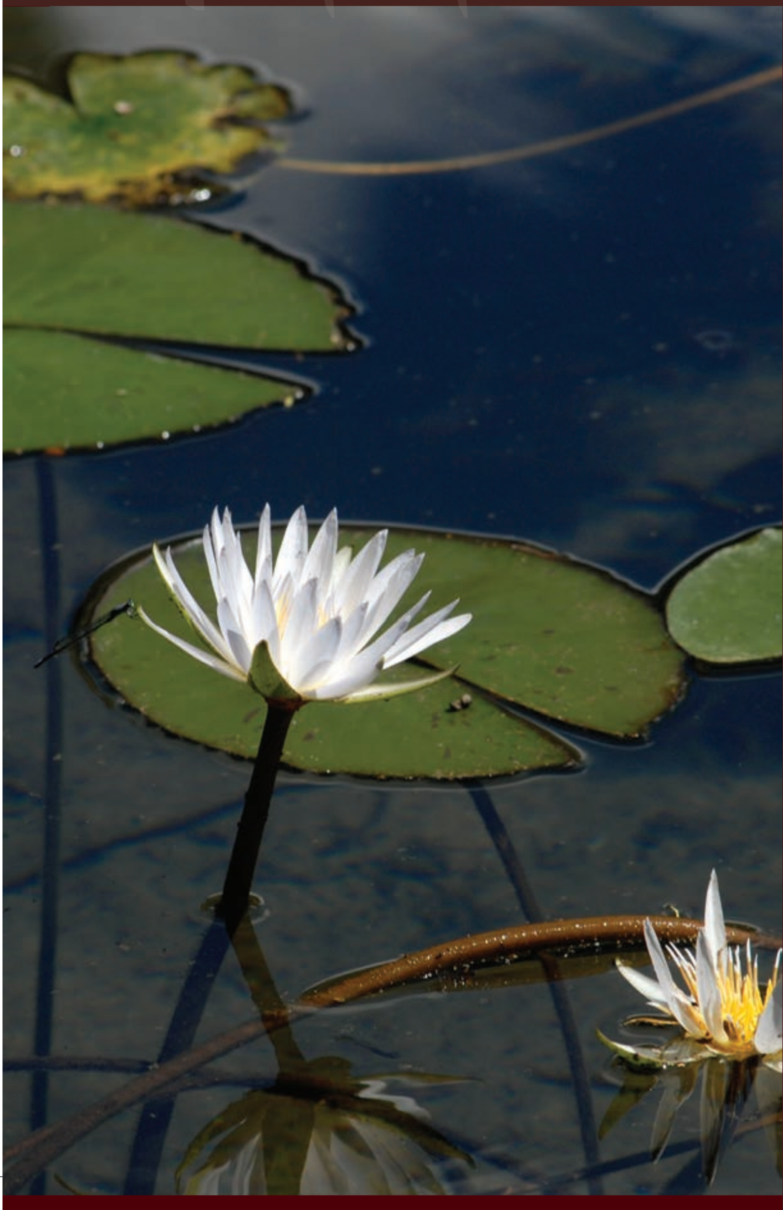
Berg Water Project: Communication Practices for Governance and Sustainability Improvement. 2010. Washington: World Bank.
Denison, J. 2009. *Indigenous Water Harvesting and Conservation Practices: Historical Context, Cases and Implications.* Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
Haarhoff, J and Cassa, AM. 2009. *Introduction to Flood Hydrology.* Cape Town: Juta.
Ilemobade, AA. 2009. *Assessment of the Feasibility of Using a Dual Water Reticulation System in South Africa.* Gezina: WRC.
Movik, S. 2012. *Fluid Rights: Water Allocation Reform in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
Productive Use of Domestic Piped Water for Sustaining Livelihoods in Poor Households. Gezina: WRC.
Review of Regulatory Aspects of the Water Services Sector. 2009. Gezina: WRC.
Roux, DJ. 2009. *Enabling Effective Learning in Catchment Management Agencies: A Philosophy and Strategy.* Gezina: WRC.
Rust, U. 2009. *The Impact of Gender in the Rural Water Services Environment of South Africa.* Gezina: WRC.
A Scoping Exercise to Investigate the Potential Need for, and Nature of, Water Trading in South Africa. 2009. Gezina: WRC.
Swartz, CD. 2009. *A Planning Framework to Position Rural Water Treatment in South African for the Future.* Gezina: WRC.
Thompson, P. 2009. *The Development of a Generic Water Safety Plan for Small Community Water Supply.* Gezina: WRC.
Upgrading Existing South African Filtration Plants to High Rate Filters. 2009. Gezina: WRC.







Addendum




SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

Addendum 25

Abbreviations

A

AADP	African Agricultural Development Programme
AAGS	Association of African Geological Surveys
AAIICT	African Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AAP	Animal and Aquaculture Production
AAPS	Animal and Aquaculture Production Systems
AARTO	Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences
ABC	Agricultural Business Chamber
ABC	Audit Bureau of Circulations
Abet	Adult Basic Education and Training
ABF	Annual Bilateral Forum
Absa	Amalgamated Banks of South Africa
AC	Advisory Committee
AC	annual consultations
ACAP	Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels
ACEP	African Coelacanth Ecosystems Programme
ACE	Advanced Certificate in Education
ACP	African-Caribbean-Pacific
ACR	Army Conventional Reserve
ACS	Agricultural Credit Scheme
Acsa	Airports Company South Africa
ACT	Arts and Culture Trust
ADB	African Development Bank
ADEA	Association for the Development of Education in Africa
ADPA	African Diamond Producers’ Association
ADS	Approved Destination Status
ADT	[AD]vanced Technologies
ADU	Animal Demography Unit
AEC	African Economic Community
AFB	Air Force Base
AfDB	African Development Bank
AFIS	Automated Fingerprint Information System
AFIS	Advanced Fires Information System
AFU	Asset Forfeiture Unit
Afur	African Forum for Utility Regulators
AG	Auditor-General
AG	Attorney-General
AGIS	Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System
AGOA	African Growth and Opportunity Act
Agri BEE	Agri Black Economic Empowerment
Agri SA	Agri South Africa
AGIS	Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System
AGSA	Auditor-General of South Africa
AHPCSA	Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa
AICs	African independent churches
Aida	Animal Identification Act
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
AIICT	Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AIP	Association of Independent Publishers
AIRCO	Association of Independent Record Companies of South Africa
Aisa	African Institute of International Affairs
AISA	Africa Institute of South Africa
ALC	African Laser Centre
Alsi	all-share index
ALTX	Alternative Exchange
AMCEN	African Ministerial Conference on the Environment
AMCHUD	African Ministerial Conference on Housing and Urban Development
Amib	African Peace Mission in Burundi
Amis	African Union Mission in Sudan

AML/CFT	anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism
AMP	African Mining Partnership
Amps	All Media Products Survey
AMTS	Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy
ANC	African National Congress
AP	Associated Press
Apis	Agricultural Products Inspection Services
APP	Advance Passenger Processing
APRM	African Peer Review Mechanism
AQA	Air Quality Act
ARC	Agricultural Research Council
ARCC	Africa Regional Certificate Committee
ARC-GCI	ARC Grain Crops Institute
ARC-IAE	ARC Institute for Agricultural Engineering
ARC-IIC	ARC Institute for Industrial Crops
ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij	ARC Institute for Fruit, Vine and Wine
ARC-ISCW	ARC Institute for Soil, Climate and Water
ARC-ITSC	ARC Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops
ARC-LBD	ARC Livestock Business Division
ARC-OVI	ARC Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute
ARC-PPRI	ARC Plant Protection Research Institute
ARC-SGI	ARC Small Grain Institute
ARC-VOPI	ARC Roodeplaat Vegetable and Ornamental Plant Institute
ARDM	Agricultural Risk and Disaster Management
Aressa	Antarctic Research Strategy
ARF	African Renaissance Fund
Armscor	Armaments Corporation of South Africa
ART	antiretroviral treatment
ARV	antiretroviral
ASA	Advertising Standards Authority
Asean	Association of South-East Asian Nations
ASIB	Aviation Safety Investigation Board
Asom	Association of Marketers
ASP	African Stockpile Programme
ASP	Association of Surfing Professionals
ASRDC	Agricultural and Sustainable Rural Development Committee
ATAF	African Tax Administration Forum
ATD	awaiting-trial detainee
ATM	automated teller machine
ATM	African Traditional Medicine
ATM	AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria
ATNS	Air Traffic Navigation Service
ATP	Agritourism Programme
ATR	Army Territorial Reserve
ATU	African Telecommunications Union
AU	African Union
AUC	African Union Commission
AWCC	African West Coast Cable
AWHF	African World Heritage Fund

B

B&Bs	bed-and-breakfast establishments
BA	British Airways
BAA	Black Administration Act
BACSA	Business Against Crime South Africa
Basa	Business and Arts South Africa
Basic	Brazil, South Africa, India and China
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation
BBBEE	Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment
bbls	barrels
BBSDP	Black Business Supplier Development Programme
BBWW	boat-based whale-watching
BCLME	Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem

BCOCC	Border Control Coordinating Committee
BDM	Broadcasting Digital Migration
BED	Business and Entrepreneurial Development
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
BEEAC	BEE Advisory Council
Benefit	Benguela Fisheries Interaction and Training
BER	Bureau for Economic Research
BFI	Bridges to the Future Initiative
BGIS	Biodiversity Geographical Information System
Biopad	Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development
Blindlib	South African Library for the Blind
Blind SA	Blind Workers' Organisation of South Africa
BLNS	Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland
BMCC	Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee
BNC	binational commission
BNG	Breaking New Ground
BoD	Burden of Disease
BPO	Business Process Outsourcing
BPO&O	Business Process Outsourcing and Offshoring
Brics	biotechnology regional innovation centres
BRICS	Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa
BRT	Bus Rapid Transit
BSRP	Building for Sport and Recreation Project
Bt	billion tons
BTech	Bachelor's Degree in Technology
BTT	Board of Tariffs and Trade
BWC	Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention
BWIs	Bretton Woods Institutions

C

CAADP	Comprehensive African Agricultural Development Programme
CaBEERE	Capacity-Building Programme for Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency
CAD	computer-aided design
CADF	China-Africa Development Fund
CAF	Confederation of African Football
CAPE	Cape Action for People and the Environment
CAR	Central African Republic
Cara	Criminal Asset Recovery Account
Caricom	Caribbean Community
CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
Cathsseta	Culture, Arts, Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Sector Education and Training Authority
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CBE	Council for the Built Environment
CBNRM	Community-Based Natural Resource Management
CBOs	community-based organisations
CBPP	contagious bovine pleuropheumonia
CBPWP	Community-Based Public Works Programme
CBRTA	Cross-Border Road Transport Agency
CC	Constitutional Court
CCA	Common Country Assessment
CCAMLR	Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources
CCCF	Comprehensive Country Cooperation Framework
CCD	Convention to Combat Desertification
CCDI	Cape Craft and Design Institute
CCF	credit-card format
CCG	community caregiver

CCMA	Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
CCMT	Comprehensive Care, Management and Treatment
CCTV	closed-circuit television
CDA	Central Drug Authority
CDI	Cooperative Development Initiative
CDM	Clean Development Mechanism
CDP	community development practitioner
CDPF	Country Development Programming Framework
CDWs	community development workers
CEE	Commission for Employment Equity
CEF	Central Energy Fund
CEIRD	Centre of Excellence in Industrial Research and Development
CEM	Council of Education Ministers
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CESSM	Centre for Exercise Science and Sports Medicine
CF	Compensation Fund
CFC	Central Foreign Currency
CFCs	chlorofluorocarbons
CFG	Courier Freight Group
CFL	compact fluorescent lamp
CFM	case-flow management
CGE	Commission on Gender Equality
CGS	Council for Geoscience
CHC	community health centre
CHE	Council on Higher Education
CHOGM	Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting
CHPC	Centre for High-Performance Computing
CHW	community health worker
CIDB	Construction Industry Development Board
CIDP	Construction Industry Development Programme
CIP	Critical Infrastructure Programme
Cipro	Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office
Cirad	French Agricultural Centre for International Development
CIS	Cadastral Information System
CIS	collective investment schemes
Cites	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
CJCP	Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention
CJS	criminal justice system
ClaRA	Communal Land Rights Act
CMA	Common Monetary Area
CMAs	catchment management agencies
CMCs	case management committees
CMS	Convention of Migratory Species
CoEs	centres of excellence
CoP	Conference of the Parties
Cossasa	Confederation of School Sport Association South Africa
Cosse	SADC Committee of Stock Exchanges
CPA	comprehensive peace agreement
CPA	Cotonou Partnership Agreement
CPA	Community Press Association
CPA	Commercial Producers Association
CPB	Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
CPD	Continuing Professional Development
CPF	Community Policing Forum
CPI	Consumer Price Index
CPIDP	Construction and Industry Development Programme
CPIX	consumer price index, excluding mortgage costs
CPOs	citizens post offices
CPP	Court Process Project
CPSI	Centre for Public Service Innovation
CPTD	Continuing Professional Teacher Development
CRC	Criminal Record Centre

CRDP	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
Create SA	Creative Education and Training Enterprise South Africa
Crew	Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers
CRLR	Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
CSD	Commission on Sustainable Development
CSD	Central Securities Depository
CSDP	Competitive Supplier Development Programme
CSG	Child-Support Grant
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
CSN	Community Services Network
CSO	civil-society organisation
CSP	Concentrating Solar Power
CSP	Customised Sector Programme
CSP	Comprehensive Strategic Partnership
CSPBs	correctional supervision and parole boards
CSSDCA	Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Cooperation in Africa
CTB	Central Terminal Building
CTBF	Cape Town Book Fair
CTCP	Clothing and Textiles Competitiveness Programme
CTL	coal-to-liquid
CWSS	Community Water Supply and Sanitation
CYFD	Child, Youth and Family Development

D

DA	Democratic Alliance
Danida	Danish International Development Agency
DBSA	Development Bank of Southern Africa
DCOs	doping control officers
DCRS	Digital Count Recording System
DCT	Durban Container Terminal
DDT	dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane
Dexco	Departmental Executive Committee
DFI	development finance institution
DFID	Department for International Development
Dissa	Disability Sport South Africa
DIU	Departmental Investigation Unit
DLS	Denel Land Systems
DMMA	Digital Media and Marketing Association
DMO	Destination Marketing Organisation
DMS	Document Management System
DMT	district management team
DNA	Designated National Authority
DNR	Direct Normal Radiation
Docex	Document Exchange
Dots	Directly Observed Treatment Short Course
DPCI	Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation
DPP	Director of Public Prosecutions
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DPRK	Democratic People's Republic of Korea
DCRS	Digital Court Recording System
DRS	Deeds Registration System
DSM	Demand-Side Management
DSO	Directorate: Special Operations
DVA	Domestic Violence Act

E

EAD	Elite Athlete with Disability
EASSy	Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System
EC	European Commission
EC	Executive Council
ECA	Electronic Communications Act
ECC	Employment Conditions Commission
ECD	Early Childhood Development

ECDP	Emerging Contractor Development Programme
ECIC	Eastern Cape Implementation Committee
Ecosocc	Economic, Social and Cultural Council
Ecowas	Economic Community of West African States
ECT	electronic communications and transactions
EDC	Energy Development Corporation
EDL	Essential Drug List
EEA	Employment of Educators Act
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EFA	Education For All
EFT	Electronic Funds Transfer
EFTA	European Free Trade Area
EIAs	environmental impact assessments
EIB	European Investment Bank
EIDD	Enterprise and Industry Development Division
EIP	Enterprise Investment Programme
EIPs	environmental implementation plans
Efta	European Free Trade Area
ELRC	Education Labour Relations Council
EMS	Education Management System
EMS	Emergency Medical Service
eNaTIS	Electronic National Traffic Information System
Enpat	National Environmental Potential Atlas
EPA	Economic Partnership Agreement
EPI	Expanded Programme on Immunisation
EPP	Executive Preparation Programme
EPRD	European Programme for Reconstruction and Development
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESDS	Employment and Skills-Development Services
ESF	Equitable Shares Formula
ETD	Education, Training and Development
ETDP	Education, Training Development Practice
ETEYA	Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Award
ETP	Eco-Technology Programme
ETQA	Education and Training Quality Assurance
EU	European Union

F

FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
Fabi	Forestry Agricultural Biotechnology Institute
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organisation
FAS	Financial Administration System
FAS	Foetal Alcohol Syndrome
FATF	Financial Action Task Force
FBOs	faith-based organisations
FBW	Free Basic Water
FCIS	Foreign Collective Investment Scheme
FCJ	Forum of Community Journalists
FCTC	Framework Convention on Tobacco Control
FDF	Financial Disclosure Framework
FDI	foreign direct investment
FED	Forestry Enterprise Development
Fedhasa	Federated Hospitality Association of South Africa
FET	Further Education and Training
FETC	Further Education and Training Certificate
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FIC	Financial Intelligence Centre
Fieta	Forest Industries Education and Training Authority
FIFA	*Fédération Internationale de Football Association*
FIG	Foreign Investment Grant
FINA	*Fédération Internationale de Natation*

FLISP	Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme
FMD	foot-and-mouth disease
FNB	First National Bank
FNL	*Forces National de Liberatio*n
FOCAC	Forum on China-Africa Cooperation
Fosad	Forum of South African Directors-General
FPA	Fire Protection Association
FPB	Film and Publication Board
FPMC	National Food Pricing Monitoring Committee
FSB	Financial Services Board
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
FSL	Forensic Science Laboratory
FSPs	financial services providers
FT	Fischer-Tropsch
FTA	Free Trade Area
FTFA	Food and Trees for Africa
FTI	Foundation for Technological Innovation
FXI	Freedom of Expression Institute

G

G8	Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia
G&A	Governance and Administration
Gaap	Generally Accepted Accounting Practice
GAW	Global Atmosphere Watch
GBADS	ground-based air defence systems
GBH	grievous bodily harm
GBIF	Global Biodiversity Information Facility
GDP	gross domestic product
GDPR	gross domestic product per region
GDS	Growth and Development Summit
GEF	Global Environment Facility
GEM	Girls Education Movement
Gems	Government Employees Medical Scheme
GEPF	Government Employees Pension Fund
GEOSS	Global Earth Observation System of Systems
GET	General Education and Training
GGP	gross geographic product
GGR	Gross Gambling Revenue
GHG	greenhouse gas
GIS	Geographical Information System
GITO	Government Information Technology Officer
GLTP	Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park
GM	genetic modification
GMOs	genetically modified organisms
GPA	Global Political Agreement
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPT	General Preferential Tariff
GPW	Government Printing Works
GRNP	Garden Route National Park
GSC	General Services Counter
GSP	Generalised System of Preferences
GSLWP	Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park
GTL	gas-to-liquid
GWh	gigawatt-hour
GWM&ES	government-wide monitoring and evaluation system

H

ha	hectare (s)
Hanis	Home Affairs National Identification System
HartRAO	Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
HCBC	home- and community-based care
HDIs	historically disadvantaged individuals
HDP	housing development planning
HDSA	historically disadvantaged South African
HDTV	high-definition television
HE	Higher Education
Hedcom	Heads of Education Departments Committee
HEQC	Higher Education Quality Committee

Hess	High-Energy Stereoscopic System
HG	Higher Grade
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HIVOS	Humanist Institute for Development Cooperation
HLEG	High-Level Expert Group
HLTs	human-language techniques
HMO	Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
HoDs	heads of departments
HPCSA	Health Professions Council of South Africa
HPP	High-Performance Programme
HR	human resources
HRD	human-resource development
HRDCSA	Human-Resources Development Council of South Africa
HRDS	Human-Resource Development Strategy
HRDSSA	Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa
HRIS	Human Resource Information System
HRM	human-resource management
HSGIC	Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee
HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council

I

IAAF	International Association of Athletics Federations
IAEA	International Atomic Energy Agency
IAP	invasive alien plant
IAU	International Astronomical Union
IBIS	Integrated Ballistics Identification System
IBO	International Boxing Organisation
IBSA	India-Brazil-South Africa
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
Icasa	Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
ICC	International Chamber of Commerce
ICC	International Cricket Council
ICC	International Criminal Court
ICCP	Information Computer and Communications Policy
ICD	Independent Complaints Directorate
ICMA	Inkomati Catchment Management Agency
ICMS	Integrated Case Management System
ICSU	International Council for Science
ICT	information and communications technology
ICV	infantry combat vehicle
ID	identity document
Idasa	Institute for Democracy in Africa
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
IDF	International Day for Families
IDMT	Interdepartmental Management Team
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IDT	Independent Development Trust
IDZ	Industrial Development Zone
IEC	Independent Electoral Commission
IECs	integrated energy centres
IEP	Integrated Energy Planning
Ieri	Institute for Economic Research on Innovation
IF	Innovation Fund
IFACCA	International Federation of Arts Councils and Culture Agencies
IFAD	International Fund for Agricultural Development
IFAP	International Federation of Agricultural Producers
IFP	Inkatha Freedom Party

IFRC	International Federation of Red Cross Crescent Societies
IFSNP	Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme
IGR	intergovernmental relations
IHL	International Humanitarian Law
IICPA	International Corrections and Prisons Associations
IIC	International Investment Council
IJS	integrated justice system
IKS	indigenous knowledge system
IMCI	Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses
IMDP	Integrated Management Development Programme
IMF	International Monetary Fund
Impact	International Multilateral Partnership against Cyber Terrorism
IMS	Integrated Manufacturing Strategy
Inep	Integrated National Electrification Programme
INP	Integrated Nutrition Programme
IOC	International Olympic Committee
IOR-ARC	Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Cooperation
IP	Intellectual Property
IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
IPC	International Paralympic Committee
IPCA	International Prison Chaplaincy Association
IPP	Independent Power Producer
IPPC	International Plant Protection Convention
IRB	International Rugby Board
IRP	Integrated Resource Plan
IRDP	Integrated Rural Development Programme
IRPS	International Relations, Peace and Security
IRPTN	Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network
IRWH	Infield Rainwater Harvesting
ISAD	Information Society and Development
ISC	Intelligence Services Council
ISCI	Integrated Sustainable Community Initiative
ISCCJ	Intersectoral Committee on Child Justice
ISCW	Institute for Soil, Climate and Water
IS&ICT	Information Systems and Information Communications Technology
ISM	Information and Systems Management
ISO	International Standards Organisation
ISPs	Internet service-providers
ISRDP	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme
ISRDS	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy
ISS	international social services
IST	Innovation, Science and Technology
IT	information technology
Itac	International Trade Administration Commission
Itec	Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation
Ited	International Trade and Economic Development
iThembaLabs	iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences
ITS	intelligent transport service
ITU	International Telecommunications Union
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature
IWF	Isivande Women's Fund
IWR	Institute for Water Research
IWRM	Integrated Water Resources Management

J

JBC	Joint Bilateral Commission (for Cooperation)
JC	Joint Commission
JCBC	Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation

JCC	Joint Commission of Cooperation
JCPS	Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
JMC	Joint Ministerial Commission
JPC	Joint Permanent Commission
JPCC	Joint Permanent Commission for Cooperation
JPCCDS	Joint Permanent Commission for Co-operation for Defence and Security
JPoI	Johannesburg Plan of Implementation
JRMCs	joint route management committees
JSC	Judicial Service Commission
JSCD	Joint Standing Committee on Defence
JSCI	Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence
JSE	Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited

K

Kat	Karoo Array Telescope
KfW	*Kreditstalt für Wiederaufbau*
KLF	Komatiland Forests
KM	Knowledge Management
KRC	Kirstenbosch Research Centre
kWh	kilowatt-hours
KYSR	Know Your Service Rights

L

LAGs	liquids, aerosols and gels
Land Bank	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa
LARP	Land and Agrarian Reform Project
LDC	least-developed country
LED	local economic development
LGSA	Local Government Strategic Agenda
LHWP	Lesotho Highlands Water Project
Liasa	Library Association of South Africa
LIS	Library and Information Service
LMIS	Labour-Market Information and Statistics
LPM	Limited Payout Machine
Logola	Local Government Training Academy
LPG	liquid petroleum gas
LPI	Land Planning and Information
LRA	Labour Relations Act
LRAD	Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development
LREF	Land Reform Empowerment Facility
LRIM	Land Reform Implementation Management
LRIMC	Land Reform Implementation Management and Coordination
LRRP	Land Reform Revitalisation Programme
LRSSS	Land Reform Systems and Support Systems
LTMS	Long-Term Mitigation Scenario
LTPS	Land Transport Permit System
LTR	Land and Tenure Reform

M

M&E	monitoring and evaluation
Macufe	Manguang Cultural Festival
Mafisa	Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa
Mappp-Seta	Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority
MCA	MultiChoice Africa
MCC	Medicines Control Council
MCLI	Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative
MCM	Marine and Coastal Management
MCS	Movement Control System
MDC	Movement for Democratic Change
MDDA	Media Development and Diversity Agency
MDGs	millennium development goals

MDR-TB	multidrug-resistant tuberculosis
MEC	Member of the Executive Council
Mercosur	South American Common Market
MERS	Micro-Economic Reform Strategy
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MFN	Most Favoured Nation
MFRC	Micro-Finance Regulatory Council
MFSA	Marketing Federation of South Africa
MHIC	Mental Health Information Centre
MHSA	Mine Health and Safety Act
MHSC	Mine Health and Safety Council
MHSI	Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate
Mice	meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions
Midem	*Music Market International (Marché International du Disque et de l'Edition Musicale)*
MIDP	Motor Industry Development Programme
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MiningTek	Mining Technology Division
MinMec	Minister and MECs forum
MK	Umkhonto we Sizwe
MLDP	Municipal Leadership Development Programme
MMR	Maternal Mortality Ratio
MMSD	Mineral and Mining for Sustainable Development
MoU	Memorandum of Understanding
MPAs	marine protected areas
MPC	Monetary Policy Committee
MPP	Mass Participation Programme
MPRDA	Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act
MQA	Mining Qualifications Authority
MRC	Medical Research Council
MRCC	Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre
MSc	Master of Science
MSDS	Military Skills Development System
MST	Marketable Securities Tax
MST	Mathematics, Science and Technology
MST	Ministerial Strategic Team
Mt	million tons
MTech	Master's Degree in Technology
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTN	Mobile Telephone Network
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
MTT	Ministerial Task Team
MW	megawatt
MYIP	Multi-Year Implementation Plan

N

NAASP	New Asian-African Strategic Partnership
NAC	National Agrometeorological Committee
NAC	National Arts Council (of South Africa)
NACF	National Anti-Corruption Forum
NACH	National Anti-Corruption Helpline
Naci	National Advisory Council on Innovation
Nacoc	National Coordinating Committee
NACP	National Anti-Corruption Programme
NACTT	National AIDS Children's Task Team
NAEHMP	National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme
Nafu	National African Farmers' Union
NAM	Non-Aligned Movement
Namac	National Manufacturing Advisory Centre
NAMC	National Agricultural Marketing Council
NAMF	New Africa Mining Fund
NAP	National Action Plan
NAP	National Anti-Corruption Programme

NARF	National Agricultural Research Forum
Narysec	National Rural Youth Service Corps
NaTIS	National Traffic Information System
NBFET	National Board for Further Education and Training
NBN	National Bioinformatics Network
NBS	National Biotechnology Strategy
NBSAP	National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan
NCA	National Credit Act
NCACC	National Conventional Arms Control Committee
NCC	National Communications Centre
NCCS	National Crime Combating Strategy
NCDs	non-communicable diseases
NCHM	National Cultural History Museum
NCHRET	National Centre for Human-Rights Education and Training
NCLIS	National Council for Library and Information Services
NCOH	National Centre for Occupational Health
NCOP	National Council of Provinces
NCPR	National Child Protection Register
NCR	National Credit Regulator
NCPS	National Crime Prevention Strategy
NCS	National Curriculum Statement
NDA	National Development Agency
NDMC	National Disaster Management Centre
NDMP	National Drug Master Plan
NDPP	National Director of Public Prosecutions
NEAF	National Environmental Advisory Forum
Necsa	Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa
Nedlac	National Economic Development and Labour Council
NEEA	National Energy Efficiency Agency
NEEDU	National Education Evaluation and Development Unit
NEF	National Empowerment Fund
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
Nemisa	National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act
Nepad	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NER	National Electricity Regulator
Neri	National Energy Research Institute
Nersa	National Energy Regulator of South Africa
NFAC	National Forests Advisory Council
NFDRSA	National Fire Danger Rating System for South Africa
NFSD	National Framework for Sustainable Development
NFVF	National Film and Video Foundation
NFVSA	National Film, Video and Sound Archives
NG	Nederduitse Gereformeerde (Kerk)
NGB	National Gambling Board
NGC	National Governing Council
NGOs	non-governmental organisations
NGP	New Growth Path
NHBRC	National Home-Builders Registration Council
NHC	National Health Council
NHC	National Heritage Council
NHF	National Heritage Foundation
NHFC	National Housing Finance Corporation
NHI	National Health Insurance
NHLS	National Health Laboratory Service

NHRP	National Human Resource Plan
NHS	National Health System
NIB	National Immigration Branch
NICD	National Institute for Communicable Diseases
NIF	National Implementation Framework
NIPF	National Industrial Policy Framework
NIPP	National Industrial Participation Programme
NIRP	National Integrated Resource Plan
NLB	National Lotteries Board
NLBs	national language bodies
NLDS	National Livestock Development Strategy
NLP	National LandCare Programme
NLPF	National Language Policy Framework
NLRD	National Learners' Records Database
NLS	National Language Service
NLSA	National Library of South Africa
NLUs	national lexicography units
NMC	Network Management Centre
NMPP	New Multi-Product Pipeline
NMPS	National Mining Promotion System
NMT	non-motorised transport
NNR	National Nuclear Regulator
NOC	National Operations Centre
NOCS	National Overload Control Strategy
NPA	National Ports Authority
NPA	National Prosecuting Authority
NPC	National Planning Commission
NPAES	National Protected Area Expansion Strategy
NPCA	Nepad Planning and Coordinating Committee
NPI	National Productivity Institute
NPOs	non-profit organisations
NPS	National Prosecuting Services
NPT	Non-Prolifiration Treaty
NPWP	National Public Works Programme
NQF	National Qualifications Framework
NRDS	National Research and Development Strategy
NRF	National Research Foundation
NRGP	National Responsible Gambling Programme
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act
NRWDI	National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute
NSA	National Skills Authority
NSBA	National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment
NSBAC	National Small Business Advisory Council
NSDS	National Skills Development Strategy
NSI	National System of Innovation
NSIF	National Spatial Information Framework
NSF	National Skills Fund
NSFAS	National Student Financial Aid Scheme
NSNP	National School Nutrition Programme
NSP	National Strategic Plan
NSW	National Science Week
Nufcor	Nuclear Fuels Corporation
Nurcha	National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency
NWMS	National Waste-Management Strategy
NWRIA	National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency
NWRS	National Water Research Strategy
NYDA	National Youth Development Agency
NZG	National Zoological Garden

O

OAG	Office of the Auditor-General
OAU	Organisation of African Unity
OBP	Onderstepoort Biological Products
ODA	Official Development Assistance

ODI	One-Day International
OECD	Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development
OHS	occupational health and safety
OIC	Office of Interception Centres
OIE	*Office International des Épizooties*
OIV	International Organisation for Vine and Wine
Onub	United Nations Operation in Burundi
OPA	Online Publishers' Association
OPSC	Office of the Public Service Commission
OSD	Occupation Specific Dispensation
OVC	orphans and vulnerable children

P

PAC	Pan Africanist Congress
Paia	Promotion of Access to Information Act
PAJA	Promotion of the Administrative Justice Act
Palama	Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
PanSALB	Pan-South African Language Board
PAP	Pan-African Parliament
Papu	Pan-African Postal Union
Pasa	Petroleum Agency South Africa
PAYE	pay-as-you-earn
PCC	President's Coordinating Council
PCLU	Priority Crimes Litigation Unit
PCS	Public Service Commission
PDIs	previously disadvantaged individuals
PEC	Presidential Economic Commission
PFM	Participatory Forest Management
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PGMs	platinum-group metals
PHC	primary healthcare
PHP	People's Housing Process
PHPT	People's Housing Partnership Trust
PIAC	Presidential International Advisory Council
PIC	Public Investment Corporation
PICC	Print Industries Cluster Council
PILIR	Policy on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement
PJCC	Permanent Joint Commission for Cooperation
PlantBio	Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre
PLAS	Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy
PLCs	provincial language committees
PLROs	provincial land reform offices
PMDS	Performance Management Development System
PMSA	Print Media South Africa
PMTCT	preventing mother-to-child transmission (of HIV and AIDS)
PMCTP	Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission Programme
PNC on ISAD	Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development
PoA	Programme of Action
PPPs	public-private partnerships
PRA	pest risk-analysis
Prasa	Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa
PRC	Permanent Representatives Committee
PRC	People's Republic of China
PSC	Peace and Security Council
PSC	Public Service Commission
PSCBC	Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council
PSW	Public Service Week

PTA	Preferential Trade Agreement
PUB	Public Understanding of Biotechnology
Puset	Public Understanding of Science, Engineering and Technology
PV	photovoltaic

Q

QCTO	Quality Council for Trades and Occupations
QLTC	Quality Learning and Teaching Campaign
QSAPE	Qualifying South African Production Expenditure

R

R&D	research and development
RAC	Regional Advisory Committee
RAF	Road Accident Fund
RAS	Registration Administration System
RDI	research, development and innovation
RECs	regional economic communities
REDs	regional electricity distributors
REF	Risk Equalisation Fund
Rera	Regional Electricity Regulators' Association
RFSTP	Regional Food Security Training Programme
RHLF	Rural Housing Loan Fund
RHP	River Health Programme
RIMS	Research Information Management System
Risa	Research and Innovation Support Agency
RISDP	Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan
RMC	Risk Management Committee
RNCS	Revised National Curriculum Statement
RoK	Republic of Korea
RPPO	Regional Plant Protection Organisation (for Africa)
RSC	Regional Services Council
RSR	Railway Safety Regulator
RTMC	Road Traffic Management Corporation
RTMS	Road Traffic Management Strategy
RTSB	Road Traffic Safety Board

S

S&T	science and technology
SAA	South African Airways
SAAF	South African Air Force
Saafqis	South African Agricultural Food and Quarantine Inspection Services
SAAO	South African Astronomical Observatory
Saaqis	South African Air-Quality Information System
Saasta	South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement
Saavi	South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
Sabca	Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment
SABDC	South African Book Development Council
Sabi	South African Biosystematics Initiative
Sabif	South African Bioinformatics Facility
SABS	South African Bureau of Standards
SACAA	South African Civil Aviation Authority
SACC	South African Council of Churches
SACE	South African Council for Educators
Sacu	South African Customs Union
SADB	South African Diamond Board
SADC	Southern African Development Community
SADPMR	South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator
SADR	Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic
Saeon	South African Environmental Observation Network

Safcol	South African Forestry Company Limited
SAGNC	South African Geographical Names Council
Sahara	Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance
Sahra	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRC	South African Human Rights Commission
Saiab	South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
SAIDS	South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
SAIMM	Southern African Institute of Mining and Metallurgy
SAIMR	South African Institute for Medical Research
Salga	South African Local Government Association
SALRC	South African Law Reform Commission
Salt	South African Large Telescope
Samaf	South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund
Samas	South African Music Awards
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
Samsa	South African Maritime Safety Authority
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
SAN	South African Navy
SANAC	South African National AIDS Council
Sanai	South African Academy of Intelligence
Sanap	South African National Antarctic Programme
Sanas	South African National Accreditation System
Sanbi	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SANC	South African Nursing Council
Sancor	South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research
SANDF	South African National Defence Force
Sanef	South African National Editors' Forum
Saneri	South African National Energy Research Institute
Sanli	South African National Literacy Initiative
SANParks	South African National Parks
Sanral	South African National Roads Agency Limited
Sanren	South African National Research Network
Sans	South African National Standards
Sansa	South African National Space Agency
Santaco	South African National Taxi Council
Sapa	South African Press Association
SAPC	South African Pharmacy Council
Sapca	South African Pest Control Association
SAPIA	South African Petroleum Industry Association
Sapip	South African Pesticide Initiative Programme
Sapp	Southern African Power Pool
SAPS	South African Police Service
Sapo	South African Port Operations
Sapo	South African Post Office
SAPP	Southern African Power Pool
Saqa	South African Qualifications Authority
SAR	search-and-rescue
SARB	South African Reserve Bank
SARCC	South African Rail Commuter Corporation
Sarchi	South African Research Chairs Initiative
Sars	South African Revenue Service
Sasar	South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation
Sascoc	South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee
Sassa	South African Social Security Agency

Sasseta	Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority
SASSMC	South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber
SAT	South African Tourism
Sati	South African Tourism Institute
SAUJ	South African Union of Journalists
Saura	South African Utility Regulators' Association
Sawen	South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network
SAWID	South African Women in Dialogue
Sawima	South African Women in Mining Association
SAWS	South African Weather Service
SAX	South African Express Airways
SAYAS	South African Young Academy of Science
SCA	Supreme Court of Appeal
SCCCs	specialised commercial court centres
SCCU	Specialised Commercial Crime Unit
SCLP	Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme
SCM	Supply Chain Management
Scopa	Standing Committee on Public Accounts
SCSA	Supreme Council for Sport in Africa
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDI	Spatial Development Initiative
SDIP	Service-Delivery Improvement Plan
SDT	State Diamond Trader
Seda	Small Enterprise Development Agency
SET	science, engineering and technology
Seta	Sector Education and Training Authority
SEZs	special economic zones
SFF	Strategic Fuel Fund
SFM	sustainable forest management
SFWS	Strategic Framework for Water Services
SGB	school-governing board
SHF	Social Housing Foundation
SHI	Social Health Insurance
SHRA	Social Housing Regulatory Authority
SIP	Strategic Investment Programme
Sita	State Information Technology Agency
SIU	Special Investigating Unit
SKA	Square Kilometre Array
Skep	Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme
SMEs	small and medium-sized enterprises
SMEDP	Small and Medium Enterprise Development Programme
SMMEs	small, medium and micro-enterprises
SMPP	Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme
SMS	Senior Management Service
SNO	Second National Operator
SOCA	Sexual Offences and Community Affairs
SOEs	state-owned enterprises
SPF	Sector Partnership Fund
SPLAG	Settlement and Production Land Acquisitions Grant
SRD	Social Relief of Distress (Grant)
SRSA	Sport and Recreation South Africa
SSPD	Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate
S&T	science and technology
Stac	Science and Technology Agreements Committee
Stats SA	Statistics South Africa
STB	set-top box
STG	Standard Treatment Guideline
STIs	sexually transmitted infections
STT	securities transfer tax
SWH	solar-water heater

T

TAC	Total Allowable Catch
TAU SA	Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa

TB	tuberculosis
TBCSA	Tourism Business Council of South Africa
TCCs	Thuthuzela Care Centres
TCTA	Trans Caledon Tunnel Authority
TDCA	Trade Development and Cooperation Agreement
TEF	Tourism Equity Fund
TEO	The Enterprise Organisation
TEP	Tourism Enterprise Programme
TFCAs	transfrontier conservation areas
TFR	Transnet Freight Rail
TGCSA	Tourism Grading Council of South Africa
Theta	Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority
Thrip	Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme
TIA	Technology Innovation Agency
TICAD	Tokyo International Conference on African Development
Tisa	Trade and Investment South Africa
TKC	Trans-Kalahari Corridor
TLP	Tourism Learnership Project
TMNP	Table Mountain National Park
TNPA	Transnet National Ports Authority
TRAC	Trans African Concessions
TRC	Truth and Reconciliation Commission
TSA	Tourism Satellite Account
TSP	Threatened Species Programme
TSP	Tshumisano Station Programme
TSP	Tourism Support Programme
TTC	Technology Transfer Centre
TTP	Travel and Tourism Programme
TUT	Tshwane University of Technology
Twib	Technology for Women in Business

U

UAE	United Arab Emirates
UAVs	unmanned aerial vehicles
UCI	*Union Cycliste Internationale*
UEMP	Urban Environmental Management Programme
UIF	Unemployment Insurance Fund
UK	United Kingdom
Umalusi	General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council
UN	United Nations
UNCCC	United Nations Convention on Climate Change
UNFCCD	United Nations Framework Convention to Combat Desertification
Unced	United Nations Conference on Environment and Development
UNCPD	United Nations Commission on Population Development
UNCSD	United Nations Commission on Sustainable Development
Unctad	United Nations Conference on Trade and Development
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
Unep	United Nations Environment Programme
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
UNGA	United Nations General Assembly
UNHRC	United Nations Human Rights Council
Unicef	United Nations Children's Fund
UNIDO	United Nations Industrial Development Organisation
Unisa	University of South Africa

UNPFA	United Nations Population Fund
UNSC	United Nations Security Council
UPU	Universal Postal Union
URP	Urban Renewal Programme
USA	United States of America
Usaasa	Universal Service and Access Agency
USALs	underserviced area licences
USO	universal service obligation
USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
UST	uncertified securities tax

V

V&A	Victoria and Alfred (Waterfront)
VAT	value-added tax
VCT	voluntary counselling and testing
VEP	Victim-Empowerment Programme interferometry
VOC	Dutch East India Company

W

WACS	West African Cable System
Wada	World Anti-Doping Agency
WAN	World Association of Newspapers
WED	World Environment Day
WEF	World Economic Forum
WfW	Working for Water
WHO	World Health Organisation
WiH	Women in Housing
Winsa	Women in Nuclear South Africa
WIO-LaB	West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project
WMA	water management area
WoF	Working on Fire (Programme)
WPU	Witness Protection Unit
WQS	World Qualifying Series
WRC	Water Research Commission
WRCC	World Radio Communication Conference
WRS	Water Resource Strategy
WSAs	water service authorities
WSDSP	Workplace Skills Development Support Programme
WSSD	World Summit on Sustainable Development
WTO	World Trade Organisation
WTW	Water Treatment Works
WWTW	Water-Waste Treatment Works
WUAs	water-user associations
WWF	World Wildlife Fund for Nature
WWF-SA	World Wildlife Fund for Nature South Africa

National government departments and organisational components

Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
Website: *www.daff.gov.za*
Private Bag X250, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 319 6000 Fax: 012 319 7135

Arts and Culture
Website: *www.dac.gov.za*
Private Bag X897, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 3000 Fax: 012 441 3699

Basic Education
Website: *www.education.gov.za*
Private Bag X895, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 357 3000 Fax: 012 323 0601

Civilian Secretariat of Police
Website: *www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za*
Private Bag X922, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 2500 Fax: 012 393 2538

Communications
Website: *www.doc.gov.za*
Private Bag X860, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 8000 Fax: 012 427 8026

Cooperative Governance
Website: *www.cogta.gov.za*
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 0600 Fax: 012 334 0603

Correctional Services
Website: *www.dcs.gov.za*
Private Bag X136, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 307 2000 Fax: 012 323 6088

Defence
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Private Bag X910, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 355 6220 Fax: 012 347 7445

Economic Development
Website: *www.economic.gov.za*
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 394 3799 Fax: 086 556 2052

Energy
Website: *www.energy.gov.za*
Private Bag X19, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 444 4000 Fax: 012 444 4502

Environmental Affairs
Website: *www.environment.gov.za*
Private Bag X447, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 3911 Fax: 012 322 2682

Government Communications
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 314 2911 Fax: 012 323 3831

Health
Website: *www.doh.gov.za*
Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 395 8000 Fax: 012 395 9019

Higher Education and Training
Website: *www.dhet.gov.za*
Private Bag X893, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 5555 Fax: 012 323 0291

Home Affairs
Website: *www.home-affairs.gov.za*
Private Bag X114, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 810 6323 Fax: 012 810 7567
Hotlines: 0800 204476 / 0800 601190

Human Settlements
Website: *www.dhs.gov.za*
Private Bag X644, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 421 1311 Fax: 012 341 8513

Independent Complaints Directorate
Website: *www.icd.gov.za*
Private Bag X941, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 399 0000 Fax: 012 326 0408

International Relations and Cooperation
Website: *www.dirco.gov.za*
Private Bag X152, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 351 1000 Fax: 012 328 7384

Justice and Constitutional Development
Website: *www.doj.gov.za*
Private Bag X81, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 1111 Fax: 012 315 1749

Labour
Website: *www.labour.gov.za*
Private Bag X117, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 4000 Fax: 012 320 2059

Military Veterans
Website: *www.dod.mil.za*
Private Bag X910, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 671 1212 Fax: 012 671 1108

Mineral Resources
Website: *www.dmr.gov.za*
Private Bag X59, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 444 3956 Fax: 012 341 2228

National Treasury
Website: *www.treasury.gov.za*
Private Bag X115, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 315 5111 Fax: 012 315 5126

Performance Monitoring and Evaluation
Website: *www.thepresidency.gov.za*
Private Bag X1000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 300 1902 Fax: 012 300 5707

Presidency, The
Website: *www.thepresidency.gov.za*
Private Bag X1000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 300 5200 Fax: 012 323 8246
Presidential hotline: 17737

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy
Website: *www.palama.gov.za*
Private Bag X759, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 441 6000 Fax: 012 441 6030

Public Enterprises
Website: *www.dpe.gov.za*
Private Bag X15, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 431 1000 Fax: 012 431 1040

Public Service and Administration
Website: *www.dpsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X916, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 1183 Fax: 012 336 1831

Public Works
Website: *www.publicworks.gov.za*
Private Bag X65, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 337 3000 Fax: 012 323 2856

Rural Development and Land Reform
Website: *ww2.ruraldevelopment.gov.za*
Private Bag X833, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 8911 Fax: 012 323 6072

Science and Technology
Website: *www.dst.gov.za*
Private Bag X894, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 843 6300 Fax: 012 349 1037

Social Development
Website: *www.dsd.gov.za*
Private Bag X901, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 7794 Fax: 012 312 7470

South African Police Service
Website: *www.saps.gov.za*
Private Bag X94, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 393 1000 Fax: 012 393 4147

South African Revenue Service
Website: *www.sars.gov.za*
Private Bag X923, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 422 4000 Fax: 012 422 6848

Sport and Recreation South Africa
Website: *www.srsa.gov.za*
Private Bag X896, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 304 5000 Fax: 012 323 8440

State Security
Website: *www.nia.gov.za*
Private Bag X87, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 480 7622 Fax: 012 480 7582

Statistics South Africa
Website: *www.statssa.gov.za*
Private Bag X44, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 8911 Fax: 012 310 8500

Tourism
Website: *www.tourism.gov.za*
Private Bag X424, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 310 3200 Fax: 012 322 5398.

Trade and Industry
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 0861 843 384 Fax: 0861 843 888

Tradisional Affairs
Website: *www.dta.gov.za*
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 5824 Fax: 012 336 5952

Transport
Website: *www.transport.gov.za*
Private Bag X193, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 309 3000 Fax: 012 328 3370

Water Affairs
Website: *www.dwa.gov.za*
Private Bag X313, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 336 8803 Fax: 012 336 8850

Women, Children and People with Disabilities
Website: *www.wcpd.gov.za*
Private Bag X931, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 359 0071 Fax: 086 683 5221

Parliamentary information

National Assembly
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
PO Box 15, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 403 2911 Fax: 021 461 9462

National Council of Provinces
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
PO Box 15, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 403 2110 Fax: 021 461 9460

Parliament
Website: *www.parliament.gov.za*
PO Box 15, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 403 2595 Fax: 021 461 9462

Provincial government

Eastern Cape
Website: *www.ecprov.gov.za*
Private Bag X0047, Bhisho, 5605
Tel: 040 635 0123 Fax: 040 635 0124

Free State
Website: *www.fs.gov.za*
Private Bag X227, Bloemfontein, 9300
Tel: 051 408 1824 Fax: 051 408 1566

Gauteng
Website: *www.gautengonline.gov.za*
Private Bag X61, Marshalltown, 2107
Tel: 011 355 6000 Fax: 011 836 9334

KwaZulu-Natal
Website: *www.kznonline.gov.za*
Private Bag X9037, Pietermaritzburg, 3200
Tel: 033 341 3407 Fax: 033 394 4505

Limpopo
Website: *www.limpopo.gov.za*
Private Bag X9483, Polokwane, 0700
Tel: 015 287 6000 Fax: 015 295 3840

Mpumalanga
Website: *www.mpumalanga.gov.za*
Private Bag X11291, Nelspruit, 1200
Tel: 013 766 1000 Fax: 013 766 2494

Northern Cape
Website: *www.northern-cape.gov.za*
Private Bag X5016, Kimberley, 8300
Tel: 053 838 2600 Fax: 053 838 2690

North West
Website: *www.nwpg.gov.za*
Private Bag X65, Mahikeng, 2735
Tel: 018 388 2456 Fax: 018 387 3008

Western Cape
Website: *www.capegateway.gov.za*
Private Bag X9043, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 483 4705 Fax: 021 483 3921

Government structures and organisational components

Agricultural Research Council
Website: *www.arc.agric.za*
PO Box 8783, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 9700 Fax: 012 342 2231

Airports Company South Africa
Website: *www.airports.co.za*
PO Box 75480, Gardenview, 2008
Tel: 011 723 1400 Fax: 011 453 9354

Armaments Corporation of South Africa
Website: *www.armscor.co.za*
Private Bag X337, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 428 1911 Fax: 012 428 5635

Auditor-General
Website: *www.agsa.co.za*
PO Box 446, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 426 8000 Fax: 012 426 8257

Brand South Africa
Website: *www.brandsouthafrica.com*
PO Box 87168, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 483 0122 Fax: 011 483 0124

Central Energy Fund
Website: *www.cefgroup.co.za*
PO Box 786141, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 201 4700 Fax: 011 201 4820

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
Website: *www.ccma.org.za*
Private Bag X94, Marshalltown, 2107
Tel: 011 377 6650 Fax: 011 834 7351

Commission on Gender Equality
Website: *www.cge.org.za*
PO Box 32175, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 403 7182 Fax: 011 403 7188

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
Website: *www.ruraldevelopment.gov.za*
Private Bag X833, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 312 9244 Fax: 012 321 0428

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities
Website: *www.crlcommission.org.za*
Private Bag X90 000, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 537 7600 Fax: 011 880 3495

Competition Commission
Website: *www.compcom.co.za*
Private Bag X23, Lynnwood Ridge, 0040
Tel: 012 394 3200 Fax: 012 394 0166

Constitutional Court
Website: *www.constitutionalcourt.org.za*
Private Bag X1, Constitution Hill, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 359 7400 Fax: 011 403 6524

Council for Geoscience
Website: *www.geoscience.org.za*
Private Bag X112, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 1911 Fax: 012 841 1221

Council for Mineral Technology
Website: *www.mintek.co.za*
Private Bag X3015, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 709 4111 Fax: 011 793 2413

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
Website: *www.csir.co.za*
PO Box 395, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 2911 Fax: 012 349 1153

Council on Higher Education
Website: *www.che.ac.za*
PO Box 94, Persequor Park, 0020
Tel: 012 349 3840 Fax: 012 349 3942

Denel (Pty) Limited
Website: *www.denel.co.za*
PO Box 8322, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 671 2700 Fax: 012 671 2793

Development Bank of Southern Africa
Website: *www.dbsa.org*
PO Box 1234, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 313 3911 Fax: 011 313 3086

Eskom
Website: *www.eskom.co.za*
PO Box 1091, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 800 8111 Fax: 011 800 4299

Film and Publication Board
Website: *www.fpb.gov.za*
Private Bag X2205, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 483 0971 Fax: 011 483 1084

Financial Intelligence Centre
Website: *www.fic.gov.za*
Private Bag X177, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 641 6000 Fax: 012 641 6215

Financial and Fiscal Commission
Website: *www.ffc.co.za*
Private Bag X69, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 207 2300 Fax: 011 207 2344

Financial Services Board
Website: *www.fsb.co.za*
PO Box 35655, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 428 8000 Fax: 012 347 0221

Government Printing Works
Website: *www.gpw.gov.za*
Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 334 4500 Fax: 012 323 0009

Human Sciences Research Council
Website: *www.hsrc.ac.za*
Private Bag X41, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 302 2000 Fax: 012 302 2001

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Website: *www.icasa.org.za*
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 566 3000/1 Fax: 011 566 4000/1

Independent Development Trust
Website: *www.idt.org.za*
PO Box 73000, Lynnwood Ridge, 0043
Tel: 012 845 2000 Fax: 012 348 0894

Independent Electoral Commission
Website: *www.elections.org.za*
Private Bag X112, Centurion, 0158
Tel: 012 622 5700 Fax: 012 622 5784

Industrial Development Corporation
Website: *www.idc.co.za*
PO Box 784055, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 269 3000 Fax: 011 269 3116

Judicial Service Commission
Private Bag X1, Constitutional Hill, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 359 7537 Fax: 086 649 0944

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited
Website: *www.khula.org.za*
PO Box 28423, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 394 5560 Fax: 012 394 6901

Land and Agricultural Bank of South Africa
Website: *www.landbank.co.za*
PO Box 375, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 686 0500 Fax: 012 686 0718

Land Claims Court
Website: *www.justice.gov.za*
Private Bag X10060, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 781 2291 Fax: 011 781 2217/8

Media Development and Diversity Agency
Website: *www.mdda.org.za*
PO Box 42846, Fordsburg, 2033
Tel: 011 643 1100 Fax: 011 643 1129

Municipal Demarcation Board
Website: *www.demarcation.org.za*
Private Bag X28, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2481/2 Fax: 012 342 2480

National Advisory Council on Innovation
Website: *www.naci.org.za*
Private Bag X894, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 843 6511 Fax: 086 681 0144

National Agricultural Marketing Council
Website: *www.namc.co.za*
Private Bag X935, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 341 1115 Fax: 012 341 1811

National Archives of South Africa
Website: *www.national.archives.gov.za*
Private Bag X236, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 441 3200 Fax: 012 323 5287

National Arts Council of South Africa
Website: *www.nac.org.za*
PO Box 500, Newtown, 2113
Tel: 011 838 1383 Fax: 011 838 6363

National Development Agency
Website: *www.nda.org.za*
PO Box 31959, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 018 5500 Fax: 011 018 5588

National Economic Development Labour Council
Website: *www.nedlac.org.za*
PO Box 1775, Saxonwold, 2132
Tel: 011 328 4200 Fax: 011 447 2089

National Empowerment Fund
Website: *www.nefcorp.co.za*
PO Box 31, Sandton, Melrose Arch, 2076
Tel: 011 305 8000 Fax: 011 305 8001

National Energy Regulator
Website: *www.nersa.org.za*
PO Box 40343, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 401 4600 Fax: 012 401 4700

National Gambling Board
Website: *www.ngb.org.za*
Private Bag X27, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 394 3800 Fax: 012 394 4800

National Home-Builders' Registration Council
Website: *www.nhbrc.org.za*
PO Box 461, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 317 0000 Fax: 011 317 0105

National House of Traditional Leaders
Website: *www.nhtl.gov.za*
Private Bag X804, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 395 4659 Fax: 012 395 4650

National Housing Finance Corporation
Website: *www.nhfc.co.za*
PO Box 31376, Braamfontein, 2017
Tel: 011 644 9800 Fax: 011 484 6406

National Lotteries Board
Website: *www.nlb.org.za*
PO Box 1556, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 432 1300/22 Fax: 012 432 1388

National Nuclear Regulator
Website: *www.nnr.co.za*
PO Box 7106, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 674 7100 Fax: 012 663 5513

National Prosecuting Authority
Website: *www.npa.gov.za*
Private Bag X752, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 845 6000 Fax: 012 804 7335

National Research Foundation
Website: *www.nrf.ac.za*
PO Box 2600, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 481 4000 Fax: 012 349 1179

National Youth Development Agency
Website: *www.nyda.gov.za*
PO Box 982, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 651 7000 Fax: 011 805 9709

Pan South African Language Board
Website: *www.pansalb.org.za*
Private Bag X08, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 341 9638 Fax: 012 341 5938

Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (Pty) Limited
Website: *www.petrosa.co.za*
Private Bag X5, Parow, 7499
Tel: 021 929 3000 Fax: 021 929 3144

Public Investment Corporation
Website: *www.pic.gov.za*
Private Bag X187, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 742 3400 Fax: 012 346 3267

Public Protector
Website: *www.pprotect.org*
Private Bag X677, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 366 7000 Fax: 012 362 3473
Toll-Free: 0800 11 2040

Rand Water
Website: *www.randwater.co.za*
PO Box 1127, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 682 0911 Fax: 011 682 0444

Small Enterprise Development Agency
Website: *www.seda.org.za*
PO Box 56714, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 441 1000 Fax: 012 441 2064

South African Airways
Website: *www.flysaa.com*
Private Bag X13, Kempton Park, 1627
Tel: 011 978 1000 Fax: 011 978 2999

South African Bureau of Standards
Website: *www.sabs.co.za*
Private Bag X191, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 428 7911 Fax: 012 344 1568

South African Civil Aviation Authority
Website: *www.caa.co.za*
Private Bag X73, Halfway House, 1685
Tel: 011 545 1000 Fax: 011 545 1465

South African Council for Educators
Website: *www.sace.org.za*
Private Bag X127, Centurion, 0046
Tel: 012 663 9517 Fax: 012 663 9238

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator
Website: *www.sadpmr.co.za*
PO Box 16001, Doornfontein, 2023
Tel: 011 223 7000 Fax: 011 334 8898

South African Forestry Company
Website: *www.safcol.co.za*
PO Box 1771, Silverton, 0127
Tel: 012 481 3500 Fax: 012 804 5133

South African Human Rights Commission
Website: *www.sahrc.org.za*
Private Bag X2700, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 877 3600 Fax: 011 403 0668

South African Law Reform Commission
Website: *www.salawreform.justice.gov.za*
Private Bag X668, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 392 9540 Fax: 012 322 4406

South African Local Government Association
Website: *www.salga.net*
PO Box 2094, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 369 8000 Fax: 012 369 8001

South African National Parks
Website: *www.sanparks.org*
PO Box 787, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 426 5170 Fax: 012 343 0153

South African National Roads Agency Limited
Website: *www.sanral.co.za*
PO Box 415, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 844 8000 Fax: 012 844 8200

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation
Website: *www.necsa.co.za*
PO Box 582, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 305 4911 Fax: 012 305 3111

South African Post Office Limited
Website: *www.postoffice.co.za*
PO Box 10000, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 401 7000 Fax: 012 401 7707

South African Qualifications Authority
Website: *www.saqa.org.za*
PostNet Suite 248, Private Bag X06, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 431 5000 Fax: 012 431 5039

South African Reserve Bank
Website: *www.resbank.co.za*
PO Box 427, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 313 3911 Fax: 012 313 3929

South African Tourism
Website: *www.southafrica.net*
Private Bag X10012, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 895 3000 Fax: 011 895 3094

Special Investigating Unit
Website: *www.siu.org.za*
Private Bag X844, Silverton, 0127
Tel: 012 843 0000 Fax: 012 843 8813

State Information Technology Agency (Pty) Ltd (Sita)
Website: *www.sita.co.za*
PO Box 26100, Monument Park, 0105
Tel: 012 482 3000 Fax: 012 367 5151

Technology for Women in Business
Website: *www.twib.co.za*
PO Box 395, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 841 4983 Fax: 012 841 4954

Telkom SA Ltd
Website: *www.telkom.co.za*
Private Bag X74, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 311 3911 Fax: 012 323 6733

Trade and Investment South Africa
Website: *www.thedti.gov.za*
Private Bag X84, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 394 3014 Fax: 012 394 4016

Water Research Commission
Website: *www.wrc.org.za*
Private Bag X03, Gezina, 0031
Tel: 012 330 0340 Fax: 012 331 2565

Government communication and information centres

Eastern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X608, East London, 5200
Tel: 043 722 2602 Fax: 043 722 2615

Free State Provincial Office
PO Box 995, Bloemfontein, 9300
Tel: 051 448 4504 Fax: 051 430 7032

Gauteng Provincial Office
Private Bag X16, Johannesburg, 2000
Tel: 011 834 3560 Fax: 011 834 3621

KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Office
Private Bag X54332, Durban, 4000
Tel: 031 301 6787/8 Fax: 031 305 9431

Limpopo Provincial Office
PO Box 2452, Polokwane, 0700
Tel: 015 291 4689 Fax: 015 295 6982

Mpumalanga Provincial Office
PO Box 2856, Mbombela, 1200
Tel: 013 753 2397 Fax: 013 753 2531

Northern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X5038, Kimberley, 8300
Tel: 053 832 1378/9 Fax: 053 832 1377

North West Provincial Office
Private Bag X2120, Mahikeng, 2745
Tel: 018 381 7071 Fax: 018 381 7066

Western Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 697 0923 Fax: 021 696 8424

Parliamentary Office
Private Bag X503, Cape Town, 8000
Tel: 021 465 3658 Fax: 021 461 1446

Thusong service centres (TCSs)

Website: *www.thusong.gov.za*

Eastern Cape

Burgersdorp TCS
Cnr Piet Retief & Presley streets, Burgersdorp
Tel: 015 653 0595 Fax: 051 653 0742

Centane TCS
20 Bell Ave, Centani, 4960
Tel: 047 498 1126 Fax: 047 498 1032

Cofimvaba TCS
Cnr High Street & Bellair Ave, Cofimvaba, 5380
Tel: 047 874 0444 Fax: 047 874 0553

Jansenville TCS
77 Main Rd, Jansenville
Tel: 049 891 0142

KwaNophoyi TCS
Mtsila & Nguse Village Junction
Mount Frere, 5090
Tel: 039 254 5000 Fax: 039 254 0343

Qunu TCS
Qunu Village, Mthatha, 9755
Tel: 047 538 7017 Fax: 047 538 7017

Silindini TCS
Silindini Location
Tel: 047 548 1803 Fax 047 548 1078

Sterkspruit TCS
79 Main Rd, Sterkspruit, 9762
Tel: 051 611 1335 Fax: 051 611 1335

Tombo TCS
Tombo Village, 5121
Tel: 047 564 1152 Fax: 047 564 1206

Tsilitwa TCS
Sulenkama Location, Qumbu
Tel: 082 564 8890

Viegiesville TCS
Viegiesville Village, 9755
Tel: 047 538 9011 Fax: 047 538 9011

Free State

Botshabelo TCS
1230 Section E, Botshabelo, 9781
Tel: 051 532 6791 Fax: 051 532 6791

Kopanong TCS
398 Booysen St, Madikgetla
Trompsburg, 9913
Tel: 051 713 0189 Fax: 051 713 0192

Mantsopa TCS
Tseki Village, QwaQwa
Tel: 079 728 8654

Namahadi TCS
Charles Mopeli Stadium
Witsieshoek, 9870
Tel: 058 789 1147 Fax: 058 789 1147

Onalerona/Sediba TCS
188 Sediba Village, Thaba Nchu, 9784
Tel: 051 357 0027

Phiritona TCS
2264 Makoko Hlabane St, Phiritona
Heilbron, 9650
Tel: 058 852 1411 Fax: 058 852 1917

Qalabotjha TCS
1279 Gamede St, Qalabotjha, Villiers, 9840
Tel & Fax: 058 821 1127

Tokologo TCS
Malebogo Community Hall
Hertzogville, 9482
Tel: 053 421 9051 Fax: 053 421 9244

Tseki TCS
Old Tribal Council Office, Tseki Village
QwaQwa, Witsieshoek, 9870
Tel & Fax: 058 789 3585

Zastron/Mohokare TCS
Cnr Pansegrouw & Vegkop streets
Zastron, 9650
Tel: 051 673 1671 Fax: 051 673 1082

Gauteng

Alexandra TCS
Cnr 8th Ave & Roosevelt St
Alexandra, 2090
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Atteridgeville TCS
Mini-Munitoria Building, 1770
Komane St, Atteridgeville, 0008
Tel: 012 373 8856 Fax: 086 512 0928

Bekkersdal TCS
Cnr Godlo & Panyapanya streets
Bekkersdal, 1779
Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888

Boipatong TCS
Cnr Mamelodi & Dr Nkomo streets
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Boitshepiville TCS
Stand 2013 Phase 2, Tshepiso, 0901
Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

Brandvlei TCS
Stand 64, Ventersdorp Rd
Brandvlei, 1759
Tel: 011 416 2107

Daveyton TCS
Daveyton Mall, Eiselen St, Daveyton
Benoni, 1520
Tel: 011 926 7121 Fax: 011 926 7171

Diepsloot TCS
Stand 381, Diepsloot West,
Diepsloot, 2189
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Dobsonville TCS
2332 Luthuli St, Dobsonville, 1863
Tel & Fax: 011 982 1200

Duduza TCS
1 Nala St, Duduza, 1496
Tel & Fax: 011 738 8516

Ekangala TCS
Section 4, Ekangala, 1021
Tel: 082 930 0267

Eldorado Park TCS
4064 Link Cres, Ext 5, Eldorado Park
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Eyethu TCS
Cnr Nkosi & Matukane streets
Rethabiseng, Bronkhorstspruit
Tel: 012 805 0117 Fax: 012 805 0121

Faranani TCS
PO Box 70021, Tsakane, Brakpan, 1550
Tel: 011 999 8086 Fax: 011 999 8046

Ga-Rankuwa TCS
Municipality Building, Zone 5
Ga-Rankuwa, 0208
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Hammanskraal TCS
Hammanskraal Skills Centre,
40 Old Warmbaths Rd,
Hammanskraal, 0400
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Hekpoort TCS
PO Box 94, Krugersdorp, 1740
Tel: 011 951 2258 Fax: 011 660 6726

Impumulelo TCS
Municipal Building, Impumulelo St, Devon
Tel: 017 688 0051

Ipelegeng TCS
1238 White City, cnr Phera & Khumal
streets, Jabavu, Soweto, 1809
Tel: 083 417 7958

Kagiso TCS
8740 Kagiso Ave, Kagiso Ext 12, 1754
Tel: 011 660 1105

KwaThema TCS
Nkosi St, Tornado Section,
KwaThema, 1571
Tel: 011 741 2256 Fax: 011 736 7730

Lord Khanyile TCS
Cnr Freedom & Osizweni streets
Ivory Park, 1689
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Mabopane TCS
Central House, Mabopane
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Maponya TCS
Shop 368, Maponya Mall,
City of Joburg
Tel: 011 982 1200

Mafatsane TCS
Union Rd, Evaton, 1984
Tel: 016 998 1960 Fax: 016 998 1962

Mamelodi TCS
19864 Makhubela St,
Mamelodi West, 0122
Tel: 012 805 0117 Fax: 012 805 0121

Mohlakeng TCS
262 Ralerata St, Mohlakeng, 1759
Tel: 011 414 1072 Fax: 011 414 1888

Muldersdrift TCS
Plot 4, Rietfontein, Muldersdrift
Tel & Fax: 011 414 1888

Munsieville TCS
Next to Police Station, Munsieville, 1739
Tel: 083 584 6856

Olievenhoutbosch TCS
City of Tswane
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

Onverwacht TCS
Onverwacht Library, Cullinan
Tel & Fax: 012 732 0564

Orange Farm TCS
15747 Orange Farm, Ext 4
Orange Farm, 1805
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Orlando East TCS
1425 Sofasonke St,
Orlando East, 1804
Tel & Fax: 011 935 6492

Poortjie TCS
Johannesburg
Tel: 011 850 7493

Rabie Ridge TCS
Cnr Stilt & Korhaan streets, Rabie Ridge
Tel & Fax: 011 443 1358

Ratanda TCS
Cnr Heidelberg & Boshoek streets
Ratanda, 2405
Tel & Fax: 016 988 1960

Refilwe TCS
Metsweding
Tel & Fax: 012 711 3160

Sebokeng TCS
88 Moshoeshoe St, Sebokeng
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Sicelo Shiceka TCS
Sicelo Stadium, Sobuku Amekeia St,
Meyerton, 1951
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Soshanguve TCS
Shop 49, Nafcoc Shopping Centre
Soshanguve, 0152
Tel & Fax: 012 799 5005

Tarlton TCS
8 Cecilia St, Eldorado, Tarlton
Tel: 011 414 1888 Fax: 011 414 1167

Tembisa TCS
Cnr George Nyanga & Andrew
Mapheto Drive, 238 Igqagqa Section
Tembisa, 1632
Tel: 011 999 4240 Fax: 011 942 4254

Thokoza TCS
8015 Khumalo Street, Thokoza, 1426
Tel: 011 999 2200 Fax: 011 905 0186

Vosloorus TCS
1 Barry Marais Rd, Vosloorus, 1475
Tel & Fax: 011 899 4505

Zithobeni TCS
2237 Mothibe Drive, Zithobeni, 1024
Tel: 013 937 0133

KwaZulu-Natal

Archie Gumede TCS
1106 Zazi Rd, Clermont, 3602
Tel: 031 707 5097

Bhamshela TCS
Noodsberg Rd, Ozwathini, 3242
Tel: 032 294 9076 Fax: 032 294 9075

Bhomela TCS
1106 Zazi Rd, Clermont, 3602
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

Driefontein TCS
57 Store St, Driefontein
Tel: 083 537 7845

Dududu TCS
Private Bag X5509, Scottburgh, 4180
Tel: 039 974 0989 Fax: 039 974 0432

Dukuza TCS
Private Bag X1620, Bergville, 3350
Tel: 036 438 6103 Fax: 036 438 6136

Ekuvukeni TCS
Indaka No F2748, Ekuvukeni
Tel: 034 261 1000 Fax: 034 261 2035

Imbabazane TCS
Sobabili Rd, Estcourt, Mbabazane, 3310
Tel: 036 353 0681 Fax: 036 353 6661

Impendle TCS
38 Ikhwezi Rd, Impendle, 3227
Tel & Fax: 033 996 0445

Inhlazuka TCS
Umgungundlovu, Inhlazuka, 3200
Tel: 031 781 1008 Fax: 031 781 1076

Ixopo TCS
40 Main Rd, Ixopo, 3276
Tel & Fax: 039 834 1599

Jozini TCS
Circle St, Jozini, 3969
Tel: 035 572 1292 Fax: 035 572 1266

KwaMadlala TCS
Ugu District, KwaMadlala, 3226
Tel: 039 688 2278 Fax: 039 688 2279

KwaMdakane TCS
Nellie's Farm Clinic, Dannhauser, 3080
Tel: 034 305 9431 Fax: 034 314 3785

KwaNzimakwe TCS
Road D 1095, KwaNzimakwe, 4278
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

KwaXolo TCS
Road D 686, Port Shepstone, 4240
Tel: 039 688 2272 Fax: 039 688 2279

Lindela TCS
Nxamalala, Lindela Village, Nkandla, 3855
Tel & Fax: 035 476 4241

Luwamba TCS
Mambuka St, Uthungulu, 3880
Tel: 031 301 6787 Fax: 031 305 9431

Malangeni TCS
Malangeni Mission
Tel: 039 974 1061 Fax: 039 974 4148

Mapumulo TCS
Tel: 032 294 9076 Fax: 032 294 9075

Mbazwana TCS
PO Box 231, Mbazwana, 3974
Tel: 035 571 0970 Fax: 035 571 0232

Pietermaritzburg TCS
242 Longmarket St, Pietermaritzburg
Tel: 033 897 6892 Fax: 033 342 5442

Tugela Ferry TCS
PO Box 6, Nqutu, Tugela Ferry, 3010
Tel & Fax : 033 493 0282

Ulundi TCS
King Dinulu Highway, Ulundi, 3838
Tel & Fax: 035 870 0219

Limpopo

Babirwa TCS
Taueyatsoala Tribal Office, Babirwa, 0716
Tel: 015 505 5345 Fax: 015 571 5808

Bophelong TCS
5050 Ext 10, Bophelong
Tel: 016 986 3711 Fax: 016 986 0305

Botlokwa TCS
PO Box 37, Dwarsrivier, 0812
Tel: 015 527 1596 Fax: 015 527 1742

Bulamahlo TCS
PO Box 51, Shiluvane, 0873
Tel: 015 307 8000 Fax: 015 307 8049

Eldorado TCS
PO Box 69, Raditshaba, 0718
Tel: 015 592 9900 Fax: 015 592 8019

Festus Sengaka Mothudi TCS
Ga-Ramokgopa Village, 0811
Tel: 015 291 4689 Fax: 015 295 6982

Fetakgomo-Atok TCS
PO Box 818, Apel, 0739
Tel: 015 619 9113 Fax: 015 622 8026

Kgautswane TCS
Kgautswane Village, 1132
Tel: 013 231 7515 Fax: 013 238 0122

Leboeng TCS
Private Bag X534, Burgersfort, 1150
Tel: 013 769 9026 Fax: 013 769 9201

Lesedi TCS
Khona Village, Tzaneen
Tel: 015 307 8452 Fax: 015 307 8049

Mabatlane TCS
268 Paul Kruger St, Vaalwater,
Modimolle, 0510
Tel: 014 755 3751 Fax: 014 755 3824

Madimbo TCS
Ward 1, Madimbo Village, Musina, 0900
Tel & Fax: 015 962 5307

Mafatsane TCS
1360 Bodean Rd, Evaton
Tel: 016 988 1960 Fax: 016 988 1962

Makhuva TCS
PO Box 30, Phangweni, Giyani, 0826
Tel & Fax: 015 812 5602

Makuya TCS
Masisi-Makomve Rd, Mutale, 0970
Tel & Fax: 015 962 5307

Mapela TCS
Mesopotamia Village, Mapela, 0610
Tel: 015 413 0002 Fax: 015 413 0023

Maruleng TCS
75 Metz Village, Maruleng
Tel: 015 383 9944 Fax: 086 514 0997

Mokwakwaila TCS
Mokwakwaila Village
Tel: 082 904 5903

Muyexe TCS
Muyexe Village
Tel: 078 132 7461

Relela TCS
Bolebedu South
Tel & Fax: 015 355 3137

Runnymede TCS
Ward 6, Mopani, Tzaneen
Tel & Fax: 015 355 3137

Zava TCS
Zava Village, Giyani
Tel: 015 811 5500 Fax: 015 812 2068

Mpumalanga

Breyten TCS
Cnr Grobler and Breytenbach streets
Breyten
Tel: 017 861 3124 Fax: 017 861 3810

Casteel TCS
PO Box 2736, Acornhoek, 1370
Tel: 013 777 6014 Fax: 013 777 6113

Daggakraal TCS
260 Sinqobile Municipal Offices
Daggakraal
Tel: 082 684 4462

Driefontein TCS
57 Store St, Driefontein
Tel: 076 309 0003

King Mokhosonke TCS
1 Engwenyameni, Main Rd
Tel: 072 152 6652

Louisville TCS
Old Kangwane Offices, Louisville
Tel: 073 411 8215

Marapyane TCS
Marapyane Shopping Centre, 0431
Tel & Fax: 012 724 3812

Matsamo TCS
PO Box 743, Shongwe Mission, 1331
Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

Mbangwane TCS
PO Box 101, Malalane, 1320
Tel & Fax: 013 781 0659

Mmametlhake TCS
24 Letlhabile Rd, Bamokgoko, 0432
Tel: 072 152 6652

Moremela TCS
Moremela Village
Tel: 072 901 5983 Fax: 086 561 2694

Morgenzon TCS
166 Sivukile, Morgenzon, 2315
Tel: 017 714 7719

Mpuluzi TCS
PO Box 1408, Fernie, 2339
Tel & Fax: 017 888 0300

Sakhile TCS
Gert Sibande St, Sakhile, 2431
Tel: 017 714 7719

Siyathemba TCS
5080 East St, Siyathemba,
Balfour, 2410
Tel & Fax: 017 683 1031

Tholulwazi TCS
307 Shaka Maseko St, Leandra, 2265
Tel: 017 683 3027 Fax: 017 683 1311

Thuthukani TCS
New Denmark Hostel, Standerton, 2430
Tel: 082 828 1798

Verena TCS
Nkangala District
Tel: 082 224 7924

Wonderfontein TCS
Portion 428, Nkangala
Tel: 013 246 7443

Northern Cape

Augrabies TCS
PO Box 194, Augrabies, 8814
Tel: 054 332 6206 Fax: 054 332 6218

Calvinia TCS
304 Church St, Calvinia
Tel: 027 341 1216 Fax: 027 341 1992

Colesberg TCS
PO Box 101, Colesberg, 9795
Tel: 051 753 0386 Fax: 051 753 2182

Galeshewe TCS
Cnr Matanzima & Letsholo streets,
Kimberley, 8345
Tel: 053 872 1197 Fax: 053 872 2647

Kgomotsego TCS
33 Short St, Van Zylsrus
Tel: 053 712 1534 Fax: 053 781 0210

Manne Dipico TCS
62 Sparrow St, Pescodia, 8309
Tel: 053 873 1072 Fax: 053 873 1298

Springbok TCS
PO Box 298, Springbok, 8240
Tel: 027 712 2461 Fax: 027 712 1899

Upington TCS
PO Box 2872, Upington, 8806
Tel: 054 322 6206 Fax: 054 322 6218

North West

Bokamoso/Jerico TCS
Jerico Main Rd, Jerico
Tel: 012 318 9582

Kgetleng TCS
Erasmus St, Swartruggens, 2835
Tel & Fax: 014 544 0011

Kgokgojane TCS
Kagisano Municipality, Kgokgojane
Tel: 053 761 0093

Khutsong TCS
Portion 1, Stand 1, Khutsong South
Carltonville, 2499
Tel: 018 783 9032 Fax: 018 783 9033

Leretlhabetse TCS
Lebotlwane Village, 0411
Tel: 012 716 1000 Fax: 012 716 1068

Manamela TCS
Manamela Village, 2847
Tel: 014 555 1300 Fax: 014 555 5240

Monakato TCS
Monakato Village, Monakato
Tel: 014 554 8815 Fax: 014 554 8593

Tlakgameng TCS
Tlakgameng Village, Sebetwane
Tel & Fax: 053 761 0093

Tshedimosetso TCS
Boikhutso Village, Ventersdorp, 2710
Tel & Fax: 018 264 2332

Tshidilamolomo TCS
Tshidilamolomo, 2753
Tel: 018 361 0152 Fax: 018 361 0149

Victor Tong TCS
Morokweng Village, 8614
Tel & Fax: 053 761 0093

Western Cape

Beaufort West Local Municipality
3 De Vries St, Rustdene, 6970
Tel & Fax: 023 415 3144

Bitterfontein TCS
Cnr Kok & Long streets
Tel & Fax: 021 642 7344

Bonteheuwel TCS
Cnr Jakkalsvlei & Elder streets
Bonteheuwel, 7764
Tel: 021 695 5425 Fax: 086 512 5237

Citrusdal TCS
Bohemia St, Citrusdal, 7340
Tel & Fax: 027 921 2620

Guga'sthembe TCS
Washington Street, Langa, 7455
Tel: 021 400 4573 Fax: 021 418 8221

Hartebeeskraal/Atlantis TCS
1 Nottingham St, Sharwood Park,
Atlantis, 7348
Tel & Fax: 021 572 1872

Hawston TCS
Church St, Hawston, 7202
Tel & Fax: 028 315 2784

Ilingelethu TCS
Ilingelethu Sports Field, Malmesbury, 7299
Tel: 022 486 4593 Fax: 022 486 4415

Khayelitsha TCS
Steve Biko Rd, Kayelitsha Mall, 7784
Tel: 021 360 1228 Fax: 021 361 4340

Klipdrift TCS
Signage Centre, George
Tel: 044 880 1174 Fax: 044 880 1165

Laingsburg TCS
Cnr Main & Third Ave,
Goldnerville, Laingsburg, 6900
Tel & Fax: 023 551 1899

Langebaan TCS
7 Antonio Sieni St, Langebaan, 7357
Tel & Fax: 022 772 2622

Mbekweni TCS
Simile St, Mbekweni, Paarl
Tel & Fax: 023 345 2737

Mitchell's Plein TCS
Cnr Kilimanjaro & Berman streets, Tafelsig
Mitchell's Plein, 7785
Tel: 021 397 2629 Fax: 021 397 2890

Murraysburg TCS
23 Beaufort St, Murraysburg, 6995
Tel: 023 415 3144

Oudtshoorn TCS
12th Ave, Bongulethu, 6620
Tel & Fax: 044 274 3087

Riversdale TCS
Van den Berg St, Riversdale, 6670
Tel & Fax: 028 713 3647

Simunye TCS
Xipula St, KwaNokuthula
Tel: 044 501 3134 Fax: 044 533 6993

Swellendam TCS
1 Vollenhoven St, Swellendam, 6740
Tel: 028 514 3732 Fax: 028 514 3334

Thembalethu TCS
Cnr Jeriko St & Sandkraal Rd
Thembalethu 6527
Tel: 044 880 1711 Fax: 044 880 1712

Unobuntu TCS
Cnr Nketza and Mtwazi streets
Zwelethemba, Worcester, 6850
Tel: 023 348 2739 Fax: 023 345 1031

Van Rhynsdorp TCS
1 Nelson Mandela St,
Van Rhynsdorp, 8170
Tel: 027 219 1917 Fax: 027 219 1574

Vicky Zimri TCS
Bohemia St, Citrusdal, 8001
Tel & Fax: 022 921 2620

Vredendal TCS
1 Bult Rd, Vredendal North, 8160
Tel: 027 201 3420 Fax: 027 213 1031

Waboomskraal TCS
Main Road, Waboomskraal
Tel & Fax: 044 886 0040

Zolani TCS
Sithandathu Ave, Nyanga East
Cape Town
Tel: 021 386 8656 Fax: 021 386 1032

Foreign representatives in South Africa

Albania (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 2000, Witkoppen, 2068
Tel: 011 465 3871 Fax: 011 465 3853

Algeria (People's Democratic Republic)
[Embassy]
PO Box 57480, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5074/5 Fax: 012 342 6479

Angola (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 8685, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 0049/50 Fax: 012 342 7039

Argentina (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11125, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 3524 Fax: 012 430 3513

Australia
[High Commission]
Private Bag X150, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 6000 Fax: 012 342 8442

Austria (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95572, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 452 9155 Fax: 012 460 1151

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
[High Commission]
410 Farenden St, Sunnyside, Pretoria
0002
Tel: 012 343 2105/7 Fax: 012 343 5222

Belarus (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 4107, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 430 7664 Fax: 012 342 6280

Belgium (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
625 Leyds St, Muckleneuk, Pretoria, 0002
Tel: 012 440 3201/2 Fax: 012 440 3216

Benin (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 26484, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6978 Fax: 012 342 1823

Bolivia (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 91026, Auckland Park, 2006
Tel: 011 883 3416 Fax: 011 883 7126

Botswana (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 57035, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 430 9640 Fax: 012 342 1845

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 3269, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 366 5200 Fax: 012 366 5299

Bulgaria (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 26296, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 3720 Fax: 012 342 3721

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13710, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 6205 Fax: 012 346 6003

Burundi (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12914, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 4881/3 Fax: 012 342 4885

Cameroon (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 13790, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 460 0587 Fax: 012 460 7942

Canada
[High Commission]
Private Bag X13, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 422 3000 Fax: 012 422 3052

Central African Republic
[Embassy]
822 Arcadia St, Arcadia, Pretoria, 0002
Tel:072 586 4700

Chile (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2449, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 460 8090 Fax: 012 460 8093

China (People's Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95764, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 431 6500 Fax: 012 342 4244

Colombia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12791, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 0211/4 Fax: 012 342 0216

Comoros (Union of)
[Embassy]
817 Thomas Ave, Arcadia, 0083
Tel & Fax : 012 342 0138

Congo (Democratic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 28795, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 344 6475 Fax: 012 344 4054

Congo (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 40427, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5508 Fax: 012 342 5510

Costa Rica (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1210, Parklands, 2121
Tel: 011 486 4716 Fax: 011 646 7514

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13510, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 6913 Fax: 012 342 6713

Croatia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11335, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 1206 Fax: 012 342 1819

Cuba (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11605, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 2215 Fax: 012 346 2216

Cyprus (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 14554, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5258 Fax: 012 342 5596

Czech Republic
[Embassy]
PO Box 13671, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 431 2380 Fax: 012 430 2033

Denmark (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11439, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 9340 Fax: 012 342 7620

Djibouti (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
Private Bag X2009, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 719 9111 Fax: 011 884 7455

Dominican (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 25897, Monument Park, 0105
Tel: 012 362 2463 Fax: 086 567 9613

Ecuador (Republic of)
[Embassy]
Suite 3, 36 Selati Park, Alphen Park
Tel: 012 346 1663 Fax: 012: 346 7082

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 30025, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 343 1590/1 Fax: 012 343 1082

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
48 Florence St, Colbyn, Pretoria
Tel: 012 342 9945 Fax: 012 342 6469

Eritrea (State of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11371, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 333 1302 Fax: 012 333 2330

Estonia (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 154, Paarl, 7622
Tel: 082 550 6363 Fax: 021 913 2579

Ethiopia (Federal Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11469, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 3542 Fax: 012 346 3867

Finland (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 443, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 343 0275 Fax: 012 343 3095

France (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 4619, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 425 1600 Fax: 012 425 1609

Gabon (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 9222, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 4376/7 Fax: 012 342 4375

Gambia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
Private Bag X9949, Sandton, 2146
Tel: 011 884 3710 Fax: 011 883 5925

Germany (Federal Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2023, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 427 8900 Fax: 012 343 9401

Ghana (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 12537, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5847/9 Fax: 012 342 5863

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)
[Embassy]
1267 Church St, Hatfield, 0001
Tel: 012 430 7351 Fax: 012 430 4313

Guinea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13523, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 4906 Fax: 012 342 7348

Guyana (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1877, Randburg, 2125
Tel: 011 789 9760 Fax: 011 789 9763

Holy See (Nuncio of the Vatican)
PO Box 59200, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 346 4235 Fax: 012 346 1494

Hungary (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13843, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 3020/30 Fax: 012 430 3029

India (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 40216, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5392/5 Fax: 012 342 5310

Indonesia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13155, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 3350/3 Fax: 012 342 3369

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12546, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5880/1 Fax: 012 342 1878

Iraq (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11089, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 2048 Fax: 012 362 2027

Ireland
[Embassy]
PO Box 4174, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 5062 Fax: 012 342 4752

Israel (State of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X50, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 470 3500 Fax: 012 470 3555

Italy (Republic of)
[Embassy]
796 George Ave, Arcadia, 0083
Tel: 012 423 0000 Fax: 012 430 5547

Jamaica
[High Commission]
1119 Burnett St, Hatfield, Pretoria, 0083
Tel: 012 362 6667 Fax: 012 366 8510

Japan
[Embassy]
Private Bag X999, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 452 1500 Fax: 012 460 3800/1

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14730, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 346 8615 Fax: 012 346 8611

Kenya (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 35954, Menlo Park, 0102
Tel: 012 362 2249 Fax: 012 362 2252

Korea (Democratic People's Republic)
[Embassy]
PO Box 1238, Garsfontein, 0042
Tel: 012 991 8661 Fax: 012 991 8662

Korea (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 939, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 460 2508/9 Fax: 012 460 1158

Kuwait (State of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X920, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 342 0877 Fax: 012 342 0876

Latvia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X9, Postnet Suite Box 480
Benmore Gardens, 2010
Tel: 011 750 1600 Fax: 011 447 0607

Lebanon (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 941, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 430 2130 Fax: 012 430 2238

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 55817, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 460 7648 Fax: 012 460 7649

Liberia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14082, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2734 Fax: 012 342 2737

Libya (Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)
[Libyan Arab People's Bureau]
PO Box 40388, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 3902 Fax: 012 342 3904

Liechtenstein (Principality of)
Representation accredited from
Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1737, Houghton, 2041
Tel: 011 486 3660 Fax: 011 486 3650

Madagascar (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11722, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 342 0983 Fax: 012 342 0995

Malawi (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11172, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 0146 Fax: 012 342 0147

Malaysia (Federation of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11673, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5990/3 Fax: 012 430 7773

Mali (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12978, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 7464 Fax: 012 342 0670

Malta (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
322 Koeberg Rd, Milnerton
Cape Town, 7441
Tel: 021 557 7860 Fax: 021 430 5002

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
[Embassy]
146 Anderson St, Brooklyn, 0181
Tel: 012 362 3578 Fax: 012 362 3304

Mauritius (Republic of)
[High Commission]
1163 Pretorius St, Hatfield, 0083
Tel: 012 342 1283/4 Fax: 012 342 1286

Mexico (United Mexican States)
[Embassy]
PO Box 9077, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 460 1004 Fax: 012 460 0937

Monaco (Principality of)
[Honorary Consulate]
1 Milton's Way, 11 Bell Crescent Close,
Westlake Business Park, Westlake
Cape Town, 7945
Tel: 021 702 0991/2 Fax: 021 702 0993

Morocco (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12382, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 343 0230/40 Fax: 012 343 0613

Mozambique (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 40750, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 401 0300 Fax: 012 326 6388

Myanmar (Union of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12121, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 341 2556/7 Fax: 012 341 2553

Namibia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 29806, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 481 9100 Fax: 012 344 5998

Nepal (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
453 Fehersen St, Baileys,
Muckleneuk, 0002
Tel: 012 346 2399 Fax: 012 346 0521

Netherlands (The Royal)
[Embassy]
PO Box 117, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 425 4500 Fax: 012 425 4511

New Zealand
[High Commission]
Private Bag X17, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 435 9000 Fax: 012 435 9001

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 27332, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 342 0805 Fax: 012 342 1668

Norway (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11612, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 6100 Fax: 012 342 6099

Oman (Sultanate of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2650, Brooklyn, 0075
Tel: 012 362 8301 Fax: 012 362 6258

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11803, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 4072/3 Fax: 012 362 3967

Palestine (State of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56021, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6411 Fax: 012 342 6412

Panama (Republic of)
239 Kloof Ave, Waterkloof Ridge, 0181
Tel: 012 346 7034 Fax: 012 346 0703

Papua New Guinea
The Australian diplomatic representatives are in charge of the consular interests of Papua New Guinea in South Africa.

Paraguay (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95774, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 347 1047 Fax: 012 347 0403

Peru (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 907, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 440 1030 Fax: 012 440 1054

Philippines (Republic of the)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2562, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 346 0451/2 Fax: 012 346 0454

Poland (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12277, Queenswood, 0121
Tel: 012 430 2631/2 Fax: 012 430 2608

Portugal (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 27102, Sunnyside, 0132
Tel: 012 341 2340/1/2 Fax: 012 341 3975

Qatar (State of)
[Embassy]
Private Bag X13, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 452 1700 Fax: 012 346 6732

Romania (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11295, Brooklyn, 0011
Tel: 012 460 6940/1 Fax: 012 460 6947

Russian Federation
[Embassy]
PO Box 6743, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 362 1337/8 Fax: 012 362 0116

Rwanda (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 55224, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6536 Fax: 012 342 7106

Saharawi (Arab Democratic Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11352, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5532 Fax: 012 430 7428

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13930, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 4230/40 Fax: 012 362 4239

Senegal (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2948, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 460 5263 Fax: 012 346 5550

Serbia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13026, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 460 5626 Fax: 012 460 6003

Seychelles (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 1548, Ferndale, Randburg, 2160
Tel: 012 348 0270 Fax: 012 348 00069

Singapore (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 11809, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 430 6035 Fax: 012 342 4425

Slovakia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12736, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 2051/2 Fax: 012 342 3688

Slovenia (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1655, Durbanville, 7551
Tel: 021 970 2447 Fax: 086 604 6603

Spain (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 1633, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 422 2327 Fax: 012 422 2328

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)
[High Commission]
410 Alexander St, Brooklyn, 0181
Tel: 012 460 7690 Fax: 012 460 7702

Sudan (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 25513, Monument Park, 0105
Tel: 012 342 4538 Fax: 012 342 4539

Suriname (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 149, Groenkloof, 0027
Tel: 012 346 7627/45 Fax: 012 346 0802

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
[High Commission]
715 Government Ave, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 344 1910 Fax: 012 343 0455

Sweden (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13477, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 426 6400 Fax: 012 426 6464

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 2508, Brooklyn Square, 0075
Tel: 012 452 0660 Fax: 012 346 6605

Syrian Arab Republic
[Embassy]
PO Box 12830, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 4701 Fax: 012 342 4702

Taipei
[Liaison Office in South Africa]
PO Box 649, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 430 6071 Fax: 012 430 5816

Tanzania (United Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 56572, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 4393 Fax: 012 430 4383

Thailand (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 12080, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 5470 Fax: 012 342 4805

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 95872, Waterkloof, 0145
Tel: 012 460 9688 Fax: 012 346 7302

Tunisia (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56535, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6282/83 Fax: 012 342 6284

Turkey (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 56014, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 6055 Fax: 012 342 6052

Uganda (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 12442, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 342 6031/3 Fax: 012 342 6206

Ukraine
[Embassy]
PO Box 57291, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 460 1946 Fax: 012 460 1944

United Arab Emirates
[Embassy]
PO Box 57090, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 7736 Fax: 012 342 7738

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
[High Commission]
255 Hill St, Arcadia, 0083
Tel: 012 421 7500 Fax: 012 421 7555

United States of America
[Embassy]
PO Box 9536, Pretoria, 0001
Tel: 012 431 4000 Fax: 012 342 2299

Uruguay (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 14818, Hatfield, Pretoria, 0028
Tel: 012 362 6521/2 Fax: 012 362 6523

Venezuela (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11821, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 6593 Fax: 012 362 6591

Vietnam (Socialist Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13692, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 362 8119 Fax: 012 362 8115

Yemen (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 13343, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 425 0760 Fax: 012 425 0762

Zambia (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 12234, Hatfield, 0028
Tel: 012 326 1854 Fax: 012 326 2140

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 55140, Arcadia, 0007
Tel: 012 342 5125 Fax: 012 342 5126

Representatives of South Africa abroad

Afghanistan
Representation accredited from Pakistan.

African Union and United Nations Economic Commission for Africa
[South African Mission]
PO Box 1091, Addis Ababa
Tel: 00251113711002
Fax: 00251113711330

Albania (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Rome, Italy

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic)
[South African Embassy]
30 Rue du Stade, Hydra, Algiers 16000
Tel: 0021321484418 Fax: 0021321484419

Andorra (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Madrid, Spain

Angola (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Caixa Postal 6212, Luanda
Tel: 00244222330593
Fax: 00244222398730

Antigua and Barbuda
Representation accredited from Jamaica.

Argentina (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Avenida Marcelo T de Alvaear 590,
8th Floor, C1058AAF, Buenos Aires 1050
Tel: 00541143172900
Fax: 00541143119993

Armenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Kiev, Ukraine

Australia)
[South African High Commission]
Rhodes Place, State Circle, Yarralumla
Canberra ACT 2600
Tel: 0061262727300 Fax: 0061262723203

Austria (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Sandgasse 33, A-1190 Vienna
Tel: 004313206493 Fax: 004313200814

Azerbaijan (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Turkey

Bahamas (The Commonwealth of the)
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Bahrain (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Saudi Arabia

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)
Representation accredited from India

Barbados
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Belarus (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Russia

Belgium (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
(Embassy to Belgium and Luxembourg and Mission to the European Communities)
17-19 Motoyer 1000, Brussels 1040
Tel: 003222854400 Fax: 003222854402

Benin (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
DIP B 7696 Cotonou
Tel: 002292130695 Fax: 002292130685

Botswana (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag 00402, Gaborone
Tel: 002673904800 Fax: 00267390550

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
SES – Avenida das Nacoes, Quadra 801
Lote 6, CEP: 70 406-900, Brasilia DF
Tel: 00556133129500
Fax: 00556133228491

Brunei Darussalam (Negara Brunei Darussalam)
Representation accredited from Kuala Lumpur, Malasia

Bulgaria (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
26 Bacho Kiro St, 2nd Floor, Sofia 1000
Tel: 0035929395015 Fax: 0035929395017

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Villa 110, Hotel Ouaga, 2000 Ouagadouga
Tel: 0022650376099 Fax: 0022650376097

Burundi
[South African Embassy]
BP 185 Bujumbura
Tel: 0025722244650 Fax: 0025722249164

Cambodia (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from Thailand

Cameroon (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Boite Postal 1636, Yaounde
Tel: 0023722200438 Fax: 0023722200995

Canada
[South African High Commission]
15 Sussex Drive, Ontario KIM 1M8, Ottawa
Tel: 0016137440330 Fax: 0016137411639

Cape Verde (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Senegal

Central African Republic
Representation accredited from Cameroon

Chad
[South African Embassy]
BP 1243, N'Djaména
Tel: 0023522524006 Fax: 0865178850

Chile (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Torre San Ramon Piso 17, Avenida 11 de Septiembre, 2353 Santiago, Providencia
Tel: 005628200300 Fax: 005622313185

China (People's Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
5 Dongzhimenwai Dajie, Beijing 100600
Tel: 00861085320000
Fax: 00861065320177

Colombia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Venezuela

Comores (Union of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 2589, Moroni
Tel: 002697734783 Fax: 002697734524

Congo (Democratic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Boite Postale 7829, Kinshasa 1
Tel: 00243814769700
Fax: 00243815554322

Congo (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
82 Avenue, Marechal Lyautey, Brazzaville
Tel: 002428 0849 Fax: 00115076073

Cook Islands
Representation accredited from Australia

Costa Rica (Republic of)
[South African Consulate-General]
PO Box 2816-1000, San Jose
Tel: 005062221470 Fax: 005062238223

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
08 BP 1806, Abidjan 08
Tel: 0022522445963 Fax: 0022522447450

Croatia (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Agrokor dd Trg D Petrovica 3,
10 000 Zagreb
Tel: 0013851489 4111
Fax: 00138514844363

Cuba (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Ave 5ta 4201, esq 42, Miramar Playa
Ciudad de La Habana, Havana
Tel: 005372049671 Fax: 005372041101

Cyprus (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Greece

Czech (Republic)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 133, 10000 Prague 10
Tel: 00420267311114
Fax: 00420267311395

Denmark (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 128, DK-2900, Hellerup
Copenhagen
Tel: 004539180155 Fax: 004539184006

Djibouti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ethiopia

Dominica (Commonwealth of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Dominican Republic
Representation accredited from Cuba

East Timor (Republic of Timor Leste)
Representation accredited from Indonesia

Ecuador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Peru

Egypt (Arab Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
55 Road 18, Maadi, Cairo
Tel: 0020223594365 Fax: 0020223595015

El Salvador (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mexico

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 5, Malabo
Tel: 00240207737 Fax: 00240092746

Eritrea (State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 11447, Asmara
Tel: 00291152521 Fax: 00291152516

Estonia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Finland

Ethiopia (Federal Democratic Republic)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1091, Addis Ababa
Tel: 00251113711002
Fax: 00251113711330

European Union
[South African Mission]
17-19 Montoyer 1000, Brussels 1040
Tel: 003222854400 Fax: 003222854402

Fiji (Republic of the Fiji Islands)
Plot 1, 16 Kimberly St, Suva
Tel: 006793311087 Fax: 006793311086

Finland (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Rahapajankatu 1A 5, Helsinki 00160
Tel: 00358968603100
Fax: 00358968603160

France (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
59 Quai d'Orsay, 75343 Paris Cedex 07
Tel: 0033153592323 Fax: 0033153592333

Gabon (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
BP 4063, Libreville
Tel: 00241774530/1 Fax: 00241774536

The Gambia
Representation accredited from Senegal

Georgia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ukraine

Germany (Federal Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Postfach 080461, Berlin 10004
Tel: 004930220730 Fax: 00493022073109

Ghana (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 298, Trade Fair, Accra
Tel: 0023321764500 Fax: 0023321762381

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 61152, GR 151-10, Athens
Tel: 00302106106645 Fax: 0030206106640

Grenada
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Guatemala (Republic of)
10 A Avenida 30-57, Zona 5,
Ciudad de Guatemala
Tel: 0050223326953 Fax: 0050223315734

Guinea (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Coleah, Mossoudougou, Conakry
Tel: 0022430490875 Fax: 0022430490879

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
CP 1334, Bissau
Tel: 002456655444

Guyana (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Haiti (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Holy See (The Vatican)
Representation accredited from
Switzerland

Honduras (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
2 Ave 12 Calle, Barrio Las Acacias
Casa 104, San Pedro Sula
Tel: 005045524702 Fax: 005045532553

Hong Kong
[South African Consulate-General]
27/F Great Eagle Centre, Room 2706-10
23 Harbour Rd, Wanchai, Hong Kong
Tel: 0085225773279 Fax: 0085228901975

Hungary (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Gardonyi Geza ut 17, H-1026 Budapest
Tel: 003613920999 Fax: 003612007277

Iceland (Republic of)
[South African Honorary
Consulate-General]
PO Box 462, 121 Reykjavik
Tel: 003545910355 Fax: 003545910358

India (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
B18 Vasant Marg, New Delhi, Vasant Vihar,
110 057
Tel: 00911126149411
Fax: 00911126143605

Indonesia (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1329, Jakarta
Tel: 0062215740660 Fax: 0062215740661

International Monetary Fund
and World Bank
[South African Permanent Mission]
Suite 380 3201, New Mexico Ave NW
Washington DC 20016, USA
Tel: 0012023648320 Fax: 0012023546008

Iran (Islamic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 11365-7476, Tehran
Tel: 0098212702866 Fax: 0098212719516

Ireland
[South African Embassy]
2nd Floor, Alexandra House Earlsfort Centre, Earlsfort Terrace, Dublin 2
Tel: 0035316615553 Fax: 0035316615590

Israel (State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 7138, Tel Aviv, 61071
Tel: 0097235252566 Fax: 0097235253230

Italy (Italian Republic)
[South African Embassy]
Via Tanaro 14, Rome 00198
Tel: 003906852541 Fax: 00390685254301

Jamaica
[South African High Commission]
15 Hillcrest Ave, Kingston 6, WI
Tel: 0018766204840
Fax: 00187692703846

Japan
[South African Embassy]
3rd and 4th Floor, Oriken Hirakawa-cho Building, Hirakawa-cho 2-chome 1-1 Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102-0093
Tel: 0081332653366 Fax: 008133265 573

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 851508, Sweifieh 11185, Amman
Tel: 0096265921194 Fax: 0096265920080

Kazakhstan (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Kashad Business Centre, 17th Floor Kobanbai, Batyra 6/1, Astana 010000
Tel: 0077172925326 Fax: 0077172925329

Kenya (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 42441, Nairobi
Tel: 00254202827100
Fax: 00254202827245

Kiribati (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia

Korea (Democratic People's Republic)
Representation accredited from China

Korea (Republic of South)
[South African Embassy]
1-37 Hannam-dong, Yongsan-Ku, Seoul, 140-885
Tel: 008227924855 Fax: 008227924856

Kuwait (The State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2262, 40173 Mishref
Tel: 0096525617988 Fax: 0096525617917

Kyrgyz Republic
Representation accredited from Turkey

Lao People's Democratic Republic
Representation accredited from Thailand

Latvia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Finland

Lebanon (Republic of)
[South African Honorary Consulate]
Representation accredited from Syria

Lesotho (Kingdom of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag A266, Maseru 100
Tel: 0026622315758 Fax: 0026622310128

Liberia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ivory Coast

Libya (Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1230, Tripoli
Tel: 00218213337006
Fax: 00218213340432

Liechtenstein (Principality of)
Representation accredited from Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Denmark

Luxembourg (Grand Duchy of)
Representation accredited from Belgium

Madagascar (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
BP 12101-05, Zoom, 101 Antananarivo
Tel: 00261202243350
Fax: 00261202249514

Malawi (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 30043, Lilongwe 3
Tel: 002651773722 Fax: 002651772571

Malaysia (Federation of)
[South African High Commission]
Suite 22, 01 Level 22, 3 Jalan Kia Peng
50450 Kuala Lumpur
Tel: 0060321702412 Fax: 0060321688591

Maldives (Republic of)
Representation accredited from India

Mali (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Boite Postal 2015, Bamako
Tel: 0022320292925 Fax: 0022320292926

Malta
Representation accredited from Italy

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)
PB 2006, Nouakchatt
Tel: 0002225241287 Fax: 0002225245591

Mauritius (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 908, Port Louis
Tel: 002302126925 Fax: 002302126936

Mexico (United Mexican States)
[South African Embassy]
Apartado Postal 105-219, Colonia Polanco
11560, Mexico DF
Tel: 00525511004970
Fax: 00525552829259

Micronesia (Federated States of)
Representation accredited from Australia

Moldova (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ukraine

Monaco (Principality of)
Representation accredited from France

Mongolia
Representation accredited from the PRC

Morocco (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
34 Rue des Saadiens, Rabat 10100
Tel: 002125706760 Fax: 002125724550

Mozambique (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Caixa Postal 1120, Maputo
Tel: 0025821491614 Fax: 0025821493029

Myanmar (The Union of)
Representation accredited from Thailand

Namibia (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 23100, Windhoek, Namibia
Tel: 0026461205711 Fax: 0026461227771

Nauru (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia

Nepal (Kingdom of)
Representation accredited from India

Netherlands (Kingdom of the)
[South African Embassy]
Wassenaarseweg 40, 2596 CJ, The Hague
Tel: 0031703924501 Fax: 0031703460669

New Zealand
[South African Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 25406, Wellington
Tel: 006448158484 Fax: 006444725010

Nicaragua
Representation accredited from Mexico

Niger (Republic of)
PO Box 13417, Niamey
Tel: 0022720726083 Fax: 0022720726082

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
71 Usuma St, Maitama, Abuja
Tel: 0023494624200 Fax: 0023494133829

Niue
Representation accredited from Australia

Norfolk Island
Representation accredited from Australia

Norway (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2822, Solli, 0204 Oslo
Tel: 004723273220 Fax: 004722443975

Oman (Sultanate of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 231 PC 118,
Al Harthy Complex Muscat
Tel: 0096824647300 Fax: 0096824694792

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
48 Khayabane-e-Iqbal, Sector F-8/2
Islamabad
Tel: 0092512262354 Fax: 0092512250114

Palestine (State of)
[South African Representative Office]
PO Box 1258, Gaza City, Gaza
Tel: 0097222987355 Fax: 0097222987356

Palau (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Australia

Panama (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Peru.

Papua New Guinea
Representation accredited from Singapore.

Peru (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 27-013, L27, Lima
Tel: 005116124848 Fax: 005114223881

Philippines (Republic of the)
[South African Embassy]
29th Floor, Yuchengco Tower, RCBC
Plaza, #6819 Ayala Ave, Makati City,
Metro Manila
Tel: 006328899383 Fax: 006328899337

Poland (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
IPC Business Centre, 6th Floor, UL
Koszykowa 54, Warsaw 00-675
Tel: 0048226256228 Fax: 0048226256270

Portugal (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Avenida Luis Bvar 10, 1069-024, Lisbon
Tel: 00351213192200
Fax: 00351213535713

Qatar (State of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 24744, Doha
Tel: 009744857111 Fax: 00974483 5961

Romania
[South African Embassy]
26-28 Stirbei Voda, 2nd Floor, Union
International Business Centre, Bucharest
Tel: 0040213133725 Fax: 0040213133795

Russian Federation
[South African Embassy]
Granatny Pereulok 1, Building 9,
103102, Moscow
Tel: 0074959261177 Fax: 0074959261178

Rwanda (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 6563, Kacyiru-Sud, Kigali
Tel: 00250252583185
Fax: 00250252583186

Saint Kitts and Nevis
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Saint Lucia
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
Representation accredited from Jamaica

Samoa (The Independent State of)
Representation accredited from Australia

San Marino (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Italy

São Tomé and Principe (Democratic Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 555, São Tomé and Principe
Tel: 00239225719 Fax: 00239224916

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 94006, Riyadh, 11693
Tel: 0096614229716 Fax: 0096614229712

Senegal (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 21010, Dakar-Ponty, Dakar
Tel: 00221338651959
Fax: 00221338642359

Serbia and Montenegro
Representation accredited from Greece

Seychelles (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Mauritius

Sierra Leone (Republic of)
Representation accredited from the Ivory Coast

Singapore (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
15th Floor Odeon Towers
331 North Bridge Road
Tel: 006563393319 Fax: 006563396658

Slovenia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Austria

Solomon Islands
Representation accredited from Australia

Somalia (Republic of)
Representation accredited from Ethiopia

Spain (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
Edificio Lista, Calle de Claudio Coello 91-6
Cor of J Ortega Y Gasset, Madrid 28006
Tel: 0034914363780 Fax: 0034915777414

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
114 Rosemead Place, Colombo 07
Tel: 0094112689926 Fax: 0094112688670

Sudan (Republic of the)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 12137, Khartoum
Tel: 00249183585301
Fax: 00249183585082

Swaziland (Kingdom of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 2507, Mbabane
Tel: 002684044651 Fax: 002684044335

Sweden (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
4th Floor, Fleminggaten 20, SE-112 26
Stockholm
Tel: 00468243950 Fax: 004686607136

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)
[South African Embassy]
29 Alpenstrasse, 3006 Berne, 6
Tel: 0041313501313 Fax: 00413136811751

Syrian Arab Republic
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 9141, Damascus
Tel: 00963 161351520
Fax: 00963116111714

Taiwan
[Liaison Office of South Africa]
PO Box 118-140, Taipei
Tel: 00886227153251
Fax: 00886227125109

Tanzania (United Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 10723, Msaki, Dar-es-Salaam
Tel: 00255222601800
Fax: 00255222600684

Thailand (Kingdom of)
[South African Embassy]
Floor 12 A, M-Thai Tower, All Seasons
Place, 87 Wireless Rd, Prathumwan
Lumpini, Bangkok, 10330
Tel: 006626592900 Fax: 006622501063

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 7111, Trinidad
Tel: 0018686229869 Fax: 0018686227089

Tunisia (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
7 Rue Achtart, Nord-Hilton, Tunis
Tel: 0021671798449 Fax: 0021671796742

Turkey (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 30, Kucukesat, 06662 Ankara
Tel: 00903124056861
Fax: 00903134466434

Uganda (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box 22667, Kampala
Tel: 00256417702100
Fax: 00256414348216

Ukraine
[South African Embassy]
P O Box 7, Central Post Office
22 Kreshchtyk St, 01001 Kyiv
Tel: 00380442877172
Fax: 00380442897206

United Arab Emirates
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 29446, Abu Dhabi
Tel: 0097124473446 Fax: 0097124473031

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
[South African High Commission]
South Africa House, 9 Duncannon St,
Trafalgar Square, London WC2N 5DP
Tel: 00442074517299
Fax: 00442074517284

United Nations – New York
[South African Permanent Mission]
333 East 38th St, 9th Floor, New York
NY 10016, United States of America
Tel: 0012122134880 Fax: 0012122130102

United Nations – Geneva
[South African Permanent Mission]
65 Rue du Rhone, 1204 Geneva
Tel: 0041228495454 Fax: 0041228495432

United States of America
[South African Embassy]
3051 Massachusetts Ave NW,
Washington DC 20008
Tel: 00120222324400
Fax: 00120222651607

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
Dr Gabriel Otero 6337 Carrasco,
Montevideo 11300
Tel: 0059826017591 Fax: 0059826003165

Uzbekistan (Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
30-A Asaka St, 700 000 Taskent
Tel: 00998712370171
Fax: 00998712372546

Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of)
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 2613, Carmelitas DF 1010,
Caracas
Tel: 00582129520026 Fax:
00582129520277

Vietnam
[South African Embassy]
PO Box 102, Hanoi
Tel: 008449362000 Fax: 008449361991

Zambia (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
Private Bag W369, Lusaka, Zambia
Tel: 00260126 0999 Fax: 00260126 3001

Zimbabwe (Republic of)
[South African High Commission]
PO Box A1654, Avondale, Harare
Tel: 00263 475 3147 Fax: 00263 475 7908

Index

SOUTH AFRICA
YEARBOOK
2011/12

The index is arranged word-by-word. All Acts and legal documents are listed alphabetically in shortened form under the entry 'Acts'. Page numbers marked in bold refer to text found under headings.

B

E

H

I

J

K

M

O

P

Q

R

S

T

BOTSWANA
NAMIBIA
ZIMBABWE
MOZAMBIQUE
SWAZILAND
LESOTHO
SOUTH AFRICA
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
LIMPOPO
NORTH WEST
GAUTENG
MPUMALANGA
FREE STATE
KWAZULU-NATAL
NORTHERN CAPE
EASTERN CAPE
WESTERN CAPE
WINDHOEK
Gobabis
Swakopmund
Walvisbaai
Keetmanshoop
Lüderitz
Oranjemund
Vioolsdrif
Serowe
Mahalapye
GABORONE
Lobatse
MAPUTO
Xai-Xai
MBABANE
Mbazwana
MASERU
Musina
Babirwa
Makhado
Thohoyandou
Giyani
Makhuva
Botlokwa
Lephalale
Vaalwater
Mapela
Mokopane
Mahwelereng
Seshego
POLOKWANE
Atok
Namakgale
Phalaborwa
Thabazimbi
Modimolle
Phahameng
Bela-Bela
Leboeng
Kgautswane
Casteel
Kgolomodumo
Leretlhabetse
Lebotlwane
Soshanguve
Siyabuswa
Tlhabane
Rustenburg
PRETORIA
Tembisa
Mamelodi
Zithobeni
Diepsloot
Ipelegeng
Krugersdorp
JOHANNESBURG
Faranani
SOWETO
Germiston
Tshedimosetso
Ventersdorp
Sebokeng
Vanderbijlpark
Vereeniging
Vaal
Tholulwazi
Middelburg
NELSPRUIT
Kamsogwaba
Komatipoort
Matsamo
Ermelo
Mpuluzi
Tshidilamolomo
MAFIKENG
Morokweng
Victor Tong
Klerksdorp
Jouberton
Vryburg
Huhudi
Ga-Motlhware
Kuruman
Maokeng
Kroonstad
Kutlwanono
Welkom
Bethlehem
Bohlokong
Phuthaditjhaba
Pescodia
KIMBERLEY
Galeshewe
BLOEMFONTEIN
Sediba
Qalabotjha
Botshabelo
Namahadi
Newcastle
Osizweni
Bhekuzulu
Vryheid
Ladysmith
Bergville
Tugela Ferry
Ulundi
Mtshezi
Richards Bay
Esikhawini
Bamshela
Dukuza
Edendale
PIETERMARITZBURG
KwaMashu
DURBAN
Dududu
Umlazi
Port Shepstone
Zalu Hill
Lusikisiki
Mthatha
Tombo
Cofimvaba
Viedgesville
Centane
Queenstown
Sterkspruit
Dukathole
Aliwal North
Middelburg
KwaNonzame
Michausdal
Cradock
Graaff-Reinet
uMasizakhe
Bhisho
King William's Town
Mdantsane
East London
Rini
Grahamstown
KwaZakhele
PORT ELIZABETH
IBhayi
Cacadu
Plettenberg Bay
Sandrift
George
Thembalethu
Mossel Bay
Waboomkraal
Oudtshoorn
Riversdale
Swellendam
Bonteheuwel
Caledon
Worcester
Zweletemba
Unobuntu
Paarl
Bellville
CAPE TOWN
Zolane
Guga sThebe
Khayelitsha
Mitchells Plain
Hartebeeskraal
Vredenburg
Saldanha
Velddrif
Louwville
Laingsburg
Beaufort West
KwaMandlenkosi
Calvinia
Newtown
Vanrhynsdorp
Masibambane
Vredendal
Bonteheuwel
Carnarvon
Masinyusane
Victoria West
Nonzwakazi
De Aar
Colesberg
E'Thembeni
Prieska
Kenhardt
Augrabies
Paballelo
Upington
Nababeep
Springbok
KGALAGADI TRANSFRONTIER PARK
AI-AIS RICHTERSVELD TRANSFRONTIER PARK
AUGRABIES FALLS
NAMAQUA
VAALBOS
GOLDEN GATE HIGHLANDS
ROYAL NATAL
UKHAHLAMBA DRAKENSBERG
GREATER St. LUCIA WETLAND
GREAT LIMPOPO TRANSFRONTIER PARK
MARAKELE
PILANESBERG
KAROO
MOUNTAIN ZEBRA
ADDO ELEPHANT
TSITSIKAMMA
BONTEBOK
DE HOOP
WEST COAST
CAPE PENINSULA
Cape of Good Hope
Cape Agulhas
St. Helena Bay
Table Bay
False Bay
Mossel Bay
Plettenberg Bay
Algoa Bay
Okwa
Limpopo
Sand
Nossob
Molopo
Marico
Olifants
Incomati
Fish
Orange
Vaal
Bloemhof Dam
Vaal Dam
Grootdraai Dam
Heyshope Dam
Ntshingwayo Dam
Woodstock Dam
Pongola
Pongolapoort Dam
Lake St. Lucia
Tugela
Sengu
Caledon
Vanderkloof Dam
Gariep Dam
Mzimvubu
Mtata Dam
Great Kei
Sundays
Darlington Dam
Great Fish
Sak
Theewaterskloof Dam
REFERENCE
International Boundary
Provincial Boundary
Rail
National Road
Arterial Road
River
Capital City
Provincial Capital
City
Towns
Airport
National Park
N
Chief Directorate:
National Geo-spatial Information
Private Bag X10, Mowbray.
Tel: (021) 6584300 Fax: (021) 6891351